

A Translation and Analysis of the Pātimokkha

by
Bhikkhu Ñāṇatusita

Draft Version 1.7

Copyright (c) 2008, Bhikkhu Ñāṇatusita, Forest Hermitage, Kandy, August 2008

If you notice any mistakes or inconsistencies, or if you have any suggestions, please contact Bhikkhu Ñāṇatusita,
E-mail: nyanatusita@gmail.com

(Fonts required: URW Palladio Pali [downloadable from www.bps.lk], Aloka Sinhala [www.ancient-buddhist-texts.net], Mingliu)

Table of Contents (Outline)

Bibliography	14
Abbreviations	19
Pātimokkha Editions Consulted	24
Editions of Other Pāli Texts Quoted	28
Prātimokṣasūtras	29
Introduction	31
The Recitation of the Pātimokkha	33
Some remarks on the Pubbakaraṇa, Pubbakicca, and Pattakalla	52
[Bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ.]	108
[Nidān'uddeso]	108
[Pārājik'uddeso]	129
[Saṅkhitta-pātimokkh'uddesa]	156
[Saṅghādises'uddeso]	157
[Aniyatuddeso]	210
[Nissaggiya pācittiya]	217
[Suddhapācittiya]	281
[Pāṭidesanīya]	399
[Sekhiyā]	408
[Adhikaraṇasamathā]	444
Appendix I Uposathapubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni	456
Appendix II	486
Appendix III	493
Confession in the Mūlasikkhā, etc.	493

Table of Contents (Detailed)

Bibliography	15
Abbreviations	20
Pātimokkha Editions Consulted	25
Editions of Other Pāli Texts Quoted	29
Prātimokṣasūtras	30
Introduction	32
The Recitation of the Pātimokkha	34
The Language of the Pātimokkha	40
Concatenation and the Order of the Rules	42
Chapter Titles	44
Rule Section Titles and Rule-Titles	49
Quotation-Marks	52
Some remarks on the Pubbakaraṇa, Pubbakicca, and Pattakalla	53
The Summary of Preparations and Preliminary Duties	53
Preparations	57
Preliminary Duties: Pārisuddhi and Chanda	58
Confession	62
Day, Season, Instructing the Bhikkhunīs, Number, and Armslength	67
Sīmā	69
Common Offences	72

Persons Unqualified to Participate in the Pātimokkha Recitation	72
Suspending the Pātimokkha	73
The Invitation by the Elder	74
Preliminary Duties in the Introductions to the Prātimokṣasūtras	75
The Relation between the Nidāna and the Padabhājana	77
The Pātimokkha and its Meaning	80
The Purpose of the Pātimokkha Recitation	86
Sutta and Suttavibhaṅga	88
On the Meaning of Sutta in Suttāgata and Suttavibhaṅga	93
On the Term Pārājika	97
On the Term Saṅghādisesa	102
Note on the Arrangement and Translation	107
[Bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ.]	109
[Nidān'uddeso]	109
[Nidāna continuation]	116
[Nidāna conclusion]	127
[Pārājik'uddeso]	130
[Pār 1: Methunadhammasikkhāpadaṃ]	132
[Pār 2: Adinnādānasikkhāpadaṃ]	137
[Pār 3: Manussaviggahasikkhāpadaṃ]	144
[Pār 4: Uttarimanussadhammasikkhāpadaṃ]	149
[Pārājika conclusion]	155
[Saṅkhitta-pātimokkh'uddesa]	157
[Saṅghādises'uddeso]	158
[Sd 1: Sukkavissatṭhisikkhāpadaṃ]	159
[Sd 2: Kāyasaṃsaggasikkhāpadaṃ]	160
[Sd 3: Duṭṭhullavācāsikkhāpadaṃ]	162
[Sd 4: Attakāmapāricariyasikkhāpadaṃ]	165
[Sd 5: Saṅcarittasikkhāpadaṃ]	168
[Sd 6: Kuṭikārasikkhāpadaṃ]	169
[Sd 7: Vihārakārasikkhāpadaṃ]	174
[Sd 8: Duṭṭhadosasikkhāpadaṃ]	175
[Sd 9: Aññabhāgiyasikkhāpadaṃ]	182
[Sd 10: Saṅghabhedasikkhāpadaṃ]	183
[Sd 11: Bhedānuvattakasikkhāpadaṃ]	191
[Sd 12: Dubbacasikkhāpadaṃ]	196
[Sd 13: Kuladūsakasikkhāpadaṃ]	201
[Saṅghādisesa conclusion]	205
[Aniyatuddeso]	211
[Aniy 1: Paṭhama-aniyatasikkhāpadaṃ]	211
[Aniy 2: Duttiya-aniyatasikkhāpadaṃ]	215
[Aniyata conclusion]	217
[Nissaggiya pācittiya]	218
[Cīvaravaggo]	218
[NP 1: Kaṭṭhasikkhāpadaṃ]	219
[NP 2: Uddositasikkhāpadaṃ]	226
[NP 3: Akālacīvarasikkhāpadaṃ]	227
[NP 4: Purāṇacīvarasikkhāpadaṃ]	230
[NP 5: Cīvarappaṭiggahaṇasikkhāpadaṃ]	231
[NP 6: Aññātakaviññattisikkhāpadaṃ]	232

[NP 7: Tat'uttarisikkhāpadaṃ]	233
[NP 8: Paṭhama-upakkhaṭasikkhāpadaṃ]	236
[NP 9: Duttiya-upakkhaṭasikkhāpadaṃ]	239
[NP 10: Rājasikkhāpadaṃ]	240
[NP 11: Kosiyasikkhāpadaṃ]	251
[NP 12: Suddhakāḷakasikkhāpadaṃ]	252
[NP 13: Dvebhāgasikkhāpadaṃ]	252
[NP 14: Chabbassasikkhāpadaṃ]	253
[NP 15: Nisīdanasanthasikkhāpadaṃ]	255
[NP 16: Eḷakalomasikkhāpadaṃ]	256
[NP 17: Eḷakalomadhovāpanasikkhāpadaṃ]	258
[NP 18: Rūpiyasikkhāpadaṃ]	259
[NP 19: Rūpiyaṃvohārasikkhāpadaṃ]	260
[NP 20: Kayavikkayasikkhāpadaṃ]	260
[Pattavaggo]	261
[Pattavaggo]	261
[NP 21: Pattasikkhāpadaṃ]	261
[NP 22: Ūnapaṇcabandhanasikkhāpadaṃ]	262
[NP 23: Bhesajjasikkhāpadaṃ]	264
[NP 24: Vassikasāṭikasikkhāpadaṃ]	267
[NP 25: Cīvara-acchindanasikkhāpadaṃ]	269
[NP 26: Suttaviññattisikkhāpadaṃ]	270
[NP 27: Mahāpesakārasikkhāpadaṃ]	270
[NP 28: Accekacīvarasikkhāpadaṃ]	273
[NP 29: Sāsaṇkasikkhāpadaṃ]	276
[NP 30: Pariṇatasikkhāpadaṃ]	281
[NP conclusion]	282
[Suddhapācittiyā]	282
[Musāvādavaggo]	283
[Pāc 1: Musāvādasikkhāpadaṃ]	283
[Pāc 2: Omasavādasikkhāpadaṃ]	283
[Pāc 3: Pesuññasikkhāpadaṃ]	284
[Pāc 4: Padasodhammasikkhāpadaṃ]	284
[Pāc 5: Paṭhamasahaseyyasikkhāpadaṃ]	285
[Pāc 6: Duttiyasahaseyyasikkhāpadaṃ]	287
[Pāc 7: Dhammadesanāsikkhāpadaṃ]	287
[Pāc 8: Bhūtārocanasikkhāpadaṃ]	288
[Pāc 9: Duṭṭhullārocanasikkhāpadaṃ]	288
[Pāc 10: Paṭhavīkhaṇanasikkhāpadaṃ]	289
[Bhūtagā mavaggo]	289
[Pāc 11: Bhūtagāmasikkhāpadaṃ]	289
[Pāc 12: Añṇavādakasikkhāpadaṃ]	292
[Pāc 13: Ujjhāpanakasikkhāpadaṃ]	293
[Pāc 14: Paṭhamasenāsanasikkhāpadaṃ]	294
[Pāc 15: Duttiyaseṇāsanasikkhāpadaṃ]	296
[Pāc 16: Anupakhajjasikkhāpadaṃ]	297
[Pāc 17: Nikkaḍḍhanasikkhāpadaṃ]	298
[Pāc 18: Vehāsakuṭṭisikkhāpadaṃ]	299
[Pāc 19: Mahallakavīhārasikkhāpadaṃ]	300
[Pāc 20: Sappāṇakasikkhāpadaṃ]	303

[Bhikkhunovādavaggo] 304
 [Pāc 21: Ovādasikkhāpadaṃ] 304
 [Pāc 22: Atthaṅgatasikkhāpadaṃ] 304
 [Pāc 23: Bhikkhunupassayasikkhāpadaṃ] 305
 [Pāc 24: Āmisasikkhāpadaṃ] 305
 [Pāc 25: Cīvaradānasikkhāpadaṃ] 306
 [Pāc 26: Cīvarasibbanasikkhāpadaṃ] 306
 [Pāc 27: Saṃvidhānasikkhāpadaṃ] 307
 [Pāc 28: Nāvābhiruhanasikkhāpadaṃ] 309
 [Pāc 29: Paripācitasikkhāpadaṃ] 310
 [Pāc 30: Rahonisajjasikkhāpadaṃ] 311
 [Bhojanavaggo] 312
 [Pāc 31: Āvasathapiṇḍasikkhāpadaṃ] 312
 [Pāc 32: Gaṇabhojanasikkhāpadaṃ] 313
 [Pāc 33: Paramparabhojanasikkhāpadaṃ] 315
 [Pāc 34: Kāṇamātusikkhāpadaṃ] 316
 [Pāc 35: Paṭhamapavāraṇāsikkhāpadaṃ] 319
 [Pāc 36: Dutiyapavāraṇāsikkhāpadaṃ] 320
 [Pāc 37: Vikālabhojanasikkhāpadaṃ] 322
 [Pāc 38: Sannidhikāraṇāsikkhāpadaṃ] 322
 [Pāc 39: Paṇṭabhojanasikkhāpadaṃ] 323
 [Pāc 40: Dantaponasikkhāpadaṃ] 324
 [Acelakavaggo] 325
 [Pāc 41: Acelakasikkhāpadaṃ] 325
 [Pāc 42: Uyyojanasikkhāpadaṃ] 326
 [Pāc 43: Sabhojanasikkhāpadaṃ] 328
 [Pāc 44: Rahopāṭicchannasikkhāpadaṃ] 329
 [Pāc 45: Rahonisajjasikkhāpadaṃ] 329
 [Pāc 46: Cārittasikkhāpadaṃ] 330
 [Pāc 47: Mahānāmasikkhāpadaṃ] 331
 [Pāc 48: Uyyuttasenāsikkhāpadaṃ] 333
 [Pāc 49: Senāvāsasikkhāpadaṃ] 333
 [Pāc 50: Uyyodhikasikkhāpadaṃ] 334
 [Surāpānavaggo] 336
 [Pāc 51: Surāpānasikkhāpadaṃ] 336
 [Pāc 52: Aṅgulipatodakasikkhāpadaṃ] 336
 [Pāc 53: Hassadhammasikkhāpadaṃ] 337
 [Pāc 54: Anādariyasikkhāpadaṃ] 337
 [Pāc 55: Bhimsāpanasikkhāpadaṃ] 338
 [Pāc 56: Jotisikkhāpadaṃ] 338
 [Pāc 57: Nahānasikkhāpadaṃ] 339
 [Pāc 58: Dubbaṇṇakaraṇasikkhāpadaṃ] 342
 [Pāc 59: Vikappanasikkhāpadaṃ] 344
 [Pāc 60: Apanidhānasikkhāpadaṃ] 345
 [Sappānavaggo] 346
 [Pāc 61: Sañciccasikkhāpadaṃ] 346
 [Pāc 62: Sappāṇakasikkhāpadaṃ] 346
 [Pāc 63: Ukkoṭanasikkhāpadaṃ] 347
 [Pāc 64: Duṭṭhullasikkhāpadaṃ] 348
 [Pāc 65: Ūnavīsativassasikkhāpadaṃ] 348

[Pāc 66: Theyyasatthasikkhāpadaṃ]	350
[Pāc 67: Saṃvidhānasikkhāpadaṃ]	351
[Pāc 68: Ariṭṭhasikkhāpadaṃ]	351
[Pāc 69: Ukkhittasambhogasikkhāpadaṃ]	356
[Pāc 70: Kaṇṭakasikkhāpadaṃ]	359
[Sahadhammikavaggo]	364
[Pāc 71: Sahadhammikasikkhāpadaṃ]	364
[Pāc 72: Vilekhanasikkhāpadaṃ]	366
[Pāc 73: Mohanasikkhāpadaṃ]	368
[Pāc 74: Pahārasikkhāpadaṃ]	381
[Pāc 75: Talasattikasikkhāpadaṃ]	381
[Pāc 76: Amūlakasikkhāpadaṃ]	382
[Pāc 77: Sañciccasikkhāpadaṃ]	382
[Pāc 78: Upassutisikkhāpadaṃ]	383
[Pāc 79: Kammappaṭibāhanasikkhāpadaṃ]	384
[Pāc 80: Chandaṃ-adatvā-gamanasikkhāpadaṃ]	385
[Pāc 81: Dubbalasikkhāpadaṃ]	386
[Pāc 82: Pariṇāmanasikkhāpadaṃ]	387
[Ratanavaggo]	388
[Pāc 83: Antepurasikkhāpadaṃ]	388
[Pāc 84: Ratanasikkhāpadaṃ]	391
[Pāc 85: Vikālagāmapavesanasikkhāpadaṃ]	393
[Pāc 86: Sūcigharasikkhāpadaṃ]	393
[Pāc 87: Mañcapīṭhasikkhāpadaṃ]	394
[Pāc 88: Tūlonaddhasikkhāpadaṃ]	395
[Pāc 89: Nisīdanasikkhāpadaṃ]	396
[Pāc 90: Kaṇḍuppaṭicchādisikkhāpadaṃ]	397
[Pāc 91: Vassikasāṭīkasikkhāpadaṃ]	397
[Pāc 92: Nandasikkhāpadaṃ]	398
[Pācittiya conclusion]	399
[Pāṭidesanīyā]	400
[Pd 1: Paṭhamapāṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ]	400
[Pd 2: Dutiyapāṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ]	402
[Pd 3: Tatiyapāṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ]	405
[Pd 4: Catutthapāṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ]	407
[Pāṭidesanīya conclusion]	408
[Sekhiyā]	409
[Parimaṇḍalavaggo]	410
[Sekh 1 & 2: Parimaṇḍalasikkhāpadaṃ]	410
[Sekh 3 & 4: Suppaṭicchannasikkhāpadaṃ]	412
[Sekh 5 & 6: susaṃvutasikkhāpadaṃ]	413
[Sekh 7 & 8: Okkhittacakkhusikkhāpadaṃ]	413
[Sekh 9 & 10: Ukkhittakasikkhāpadaṃ]	414
[Sekh 11 & 12: Ujjagghikasikkhāpadaṃ]	415
[Sekh 13 & 14: Uccasaddasikkhāpadaṃ]	416
[Sekh 15 & 16: Kāyappacālakasikkhāpadaṃ]	417
[Sekh 17 & 18: Bāhuppacālakasikkhāpadaṃ]	417
[Sekh 19 & 20: Sisappacālakasikkhāpadaṃ]	417
[Khambhakatavaggo]	418
[Sekh 21 & 22: Khambhakatasikkhāpadaṃ]	418

- [Sekh 23 & 24: Oguṇṭhitasikkhāpadaṃ] 419
[Sekh 25: Ukkuṭṭikasikkhāpadaṃ] 419
[Sekh 26: Pallatthikasikkhāpadaṃ] 421
[Sekh 27: Sakkaccapaṭiggahaṇasikkhāpadaṃ] 422
[Sekh 28: Pattasaññīpaṭiggahaṇasikkhāpadaṃ] 422
[Sekh 29: Samasūpakapaṭiggahaṇasikkhāpadaṃ] 423
[Sekh 30: Samatitthikasikkhāpadaṃ] 424
[Sakaccavaggo] 425
[Sekh 31: Sakkaccabhuñjanasikkhāpadaṃ] 425
[Sekh 32: Pattasaññībhūñjanasikkhāpadaṃ] 425
[Sekh 33: Sapadānasikkhāpadaṃ] 426
[Sekh 34: Samasūpakasikkhāpadaṃ] 426
[Sekh 35: Na-thūpakatasikkhāpadaṃ] 426
[Sekh 36: Odanappaṭicchādanasikkhāpadaṃ] 428
[Sekh 37: Sūpodanaviññattisikkhāpadaṃ] 429
[Sekh 38: Ujjhānasaññisikkhāpadaṃ] 429
[Sekh 39: Kabaḷasikkhāpadaṃ] 429
[Sekh 40: Ālopasikkhāpadaṃ] 430
[Anāhatavaggo] 431
[Sekh 41: Anāhaṭasikkhāpadaṃ] 431
[Sekh 42: Bhuñjamānasikkhāpadaṃ] 431
[Sekh 43: Sakabaḷasikkhāpadaṃ] 432
[Sekh 44: Piṇḍukkhepakasikkhāpadaṃ] 432
[Sekh 45: Kabaḷāvacchedakasikkhāpadaṃ] 433
[Sekh 46: Avagaṇḍakāraḥasikkhāpadaṃ] 433
[Sekh 47: Hatthaniddhunakasikkhāpadaṃ] 434
[Sekh 48: Sitthāvakāraḥasikkhāpadaṃ] 434
[Sekh 49: Jivhānicchāraḥasikkhāpadaṃ] 434
[Sekh 50: Capucapukāraḥasikkhāpadaṃ] 435
[Surusuruvaggo] 435
[Sekh 51: Surusurukāraḥasikkhāpadaṃ] 435
[Sekh 52: Hatthanillehakasikkhāpadaṃ] 435
[Sekh 53: Pattanillehakasikkhāpadaṃ] 436
[Sekh 54: Oṭṭhanillehakasikkhāpadaṃ] 436
[Sekh 55: Sāmisasikkhāpadaṃ] 436
[Sekh 56: Sasitthakasikkhāpadaṃ] 437
[Sekh 57: Chattapāṇisikkhāpadaṃ] 437
[Sekh 58: Daṇḍapāṇisikkhāpadaṃ] 438
[Sekh 59: Satthapāṇisikkhāpadaṃ] 438
[Sekh 60: Āvudhapāṇisikkhāpadaṃ] 438
[Pādukavaggo] 439
[Sekh 61: Pādukasikkhāpada] 439
[Sekh 62: Upāhanasikkhāpadaṃ] 439
[Sekh 63: Yānasikkhāpadaṃ] 439
[Sekh 64: Sayanasikkhāpadaṃ] 440
[Sekh 65: Pallatthikasikkhāpadaṃ] 440
[Sekh 66: Veṭṭhisikkhāpadaṃ] 440
[Sekh 67: Oguṇṭhitasikkhāpadaṃ] 440
[Sekh 68: Chamāsikkhāpadaṃ] 441
[Sekh 69: Nicāsanasikkhāpadaṃ] 441

[Sekh 70: Thitasikkhāpadaṃ]	442
[Sekh 71: Pacchatogamanasikkhāpadaṃ]	442
[Sekh 72: Uppathenagamanasikkhāpadaṃ]	442
[Sekh 73: Thito-uccārasikkhāpadaṃ]	443
[Sekh 74: Harite-uccārasikkhāpadaṃ]	443
[Sekh 75: Uduke-uccārasikkhāpadaṃ]	444
[Sekhiya conclusion]	444
[Adhikaraṇasamathā]	445
[Settlements of Legal Issues Continued]	446
[Adhikaraṇa Conclusion]	451
[Pātimokkha Conclusion]	452
[Pātimokkha Conclusion Continued]	453
Appendix I	457
Uposathapubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni	457
Burmese version	457
Version as used in Sri Lanka Siyam Nikāya and Amarapura Nikāya and Thai Mahānikāya	458
Sri Lanka Sri Kalyāṇa Yogāshrama Saṃsthāva version	465
Thai Dhammayuttika-nikāya Version	471
The Origin of the Question and Answer Version of the Pubbakicca-pubbakaraṇā	474
Appendix II	487
The Sikkhāpada-uddāna	487
The Sikkhāpada-uddāna in the 1875 Sinhalese edition of the Bhikkhupātimokkha	488
Sikkhāpada-uddāna in the Gannoruwa Pātimokkha Manuscript	491
Appendix III	494
Confession in the Mūlasikkhā, etc.	494

Bibliography

- Akira, H. *A History of Indian Buddhism*; Hawaii, 1990.
- Banerjee, A. C. *Two Buddhist Vinaya texts in Sanskrit*; Calcutta, 1977.
- Bapat, P. V. *Shan-Chien-P'i-P'o-Sha, A Chinese Version of the Samantapāsādikā*; Poona, 1970.
- Beal, S. *A Catena of Buddhist Scriptures from the Chinese*; London, 1871. (PrMo = pp 204–39.)
- Bodhi, Bhikkhu. *Connected Discourses of the Buddha*; Boston, 2000.
- Brough, J. *The Gāndhārī Dharmapada*; London, 1962.
- Buddhadatta, A.P. *Concise Pāli English Dictionary*; Colombo, 1958.
- Buddhist Text Translation Society. *The Bhikshu Pratimoksha Precepts from the Four-Part Vinaya of the Dharmagupta School*; City of Ten Thousand Buddhas, California.
- Chandavimala, Rerukane. *Ubhaya Pratimokṣaya*; Pokuṇuwita, 1956.
- Chandra, Lokesh. “Unpublished Gilgit Fragment of the Prātimokṣasūtra”; *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde Süd- und Ost Asiens*, IV, 1960, pp. 1–13.
- Childers, R. C. *A Dictionary of Pāli Language*; London, 1874.
- Cone, Margaret. *A Dictionary of Pāli*; Oxford, 2001.
- De Silva, W.A. *Catalogue of Palm Leaf Manuscripts in the Library of the Colombo Museum volume I*; Colombo, 1938.
- Dhirasekera, J.; *Buddhist Monastic Discipline*; Colombo, 1982.
- Dickson, J. F.; *The Pātimokkha, being the Buddhist Office of the Confession of Priests, Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, New Series VIII*, pp. 62–130, 1876.
- Duroiselle, C.; *A Practical Grammar of the Pāli Language*; Rangoon, 1906.
- Dutt, S.; *Buddhist Monks and Monasteries of India*; Dutt, S., Delhi, 1988.
- Edgerton, F. *Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Grammar and Dictionary I–II*, Edgerton, New Haven, 1953.
- Finot, L. *Le Prātimokṣasūtra des Sarvāstivādins*; Paris, 1914.
- Frauwallner, Erich. *The Earliest Vinaya and the Beginnings of Buddhist Literature*; Roma, 1956.
- Geiger, W. *A Pāli Grammar*, Oxford, 1994.
- Gethin, R.; *The Foundations of Buddhism*; Oxford, 1998.
- Gyatso, Tenzin; *Advice from Buddha Shakyamuni concerning a monk's Discipline*. Library of Tibetan Works & Archives, Dharamsala, 1986.
- H. Jacobi. *Jaina Sūtras I & II*; Delhi, 1989.
- Hazra, K. L.; *History of Theravāda Buddhism in South-east Asia*, Delhi, 1982.
- Heirmann, Ann. “Some remarks on the definition of a Monk and a Nun as members of a community and the Definition of ‘Not to live in Community’”; Ann Heirmann, *Indian Journal of Buddhist Studies* 7, 1995, pp.1–22.
- . “On Pārājika”; BSR, Vol. 16, No. 1, 1999, pp. 51–59.
- Hinüber, Oscar, von. “Pāli as an artificial language”; , *Indologica Taurinensia* X, 1982, pp. 133–40.
- . “Notes on the Pāli Tradition in Burma”; *Nachrichten der Akademie der Wissenschaften in Göttingen*, Göttingen, 1983.
- . “Die Bestimmung der Schulzugehörigkeit Buddhistischer Texte nach sprachlichen Kriterien”; *Zur Schulgehörigkeit von Werken der Hinayāna-Literatur*; Ed. Heinz Bechert, Göttingen, 1985, p.58f..
- . “Die neun Aṅgas,” *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde Südasiens* XXXVIII, 1994, pp. 121–135.
- . *Selected Papers on Pāli Studies*; Oxford, 1994. (= SSPS)
- . “Buddhist Law According to the Theravāda-Vinaya”; *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 18,1; 1995.
- . *Handbook of Pāli Literature*; Berlin, 1996.
- . *Das Pātimokkhasutta der Theravādin*; Mainz, 1999.
- . “Lān²Nā as a Centre of Pāli Literatur”; JPTS, vol XXVI, 2000, pp.119–37.
- Hirakawa, Akira. *Monastic Discipline for the Buddhist Nuns*; A. Hirakawa, Patna, 1982.

- Horner, I. B. *Book of Discipline I–VI*; Oxford, 1938–66.
- Hu-von Hinüber, Haiyan. “Some Remarks on the Sanskrit Manuscript of the Mūlasarvāstivāda-Prātimokṣasūtra found in Tibet,” *Jaina-Itihāsa-Ratna in Indica et Tibetica*, Band 47, Marburg, 2006, pp. 283–338.
- Indaratana, Kalavila, Bhikkhu, *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī*, Somawathi Hewawitharana Trust, Colombo 1988.
- Jain, Kailash, Chand. *Lord Mahāvīra and His Times*; 1991.
- Juo-Hsüeh Shih, Bhikkhunī: *Controversies over Buddhist Nuns*; Oxford, 2000.
- Kieffer-Pülz, Petra. “Ceremonial Boundaries in the Buddhist Tradition in Sri Lanka”; *Wilhelm Geiger and the Study of the History and Culture of Sri Lanka*, ed. Ulrich Everding und Asanga Tilakaratne, Colombo 1999, pp.43–90.
- Levi, S. “Sur un langue preCanonique du Bouddhisme”; *Journal Asiatique*, serie xx, tome xx, 1912.
- Macdonell, Arthur. *A History of Sanskrit Literature*; 1899.
- Macdonnell, A. & Keith, A. B. *Vedic Index of Names and Subjects*; Delhi, 1982.
- Misra, G. S.; *The Age of Vinaya*; Delhi, 1972.
- Monier Williams, M. *Sanskrit-English Dictionary*; Oxford, 1899.
- Ñāṇadassana, Bhikkhu. *Bhikkhu-Pātimokkhaṃ—Das Hauptregelwerk der Buddhistischen Bettelmönche*; Sri Lanka, 1999.
- Ñāṇamoli, Bhikkhu, and Bodhi, Bhikkhu. *Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha*; Kandy, 1995.
- Ñāṇamoli, Bhikkhu; *The Pāṭimokkha, 227 fundamental rules of a bhikkhu*. Mahā Makuṭ Academy, Bangkok, 1966.¹
- Ñāṇarāma, P., Bhikkhu. *Mission Accomplished*; Singapore, 1997.
- Nolot, E. “Studies in Vinaya Technical Terms, I–III,” *JPTS XXII*, 1996, pp.73–150.
- Norman, K. R. *Elders Verses I*; Oxford, 1969.
- . *Elders Verses II*; Oxford, 1971.
- . *Group of Discourses II*; Oxford, 1992. New edition: *Group of Discourses* (2nd edition); Oxford 2001.
- . *The Word of the Doctrine (Dhammapada)*; Oxford, 2000.
- . *Collected Papers I–VII*; Oxford, 1990–2001.
- . *A Philological Approach to Buddhism*; Lancaster, 2006.
- Norman, K. R. & Pruitt, William. *The Pātimokkha*; Oxford, 2001.
- . *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī, Pātimokkha aṭṭhakathā*, Oxford, 2003.
- Olivelle, P. *Buddhist Monachism*; Colombo, 1974.
- Pachow, W. *Comparative Study of the Prātimokṣa*; Santinekan, 1955.
- Paliawadana, Mahinda. “Pāli Sajjhāya and Sanskrit Svādhyāya”; *Recent Researches in Buddhist Studies, Essays in Honour of Prof. Y. Karundasa*; p.p. 493–515, Colombo, 1997.
- Perniola, Vito, S. J. *Pāli Grammar*; Oxford, 1997.
- Prebish, Charles S. *A Survey of Vinaya Literature*; Dharma Lamp Series, Taipei, 1994.
- . *Buddhist Monastic Discipline*, Delhi, 1996.
- Rhys Davids, T. W. & Oldenberg, H. *Vinaya Texts*; 1880.
- Rhys Davids, T. W., & Stede, W. *Pāli English Dictionary*; London, 1921–25.
- Rosen, Valentina. *Der Vinayavibhaṅga zum Bhikṣu Prātimokṣa der Sarvāstivādin*; Berlin, 1959.
- Roth, Gustav “Terminologisches aus dem Vinaya der Mahāsaṅghika”; *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenlandischen Gesellschaft* 118, 1968, pp. 334–338.
- . *Bhikṣuṇī-vinaya: Manual of Discipline for Buddhist Nuns*; Patna, 1970.
- . “The Language of the Ārya-Mahāsaṅghika-Lokottaravādins”; published in *The Language of the earliest Buddhist Tradition*; Göttingen, 1980.
- Salomon, Richard. *Ancient Buddhist Scrolls from Gandhāra*, London, 1999.
- Simson, Georg von. *Prātimokṣasūtra der Sarvāstivādin*, Teil II; Göttingen, 2000.
- Skilling, Peter. “A Recently Discovered Pāli Inscription from Nakhon Pathom”; *JPTS*, Vol XXIII, 1997.

¹ Contains the Pāli Pātimokkha text used by the Thai Dhammayuttikanikāya monastic order together with a translation of the Pātimokkha by Bh. Ñāṇamoli. The larger 1969 edition has a different introduction, etc. The adding of the Pāli and the translation of the preliminary duties, the introduction and the notes were done by another unknown bhikkhu because Ñāṇamoli would not have translated the Thai version of the preliminary duties. The 1969 edition, p.155, mentions that just the translation of the text was received after the death of bhikkhu Ñāṇamoli and that a few changes were made to the translation to adapt it to Thai standards.

- . “Mahāyāna and Bodhisattva: An essay towards historical understanding”; *Phothisatawa barami kap sangkhom thai nai sahatsawat mai*, Bangkok, 2004, pp. 139–156.
- Taita, Nathmal. *Prātimokṣasūtram of the Lokottaravādi-Mahāsaṅghika school*; Patna, 1976.
- Taita, Nathmal & Kumar M.M. *Aspects of Jaina Monasticism*; Delhi, 1980.
- Tekchok, Acharya Geshe Jhampa; *Monastic Rites*, Wisdom, London, 1984.
- Thanissaro, Bhikkhu. *The Buddhist Monastic Code*; Valley Center, 1996. (There are several editions, each with different pagination.)
- . *The Buddhist Monastic Code II: The Khandhaka Rules*; Valley Center, 2001.
- Tilakaratne, Asaṅga. “Saṅgīti and sāmaggī: Communal Recitation and the Unity of the Saṅgha”; *Buddhist Studies Review*, vol 17, No. 2, 2000, pp. 175–197.
- Treckner, V., etc. *A Critical Pāli Dictionary*; Copenhagen, started in 1924.
- Tsomo, Karma Lekse. *Sisters in Solitude*; Delhi, 1997.
- Vajirañāṇavarorasa, Somdet. *The Entrance to the Vinaya*, Vol. III, 1983,
- Vassāvāsa: A Rains Retreat Annual*, various authors, Bangkok; 1965.
- Warder, A. K. *Introduction to Pāli*; Oxford, 1963.
- Wijesekera, O. H. De A. *The Syntax of the Cases in the Pāli Nikāyas*; Colombo, 1994.
- Wu Yin, Bhikshuni. *Choosing Simplicity*; Ithaca, 2001.

Abbreviations

Abbreviations of Grammatical Terms

abl.: ablative.
 abs.: absolutive.
 acc.: accusative.
 adj.: adjective.
 adv.: adverb.
 aor.: aorist.
 Bb cpd.: bahubbihi cpd.
 cf: compare.
 conn.: connective.
 corr.: correlative.
 cpd: compound.
 dat.: dative.
 dem.: demonstrative.
 den.: denominative.
 der. fr.: derived from.
 disj.: disjunctive.
 eg.: for example.
 emph.: emphatic.
 f.: feminine.
 f.p.p.: future passive participle.
 fr.: from, derived from.
 fut.: future.
 gen.: genitive.
 hyp.: hypothetical.
 i.e.: that is.
 imp.: imperative.
 ind.: indicative.
 indecl.: indeclinable.
 inf.: infinitive.
 ins.: instrumental.
 inter.: interrogative.
 lit.: literally.
 loc.: locative.
 m.: masculine.
 neg.: negative.
 nom.: nominative.
 nt.: neuter.
 num.: numeral.
 opt.: optative.
 pass.: passive.
 pers.: personal.
 pl.: plural.
 p.p.: past participle.
 pref.: prefix.
 pron.: pronoun.

pr.p.: present participle.
 prep.: preposition
 rel.: relative.
 sg.: singular.
 suf.: suffix.
 tapp.: tappurisa.
 v.l.: variant reading.
 v.l.l.: variant readings.
 √: verbal-root.
 >: strengthening of √; or: alternation of consonant.
 @: To be investigated and/or unfinished.

Abbreviations of rules

Aniy: Aniyata (-rule).
 Adhik: Adhikaraṇasamatha (-rule).
 Nid.: Nidāna (-section).
 NP: Nissaggiya Pācittiya (-rule).
 Pār: Pārājika (-rule).
 Pāc: Pācittiya (-rule).
 Pd: Pāṭidesanīya (-rule).
 Sd: Saṅghādisesa (-rule).
 Sekh: Sekhiya (-rule).

Secondary Literature, etc.

(Abbreviations of unlisted Canonical Pāli works are as given in PED xi–xii.)

-a: aṭṭhakathā; preceded by the title abbreviation of the Canonical Pāli text, e.g. Ud-a.

BD: *Book of Discipline*; I.B. Horner, 1938–66.

Be: Burmese edition. Chaṭṭha Saṅgāyana ed. (VRI CD-ROM.)

BHSDG I & II: *Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Grammar and Dictionary I–II*, F. Edgerton, New Haven, 1953.

BMC I: *The Buddhist Monastic Code*; Thanissaro Bhikkhu, Metta Forest Monastery, California, 1996. (There are several editions, each with different pagination.)

BMC II: *The Buddhist Monastic Code II: The Khandhaka Rules*; Thānissaro Bhikkhu, 2001.

BMD: *Buddhist Monastic Discipline*, Charles S. Prebish, Delhi, 1996.

BPP: *The Bhikshu Pratimoksha Precepts from the Four-Part Vinaya of the Dharmagupta School*; Buddhist Text Translation Society, City of Ten Thousand Buddhas, California.

BSR: *Buddhist Studies Review*; UK.

Budsir: Royal Thai Tipiṭaka. Digital edition prepared by the Mahidol University, Bangkok, 1997.

BV: *Bhikṣuṇī-vinaya: Manual of Discipline for Buddhist Nuns*; G. Roth; Patna, 1970.

Ce: “Ceylon edition,” *Buddha Jayanti Tipiṭaka Series*, Colombo, Sri Lanka.

CP: *Collected Papers I–VII*; Norman, K.R. Oxford, 1990–2001.

CPD: *A Critical Pāli Dictionary*; V. Treckner etc, Copenhagen, started in 1924.

CPED: *Concise Pāli English Dictionary*; A.P. Buddhadatta, Colombo, 1958.

CSP: *Comparative Study of the Prātimokṣa*; W. Pachow, Santinekan, 1955.

Cv: Cullavagga.

Dhg: Dharmaguptaka.

Dickson: *The Pātimokkha, being the Buddhist Office of the Confession of Priests*, J.F. Dickson, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, New Series VIII, pp. 62–130, 1876.

DP: *A Dictionary of Pāli*; Margaret Cone, Oxford, 2001.

DPL: *Dictionary of Pāli Language*; Childers, London, 1874.

ed.: edition. eds.: editions.

Ee: European edition. Pāli Text Society (P.T.S.), Oxford.

Finot: *Le Prātimokṣasūtra des Sarvāstivādins*. L. Finot. Paris, 1914.

H: Horner; *Book of Discipline* (= BD; see above).

IP: *Introduction to Pāli*; A.K. Warder; Oxford, 1963.

JPTS: *Journal of the Pāli Text Society*; Oxford.

LC “Unpublished Gilgit Fragment of the Prātimokṣasūtra”; Lokesh Chandra, 1960, pp. 1–13.

Mā-L: Mahāsaṅghika-Lokottaravāda.

Mi Se: Mahidol University Siam edition of the Pātimokkha. (CD-ROM.)

Mm Se: Mahā Makuṭ Academy/Mahāmakuṭarājavidyāla Siam edition of the Pātimokkha as given in Ṇm.

ms.: manuscript.

mss.: manuscripts.

Mū: Mūlasarvāstivāda.

Mv: Mahāvagga.

MW: Monier Williams, M.; *Sanskrit-English Dictionary*; Oxford, 1899.

Ṇānamoli, Bhikkhu; *The Pātimokkha*, Bangkok, 1966.

Ṇd: Ṇānadassana, Bhikkhu. *Bhikkhu-Pātimokkham*, 1999.

Padabhājana: the “analysis of the line/word,” i.e., the old commentary enclosed within the Suttavibhaṅga, also called *padabhājanīya*

PED: *Pāli English Dictionary*; Rhys Davids and Stede; London, 1921–25.

PG: *A Pāli Grammar*, W. Geiger, Oxford, 1994.

Pm: Pātimokkha.


PrMo: Prātimokṣasūtra.

PrMoMā-L: *Prātimokṣasūtram of the Lokottaravādi-Mahāsaṅghika school*; Nathmal Taita, Patna, 1976.

- PrMoMū: *Mūlasarvāstivāda Prātimokṣasūtra*, A. C. Banerjee, 1977.
- PrMoSa: *Prātimokṣasūtra der Sarvāstivādins*, Teil II; Georg von Simson, Göttingen, 2000.
- RD & O: Rhys Davids and Oldenberg (in *Vinaya Texts*).
- Sa: Sarvāstivādin
- Skt: Sanskrit.
- Sp: *Samantapāsādikā Vinaya-aṭṭhakathā*.
- SPPS: *Selected Papers on Pāli Studies*; Oscar von Hinüber, Oxford, 1994.
- Syntax: *The Syntax of the Cases in the Pāli Nikāyas*; O. H. De A. Wijesekera, Colombo 1994.
- TP. *The Pātimokkha*; K. R. Norman and William Pruitt, Oxford, 2001.
- Vibh: Suttavibhaṅga.
- VINS: *Vedic Index of Names and Subjects*; A. A. Macdonnell & A. B. Keith; Delhi, 1982.

Pātimokkha Editions Consulted

Printed Sinhalese Editions

- BhPm 1: *Bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ*. (Kolomba demaṭagoda paḍiñci villorage joronis diyasda, Jayasūriyage donḍāvit appuhāmida, vatiga āracchige pakolis prerada.) 2419/1875. This is probably the oldest printed Pātimokkha edition in Sinhalese script. The serpent-shape paragraph marker called kuṇḍaliya, , which denotes the end of a section or rule in manuscripts, are still used in this edition. It gives some variant readings in footnotes. It is based on manuscripts used in the Siyam Nikāya. This is noticable as the readings which more often agree with the Mi and Mm Se readings than with the Burmese edition (Be) or Burmese origin Amarapura Nikāya editions (Um & UP Ce), e.g., Dm, Um & UP Ce read *uttari* in NP 3, etc., instead of *uttariṃ* which is used in the other editions (cf. the “Burmese” *evam-eva* against the “Thai” *evam-evam* in Nid; the “Burmese” *māyasmā/mā āyasmā* against the “Thai” *mā āyasmā* in Sd 10; and the “Burmese” *-cetāpannāni upakkhaṭāni* against Thai/Sinhalese *-cetāpanā/cetāpannā upakkhaṭā* in NP 9.)
- BhPm 2: *Bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ ceva bhikkhuṇipātimokkhaṃ*. W.S. Perera, 2439/1895. With a few exceptions, identical with BhPm 1.
- Um: *Ubhayaṃmātikāpālī* or *Bhikkhubhikkhunipātimokkha*. Edited by A.M. Vimalasāra thero and revised by Pandit M. Dharmaratna B.M.S. Colombo, 2457/1914. The title and readings in the text indicates that this is a Burmese origin text used in the Amarapura and/or Rāmañña Nikāya.
- D: *The Pātimokkha, being the Buddhist Office of the Confession of Priests*, Dickson, J.F. *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, New Series VIII pp. 62–130, 1876. A text based on the manuscripts found at the Malwatte Vihāra, which is the headquarters of the Siyamupālivaṃsa chapter of the Siam-nikāya.
- Ńd Ce: *Bhikkhu-Pātimokkhaṃ—Das Hauptregelwerk der Buddhistischen Bettelmönche*; Ñānadassana, Bhikkhu, Sri Lanka, 1999. Sinhalese Pālī text used by the Galduwa chapter of the Rāmañña Nikāya. The text is not identical with Ce Vibh and seems to have some Mm Se readings that perhaps are due to the typist using Mm Se for the original typing. Ńd Ce has not been used for v.l.l.; except for the section titles and conclusions.
- Ra: Pātimokkha edition as given in the Sri Lankan Vinaya-manual called the *Ratanārthasudanā-namvu-bhikṣubhikṣuṇī-prātimokṣavarṇanāva*, edited by Soṇuttara Jinaratana thera and Ratgama Pragnāśekhara, Colombo, 1946.
- UP: *Ubhaya Pratimokṣaya*; Rerukane Chandavimala thera; Pokuṇuwita, 1956. A Sri Lankan edition in use by the Amarapura Nikāya. Influenced by Burmese texts.

Burmese and Thai Printed or Digital Editions

- Dm: *Dve Mātikāpālī*. Burmese edition of both the *Bhikkhu-* and the *Bhikkhunī-pātimokkha* found preceding the text of the *Kaṅkhāvitaranī* in the Chaṭṭha Saṅgāyana ed. (As given in CSCD.) Unlike other editions, there are no v.l. given in the Be Pātimokkha.
- Mi Se: Mahidon Siam edition. The Pātimokkha version used by the Thai Mahānikāya that is found preceding Kkh in the Mahidon University Thai edition. (Mahidon CD-ROM.)
- Mm Se: Maha Makuṭ Siam edition of the Pātimokkha as given in Ńm. This is the version recited in the Thai Dhammayuttika-nikāya.

Suttavibhaṅga Editions

- Vibh indicates that the reading is from the rule in the Suttavibhaṅga, rather than from the Pātimokkha. There is no independent Ce and Ee Pātimokkha text.
- Vibh Be: Suttavibhaṅga edition of the Burmese Chaṭṭha Saṅgāyana edition.
- Vibh Ee: Suttavibhaṅga edition of the Pali Text Society, London.
- Vibh Ce: Suttavibhaṅga edition of the “Ceylon edition,” i.e., the Sri Lanka Buddha Jayanti Tipiṭaka Series.

Vibh Ee: Suttavibhaṅga of the European Pāli Text Society (PTS) edition.

Handwritten Sinhalese Manuscripts

For this edition several Sinhalese palm-leaf manuscripts have been consulted. They date from later than the mid 18th century, when the *upasampadā* was reinstated with the help of Siamese bhikkhus. Also one Khom script Siamese manuscript was consulted, but no manuscripts in other scripts. It would also be worthwhile to consult old Burmese and, if they exist, Lān Nā Pātimokkha manuscripts, but I have no command of the scripts yet.

C is the abbreviation used for the *Bhikkhu Pātimokkha Pāli* manuscript. National Museum Library Manuscript 6 E 9. No. 10 in De Silva's *Catalogue of the National Museum Library*. National Museum, Sir Marcus Fernando Mawatha, Colombo 7.

This is probably an older Pātimokkha manuscript than the other Pātimokkha in this library (no. 56 in De Silva's catalogue, copied in 1855) as it has yellowish-brown leaves, while the leaves of the latter are white. Probably it is an 18th century manuscript. It has clear, large handwriting and has nice drawings at start (lotuses) and the end (lions spitting fire). It has a plain hardwood cover.

In general this is a good manuscript with no omissions and few scribal errors.

The orthographic peculiarities of this manuscript are that the *ru* (රු) and *rū* (රූ) characters (as in *rūpa-*, *rūlha* / *ruḷha*) mostly appear undistinguishable as *ru* (රු). Sometimes *l* (ළ) comes in the place of *ḷ* (ḷ, e.g., *kabala*) and once vice versa (e.g., *aceḷaka-*). A few times *n* comes in the place of *ṇ*, i.e., *samanabhatta* at Pāc 32 and *samanuddeso* at Pāc 70. Instead of the nasal *ṇ* (e.g., in *saṅgha*), the niggahita (◌◌) is used (*saṃgha*.) The scribe has an unusual (dialect?) way of writing the *ī* and *ḷ* characters.

W. The last manuscript is almost identical with a *Pātimokkha* manuscript found in a plain hardwood cover in the collection of the Watārakapansala in the Malwatta Vihāra complex in Kandy, which is abbreviated as W. On the first leaf it says: *Watārakapansala*. There is one leaf at the end which states the ordination of two monks and their *upajjhāyas* and *kammācāriyas*, one called Pūṇḍulupota Revata with Moratoṭṭa Dhammakkhanda nāyaka as *upajjhāya*, the other Waṭaraka Sobhita with Parakumbure Wipassī Anunāyaka as *upajjhāya*. The date of ordination is the Wesak full moon in the year 2338 of the Buddha era which corresponds to 1795 CE. At the end of a Pātimokkha manuscript found in the Sirimalwattapansala in Malwatta and the Potgulvihāra in Mānikhina there is a similar leaf giving the ordination date of a monk and further details. It is well possible that in Malwatta *Pātimokkhas* manuscripts were given to newly ordained monks as a *upasampadā* present. The manuscript is a well written manuscript with few mistakes and clear writing.

G is the abbreviation used for the manuscript found in a plain hardwood cover in the small collection of the Ganoruwa Rājamahāvihāra at Ganoruwa near Perādeniya. The temple is connected to Malwatta. The manuscript can not be dated, but appears to be late 18th or early 19th century. It clearly originates from a different lineage than the standard Malwatta manuscripts as it contains different readings often corresponding to the ones found in the Mi Se and Mm editions. Most significant is the Siamese reading *pātimokkha* instead of *pātimokkha*. Moreover, it contains a *Sikkhāpada-uddāna* after the *Pātimokkha* which I have not found in any manuscripts in Malwatta or elsewhere. However, it is found attached to a few Khom script Pātimokkha manuscripts found in French collections. It appears to be a copy of a Siamese Khom script manuscript brought by Siamese monks in the 18th century. It contains the same Sekhiya section chapter titles as the Khom script *Bhikkhupātimokkha* manuscript mentioned in *Catalogue of Cambodian and Burmese Pāli Manuscripts* (C.E. Godakumbara, the Royal Library, Copenhagen, 1983) and the Siamese manuscript mentioned in the Catalogue of Pāli manuscripts found in the Vijayasundara (see next entry). It is written in a clear hand. There appear to be some "corrections" to make the text correspond to other Sinhalese manuscripts.

V is the abbreviation used for the Siamese *Brah̃ Pātimokkham* manuscript in the Vijayasundara Purāṇa-vihāra in Asgiriya, Kandy. It has been described by Jacqueline Filliozat in the article "Catalogue of the Pāli Manuscript Collection in Texts in Burmese & Siamese script kept in the Library of the Vijayasundarārāma,"

Asgiriya", JPTS XXI (1995), pp. 135–191. Filliozat assigned it with the reference Asgiriya Siamese 9. Although the manuscript has no cover, it has been well preserved. It is clearly written, but has not been properly checked and corrected. Thus, there are a few uncorrected copyist mistakes, e.g., *marañṇaṃ* instead of *marañavaṇṇaṃ* in Pār 3. Throughout the text there consistently are some readings which no other MSS have, e.g., *tatrīdam*, *gīlāna*, *karaniya*.

Several readings in this manuscript are also found in G, e.g., *na sūpaṃ vā byāñjanaṃ vā odanaṃ vā* in Sekh 37, and *paripaṇhi-* in Pāc 71. Because these readings are not found in other Sinhalese MSS the two manuscripts seem to have a common ancestry.

P is the abbreviation used for the Perādeniya University Library (Perādeniya) manuscript, i.e., the second *Pātimokkha* MS in Ms 277637 called *Vinayagaṇṭhi* which contains various texts (*Mūlasikkha*, *Kammavācā*, etc.) in one bundle. (Plain wooden cover with V.O.C. coin dated 1751.) This manuscript, although written with an elegant and clear handwriting, has quite a few scribal errors such as parts of rules being forgotten and was not found worthwhile to be used, however, it confirms the readings (e.g., Pd 3: *apanimantito* instead of *animantito*, Sekh 28) of the National Museum Library manuscript and they are clearly originating from a common source. A few times this manuscript has been mentioned to confirm a reading in another manuscript or text. The abbreviation is P.

Other Editions

TP: The Ee Pātimokkha text by W. Pruitt in TP has not been used for v.l.l. except once, since it is not based on original manuscripts, but mostly on Be and also the other modern editions.

One of the reasons for making this new edition of the *Pātimokkha* was because it was felt that the Norman/Pruitt PTS edition was overly relying on the Burmese Sixth Council edition—which is not a coincidence as Pruitt is connected to a Burmese Buddhist meditation tradition—and did not take the printed Sri Lankan and Thai editions into sufficient consideration. Further, no palm-leaf manuscripts at all were consulted for the PTS edition.

Editions of Other Pāli Texts Quoted

In general the Ee and Be editions have been used in quotations of other Pāli texts in the sections of the Introduction and in the word-analysis sections, however, the punctuation has often been adapted and the best readings have been chosen, when having done the latter it normally has been indicated. When listing variant readings of Pātimokkha rules from the Suttavibhaṅga or the Commentaries, the edition that is their source is given.

Pg: *Bhikkhupātimokkhagaṇṭhi* by Ñāṇakitti Thera, Chiang Mai, Siam, 15th CE. Editor: Ven. Kalage Guṇaratana [Disciple of Vidyodaya Pariveṇādhpati Gaṇācāriya Śrī Sumaṅgala], Sri Lanka. 2433/1889. This explanation of difficult and obscure (*gaṇṭhi*) words and passages in the Pātimokkha was written by the grammarian Ñāṇakitti thera who lived in Chiang Mai, Lān Nā Kingdom, in Northern Siam/Thailand in the 15th century and wrote several other Pāli texts.² This text has occasionally been checked.

Bhikṣuprātimokṣa-padārtha published in *Sanna Sahita Bhikṣu Bhikṣuṇi Prātimokṣa Dekka* by Sugunaśāra Thera, published in Colombo in 1924. This is the medieval Sinhalese word by word translation of the Bhikkhupātimokkha called *Bhikkhupātimokkha-padārtha* or *Bhikṣuprātimokṣa-sannaya*. Its author and exact time of composition are unknown. According to Nevill,³ it seems to be an ancient work written in abtruse and classical language; Nevill I 115. That it is ancient seems confirmed by the fact that in a few manuscripts it is supplemented with the *Bhikkhunīpātimokkha-padārtha* (see Nevill I 154) and this suggests that both might have been written at a time that the *Bhikkhunīpātimokkha* was still used because bhikkhunīs still existed. I have consulted the edition of Sugunaśāra Thera, which seems to be identical with the manuscript found in the

² See Hinüber, 1996, § 379 and Hinüber 2000.

³ *Catalogue of the Hugh Nevill Collection of Sinhalese Manuscripts in the British Library*, 7 vols.; K.D. Somadasa, London, 1987 - 95.

Watāraka Pansala in Malwatta and the one in the Peradeniya University library. Suguṇasāra's edition is accompanied by a the Pātimokkha text, but judging from the section conclusions, for which I have consulted this text, he has reconstructed the section conclusions in accordance with the *sanna*.

Prātimokṣasūtras

Some readings from the Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit and Buddhist Sanskrit Prātimokṣasūtras⁴ have also been mentioned if they can shed light on the original Pāli reading.

The texts used are:

The Mahāsaṅghika-Lokuttaravādin Prātimokṣasūtra, preserved on palm-leaves in an 11th century script, was discovered almost intact by the Indian bhikkhu Rāhula Sāṅskṛtyāyana in the Śha-lu monastery (or, more likely, the near-by Śha-lu-ri-phug monastery; see BV XIX-XX) in Tibet in the 1930s and edited by Taita. Many of the rules are quoted (and re-edited) by Roth in Bhikṣuṇī-Vinaya (BV), an edition of the Bhikṣuṇī Vinaya, which includes what is corresponding to the Pāli Bhikkhunī Vibhaṅga, of the Ārya-Mahasaṅghika-lokottaravādin school. The manuscript was found in the same place by bhikkhu Rāhula Sāṅskṛtyāyana.

Two incomplete (i.e., damaged) Mūlasarvāstivādin Prātimokṣasūtra manuscripts, preserved on birchbark and in a 5–6th century script, were discovered among the manuscripts found in a casket in an ancient stūpa in Gilgit in Kashmir in the 1940s. They were edited by A.C. Banerjee and L. Chandra.⁵

An incomplete Sarvāstivādin Prātimokṣasūtra was found by the French Pelliot expedition in the ruins of Douldour-aqour in Koutcha in the desert of Central Asia in the 1910s and edited by L. Finot. A new and almost complete edition of the Sarvāstivādin Prātimokṣasūtra was made by Georg von Simson and published in 2000. It is based on many manuscript fragmentars, including the fragments that Finot used, that were found in the desert oasis of Central Asia by the European expeditions in the early 20th century. Valentina Rosen also quotes Sarvāstivādin Prātimokṣa rules with her translation of the Sarvāstivādin Vinayavibhaṅga⁶.

If there are variant readings in the various Pāli editions then the reading that is supported by the Prātimokṣasūtras is probably the authentic one. This is because this common reading probably antedates the schisms giving rise to the various Buddhist schools, which changed the language of the Patimokkha to Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit and Buddhist Sanskrit. An example is the Ce Vibh reading in Pār 4: "*ajānam-evāhaṃ āvuso*" while other editions have "*ajānam-evam āvuso*." The former reading is supported by the Prātimokṣasūtras as, for example, the Mahāsaṅghika-Lokottaravādin version has: "*ajānnan-evāham-āyusmante*."

⁴ For some more information on the Prātimokṣasūtras see: *A Comparative Study of the Prātimokṣa* by W. Pachow; *Buddhist Monastic Discipline* by C. Prebish; and *The Pātimokkha, 227 fundamental rules of a bhikkhu* (pp. 100–119 of the 1966 edition).

⁵ Another complete Mūlasarvāstivāda Prātimokṣasūtra manuscript, now in the collection of the Nor bu lin ka monastery in Tibet, has been discovered recently. Haiyan Hu-von Hinüber is, or was, working on an edition of it; see her article "Some Remarks on the Sanskrit Manuscript of the Mūlasarvāstivāda-Prātimokṣasūtra found in Tibet," Marburg, 2006.

⁶ *Der Vinayavibhaṅga zum Bhikṣu Prātimokṣa der Sarvāstivādin*; Berlin, 1959.

Introduction

This work was originally intended to be a revision of Maurice Walshe's "Supplement to Rune Johansons' *Pāli Texts for Beginners*," an elementary word by word translation of the Pāli Pātimokkha similar to Johansons' work. Only a few photocopies of this work exist. Walshe's work was hand-typed and contains some inconsistencies and errors. In the epilogue Walshe calls his work "a rapid attempt" and I thought that it would be useful to make an improved version of Walshe's work. However, while doing so I deviated so much from it in so many ways that it would be improper to call this Walshe's work. The lay-out is different, and a lot of additional information such as explanations from the commentaries, verbal roots and variant readings, etc. have been added. I have given new explanations of words, etc and also made new translations of the Pāli, whereas Walshe usually gives Ñāṇamoli's translation.

In the translations of the rules the emphasis generally tends to be more on the side of literalness (off course, within the limits of the English language) than on fluency in order to show the style and syntax of Pāli language to students of Pāli. For example, in English a sentence like this: "By a bhikkhu, who is having a hut built, ... [that hut] is to be built according to the measure." (= Sd 6) does not sound nice, however, when it is rendered in another way, such as: "A bhikkhu who is having a hut built, is to have it built according to the measure," the syntax and meaning of the Pāli sentence is lost as the Pāli states that the hut is "to be caused to be made" according to the measure by the bhikkhu who is making it. The reader can consult other translations of the Pātimokkha if a more fluent translation is desired.

Sometimes it has been impossible or difficult to give one single definitive interpretation and translation of a word (especially for compounds) or a passage found in the rules. The different possible interpretations in the rule-analysis sections have been listed so that the reader can judge for himself. It is useful to keep in mind the observation by Dr. Norman (see note on *alamariya* at Pār 4) that it is almost certain that sometimes various different interpretations for one Pāli word, such as *ariyasacca*, were deliberately intended and those who used the word were conscious of all meanings simultaneously.

There are some minor differences among the various editions of the Pātimokkha with regards in the spelling of words and these have all been noted as variant readings. For the given Pāli text of the Pātimokkha I have chosen the readings that I feel are the most authentic ones and this Pāli text is therefore not identical with any other existent Pātimokkha edition. Parts of the corresponding rules from the Prātimokṣasūtras of other early Buddhist schools are also given when they can shed light on the correct Pāli readings.

More detailed information on the application, etc. of the rules contained in the Pātimokkha can be found in *The Buddhist Monastic Code* by Ṭhānissaro Bhikkhu.

This work has been mainly intended for bhikkhus who study and recite the Pātimokkha, but it could also be of interest to Pāli scholars and translators or anyone who is learning Pāli.

Several bhikkhus helped me with this work in the form of proof-reading, giving suggestions, and helping with the formatting, etc. In particular I would like to thank Ven. Vanaratana Ānanda thera, Ven. Ānandajoti Bhikkhu, Ven. S. Anālayo, Ven. Visārado and Ven. Brahmāli Bhikkhu for their kind help and assistance with this work.

May this work help to further the understanding and practice of the Pātimokkha rules.

Bhikkhu Ñāṇatusita
Forest Hermitage
Kandy

The Recitation of the Pātimokkha

In the Uposathakkhandhaka of the Mahāvagga, Mv II/Vin I 101–136, the rules and regulations regarding the recitation of the Pātimokkha are given. (They are conveniently listed in BMC II chapter 15.) Many of these regulations are included in the *pubbakaraṇa-pubbakicca* summary recited before the Pātimokkha recitation; see [below](#).

The Buddha allowed bhikkhus to gather together on the fourteenth or fifteenth, and eighth day of the half-month to speak Dhamma, but later amended this to a (legal) act of Uposatha consisting of the recitation of the Pātimokkha; Mv II 2,1/Vin I 102. The Pātimokkha can not be formally recited on any day but only on the Uposatha-day once in a half-month (*pakkha*); Mv II 4,2/Vin I 104.

There are two Uposatha days: the fourteenth and the fifteenth; Mv II 14,1/Vin I 111. Unless it for the sake of unity or unanimity of the community (*saṅghasamaggī*) the Uposatha should not be done on a non-Uposatha day; Mv II 36,4/Vin I 136 & Mv X 5,14/Vin I 357. This type of Uposatha is called a *sāmaggi-uposatha* in the Parivāra; Vin V 123.

There are five ways of reciting the Pātimokkha; see Mv II 15,1/Vin I 112 and Kkh 3/Sp 1057. The fifth one, the recitation in breadth (or extensive-recitation) (*vitthāruddesa*) is the one in which all the rule-sections are recited and is the normal one. The other four are recitations in brief that can be done in exceptional cases of danger; Mv II 15, 3–4.⁷ This recitation in brief is also allowed in case none of the bhikkhus in a monastery knows the Pātimokkha and a bhikkhu has to be sent to another monastery to learn the Pātimokkha but is unable to learn it in full before returning; see Mv II 17,5/Vin I 116 & Mv II 21,3–4/119–20.

In the first brief recitation only the Nidāna section is recited and the other sections are just announced, *anussāvita*, but not recited. In the second brief recitation only the Nidāna and the Pārājika section are recited, the rest is just announced. In the third brief recitation the first three sections are recited. In the fourth brief recitation the first four sections are recited while the other sections are just announced. The first four brief recitations can be done only in case of danger. It is an offence of wrong doing, *dukkata*, to recite the Pātimokkha in brief when there is no danger; Mv II 15, 4/Vin I 112–113.

The Pātimokkha is recited by one bhikkhu, the *pātimokkhuddesaka*: the “reciter of the Pātimokkha,” who has been appointed by the senior bhikkhu, Mv II 16,9/Vin I 115. See the [note](#) on the invitation by the elder. The reciter is preferably the most senior bhikkhu, but if he is unable to recite it then another competent bhikkhu can be appointed by him to do the recitation. If there is no bhikkhu who can recite the Pātimokkha in a residence then one bhikkhu has to be sent elsewhere to master it from a Pātimokkha reciter; Mv II 17,5/Vin I 116. This shows that monks used to recite the Pātimokkha together in order to learn it. Nowadays, however, bhikkhus learn the Pātimokkha from textbooks.

In Sri Lanka the Pātimokkha is often recited from the textbook, but in some strict monasteries there are bhikkhus who can recite it by heart. In Thailand and Burma it is always recited by heart; see Ñm 1969 pp.51–52. Until the Pāli Canon was written down there were no books and all of the Pāli Canon was recited by heart so there is no rule in the Vinaya that deals with the recitation from a book. It is not clear whether in other traditions the Prātimokṣasūtra is (or was) recited by heart, but a reciter is appointed; see Wu Yin, 2001, p.113.

In some monasteries in southern Burma the *ñatti*-part of the Nidāna is recited in Pāli, while the rest of the Nidāna and the Pātimokkha is recited in Burmese. In Vin I 102 the Nidāna is introduced in the usual way for a *ñattikamma* (a legal act with a announcement): “... bhikkhunā *ñāpetabbo*:” The Parivāra, (Vin V 222) lists the *uposathakamma* as a *ñattikamma*. The Sp commentary (Sp 1409–10) on this passage explains that the initial part of the Nidāna up to “... *uposathaṃ kareyya*.” is the *ñatti* of the *uposathakamma*. This part is titled

⁷ (1) A king obstruction [C: a king arrives], (2) a robber obstruction [C: robbers come], (3) a fire obstruction [C: a forest fire approaches from outside the monastery, or a fire breaks out in the monastery], (4) a water obstruction [C: heavy rain, a flood], (5) a human being obstruction [C: large numbers of people come], (6) a non-human being obstruction [C: a spirit possesses one of the bhikkhus], (7) a beast obstruction [C: a fierce beast, such as a tiger, comes], (8) a serpent obstruction [C: a poisonous animal bites a bhikkhu], (9) a life obstruction [C: a bhikkhu falls ill or dies; hostile people come with the intent of killing or grabbing hold of a bhikkhu], (10) a celibacy obstruction [C: people catch hold of one or more bhikkhus with intent of making them fall from celibacy]. (Adapted from BMC II.)

ñattikamma in Mi Se and Ñd Ce.

This might be the reason why in some monasteries in Burma the Pātimokkha is recited in Burmese, while the *ñatti* part of the Nidāna is done in Pāli. However, from the statement in the Nidāna (*yāvatiyaṃ anussāviyamāne*) and from the offence-section-conclusions in the Pātimokkha (*“Kacci’ttha ... dhārayāmi.”*) it appears that there are three *anussāvanas*, suggesting that the Pātimokkha is a *ñatticatutthakamma*: “a (legal) act of a motion (and an announcement) as the fourth”; see Vin I 56 & 317f. The Kkh commentary on the word *anussāvita* in the Nidāna also indicates that the announcement at the end of the sections of offences is a triple announcement, see [Nidāna conclusion](#).

The *anussāvanas* in the Pātimokkha section-conclusions are not in the exact form that they are in other *saṅghakammas* such as the *upasampadākamma*, Mv I 76, 11–12, in which any bhikkhu who does not agree with the *kamma* is requested to speak up and object. However, in the *uposathakamma* there is a triple request after each section of offences asking about the purity of the participants and stating that this purity is indicated through the silence of the participating bhikkhus. Although it is not explicitly stated, any bhikkhu can, in principle, speak up and object and suspend the Pātimokkha for another bhikkhu (*pātimokkhaṭṭhapana*) if he believes that the other bhikkhu is impure; see [Suspending the Pātimokkha](#).

This right of any participating bhikkhu to make an objection, *paṭikkosana*, to any *saṅghakamma*, whether it is a (legal) act of a motion (followed by an announcement) as the second (*ñattidutiyakamma*), or a (legal) act of a motion (and an announcement) as the fourth (i.e., one motion followed by three announcements, *ñatticatutthakamma*), is one of the three factors of a “legal act (done) in unity,” *samaggakamma*; see note on *samagga* at [Sd 10](#).

Before the *ñatti* the reciter recites three times: *“Namo tassa bhagavato arahato sammāsambuddhassa.”*

When the Pātimokkha is recited meticulous attention is paid by the reciter as well as the other bhikkhus who are present that no word is omitted and that the pronunciation of every word and syllable is correct. This precision is due to an influential interpretation by the commentator Ācariya Buddhaghosa of a passage in the Parivāra:

Sp 1399: “One does not do at all the proclamation, *anussāvana*, for the *kammavācā*. For a ‘*ñattidutiyakamma*’ one only establishes the motion (*ñatti*). ... (And so for a *ñatticatutthakamma*.) ... Also for one who, having established the motion and is proclaiming one *kammavācā* (but) leaves out one syllable or makes a word badly pronounced, this too is omitting the proclamation. ...”

The commentary, Sp 1399–400, continues to discuss in great length the various ways this is done. A translation and discussion of this commentary and its subcommentaries can be found in the article called “Buddhist Law and the Phonetics of Pāli” by Hinüber; in SPPS 198–232 (See also CP IV 59 f.). See also Sp 1202 on Cv V 3,1–2.

In the Kammavagga of the Parivāra, the chapter that deals with *saṅghakammas* and *kammavācās*, formulas for legal actions, it is said that one of the five ways a *kammavācā* is invalid as to subsequent announcement, *anussāvana*, is the omission of the *anussāvana*, “*anussāvanam hāpeti*”; Vin V 221. (Not “garbling of the recitation” as Hinüber renders in the article mentioned above. The reading *anussāvana* of Sp 1399 has been followed here rather than the reading *sāvana* of Ee Vin V 221. The *sāvana* is the proclamation of the whole *kammavācā* including the *ñatti*, motion, and the *anussāvana*, which follows the *ñatti*.)

The Parivāra, being a structured summary of the Vinaya, is referring back to the rule in Vin I 317–319 that for the validity of a (legal) act of a motion (followed by an announcement) as the second (*ñattidutiyakamma*) and a (legal) act of a motion (and an announcement) as the fourth (i.e., one motion followed by three announcements, *ñatticatutthakamma*), neither the *ñatti* nor (any of) the *anussāvana*(s) can be omitted; Mv IX 3,3–4. (The *ñatti* and the *anussāvana*(s) also have to be in the right order; Mv IX 3, 7–8. This corresponds to the Parivāra’s “*pacchā ñattiṃ ṭhapeti*”: “He establishes the motion afterwards.” and “*akāle sāveti*”: “he announces at the wrong time.”)

Ācariya Buddhaghosa, however, interprets the Parivāra regulation to also include omissions of syllables and mispronunciation of words. This goes beyond what is laid down in the Vinaya and some argue that it is perfectly legal to do legal acts in one’s own language and would even be better since the intention of the motions and announcements is to make proceedings known to the participants.

Hinüber, SPPS 228, suggests that the great care with which *kammavācās* are to be recited is due to the influence of the accuracy in the recitation of Vedic texts by brahmins, particularly as many followers of the Buddha were brahmins: "... in the same way as the magical effect of Vedic mantras is guaranteed only if not even the slightest mistake has been made in pronouncing them, likewise the validity of *kammavācās* is established in Buddhist Law by exactly the same accuracy in pronunciation. Thus a rule originally based on magical and ritualistic concepts has been turned into a legalistic one in Buddhism."⁸

However, it rather shows the brahminical influence on Buddhist Law as found in the Vinaya commentaries rather than the Vinaya itself since these strict rules regarding pronunciation are only found in the commentaries.

If the early followers of the Buddha were indeed so scrupulous in preserving the correct pronunciation then the *kammavācās* would still be done in exactly the same dialects that the Buddha spoke and this contradicts Hinüber's own thesis that Pāli is probably a Western Indian dialect rather than the dialect of the Māgadhi region of North-Eastern India; see "The Oldest Literary Language of Buddhism," SPPS 177–194. (Norman in the article "The dialects in which the Buddha preached," CP II 128–46 [see also CP IV 100 + 105, does not agree with this and suggests that Pāli probably originated in Magadha in a region close to the border with Kāliṅga—nowadays called Orissa in Eastern India—where a dialect with Western features similar to Pāli was used.)

Another probable reason why Ācariya Buddhaghosa put so much emphasis on the correct pronunciation was to preserve the Pāli tradition and try to maintain its authenticity over other traditions that switched over to Sanskrit (Sa, Mū) or Hybrid Sanskrit (Mā-L) as Canonical languages. Nevertheless, what these other Buddhist traditions appears not to be legally invalid according to the Canonical Vinaya.

In Thai monasteries one bhikkhu is appointed to check the recitation with the help of a textbook. The bhikkhu who checks tells the reciter when he makes a mistake, or forgets something, so that he recites correctly. In Burma and Sri Lanka any of the participating bhikkhus can correct the reciter and usually no bhikkhu is appointed to check. The recitation can take less than forty-five minutes if it is chanted very fast, but a slower recitation of one hour is easier to follow. The Pātimokkha reciter should make himself audible to the other participating bhikkhus and it is a wrong-doing to deliberately make oneself not heard, Mv II 16,6/Vin I 115 (see next paragraph). The Pātimokkha should not be recited to an assembly that contains householders, Mv II 16,8/Vin I 115, and to any other type of person not fully admitted into the Saṅgha, i.e., any non-bhikkhu, doing so entails an offence of wrong-doing (*dukkaṭa*); Mv II 36/Vin I 135–36.

There is no such thing as a group-recitation of the Pātimokkha at the Upasatha during which all bhikkhus recite the Pātimokkha together; see Nid: "*pātimokkhaṃ uddisissāmi*" and the commentary (Kkh 21–22) to it.

The phrase "... bhikkhū ... pātimokkhaṃ uddisanti ..." in the Upasathakhandhaka could give the impression that bhikkhus recited together. However, the usage of *uddisanti* might be due to lack of a better expression. It is more convenient to say that the bhikkhus recited the Pātimokkha rather than saying that one bhikkhu recites the Pātimokkha before the assembly of bhikkhus. When it is said "*saṅgho pātimokkhaṃ uddiseyya*" or "*bhikkhū pātimokkhaṃ uddisanti*" it seems that it is to be understood as a stock phrase implying that the bhikkhus assemble together and one of them recites while the rest listens; e.g. Mv II 16,6/Vin I 115: "... chabbaggiyā bhikkhū saṅghamajjhe pātimokkhaṃ uddissamānā sañcicca na sāventi ... na ... pātimokkhuddesakena sañcicca na sāvetabbaṃ.": "When the Pātimokkha was being recited by the group of six bhikkhus in the midst of the community they deliberately caused (the others bhikkhus) not to hear ... the Pātimokkha-reciter should not deliberately cause (some or all) not to hear (it).." Cf. Mv II 16,7, where *pātimokkhuddesako* is in the singular, and "*Devadatto pātimokkhaṃ uddisati*." at Mv II 16,8.

With reference to the Tibetan tradition Thubten Kalsang Rimpoche in his article "Varśāvāsa in Tibet" (in *Vassāvāsa* 1965) p.74 writes (referring to the entry of the rains): "When the bell is rung on that day, all the bhikṣhus who are going to enter the Retreat in a gompā, put on their three robes and taking their *āsanas*

⁸ See also the article "Pali Sajjhāya and Sanskrit Svādhyāya" by M. Palihawadana, 1997, p.493–515, esp. p.495 and 502. For the way chanting had to be done in the brahminical tradition see Chandyogya Upaniṣad II, 22: "All the vowels should be pronounced resonant and strong ... All the spirants should be pronounced well open without being slurred over, without being elided. ... All the consonants should be pronounced slowly, without merging them together."

(sitting cloth) with them, they enter the *sīmā* (boundary hall) to listen to the recitation of the Prātimokṣa Rules. These are recited in Tibetan, the language of the people and are therefore well understood and the reciting is done with due reference taking two or three hours since it is thought most improper and irrelevant to rush through them.”⁹

The Language of the Pātimokkha

The language of the Pātimokkha-rules is different from the usual Suttanta language. Sometimes it is somewhat elevated language, which probably had its origin in ancient Indian secular Law. When the Pātimokkha rules were made it might have been the first time in India that legal rules were formulated in such a concise, yet comprehensive, manner and this might be the reason that the syntax and language in the longer rules can be somewhat awkward; e.g. Pār 4, Sd 6 & 7, Pāc 33, 40, and 73. Some expressions like *manussa-viggaha* in Pār 3 & Pāc 7, and *iticcittamana* in Pār 3, are rare or not existent elsewhere in the Pāli Canon; see “Buddhist Law According to the Theravāda-Vinaya” p.13. In pp. 43–44 of this article Hinüber writes that once the elaborate law-system underlying Buddhist legal texts has been thoroughly researched the “Buddhist, and perhaps particularly Theravāda law, might stand as a major Indian contribution to culture in general.”

Roth, 1980, pp.90–92, writes that in the language, in the terminology of the titles of disciplinary groups, and in the rule-formulation, there is a close affinity between the Mahāsaṅghika-Lokottaravādin (Mā-L) and the Theravādin (Thv) Pātimokkha versions on one side and between the Sa and Mū versions on the other side. The Sa and Mū schools both used Sanskrit while the Mahāsaṅghikas and Theravādins both used Prākritis. Like Hinüber he also suggests that the language of the Thv and Mā-L Pātimokkha versions is the elevated language of lawgivers and therefore is supra-regional, i.e., there are no traces of particular local dialects such as Māgadhisms (except *bhikkhave* and *bhante*).

It is difficult to agree with Roth about the close affinity between the Thv and Mā-L versions of the Pātimokkha with respects the rule-formulation. Sometimes the Mā-L rules are formulated in a different way than the Thv equivalents, while the Sarvāstivādin (Sa) equivalent is closer to the Thv; e.g. the Sa Pāc 69 closely agrees in formulation with the Thv Pāc 76, but the Mā-L rule 75, Dhg rule 80, and Mū rule 69 are more extensive; see Sd 8 note on *paṭiṭṭhāti*.

⁹ It is sometimes said that the members of different early Buddhist schools would do the Uposatha together (e.g., Gethin, 1998, pp.50–54. Cf. BMC II appendix V b: *saṃvāsa*), but this is based on a misunderstanding. Mahāyāna bhikkhus could join in for the Uposatha with their non-Mahāyāna fellow-bhikkhus staying in the same monastery since they belonged to the same Śrāvakayāna school, i.e., they had the same upsampadā lineage. The term “Śrāvakayāna” means “the vehicle of disciples.” This was the original designation of the Mahāyanists for the non-Mahāyāna schools. Later the more polemical and derogatory term *Hīnayāna* also came to be used by some Mahāyānists but not by all. Before the term Mahāyāna came in vogue the school was more appropriately called “Bodhisattvayāna”; see Skilling 2003 p.141f.; Akira, 1990, pp.256–58; Gethin, 1998, p.224.)

A separate Mahāyāna *upasampadā* lineage does not exist. The Mahāyāna bodhisattva vows are taken independently of the *upasampadā* in one of the Śrāvakayāna schools. The main difference between the Mahāyāna and Śrāvakayāna schools is one of aim. The 8th century Chinese pilgrim Śramaṇa Yijing wrote: “Among the four schools there is no definite classification as to which ones should be put under Mahāyāna and which ones under Hīnayāna ... Through an examination of their practices, we see no differences in their disciplinary rules and restrictions. Both of them classify the Vinaya rules into five sections and practice the four noble truths. Those who worship bodhisattvas and read Mahāyāna scriptures are named Mahāyānists, and those who do not do so are called Hīnayānists.”

Nowadays all Tibetan bhikkhus, who all receive *upadampadā* in the Mūlasarvāstivādin Śrāvakayāna school and follow the Vinaya scriptures of that tradition, take the Mahāyāna vows; so do all Chinese bhikkhus who all follow the Dharmaguptaka tradition. However, in India the bhikkhus following the Mahāyāna tradition were a minority and most bhikkhus followed the teachings of the Śrāvakayāna traditions. The early Chinese pilgrims found mixed communities of Mahāyāna and Śrāvakayāna bhikkhus in some of the monasteries they visited. See Skilling 2003 p.146; Akira, 1990, pp.244 & 256–58; Gethin, 1998, pp.88 f., 238, 260.

These Mahāyāna and Śrāvakayāna bhikkhus could do the Pātimokkha together since they took *upasampadā* in the same Śrāvakayāna schools and followed the same Vinaya. (Nowadays there are also bhikkhus in Theravādin monasteries who are known to have taken up the Bodhisattva vows besides their Theravādin monastic vows.)

It is unlikely, however, that the bhikkhus of different schools such as Theravādin bhikkhus and Sarvāstivādin bhikkhus would do the Uposatha together. From the viewpoint of Theravāda Vinaya those bhikkhus should be regarded as *nānasamvāsa*, of a different communion; for an explanation of this term, see BMC II appendix V b. The scriptures of the schools are in different languages (Prākritis & Sanskrit) and are arranged in different ways and this—besides having different interpretations of the Dhamma and Vinaya—also would not have facilitated interaction.

My conclusion is that the Sa, and also the Mū version, in terms of formulation—but not in language—is closer to the Pāli than the Mā-L version. The Mā-L rules are more extensive, have additional words or phrases, which the Pāli and Sa versions do not have.

This observation is based on a cursory comparison of the Pācittiya rule section in the Prātimokṣas of the Mā-L, Sa (and Mū), and Thv schools:

- Mā-L Pāc 4 is more extensive than Thv Pāc 63 and Sa (and Mū) Pāc 4;
- Mā-L Pāc 17 is more extensive than Thv Pāc 16 and Sa (and Mū) Pāc 17;
- Mā-L Pāc 38 is more extensive than Thv Pāc 34 and Sa (and Mū) Pāc 33;
- Mā-L Pāc 43 is more extensive than Thv Pāc 79 and Sa (and Mū) Pāc 53 (54 in PrMoSa p.);
- Mā-L Pāc 46 is more extensive than Thv Pāc 69 and Sa (and Mū) Pāc 56;
- Mā-L Pāc 65 is more extensive than Thv Pāc 55 and Sa (and Mū) Pāc 66;
- Mā-L Pāc 73 is more extensive than Thv Pāc 10 and Sa (and Mū) Pāc 73¹⁰;
- Mā-L Pāc 75 and Mū 69 are more extensive than Thv Pāc 76 and Sa (and Mū) Pāc 69;

On the other hand the Mā-L Pāc 47 and Sa and Mū Pāc 57 all use *antarāyikā kāmā* instead *antarāyika dhammā* of Thv Pāc 79.

The Nidāna of the Mā-L version, quoted in the [note](#) on *pārisuddhi* and *chanda*, has a *ñattidutiyakamma* instead of the *ñatti* of other schools.

In Sd 1 the Mā-L version employs the locative *visṣṭhīye* while the Mū, Sa, and Thv employ the nominative *-visṣṭhi*, *-visargo*, and *-visatṭhi*.

In Sd 10–11 the Mā-L version is more extensive than the Thv and Sa versions.

The fact that the rule-formulations of the Prātimokṣas of the Mū, Sa, and Thv schools are similar agrees with the observations of Frauwallner who argues in *The Earliest Vinaya* that in opposition to the quite different Mā-L Vinaya, the Vinayas of the Dhg, Mhs, Sa, and the Thv schools appear close to each other due to going back to the same basic text: the *Vinaya* the missionaries of Aśoka brought with them when they founded communities in distant areas. This is, according to Frauwallner, the Vinaya current in about 250 BCE in the region of Vidiśa.¹¹

¹⁰ The Chinese translation of the PrMoSa Pāc 73 and the v.l. are in accordance with Mā-L; see Finot 60.

¹¹ In chapter 1; esp. pp. 2, 11, and 23 of *The Earliest Vinaya*, Frauwallner argues that the, for him obviously problematic, Mahāsaṅghika *Skandhaka* text (See Frauwallner, 1956, pp. 42, 51, 55, 198–207.) which is quite different from the other schools, also originates from the same original *Skandhaka* text which, according to him, later got edited and changed in all schools with parts such as legends about the life of the Buddha, etc., being deleted and/or shifted to other chapters or texts. However, it could well be that the *khandhaka*-compilations which eventually were called the *Mahāvagga* and *Cullavagga* in the Mahāvihāra Theravāda tradition were originating from earlier independent rules or smaller compilations of rules (Some maybe only in use in some important monasteries as monastery-regulations.), called *vatthus/vastus* or *saṃyuttas/pratisaṃyuktas*, which were gradually compiled and re-arranged into several larger compilations in the different schools.

A similar process apparently happened with verses, *gāthas*, where older and smaller verse-anthologies were re-arranged and re-edited into larger verse-anthologies such as the *Dhammapada* and *Udānavarga*; see Brough, 1962, pp. 26–30.

The additional accounts of the councils, biographical stories about the Buddha, origin-stories to the regulations, and possibly even some additional regulations, might have been gradually added from other sources to the earlier Vinaya-compilations up to the stage when there was a compilation which formed the common ancestor of the *Khandhaka*-compilations. This compilation then got re-edited again in the different schools until the versions as we have them now were finally compiled and edited. It could be that some of the compilation and editing had not yet been done when the Mahāsaṅghika school broke away from the Theravāda school and this would explain why the Mā and Mā-L are so different from the corresponding Vinaya texts of the other schools, i.e., more systematic and omitting many stories as well as regulations; see Frauwallner, 1956, ch. 4 and pp 198–207, BV p.14, Hirakawa 18.

As noted in footnote @ (to the Sutta and Suttavibhaṅga section) at the Second Council (as related in the Pāli Cullavagga), the compilations of Khandhakas called *Mahāvagga* and *Cullavagga* were apparently not yet known, although compilations of rules called *Vinayavatthu* and *Uposathasaṃyutta* are mentioned.

It is also important to keep in mind that there might have been a fair amount of interaction and competition among the schools. Texts were adapted from other schools, e.g., the *Milindapañhā*, *Nettipakaraṇa*, and *Peṭakopadesa*, were probably adapted (and/or adopted) by the Mahāvihāra-Theravādins from the texts of other early schools; see Hinüber 1996 § 165, 169, and 173. The Vinaya-text of a particular school, such as a *Khandhaka* or *Vastu*, might also have been compared with their own text by the members of a different school and they consequently might have made changes and “improvements” to it; see also Brough, 1962, pp.28–30. The remarks given above regarding the formation of the *Khandhakas* support the observations by Brough about the problematic status of the so-called “primitive Canon” as has been propounded by Levi,

Concatenation and the Order of the Rules

The order or sequencing of the rules in the Pātimokkha is determined by concatenation and common offence topics. Hinüber, 1999 p.20, points out that many rules in the Pātimokkha are connected through a principle called concatenation. Concatenation means that things are linked or united together in a sequence or chain. In the Pātimokkha context concatenation means that one rule is connected or concatenated to the next rule through a connecting-word. The first three NP rules are connected by *niṭṭhitacīvarasmim*, the third NP rule with the fourth one through *cīvaram*, the fourth and the fifth NP rules through *aññātikā*, then the connecting word is *aññātaka*, the ninth rule connects with the tenth through *cīvaracetāpana*. Thus there is a chain of connecting words that makes it easier for the reciter to remember which is the next rule. Concatenation is also found in other ancient Indian literature.

In TP xli it is said that it is surprising that Pāc 88 is inserted after Pāc 87 since Pāc 87 is a *chedanaka pācittiya* offence and Pāc 88 is an *uddālanaka pācittiya* offence while pācittiyas 89–92 are again *chedanaka pācittiyas*. Concatenation must have had priority here over the type of *pācittiya* since Pāc 87 and 88 are connected through the words *mañcam* and *pīṭham*.

Still, it seems more convenient if the “*mañcam vā pīṭham vā*” *chedanaka pācittiya* would be with the other *chedanaka pācittiyas* and the *uddālanaka pācittiya* would precede it since Pāc 87 has no direct concatenation word with Pāc 86. Pāc 88 would even concatenate better than Pāc 87 with Pāc 86 through the common words *kārāpeyya* and “*yo pana bhikkhu.*”

In the Prātimokṣasūtras of the Mā-L, Mū, and Sa schools the rule-order for these rules is the same as the Pāli Pātimokkha. In the Prātimokṣasūtra of the Dharmaguptaka school, see BPP 19 and BEAL, 1871, P.230, the rule-order is in, what appears to be, the most convenient way. The rule-order corresponding to the Pāli rules is Pāc 83, 84, 85, 87, 88, 86, 89, 90, 91, 92.

Putting aside the *sekhiya* rules, the number of which differs greatly amongst the different Pātimokkha versions (see CSP 40, 49–59) and which do not lend themselves to concatenation due to their briefness, the rule-order of all offence sections amongst the Pātimokkha versions differs most after the third Pācittiya chapter. The Pāli and especially the Dharmaguptaka version seem to be the most consistent in concatenation of the *pācittiyas* in these chapters. The Sa, Mū, and Mā-L versions often do not concatenate the rules.

The rule order is sometimes determined by common offence topics. Pāc 33 and 34, and Pāc 39 and 40 have no connection through a concatenation-word but the offence topic in both is the same, i.e., food. Most of the time though concatenation has precedence over the common topics, e.g. Pāc 3 is not followed by Pāc 12 and 13, although they have the common topic of speech, and Pāc 20 is not with Pāc 62, although both are about using water with creatures in it.

Chapter Titles

The Nissaggiya Pācittiya, Pācittiya, and Sekhiya offence-sections are divided into chapters, *vaggas*, of usually ten rules. The chapters have titles which, together with the number of the chapter, are given at the end of the chapters. The chapters are—with a few exceptions—titled in accordance with a key-word of the first rule of the chapter and the chapter-title does not define the common topic of offences for the chapter. The few exceptions are discussed below.

The chapter-division and end-of-chapter remarks in the various Pātimokkha editions are usually the same as in the Suttavibhaṅga editions. The Thai Dhammayuttikanikāya Pātimokkha version, Mm Se, follows the Sekhiya chapter-division as in the Kkh, while the Thai Mahānikāya version, Mi Se, gives both the Vibh and the Kkh chapter-divisions.

There are three chapters of ten rules each in the Nissaggiya Pācittiya offence-section. In Be, Vibh Ee, and in the Parivāra (Be, Ce) the first Nissaggiya Pācittiya chapter is called the *kaṭhinavagga* (Be: *kathinavagga*), while in Ce Vibh and Mm Se it is *cīvaravagga*. In Kkh (Be) it is called the *cīvaravagga* and the chapter starts with: “*nissaggiyesu pana cīvaravaggassa*” Be Sp ends the chapter with “*cīvaravaggaṃ niṭṭhitam.*” Ce and Ee Sp 684 end the chapter with: “*niṭṭhito ca paṭhamo vaggo,*” and end the other Nissaggiya Pācittiya chapters in

the same way substituting *paṭhamo* for *dutiyo* and *tatiyo* respectively. The second chapter is titled the *kosiyavagga* in all Vibh eds, the Parivāra (Be, Ce), and Sp (Be). However, Kkh (Be, Ce, Ee), and older Pātimokkha editions and manuscripts, title it *elakalomavagga* while the *Pātimokkhagaṇṭhidīpanī* titles it *santhataavaggo*. In the Sp text at the end of the Bhikkhunī NP section commentary (Sp Ee 919), however, the *elakalomavagga* is mentioned and this shows that it was the title in use when this commentary was made. The title *elakalomavagga* is also mentioned in the text of the *Sāratthadīpanī-ṭīkā* (Myanmar ed. III 486) and the *Uttaravinicchaya* (Myanmar ed. p.380) and other medieval works; for more references search CSCD. If the standard is taken that a section is to be named after a key-word in the first rule, then the title *elakalomavagga* does not seem to fit. However, originally the tradition did not seem to take this standard seriously, if there was such a standard in the first place.¹² The title *santhataavagga* would fit well. The third chapter is titled the *pattavagga* in all editions and commentaries.

There are nine chapters with *pācittiya* rules; all chapters, except the eight one, which has twelve rules, have ten rules. Like the Nissaggiya Pācittiya chapters the Pācittiya chapters are numbered; e.g. *senāsanavaggo dutiyo*. This is also so in the Sp and Kkh. Further, like the Nissaggiya Pācittiya chapters, the Pācittiya chapter-titles are—with a few exceptions, named after a key-word of their first rule.

One exception appears to be the *bhojanavagga* where no key-word *bhojana* is found in the first rule. The key-word in this rule is *āvasathapiṇḍa* and this word is found in the rule-title of the rule. The next two rules, however, have the word *bhojana* as key-word. Each rule in the chapter deals with food and this might be, besides a possible change by reciters or editors¹³, a possible reason for this title. The Sa, Mū, Kāśyapiyaḥ, and Mahīśāsaka Prātimokṣasūtras place what corresponds to the Pāli *paramparabhojanasikkhāpada* at the start of the fourth chapter and this rule contains the word *bhojana*. The rule corresponding to the *āvasathapiṇḍasikkhāpada* is found as the second rule in most versions (i.e., Sa, Mū, and Kāśyapiyaḥ) It is possible that the *paramparabhojanasikkhāpada* once stood at the start of the Pāli version too.

Of course, it is also possible that there was originally an *āvasatthapiṇḍavagga* and that it got changed to *bhojanavagga* by later reciters or editors in the same way as the last chapter of the pācittiya-section, the *rājavagga*, got changed to *ratanavagga*, and the *kosiyavagga* to *elakalomavagga*; see below.

The second exception is title of the seventh Pācittiya chapter, *sappāṇakavagga*, which is named after a key-word of the second rule, i.e., the *sappāṇakasikkhāpada*, Pāc 62. Hinüber, 1999 p.18, thinks that the reason for this exception is that the *sappāṇakasikkhāpada* once stood at the start of a chapter because the rule corresponding to the *sappāṇakasikkhāpada* comes in the Prātimokṣasūtra of the Mahāsaṃghika-Lokottaravādin school at the start of the fifth chapter and the *sañciccāsikkhāpada*, Pāc 61, comes at the start of the seventh chapter; see Hinüber 1999 p.18 n. 4.¹⁴

The reason for the *sañciccāsikkhāpada* coming before the *sappāṇakasikkhāpada* might be because of concatenation; see the [note on concatenation](#). Pāc 62 connects to the next rule, *ukkoṭanasikkhāpada*, Pāc 63, through the word *jānaṃ* and Pāc 61 connects to 62 through *pāṇa*. It might be that the Theravāda Suttavibhaṅga reciters, *bhāṇakas*, found it more convenient to concatenate both the rules with *pāṇa*, but did not change the chapter-title for some reason. Again, it is also possible that there was a *sañciccavagga* that later got re-named to *sappāṇakavagga*.

In the Mā-L, Mū, and Sa version the rule corresponding to the Pāli Pāc 61 is followed by the rule

¹² In accordance with Hinüber's line of reasoning, see the section on the chapter-division in the Pācittiyas below, it might be significant that the Mā-L rule corresponding to the Pāli Pāc 13 comes at the place of Pāli Pāc 11, i.e., at the start of the chapter. The order of rules in the corresponding chapter of the Mā-L *Prātimokṣasūtra* is Pāli Pācittiyas 13–11–12–14 etc. All other schools have the rule corresponding to Pāli Pāc 11 at the start of this chapter.

¹³ I am using the word "editor" for convenience. It probably was not the case that a monk was sitting down and deliberately started editing the text in the modern sense of the word, in the first place because at first there were no written texts for several centuries. However, there are clear indications that during the transmission, whether recited or written, of Pāli texts monks changed the order of rules, added or changed rule-, introduction- and conclusion-titles, preferred certain (Sanskritised) spellings of words above others, etc. This is a process that continues taking place. At the councils held in Burma and Thailand there was editing taking place. According to accounts, texts were "purified" from corruptions. During the sixth council Sinhalese and Burmese monks had disagreements about what were the appropriate readings.

¹⁴ Hinüber calls these chapters the *Sappāṇakavarga* and *Sañcityavarga*, however, in the Mā-L *Prātimokṣasūtra* no chapter-titles are found, only summary verses (*uddāna*) followed by the number of the chapter; see Taita 25, BV 185, 188, BMD p. 84, 86. Hinüber is therefore probably referring to the *Pācattika* section's summary verse; see Taita 29, BMD p.92.

corresponding to the Pāli Pāc 77 that also has the word *sañcicca*. In the Dharmaguptaka version the corresponding rule-order is Pāc 61, 62, 77.

It is possible that at first there was no chapter-division in the Thv version but just one unbroken chain of rules as in the Mū, Sa, and Dhg versions. Later, for the sake of easier remembrance, the chapter-division might have been introduced. This could explain why Pāc 10 is separated from Pāc 11 although they have the same subject matter, i.e., causing destruction, which differs from the surrounding rules.

It is noteworthy that the *Samantapāsādikā* (Be, Ce, Ee) in the Pācittiya-section some chapter-titles are different from those in the Suttavibhaṅga, the Parivāra, and the *Kaṅkhāvitaranī*.¹⁵ The *bhūtagāma*vagga, Pāc 11–20, is titled *senāsanavagga* in the Sp (also in a Vibh Ce v.l.); the *ovādavagga*/bhikkhunovādavagga, Pāc 21–30, is titled *bhikkhunīvagga*; and the *ratana*vagga, Pāc 83–92, is titled *rājavagga*.

The third chapter is titled *bhikkhunovādavagga* in Vibh Ce and Mm Se, etc, but *ovādavagga* in Dm, Mi Se, Parivāra Ce, etc. As mentioned in the previous paragraph, the Sp gives it the title *bhikkhunīvagga*. The title *bhikkhunovādavagga* is used in a reference in the vinaya *ṭīkā* called *Vimativinodanī* (Myanmar II 309). However, more references to *ovādavagga* are found in the commentaries and *ṭīkā*s and also *ovāda* is used in the in the Pācittiya sections summary-verse, *uddāna*, at Vin V 27. It therefore seems that *ovādavagga* is the more original one.

The Parivāra (Be, Ce, Ee) has the same the chapter-titles as the Vibh, except in the sixth chapter, which is called *surāmerayavagga* instead of *surāpānavagga*, and the ninth and last chapter, which is called *rājavagga* in all Parivāra eds.

The title *surāmerayavagga* is not used or mentioned in any other work except the Pārivāra and it is not possible to ascertain whether it is more original than the title *surāpānavagga*.

In Vibh Ce and the D. Maskell 1981 Kkh Ee the last chapter is titled *rājavagga*. The Vibh Ce reading seems more appropriate here as the key-word *rāja* is found in the first rule, while ratana is only found as *ratana* in the compound *aniggataratana*. In the Burmese CSCD edition of Sp the section is called *ratana*vagga in the conclusion of the section, however, the explanation of the first rule starts with “*rājavagga*ssa paṭhamasikkhāpade” The title *rājavagga* is also found in the Pācittiya sections summary-verse, *uddāna*, at Vin V 27, and is also found in Vinaya-manuals such as the Parivāra and *Vinayavinicchaya* and *ṭīkā*s such as the *Vimativinodanī* and *Sāratthadīpanī*; references can be found by searching the CSCD. It thus seems that later redactors, most likely Burmese, have changed the title of this section from *rājavagga* to *ratana*vagga.

The division of the Sekhiya section in Mm Se differs considerably from the other Pātimokkha texts and editions since it follows the division of the Kkh. Mi Se gives the end of chapter division of both the Vibh and the Kkh. Since the chapters in the Nissaggiya Pācittiya and Pācittiya sections are also divided into chapters of tens, rather than being divided according to the subject matter, and this therefore seems to be the more usual division, the Mi & Mm chapter titles have been put into brackets in the Pāli Sekhiya section of this work.

It might be that the Kkh way of the dividing is based on a different and possibly older tradition as preserved in the old Pātimokkha-aṭṭhakathās mentioned in Hinüber 1996 § 221 and 225. This might be supported by the fact that *-pratisaṃyukta* as part of titles was in use in the Mahāsaṅghika school; see BV § 294, and also the [footnote](#) in the “Sutta and Suttavibhaṅga” note.

This way of section-dividing in the Kkh is mentioned in the *ṭīkā*s, e.g. *bhojanapaṭisaṃyuttāni sekhiyāni* are referred to in the *Vimativinodanī* (Myanmar ed. II 287).

In Mm Se the first twenty-six rules are grouped together as the “*chabbīsati sārubbā*” (Be Kkh: “*chabbīsatisārubbāsikkhāpadavaṇṇanā niṭṭhitā*.” Ce Kkh: “*chabbīsati sārubbā niṭṭhitā*.”) The next thirty in Mm Se are “*samatiṃsa bhojanapaṭisaṃyuttā*.” (Be Kkh: “*tiṃsabhojanappaṭisaṃyutta-sikkhāpadavaṇṇanā niṭṭhitā*” Ce Kkh: “*bhojanapaṭisaṃyuttāni tiṃsati niṭṭhitāni*.” The next sixteen are “*soḷasa dhammadesanāpaṭisaṃyuttā*.” (No title in Be and Ce Kkh.) The last three are “*tayo pakiṇṇakā*.” (Be Kkh: “*ekūnavīsati dhammadesanāpaṭisaṃyutta-sikkhāpadavaṇṇanā niṭṭhitā*.” No title in Ce Kkh.) At the start of the explanations of the first rules in the Sekhiya-sections in the Kkh the section-titles are also mentioned (the first one only in Ke); see Ee Kkh. As the

¹⁵ It is surprising that the Kkh and the Sp have different chapter-titles since both are ascribed to the same author—Ācāriya Buddhaghosa—by the later subcommentarial (*ṭīka*) tradition. The Kkh seems to be a later production than the Sp as the former frequently refers to the latter, whereas the latter does not refer to the former. Some scholars have doubt whether Buddhaghosa is the author of these works. In neither work the author is mentioned; see Hinüber 1996 § 209, 220, and 224.

title of the last section in Mm Se is found in no edition of the Kkh it seems to be a later Thai addition.

The *sekhiyas* are just mentioned by the number of the chapter in the Sp (Be, Ce, Ee), e.g. “*paṭhamo vaggo*.” In the Kkh (Be & Ee [Ce only gives the titles of the first two chapters]) the chapters are named as in Mm Se, except the last chapter that is not titled: “*tayo pakiṇṇakā*” as in Mm Se, but: “*ekūnavāsati dhammadesanāpaṭisamyuttā*,” i.e., the last 3 rules are not a separate chapter.

Be, UP Ce, Ņd Ce follow the Suttavibhaṅga (Be, Ce, Ee) and Sp chapter-division for the Sekhiya section, which are in six groups of ten and one group of fifteen named after a keyword of the first rule in the section. In the Parivāra (Be, Ce, Ee) the *sakkaccavagga* is titled *piṇḍapātavagga*. In Mi Se the *kabalavagga* is titled: *anāhaṭavagga*. This might a more appropriate title as the key-word *kabaḷa* already occurs two rules earlier.

The Sarvāstivādin Prātimokṣasūtra does not have any section-introduction-titles or section-conclusions, chapters, etc; see CSP, PrMoSa. The incomplete Mūlasarvāstivādin Prātimokṣasūtra version as given in Lokesh Chandra’s edition has an *uddāna* summary-verse summarising the rules at the start of each section of ten *pāyantika* (= *pācittiya*) rules and thirty *saikṣa* (= *sekhiya*) rules. It also gives an *uddāna* at the start of the *saṃghāvaśeṣaḥ* (= *saṃghādisesa*) and *prāṭidesanīyā* (= *pāṭidesanīya*) rules. The beginnings of the other sections are not found in this manuscript, but it seems that the *uddānas* would be found at the start of these sections too. The more complete Mūlasarvāstivādin Prātimokṣasūtra manuscript as given in Banerjee’s edition does not have any *uddānas*.

The Mahāsaṅghika-Lokottaravādin Prātimokṣasūtra does have a chapter division (“First chapter,” etc.) for every ten rules, but no section-titles. It has *uddānas*, at the end of the sections; see PrMoMā-L. The Chinese and Tibetan Mū Pātimokkha sūtra versions also have these *uddānas* according to CSP 39.

Rule Section Titles and Rule-Titles

At the start of the offence-sections both Be and Mi Se give introduction titles. Mi Se also gives the number of rules in some sections. The other Pātimokkha editions and manuscripts, and the Suttavibhaṅga editions do not have these titles.

There is some slight variation in the titles at the conclusions of sections in the various Pātimokkha editions. Ņd Ce, and Mi Se number the first four sections of the Pātimokkha, from the Nidāna section until the Aniyata section, and title them *uddesa* as in the introduction-titles: e.g. “*nidānuddeso paṭhamo*.” Be does not number the sections, but adds *uddesa* for the first four sections, e.g. *nidānuddeso*. Mm Se has “*nidānuddeso niṭṭhito*,” etc. Be, Ņd Ce, and Mi Se and a Burmese MS have the “*vitthāruddeso pañcama*” remark at the end of the Pātimokkha conclusion. In the commentaries the word *vitthāruddesa* is only found in the Kkh (Ee 3) in an enumeration of the five *uddesas*. The Mahāvagga (Vin I 112) only has *vitthāren’eva pañcama*. It is not clear why some manuscripts and editions, which seem to have their origin in Burma, include the *vitthāruddeso pañcama* remark while others, although they include the remarks for the other four sections, don’t. It seems that the “editors” understood that the remark *bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ* suffices to indicate that the Pātimokkha has been recited in full. The *Dve Mātikā* edition (Dm) does not include the *uddesa* remarks at all and simply has *nidānaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ*, etc.

The *uddesa* titles and conclusions, numbered one to five, refer to the five ways of reciting the Pātimokkha; see [above](#). After the sections that are only included in the *vitthāruddesa*, it is simply said that the rule section has been finished, e.g. *pācittiya niṭṭhitā*.

In the Thai Dhammayuttika tradition the rule-section titles are not recited.

The Mūlasarvāstivāda Prātimokṣasūtra manuscript now in the collection of the Nor bu liñ ka monastery in Tibet, although partially mistaken, also has the *uddesa* division.¹⁶ The Prātimokṣasūtra manuscript edited by Banerjee doesn’t. Haiyan Hu-von Hinüber, in her article “Some Remarks on the Sanskrit Manuscript of the Mūlasarvāstivāda-Prātimokṣasūtra found in Tibet” (p. 292) emphatically states: “I am convinced *these*

¹⁶ Right: (1) at the end of the *nidāna*: *prathamah prātimokṣasūtrod^desaḥ*. (2) at the end of the *catvāraḥ pārājikā dharmāḥ*: *dvitīyah prātimokṣasūtrod^desaḥ*. (3) at the end of the *trayodeśa saṃghavaśeṣaḥ*: *tṛtīyah prātimokṣasūtrod^desaḥ*. (4) at the end of the *dvāv aniyatau dharmau*: *caturthah prātimokṣasūtrod^desaḥ*. Wrong: (5) at the end of the first ten rules of the *triṃśat naiḥsargikapāyattikāḥ*: *pañcamah prātimokṣasūtrod^desaḥ*. (6) at the end of the second ten rules of the *triṃśat naiḥsargikapāyattikāḥ*: *prātimokṣasūtrod^desaḥ ṣaṣṭhah*.

peculiar remarks point to a manuscript tradition otherwise lost." However, as seen above, these remarks are found in some Pāḷi editions and manuscripts of the Pātimokkha.

In the reciter's introduction and conclusion to each of the sections the number of rules recited are mentioned. The only exception is the Sekhiya section, which in all editions of the Pātimokkha and the Suttavibhaṅga does not give the number of rules in the section, i.e., *pañcasattati sekhiyā dhammā* (seventy-five training rules) is found. The only exceptions are Mi, a Siamese manuscript (V), and the *saṅkhittapātimokkhuddesa* (the recitation of the Pātimokkha in brief) that is given in a few printed editions and manuscripts. It is also found in the Parivāra. As this would be the only section introduction where the number of rules are not given, it might seem that the Thai tradition has preserved an older tradition, however, the reason might be different. Comparing the Pāḷi Pātimokkha and the Prātimokṣasūtras of other major early traditions, it is clear that the divergence between them—both in the number of rules and in rules not found in other Prātimokṣasūtras—occurs in this section. In other sections the difference is only in the order of rules and in the wording. In contrast to fixed content of the other sections of the Pātimokkha/Prātimokṣasūta, the Sekhiya section might have been seen as an open-ended section in which minor training rules could be added by different traditions and perhaps even major monastic centers. Nowadays too different monasteries have different sets of monastery rules, especially the Thai forest monasteries are known for their refined rules regarding etiquette, etc.

The other major early traditions also did not number their *śaikṣa* sections: the Mahāsaṅghika Pm has *sātirekapañcāsaccaikṣā dharmāḥ* (PrMoMā-L p.30, 34), "more than fifty" (It has 67 *śaikṣa* rules.), while the Mū and Sa Pm have *saṃbahulāḥ śaikṣā dharmā* (PrMoSa p.241, 255, Chandra 11), "many training rules" (Sa has 113 *śaikṣa* rules, Mū has 108).

In the Burmese edition of the Pātimokkha, Be, and also Ee Pātimokkha (see TP xxxix-xl), every rule is introduced by a rule-title: e.g. Pārājika 1 is titled *methunadhammasikkhāpada*, "the training precept on sexual intercourse." The rule-titles have been incorporated into the Burmese Pātimokkha edition from the Vinaya commentaries and ṭīkā explanations where the Pātimokkha rules are referred to by these titles. These rule-titles were used by the commentators for the sake of easy reference. They are not recited in the Pātimokkha recitation in Burma and in this work they have been added in brackets before the actual rules.

In the Burmese Sixth Council edition, as given in CSCD, these rule-titles are also found preceding the rules in commentaries and sub-commentaries on Pātimokkha rules, but they are, as far as I know, not found preceding any commentaries on rules in the Sinhalese and Thai editions. The addition of rule-titles at the head of sections therefore seems to be a modern Burmese tradition, dating from the fifth or sixth council.

It appears that the rule-titles rather refer to the rules as incorporated in the Suttavibhaṅga rather than as found in the Pātimokkha because some rules are named after the person playing the leading role in the origin-story to the rules, e.g. the *ariṭṭha-sikkhāpada*, Pāc 68, is named after the first offender called Ariṭṭha bhikkhu who caused the rule to be laid down; cf. TP xi.

The *mahā-pesakāra-sikkhāpada*, "greater training precept on weavers," NP 27, is named after the synonym *pesakāra* for *tantavāya* given in the Padabhājana on the rule. As Hinüber 1999 p.10–11, cf. TP xi, notes, this rule originally seems to have been part of a pair where the preceding shorter rule, the *suttaviññatti-sikkhāpada*, was called *cūla-pesakāra-sikkhāpada*, "shorter training precept on weavers," in the same manner as pairs of suttantas starting with *cūla-* and *mahā-* are found in the Majjhima-nikāya; cf. TP xi. However, it is also simply possible that the rule title is called this way because the weaver in the story, a supporter of Ven. Upananda, was a great weaver or, rather, an embroiderer. The corresponding Sanskrit word is *peśaskārī*: "a female who makes embroidered (garments)," of which the noun *peśas* means "embroider," "embroidered garment." Thus it seems a *pesakāra* was not a simple weaver but one who made embroidered cloths.

Apparently there is nothing exactly corresponding to these Pāḷi rule-titles in the other early Buddhist schools, but the Sarvāstivādin *Mahāvvyutpatti* contains a list of the key-words of each Suttavibhaṅga/Pātimokkha-rule¹⁷.

The chapter titles often have the same key-word as the rule-titles of the first rule in the chapter, but in a

¹⁷ See BMD p.140ff, Rosen 42ff. These are entries 8364–8522 in Sakaki, Ryozauro (ed.) 1926: *Mahāvvyutpatti*, Tokyo: Suzuki Research Foundation, pp. 531–544.

few cases this is not so. The first exception is the *bhojanavagga* of the Pācittiya-section that does not have the same key-word as the *āvasathapiṇḍasikkhāpada*, Pāc 31. A possible reason, a different order of rule earlier, for this is discussed in the previous section on Chapter-division.

The second exception is the *rājavagga* of the Pācittiya-section that does not have the same key-word as the *antepurasikkhāpada*. Probably the reason for this is that the title *rājasikkhāpada* was already used for NP 10.

The third exception is the *kabaḷavagga* in the Sekhiya-section, which does not have the same key-word as the *anāhaṭasikkhāpada*. However, in the Thai Mi edition the chapter is called *anāhaṭavagga* and this might be the original title.

Quotation-Marks

In the Suttavibhaṅga the quotation-mark *ti* is found at the end of each Pātimokkha section i.e.: (Nid.): "... *phāsu hoti ti*," (Pār): "... *evaṃ etaṃ dhārayāmi ti*," (Pm Conclusion): "... *sikkhitabban-ti*." However, in Mi & Mm Se there are no quotation-marks at the end of the sections, except for one in the Pātimokkha conclusion, which, for the sake of consistency, should be without the *ti* too, i.e., "*sikkhitabban*." One argument for the *ti* after *sikkhitabban* is that it is a quotation from the Buddha. However, the Buddha is referred to in the third person in this section (*tassa bhagavato*) and it therefore is no quotation.

The reason for this difference among the editions is that when the Pātimokkha is recited it is in the first person, i.e., the reciter reminds and asks the other bhikkhus who are present, and therefore no quotation-mark is needed. However, in the Suttavibhaṅga the Pātimokkha rules are quoted, not recited, so the quotation-mark is appropriate. There are no quotation-marks in the Sa Prātimokṣasūtra (PrMoSa p.258), Mā-L (PrMoMā-L p.6 + 8), and Mū (PrMoMū p.13–15).

The Mā-L Prātimokṣasūtra ends with: "... *sikṣā karaṇīyā*."; PrMoMā-L p.36. Sa: "... *iti sikṣā karaṇīyā*."; PrMoSa p.258. There is no corresponding Prātimokṣa conclusion in the Mū Prātimokṣasūtra; after the *adhikāraṇasamathā dharmaḥ* section the verse section start; see PrMoMū p.54.

Some remarks on the *Pubbakaraṇa*, *Pubbakicca*, and *Pattakalla*

The Summary of Preparations and Preliminary Duties

Nowadays when the Pātimokkha is recited it is preceded by a summary of the preparations and preliminary duties called *pubbakaraṇapubbakicca*. The *pubbakaraṇa* preparations are concerned with the preparing of the place where the Uposatha meeting takes place and the *pubbakicca* preliminary duties are the duties which are to be done when the bhikkhus have assembled and the Uposatha meeting is about to start. Possibly every monastic group, *nikāya*, in the Theravāda tradition has its own Pāli version of this summary, but all of the versions are based on the three verses found in the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī*. These three verses summarise the various duties and observances related to the Uposatha and the factors of suitability. According to the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* this summary was compiled by the Commentary-teachers, *aṭṭhakathācariyā*. The duties are found in various places in the Vinaya-piṭaka and the Commentary teachers must have felt a need to collect them and summarise for the sake of convenience and clarity.

The modern versions, given in [Appendix I](#) are of various length and are also recited in different ways:

The Thai Dhammayuttikanikāya version is recited by a single reciter; see Nm pp. 6–15.

The version of the Thai Mahānikāya (Mi Se), given in the *Bhikkhupātimokkhapāḷi* of the Thai Tipiṭaka edition of Mahidon University (see Appendix) is done by two bhikkhus: one bhikkhu who questions and one bhikkhu who answers.

A version that is almost identical with the Thai Mahānikāya version is the Sinhalese version used by the Siyām-nikāya, the Rāmañña and the Amarapura Nikāya. This version is given in various works; see Appendix I. It might have been introduced to Sri Lanka by the bhikkhus from the kingdom of Ayuthiya (i.e., Siam) who came to the Malwatta Vihāra in 1753 to reintroduce the *upasampadā* in Sri Lanka.¹⁸ However, possibly it earlier came from Sri Lanka to Thailand with the introduction of the Sri Lankan Theravāda

¹⁸ See Hazra, K.L.; *History of Theravāda Buddhism in South-east Asia*, Delhi, 1982, p.169

tradition. It is done by one bhikkhu asking and one bhikkhu answering.

The version used in the Sri Kalyāṇa Yogāshrama Saṁsthāva, which is a Rāmañña Nikāya forest-monastery sect founded in the 1950s, is given in Ńd 24–32. It is a recent Sinhalese adaptation of the version found in Mi Se and Dickson, etc, mainly differing in that it has interrogative pronouns (... *kiṃ?*) or interrogative clauses (... *kataṃ kiṃ?*) at the end of the question sentences just as is done in Sinhala (... *da?*). In Pali interrogative pronouns come at the start of sentences and thus this version mingles Pali and Sinhala grammar.

In Burma the preliminary dialogue is done in Burmese rather than in Pāli. However, the two summary verses from the *Kaṅkhavitarāṇī* are recited in Pāli; see the official Pātimokkha text preceding the Burmese edition of the Kkh where only the two Pāli summary verses are given.¹⁹

Similarly, the Swejin Nikāya branch of the Amarapura Nikāya of Sri Lanka (named after the town of Amarapura in Burma from where this *upasampadā*-lineage came to Sri Lanka in the 19th century) uses a question and answer version done in Sinhalese, but which incorporates the Pāli Kkh summary verses and the invitation by the elder. This version is given in UP Ce xxiii–xxx.

At the start, before the Kkh verses and the Sinhalese question and answer version etc., UP Ce gives a formal request to the reciter to recite the Pātimokkha:

(Invitation:) *Suṇātu me bhante saṅgho, yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ ahaṃ āyasmantaṃ (tissaṃ) pātimokkhuddesaṃ ajjheseyyaṃ. (3 x)*

Saṅgho bhante āyasmantaṃ (tissaṃ) pātimokkhuddesaṃ ajjhesati. Uddisatu bhante āyasmā (tisso) pātimokkhaṃ. (3 x)

(Reciter:) “*Āma uddissisāmahaṃ āvuso.*”

(Invitation:) “Venerable Sir, let the Community listen to me! If it is suitable to the community, [then] I should invite Venerable (Tissa to do) the Pātimokkha recitation.” (3 x)

Venerable Sir, the Community invites Venerable (Tissa to do) the Pātimokkha recitation. Venerable Sir, let Venerable (Tissa) recite the Pātimokkha!”

(Reciter:) “Yes friend, I shall recite.”

The origin of this request is the Mahāvagga which mentions in an origin-story that monks invited the senior bhikkhu, or another bhikkhu, to recite the Pātimokkha by saying: “Let the Venerable Sir recite the Pātimokkha.”

Te therāṃ ajjhesanti, uddisatu, bhante, thero pātimokkhan-ti. ... Eten’eva upāyena yāva saṅghanavakaṃ ajjhesanti, uddisatu āyasmā pātimokkhan-ti. (Mv II 17/ Vin I 116)

Cf. the section “The Invitation by the Elder” below.

Neither the Sp nor the Kkh mentions whether the summary is to be recited before the Nidāna. This might be a later development. There is also no mention of questioning and answering about the duties etc. in the Sp and the Kkh.

It has not been possible to find the exact source of the question and answer versions of the *pubbakaraṇapubbakicca*. It is not found in the commentaries and sub-commentaries, and it is first mentioned in the late medieval manual on the Pātimokkha called *Bhikkhupātimokkha-gaṇṭhidīpāṇī* by Thera Ñāṇakitti from Chiang Mai, Thailand. See the note on the origin of the *pubbakaraṇapubbakicca* in the appendix.

Bhikkhu Ñāṇadassana, Ńd 23 & n. 9, states that the reason for the preliminary dialogue is the regulation given in Mv II 15,6/Vin I 113 that no bhikkhu should ask unbidden about Vinaya in the midst of the Saṅgha; cf. UP Ce XXIII.

However, there is no indication in the Mahāvagga, nor in the Sp, that this regulation is specifically for the preliminary duties of the Pātimokkha recitation. It is rather a regulation for asking any questions about Vinaya in the midst of the community and as such it is found in the accounts of the first and second councils in the Cūlavagga. The same applies for speaking unbidden on Dhamma in the midst of the Saṅgha. Nevertheless, it is in accordance with the above mentioned Mahāvagga regulation that the bhikkhus who do the *pubbakicca*-dialogue in the midst of the Saṅgha should first ask permission from the Saṅgha to do so.

¹⁹ See also the partial version from a 1768 Burmese manuscript quoted in the article “Nine Pāli Manuscripts in the Vatican Library” by Jacqueline Filliozat in JPTS XXVI p.147: “... uposathassa etāṇi pubbakaraṇaṃ ti vuccati. Sammajanī [+ Burmese] ... suriyalokassa atthitāya ... paṭipakkiccaṃ ...”

In the Thai Dhammayuttika Nikāya tradition monologue version the reciter formally asks permission to recite the Pātimokkha from the senior bhikkhu. “*Okāsa*²⁰ *me bhante thero dethu*²¹ *vinayakathaṃ kathetum.*”: “Venerable Sir, let the Senior give me permission to talk about the Vinaya.” (Ñm 1969 p.53.) This request seems superfluous as the senior bhikkhu has already made an invitation.

The summary of the commentary-teachers is quoted in Kkh 6 and Sp 1063:

Sammajjanī padīpo ca – udakaṃ āsanena ca
uposathassa etāni – pubbakaraṇan-ti vuccati.
Chandapārisuddhi-utukkhānaṃ – bhikkhugaṇanā ca ovādo,
uposathassa etāni – pubbakiccan-ti vuccati.
*Upasatho yāvaticā ca bhikkhū kammappattā*²²
sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti
vajjanīyā ca puggalā tasmīṃ na honti
pattakallan-ti vuccati.

“The broom and the lamp, the water with the seat²³

these are called: ‘the preparation for the observance.’

The consent and purity²⁴, the telling of the season,²⁵

the counting of the bhikkhus²⁶ and the instruction (of the bhikkhunīs),²⁷

these are called: ‘the preliminary duty for the observance.’

The observance,²⁸

²⁰ The word *okāsa* in accordance with proper grammar should be the accusative *okāsaṃ* as in “*okāsaṃ karoti.*” In Sri Lanka this form *okāsa* is also used in the standard forgiveness formula [i.e., “*okāsa me bhante, dvārattayena kataṃ sabbaṃ accayaṃ khamatu me bhante*”] and it seems to be an imperative form of the verb *okāsaṭi*. This form is not found in the Tipiṭaka and commentarial works (as found on the CS-CD) and seems to be a modern invention.

²¹ The incorrect form verb *dethu* should be the 3 sg. present indicative *detu*.

²² Be: *kammappattā*. See PED 406: -*ppatta*.

²³ Mv II 20,6/Vin I 118–119; Mv II 26,10/Vin I 125.

²⁴ Mv II 22–23/Vin I 120–22.

²⁵ Mv I 77,1/Vin I 95.

²⁶ Mv II 18,4/Vin I 117.

²⁷ Mv II 1,4/Vin II 255; Mv X,9,5/Vin II 264; Vin IV 5.

²⁸ Mv II 4,2/Vin I 101; Mv II 14,1/Vin I 111; Mv II 36,4/Vin I 136.

whatever bhikkhus are entitled²⁹ (to carry out the legal) act.³⁰

common offences are not found³¹,

there are no persons to be excluded in there³²,

this is called: 'reached suitability.'

The following sections refer to this summary.

Preparations

The preparations of the place where the Uposatha is done are given at Mv II 20,6: A junior bhikkhu who, although being requested by a senior bhikkhu to prepare the place, does not carry out the request commits an offence of wrong doing. A bhikkhu living alone should also make preparations on Uposatha days in case other bhikkhus arrive, Mv II 26,10.

It is noteworthy that the word *pubbakaraṇa* in this sense is neither found in the Suttavibhaṅga or the Khandhakas or the Parivāra. It first appears in the above mentioned *pubbakaraṇapubbakicca* summary verses of the Vinaya-commentaries. Likewise, the word *pubbakicca* is also not found in this sense in the Vinayaṭṭhaka.

Preliminary Duties: *Pārisuddhi* and *Chanda*

The first of the preliminary duties is the conveying of consent and purity, *chandapārisuddhi*, on behalf of a bhikkhu who is not able to attend the Uposatha.³³

The Buddha declared that a sick bhikkhu who is unable to come to the Uposatha should make known his purity, *pārisuddhi*, through another bhikkhu to all the bhikkhus who are attending the Uposatha by saying: "Announce my purity" ("... *pārisuddhiṃ me ārocehi*."). It is an offence of wrong-doing to knowingly do an *uposathakamma* with an divided/incomplete community; "... *na tveva vaggena saṅghena uposatho kātabbo*."³⁴

Dhirasekera, pp. 96–105, argues that this announcement of *pārisuddhi* is the *pubbakicca* intended in the Nidāna. He supports his argument by the *nidānas* of the Sanskrit Prātimokṣasūtras of other early Buddhist schools which are very similar to the Pāli but specify *pārisuddhi* as the purity of bhikkhus who are not able to come.

The relevant sections of the Mā-L, Sa, and Mū are quoted and translated below. The complete versions can be found in the editions of the Prātimokṣasūtras and their translations.

²⁹ Nāṇamoli, Nm 1969 p.56, renders "Whatever number of bhikkhus there are who come to the function," but *patta* means "entitled." It is the past participle of *pāpuṇāti*: obtains, attains, reaches.

See Mv IX 3,5/Vin I 318: "*Yāvaticā ca bhikkhū kammappattā te āgatā honti*." : "As many bhikkhus as are entitled (to take part in the formal) act are come." (= Translation of I. B. Horner; BD IV 455.)

Mv IX 4,1/Vin I 319: "*Yvāyam catuvaggo bhikkhusaṅgho ... dhammena samaggo sabbakammesu kammappatto*." : "This community of bhikkhus which consists of a chapter of four ... united in accordance with the law, entitled (to carry out the legal) act with respect all legal acts." Cf. Cv X,7/Vin II 261: "... *dissanti bhikkhuniyo kammappattāyo pi āpattigāmaniyo pi*"

Kkh 6: "*Yāvaticā bhikkhū kammappattā ti: yattakā bhikkhū tassa uposathakammassa pattā yuttā sabbantimena paricchadena cattāro bhikkhū pakatattā saṅghena anukkhittā te ca kho hatthapāsaṃ avijahitvā ekasīmāyaṃ thitā*." : "Whatever bhikkhus are entitled to that Uposatha-act, who are entitled, suited, with the minimum amount (of bhikkhus): four bhikkhus who are regular, not suspended by the community, and they, not having left arms-length, remain in the same boundary."

Sp 1402: "*Pakatattā kammappattā: catuvaggakaraṇe kamme cattāro pakatattā anukkhittā anissāritā parisuddhasīlā, cattāro bhikkhū kammappattā kammassa arahā anucchavikā sāmīnā, na tena vinā taṃ kammaṃ kariyati ...*" : "Regular/normal, entitled to the legal act: in a legal act with four (bhikkhus) who are regular, not suspended, not expelled, of pure virtue, four bhikkhus entitled to the legal act: worthy of the act, suitable, masters, without that the legal act can not be done."

(A *pakatatta* bhikkhu is a normal or regular bhikkhu in contrast to a bhikkhu who is in probation or has been suspended; see Vin II 32.)

³⁰ Mv II 26,1/Vin I 124.

³¹ Mv II 27/Vin I 126–28.

³² Mv II 16,8/Vin I 115; Mv II 36/Vin I 135–136.

³³ In order for any *saṅghakamma* to be valid the motion (*ñatti*) and proclamation (*anussāvana*) have to be in the right order, all bhikkhus entitled to participate in the legal act must have come, bhikkhus who can not participate must have conveyed their consent to the legal act, and those present must not protest (against the act); see Mv IX 14, 1–3/Vin I 316–19 and Mv II 14, 1–3/Vin I 111.

³⁴ Mv II 22,2/Vin I 120. See the note on *samagga* at Sd 10 for the factors which make up a *samaggakamma* and a *vaggakamma*.

Mā-L: “Those who are eminent, well disposed/prepared, pure, accomplished/capable³⁵, have seated for the rehearsal³⁶. The tickets have been distributed, the bhikṣus have been counted, this many people have reached the boundary. Announce the consent and purity of bhikkhus who have not come, having announced make it known. Which bhikṣu is the conveyor of the consent of the bhikṣuṇīs? ...

Listen Venerable Community! Today is the dark moon³⁷ fourteenth (-day) [or fifteenth-day]³⁸ or junction-Poṣadha³⁹ for the Community. This much of the season has passed, this much is left. What is the preliminary duty of the community? The community of disciples of the Fortunate One has little to be done.⁴⁰

Venerable Sir, let the Community listen to me. Today is the dark moon fifteenth-day Poṣadha for the Community. If the (right) time has been reached for the Community, the Community should do the fifteenth-day Poṣadha and should recite the Prātimokṣasūtra inside this place, in this area of the earth, however much has been received/claimed by the Bhikkhu-community, measuring a fathom all round.

This is the motion leading to an object.⁴¹

Venerable Sir, the Community will do the fifteenth-day Poṣadha and will recite the Prātimokṣasūtra inside this place, in this area of the earth, however much has been received by the Bhikkhu-community, measuring a fathom all round.

It agrees to the Community, because it is silent. Thus I keep this [in mind].⁴²

Venerables, I shall recite the Prātimokṣasūtra, listen to it thoroughly and keep it in mind well. I shall speak.

For whom there is an offence, he should reveal ...⁴³

Sa: “Success! (Persons) not fully admitted have departed, the united community has assembled. What is

³⁵ The exact connotation of some of these terms is uncertain; cf. BMD p.46.

³⁶ *Anusaṅgāyānto*; according to Taita 5 the manuscript is illegible here. CPD gives *anusaṅgānta* as “rehearsed again.”

³⁷ *Viśuddhinakṣatraṃ*. Lit., “clear stars” When the moon is full the stars are less clear and bright as the moon outshines them, so presumably the dark moon is meant. BMD p.46 has “bright half of the lunar month.” Cf. BV 64.

³⁸ The text has omitted *pāñcadaśiko vā* which seems required as the next paragraph states it is the *pāñcadaśiko poṣadho*. Cf. the BV 64 version (given in n. 6 below) which has *cāturdaśiko vā pāñcadaśiko vā*.

³⁹ *Sandhi-poṣadha*; see BV 64 n. 4: “... probably the transition from the 14th to the 15th night of the lunar month ...”

⁴⁰ Another version of this is quoted in the Mā-L Bhikṣuṇī-vinaya, BV 64 (p. 95–96): “*Śṛṇotu me bhante saṃgho. Adya saṃghasya cāturdaśiko vā pāñcadaśiko vā sandhi-poṣadho vā viśuddhinakṣatraṃ. Ettakaṃ ṛtusya nirgataṃ ettakaṃ avaśiṣṭaṃ. Kim saṃghasya pūrvakṛtyaṃ? Alpakṛtyo bhagavataḥ śrāvakaśaṅgho śobhati*”. *Anāgatānāṃ āyuṣmanto bhikṣuṇācchandapāriśuddhimārocetha, ārocitaṇ-ca pravedetha. ...* (*Ms reads -*kṛtvā*, a scribal error. BV p.95 and the Bhikṣuprātimokṣa-nidāna give the correct reading -*kṛtyaṃ*. ** The reading in the Prātimokṣa, i.e., *so bhavati*, seems more appropriate.):

“Listen Venerable Community! Today is the dark moon fourteenth (-day) or a fifteenth (-day) or a junction-Poṣadha for the Community. This much of the season has passed, this much is left. What is the preliminary duty of the community? The community of disciples of the Fortunate One which has little to be done is beautiful. Announce the consent and purity of bhikkhus who have not come, having announced make it known. ...”

⁴¹ “*Ovayikā eṣā jñaptiḥ*.” Or: “This is a motion serving a purpose”; see BV 25 -26 n. 2. According to Roth this way of putting the motion appears to be a particular characteristic of the Mā-L school.

⁴² Note that only the Mā-L has a *ñattidutiyakamma* here rather than the *ñattikamma* of the other schools.

⁴³ (Taita 5–6. Punctuation added by the editor.): “*Abhikrāntāḥ suvihitāḥ śuddhā nipuṇā anusaṅgāyānto upaniṣaṇṇā. Cāritāḥ śalākā, gaṇitā bhikṣū, sīmāprāptaḥ ettakā janāḥ. Anāgatānāṃ āyuṣmanto bhikṣuṇāṃ cchandapāriśuddhim ārocetha, ārocitaṇ-ca pravedetha. Ko bhikṣu bhikṣuṇīnāṃ cchandahārako. ... Śṛṇotu me bhante saṃgho. Adya saṃghasya cāturdaśiko vā sandhipoṣadho vā viśuddhinakṣatraṃ. Ettakaṃ ṛtusya nirgataṃ ettakaṃ avaśiṣṭaṃ. Kim saṃghasya pūrvakṛtyaṃ. Alpakṛtyo bhagavataḥ śrāvakaśaṅgho so bhavati.*

Śṛṇotu me bhante saṃgho. Adya saṃghasya pāñcadaśiko poṣadho viśuddhinakṣatraṃ. Yadi saṃghasya prāptakālaṃ saṃgho imasmin prthivīpradeśe yāvatakaṃ bhikṣusaṃghenābhigṛhītaṃ samantana-vyāmamātraṃ atrāntare pāñcadaśikaṃ poṣadhaṃ kuryāt prātimokṣaṃ ca sūtramuddiṣeyya. Ovayikā eṣā jñaptiḥ.

Kariṣyati bhante saṃgho imasmin prthivīpradeśe yāvatakaṃ bhikṣusaṃghenābhigṛhītaṃ samantana-vyāmamātraṃ-atrāntare pāñcadaśikaṃ poṣadhaṃ prātimokṣaṃ ca sūtramuddiṣiyati.

Kṣāmate taṃ saṃghasya yasmāt-tūṣṇīm-evam-etaṃ dhārayāmi.

Prātimokṣaṃ āyuṣmanto sūtram uddesiṣyāmi, taṃ śṛṇuta sādhu ca suṭṭhu ca manasi kuruta, bhaṣiṣyāmi. Yasya vo siy’āpattiḥ so’viṣkaretu ...”

to be done by the Community? Let the Venerable Sirs announce the purity and consent of bhikkhus who have not come, having announced make it known. Venerable Sirs, one month less one night of the hot season has passed, three months and one night are left. ...”

“Listen Venerable Community! Today is the fifteenth (-day) Poṣadha of the Community. If the (right) time has been reached for the Community, and it agrees to the will of the Community that the united Community should do the Poṣadha today, it should recite the Prātimokṣasūtra. This is the motion.

We will do the Uposatha, dear Venerables, we will recite the Prātimokṣasūtra. All (those who) are present listen to it and pay attention thoroughly and well!

For whom there is an offence he is to reveal (it) ...”⁴⁴

Mū: ⁴⁵ “Venerables, so much of the hot season has passed, this much is left. ... What is the preliminary duty for the community of disciples? There is little need, little to be done. Let the Venerable Sirs announce the purity and consent of bhikkhus who have not come, having announced make it known. ...”

“Listen Venerable Community. Today is a [fourteenth (-day)] or fifteenth-day Poṣadha. If the (right) time has been reached for the Community, the Community should agree (and) should permit that the united Community should do the Poṣadha today, it should recite the Prātimokṣasūtra. This is the motion.

We will do the Uposatha, dear Venerable, we will recite the Prātimokṣasūtra.

For whom there is an offence [it] is to be revealed by him ...”⁴⁶

Note that the request for the *chandapārisuddhiṃ* comes in these Prākṛit and Sanskrit nidānas not where it comes in the Pāli Nidāna, but in the sections preceding what corresponds to the Pāli nidāna. After the request to reveal offences, there are no noteworthy differences between the Nidāna versions of the different schools and it seems strange that the Theravāda school is the only school that includes the question about the *pubbakicca* in the Nidāna proper.

The fact that the words *pubbakicca* and *pārisuddhi* are not commented upon in the word-commentary in the Mahāvagga might also be an indication that they were a later introduction into the Theravādin Pāli Nidāna.

The Kkh 21 explains *pārisuddhi* as one’s own purity⁴⁷, i.e., freedom from offences. It refers to Cv the rule: “By one with an offence the Pātimokkha is not to be listened to. If he should listen there is an offence of wrong-doing for him.”⁴⁸ In the Mv the confession-procedure is given for a bhikkhu who falls into offence on the Uposatha-day itself; Mv II 27,1/Vin I 125–26. It is not mentioned what happens on normal days, but in M I 324 it is said by the Buddha that it is a quality of one endowed with right view that when he commits an offence he quickly shows and reveals it to the teacher or to other wise companions in the holy life and then practises restraint in the future; cf. M I 417 f., Sn 232.

⁴⁴ (PrMoSa p.157. Punctuation added by the editor.): “Siddham. Niṣkrāntā anupasaṃpannāḥ, samagraḥ saṃghaḥ saṃnipatitāḥ. Kiṃ saṃghasya karaṇīyam. Anāgatānām āyuṣmantaś chandaṃ paṛisuddhiṃ cārocayata, ārocite ca pravedataḥ. Nirgatam āyuṣmanto grīṣmād ekarātrono māsaḥ saikarātās, trayo māsā avasiṣṭāḥ. ...” (PrMoSa p.160–61.): “Śṛnotu bhadantaḥ saṃghaḥ. Adya saṃghasya poṣathaḥ pāncadaśikaḥ, sacet saṃghasya prāptakālāḥ, kṣamate ājñā ca saṃghasya yat samagraḥ saṃgho ‘dya poṣatham kuryāt, prātimokṣasūtram uddiśed. Eṣā jñaptiḥ. Poṣatham vāya āyuṣmaṇṭaḥ kariṣyāmaḥ, prātimokṣasūtram uddeṣyāmas. Tat sarve saṃtaḥ śṛnuta sādhu ca suṣṭhu ca manasikuruta. Yasya vaḥ syāt āpattiḥ sāviṣkartaavyā ...”

⁴⁵ See also the passage on the proper procedure for conveying the *chandapārisuddhiṃ* in the Mū Poṣadhavatu, Gilgit mss III pt 4 p.xiv & p.100; quoted in Dhiraṣekera 104. Cf. the references in Frauwallner, 1956, pp. 80–81.

⁴⁶ (PrMoMū 10–11. Punctuation added by editor.): “Nirgatamāyuṣmanto grīṣmāṇaṃ yāvat, tāvadavaśiṣṭham ... Kiṃ [bhagavatā śrāvaka]saṃghasya pūrvakālakaraṇīyam. Alpo’rtho [lpakṛtyam]. [Anā]gatān-āyuṣmantaś-chandapārisuddhiṃ cārocayata ārocitaṃ ca pravedayata.” (PrMoMū 12): “Śṛnotu bhadantaḥ saṃghaḥ, adya saṃghasya poṣadhaḥ [cāturdaśikaḥ] pāncadaśiko vā. Sacet saṃghasya prāptakālāṃ, kṣametānujānīyāt saṃgho yat saṃghasya poṣadham kuryāt prātimokṣasūtro [ddeṣam-uddiśa]yed.* Eṣā jñaptiḥ.

Poṣadham vāyamāyuṣmaṇ kariṣyāmaḥ prātimokṣasūtroddeṣam uddeṣāmaḥ. Yasya syāt [t āpattiḥ tena āvi]ṣkartaavyā ...”

(*The amendment [heṣā] of PrMoMū has not been followed here. I amended according to the Sa reading in PrMoSa p.161 (& n. 84) and the reading in the next paragraph.)

⁴⁷ “attano paṛisuddhibhāvaṃ ārocetha.”

⁴⁸ Cv IX 2/Vin II 240: “Na ca sāpattikena pātimokkhamo sotabbaṃ, yo suṇeyya, āpatti dukkaṭassa.” However, in the Nidāna it is said that not revealing one’s offence is deliberate false speech, i.e., Pācittiya 1. Cf. Pāc 73.

A bhikkhu who remembers an offence during the Pātimokkha recitation should inform a bhikkhu near to him and mention that he will make amends after the recitation. Dhirasekera argues that a bhikkhu does not declare purity through confessing before the Pātimokkha recitation, but rather declares it through remaining silent during recitation when the reciter asks about purity.

The giving of consent (*chanda*), by a sick bhikkhu through another bhikkhu is for any other community-business (*saṅghakamma*) the community is attending to; Mv II 23/Vin I 121–122. (Cf. the origin-stories to Pāc 79–80.)

Confession

One of the purposes of the Pātimokkha recitation is the control of shameless persons. A way this control is brought about is through the obligatory confession of offences. This confession to one other bhikkhu or more than one bhikkhu brings up shame and fear of future wrong-doing in the offender. In A II 240–42 bhikkhus confessing various types of offences (Pār, Sd, Pāc, Pd) are likened to criminals undergoing public punishment and penance and at M I 27 there is a case of a bhikkhu who wishes that he will not be reproved in the midst of the community for an offence he has committed.

The procedure for the confession of light offences (*lahuka āpatti*—denoting all offences except the Pār and Sd offences, which are called heavy offences [*garuka āpatti*].) is described in Mv II 27/Vin I 125–28, Cv IV 14, 30–32/Vin II 102–03. The procedure for the confession and forfeiture needed for Nissaggiya Pācittiya offences is described in the Padabhājana to each NP rule. The *pāṭidesanīya* procedure is given in the Pāṭidesanīya rules themselves. The *saṅghādisesa* procedure is given at the end of the Sd section and in Cv II & III.

Nowadays, bhikkhus usually do a general all inclusive confession in Pāli that does not explicitly specify each light offence committed. However, in the Vinaya-piṭaka and also in the commentaries there is no mention of such a general confession. According to the Canon, each offence remembered had to be specifically confessed and mentioned by a bhikkhu. This general confession is first mentioned in the *Mūlasikkhā* § 120⁴⁹ and is recommended by Ven. Nāṇakitti in the *Bhikkhupātimokkhagaṇṭhidīpanī*.⁵⁰ It is not found in the earlier *Khuddasikkhā* § 384 where a specific confession is recommended.⁵¹ It is also not found in the Sp where different wordings of confessing an offence are given; see footnote 53. In Appendix 3 the relevant passages from the *Khuddasikkhā*, etc, are given.

The general all-inclusive confession is thus a later development. Nowadays, it is sometimes said to be done to avoid doubts about offences that a bhikkhu might have unknowingly fallen into. More reasonably, it is said to be done when one is not sure what the class or type of the offence one has fallen into, or when one is not sure about how many offences one has fallen into; see Nḍ 200 n. 2. In the Mahāvagga it is said that if one is unsure that one has fallen into an offence that one then has to tell another bhikkhu that one is unsure, and then confess later when one has become certain, Mv II 27, 2 & 5/Vin I 126. In the meantime, one is to do the Uposatha and listen to the Pātimokkha. In accordance with this regulation, it would be improper to confess an offence when one has doubts about having fallen into it.

Another reasoning that gave rise to the general confession might be that if one confesses many offences while having fallen into one, it is confessed, while if one confesses one offence while having fallen into many they are not confessed. In Sp 1181–82 it is said that that when one confesses a Saṅghādisesa offence that has

⁴⁹ *Mūlasikkhā* § 120: "Āpattidesakena "ahaṃ, bhante, sambahulā nānāvattthukā āpattiyo āpajjīṃ, tā tumhamūle paṭidesemī"ti vatvā paṭiggaṇhantena "passasi, āvuso, tā āpattiyo"ti vutte "āma, bhante, passāmī"ti vatvā puna paṭiggaṇhantena "āyatiṃ, āvuso, saṃvareyyāsī ti vutte "sādhu suṭṭhu, bhante saṃvarissāmī"ti tikkhattum vatvā desetabbaṃ."

⁵⁰ Pg: "... Sabbā tā āpattiyo ārocemī ti vacanaṃ pana Samuccayakkhandhakaṭṭhakathāyaṃ vuttādhippāyaṃ pubbatherehi racitaṃ yadi ce taṃ vatvā ārocetā svārocetā honti." : "The saying 'I announce all offences' has been composed by earlier theras intending (to convey) what has been said in the commentary (= Sp 1181f) to the Samuccayakkhandhaka (Cv III), when having said this the confessed (offences) are well confessed." This additional confession is given in Nḍ 200. Ven. Nāṇakitti quotes both the *Mūlasikkhā* and *Khuddasikkhā*, but gives the *Mūlasikkhā* confession-version first and thus shows his preference for this version.

⁵¹ *Khuddasikkhā* § 384. "Ahaṃ, bhante, ekaṃ thullaccayāpattiṃ āpajjīṃ, taṃ tumhamūle paṭidesemī"ti vatvā tena "passasi, āvuso, taṃ āpattiṃ"ti vutte "āma, bhante, passāmī"ti vatvā puna tena "āyatiṃ, āvuso, saṃvareyyāsī"ti vutte "sādhu suṭṭhu, bhante, saṃvarissāmī" ti vattabbaṃ. "Ahaṃ, bhante, dve thullaccayāpattiyo āpajjīṃ, ahaṃ bhante sambahulā thullaccayāpattiyo āpajjīṃ, tā tumhamūle paṭidesemī"ti vattabbaṃ."

been has been concealed as not concealed, or one long concealed as not long concealed, or confesses one offence while one has fallen into many, that one does not emerge from the offence. On the other hand, if one does it the other way around, i.e., one confesses one not concealed as concealed etc., then one emerges from the offence.⁵² Further, if one confesses a heavy offence as a light one conceals an offence.⁵³

The way general confessions are done differs from *nikāya* to *nikāya*. In the forest sub-sect of the Rāmañña Nikāya in Sri Lanka a very general confession is done that includes all classes of confessable offences: “*sambāhulā nānāvattthukāyo āpattiyo*”: “many offences of various classes”; see Ñd 200–201. In the Thai Dhammayuttikanikāya, and also in some traditions within the Mahānikāya, each class of confessable offences is confessed separately, but specific offences that a bhikkhu remembers are mentioned in his own language to the bhikkhu he confesses with before the formal confession; see BMC 544. In the Thai Mahānikāya at least two versions of the general confession are done. In Burma there is at least one version which slightly differs from the one given in Ñd. For more about confession see Ñd 198–217, BMC 542–44, Ñm 1969 43–46.

The *Padabhājana* on the Nidāna, Mv II 3,8/Vin I 104, comments that an offence can be revealed in the middle of the community, in the middle of a group, or to one person. In the context of Mv II 27,1/Vin I 125–26 the confession is done to one person. However, other contexts seem to suggest that bhikkhus would also confess their offences publicly during the Pātimokkha recitation and other bhikkhus could deal with them then; see Pāc 73: “... *pātimokkhe uddissamāne ...*,” “... while the Pātimokkha is being recited ...”; Cv III 34,2/Vin II 68: “*Dve bhikkhū saṅghādisesaṃ āpannā honti. Te pātimokkhe uddissamāne evaṃ vadanti: Idān’eva ...*” (see Pāc 73) and M III 10:

“There is, brahmin, for the bhikkhus a training precept⁵⁴ declared, a disciplinary code recited, by the Fortunate One, the Knower, the Worthy One, the Seer, the Rightly Awakened One. Those of us who dwell dependent upon the extent of one village-area all gather together in one place on the Observance-day, gathered together we invite the one by whom it is practised/kept up.⁵⁵ If a bhikkhu has an offence, a transgression, while it is being told, *bhaññamāne*,⁵⁶ to them there, we deal with him according to the rule, according to the instruction.”⁵⁷

See Dhirasekera chapter 8 & 9 on this passage. Dhirasekera regards the original function of the Pātimokkha recitation as a kind of trial and suggests that the form of the Pātimokkha, with the request by the reciter in the Nidāna to confess offences or to remain silent and the questions, *anussāvanas*, about the purity of the participants after each section of offences indicates that originally bhikkhus would confess offences during the recitation. Indeed, if offences were not confessed after the *anussāvanas* in the recitation, then it would seem more convenient to have one *anussāvana* after all the offence-sections. As suggested above in the section on the Recitation of the Pātimokkha, it seems that the Pātimokkha is a *ñatticatutthakamma* and that the three questions at the end of each rule section are related the *ñatti* in the Nidāna, where it is said that the *anussāvana* is to be done three times.

Dhirasekera suggests that the form of the Pātimokkha as prescribed by the Uposathakkhandhaka appears to be a ritualised form of an earlier and more practical form in which offences were confessed during the

⁵² Sp 1181–2: *Aññasmiṃ pana āpattivuttthāne idaṃ lakkhaṇaṃ. Yo appaṭicchannaṃ āpattiṃ ‘paṭicchannā’ti vinayakammaṃ karoti, tassa āpatti vuttthāti. Yo paṭicchannaṃ ‘appaṭicchannā’ti vinayakammaṃ karoti, tassa na vuttthāti. Acirappaṭicchannaṃ ‘cirappaṭicchannā’ti karontassa pi vuttthāti, cirappaṭicchannaṃ ‘acirappaṭicchannā’ti karontassa na vuttthāti. Ekaṃ āpattiṃ āpajjitvā ‘sambahulā’ti karontassa pi vuttthāti ekaṃ vinā sambahulānaṃ abhāvato. Sambahulā pana āpajjitvā ‘ekaṃ āpajjin’ti karontassa na vuttthāti.*

⁵³ Sp 1176: *Āvikaronto ca “tuyhaṃ santike ekaṃ āpattiṃ āvikaromī”ti vā “ācikkhāmī”ti vā ārocemī”ti vā “mama ekaṃ āpattiṃ āpannabhāvaṃ jānāhi”ti vā vadatu, “ekaṃ garukāpattiṃ āvikaromī”ti-ādinā vā nayena vadatu, sabbehi pi ākārehi appaṭicchannāva hoti ti Kurundiyaṃ vuttaṃ. Sace pana “lahukāpattiṃ āvikaromī”ti-ādinā nayena vadati, paṭicchannā va hoti. Vatthum āroceti, āpattiṃ āroceti, ubhayaṃ āroceti, tividhena pi ārocitā va hoti.*

⁵⁴ Ñānamoli renders “course of training” in *Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha* (1995) *suttanta* 108 § 10.

⁵⁵ I.e., the Pātimokkha. “*Yassa taṃ vattati.*” Cf. Mv II 17,3/Vin I 116: “*Na me vattati*” : “(The Pātimokkha) is not practised by me.”

⁵⁶ The use of *bhaññamāne* shows that originally the Pātimokkha was spoken not chanted; cf. M III 280 and A III 106. For *yathā dhammo* and *yathāsatta* see Pāc 73.

⁵⁷ *Atthi kho brāhmaṇa tena bhagavatā jānatā arahatā passatā sammāsambuddhena bhikkhūnaṃ sikkhāpadaṃ paññattaṃ pātimokkhaṃ uddiṭṭhaṃ. Te mayaṃ tad-ahuposathe yāvatikā ekaṃ gāmakketthaṃ upanissāya viharāma te sabbe ekajjhaṃ sannipatāma, sannipatitvā yassa taṃ vattati taṃ ajjhessāma. Tasmiṃ te bhaññamāne hoti bhikkhussa āpatti hoti vītikkamo taṃ mayaṃ yathā dhammaṃ yathāsattaṃ kāremā ti.*

recitation. The purpose of this was to create more shame and fear of blame (*hiri-ottappa*) in offenders and to allow the community to judge the conduct of its members in accordance with the authority of the Law and instruction of the Pātimokkha rules. Dhirasekera (pp. 79f. and 95–99) quotes the M III 10 passage and Pāc 73 as further support for his theory that “... the *Uddesa* was no mere recitation of the list of rules but a trial at which the offenders thus discovered were to be judged and dealt with according to the Law.” It should be noted that in the M III 10 passage it is the other bhikkhus who make the bhikkhu who has fallen into an offence act according to the Dhamma, i.e., make him confess. This might indicate that the bhikkhu did not want to see his offence and that the bhikkhus suspended the Pātimokkha for him. The same appears to be the case for the bhikkhu in Pāc 73.

Confession during the recitation would seem rather impractical with large groups of bhikkhus living in large monasteries and this might be the reason why this practice was eventually abandoned (if it ever existed). In the early days of the *Sāsana* most bhikkhus were wanderers living alone in forests rather than in monasteries and one purpose of the Uposatha was to bring bhikkhus together. Since the hermit-bhikkhus could live far apart it would sometimes not be convenient for a forest-dweller to find another bhikkhu nearby to confess to. The Uposatha would be suitable occasion to confess any offences since all the bhikkhus living in an area would come together as is suggested in the Gopakamoggalāna-suttanta above. See also M II 8, where the Buddha says that there are disciples who dwell in distant forest-dwellings and only enter into the midst of the community once in two weeks for the Pātimokkha-recitation.

When the Saṅgha grew in size and became more sedentary, wealthy, and scholarly (see MN 65), the number of unscrupulous bhikkhus who did not behave in accordance with the rules, and did not want to see and confess offences they had fallen into (Vin I 114, M I 445, Sd 12, Vin IV 143), increased and the need must have arisen to to exclude problematic bhikkhus from the Pātimokkha recitation. The emphasis in the Khandhakas on the purity of the participating bhikkhus in the Pātimokkha recitation and confession beforehand, see section on “unqualified persons” below, could be to exclude trouble-makers.

Public confession, even for minor offences, during the recitation would also have been a humiliating experience, see M I 27, and it might have been abandoned to alleviate this.

Although there is nothing comparable to the Pātimokkha in the Jain or other *samaṇa* traditions in India, Jain bhikkhus confessed transgressions of rules to their teacher, *guru*, in private and the confession would be followed by an expiation, *prāyaścitta*, in the form of a penance (*tapas*); see Dutt 72.

In the Dharmaguptaka tradition as practised at the City of Ten Thousand Buddhas in California, the bhikkhus confess individual offences before the Prātimokṣasūtra recitation, such as *saṃghāvaśeṣa* offences, and then do a collective repentance for any acts based on greed, hatred, and delusion done in saṃsāra. Sometimes when a precept has been recited some bhikkhu will come up to repent because he forgot his offence. The other participating bhikkhus then will accept his repentance.

In the Dharmaguptaka tradition as practised by the bhikṣuṇīs of the Hsiang Kuang Temple in Taiwan, all the bhikṣuṇīs do a general confession and repentance ceremony together before the Prātimokṣasūtra recitation; see Wu Yin, 2001, p.122 and 315. Similarly, in the Tibetan Gelukpa tradition all bhikkhus (and novices) do a general confession and repentance ceremony together before the Prātimokṣasūtra recitation; see Tekchok, 1984, pp.31–32, 45–47, 66–69.

Thubten Kalsang Rimpoche writes (referring to the suitable conduct for a bhikṣu): “One should develop in oneself a high regard for special duties of bhikṣu on Full-moon and New moon days. This includes attending the Prātimokṣa recitation in the *sīmā* before which one should confess any breach of the Vinaya rules (which can be confessed) and make a vow not to repeat such faults in the future. The confession is customarily made by all the bhikṣhus together to the Upadhyāya. He questions the assembly thus: “Are you pure?” and each one should reply “Yes, I am pure.” This reply cannot be given in the case of one who has broken some rule and he, prior to the declaration of purity, should privately make an *adhiṣṭhāna* not to break that rule again. Or in exceptional cases, one may go to confess the actual fault to one of the bhikṣhus who has sat in one’s own upasampadā or to any senior and well-respected sthavira (thera).” (“Varṣāvāsa in Tibet,” in *Vassāvāsa* pp.78–79.)

Day, Season, Instructing the Bhikkhunis, Number, and Armslength

The Buddha initially allowed bhikkhus to gather together on the fourteenth or fifteenth, and eighth day of the half-month to speak on Dhamma, but then amended this to a (legal) act of Uposatha that is carried out by reciting the Pātimokkha; Mv II 3,2/Vin I 102. The Pātimokkha should not be formally recited on any day but only on the Uposatha-day once in a half-month, *pakkha*; Mv II 4,1/Vin I 104. There are two Uposatha days: the fourteenth and the fifteenth; Mv II 14,1/Vin I 111. The *Samantapāsādikā* and *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* state that the fourteenth day Uposatha falls on the 3rd and 7th Uposatha of a season.⁵⁸ Uposathas fall on the day preceding the moon's waxing and waning and the two days in the middle of these phases, i.e., the 8th, 15th, 23th, and 30th night of the lunar month in the case of 15th day Uposathas, and on the 8th, 14th, 22nd, and 29th night in the case of 14th day Uposathas. The Uposatha should not be done on a non-Uposatha day, an exception is if it is for the sake of unity/unanimity/harmony (*sāmaggi*), of the Community; Mv X 5,14/Vin I 357. This type of Uposatha is called a *sāmaggi-uposatha* in the Parivāra (Vin V 123) and the commentaries.

The Buddha recommended all the bhikkhus to learn to count the moon-phase/forth-night (*sabbeheva pakkha-gaṇanaṃ uggahetuṃ*) after laypeople criticised the bhikkhus for not knowing it; Mv II 18,1–2/Vin I 117. To avoid that monks don't know that it is Uposatha, a senior monk is to announce it at any time during the day; Mv 19.1.

The announcement of the Uposatha day (*ajj'uposatho paṇṇaraso*) included in the *ñatti* given in the Nidāna of the Pātimokkha is unusual in the sense that it occurs in no other *saṅghakamma ñatti*. The *ajj'uposatho paṇṇaraso* announcement is not found in the Nidāna as given in the Mahāvagga editions (Mv II 3.3/Vin I 102. Be, Ce, Se), but it is found in the *jñapti* in the Prātimokṣasūtras of other early Buddhist schools—see the “Preliminary duties: *pārisuddhi* and *chanda*” section—and it is commented upon in the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī*, which indicates that it must be a very early tradition. Further, it is found in the *ñatti* of the *pārisuddhi-uposatha* for three monks—“*suñantā me āyasmantā, ajjuposatho paṇṇaraso ...*”—at Mv II 26.3/Vin I 124. A footnote in Se Mahāvagga (as given in the Budsir CD) states that all books, except a Sinhalese book, have the *ajj'uposatho paṇṇaraso* clause in the text, but because of the fact that there later (in the Mahāvagga chapter) follows a rule that the Pātimokkha is not to be recited daily and only on the fifteenth or fourteenth. Thus, the clause could not have been part of the *ñatti* when it was laid down. The Thai edition therefore follows the Sinhalese book.⁵⁹

An explicit rule about telling the season in which the Uposatha takes place has not been traced, but in the Mv it is said that the measuring of the season, *utuppamānam*, should be told at an *upasampadākamma*; Mv I 77,1/Vin I 95. It is explained at Sp 1033 as the mentioning of the season, i.e., one of the three Indian seasons (cold, hot, or rainy season).

Laypeople criticised bhikkhus who did not know the number of bhikkhus (in a community) and therefore the Buddha recommended to count the bhikkhus. This is to be done on the day of Uposatha (and if there are a large number of bhikkhus) the number of bhikkhus can be counted by counting by way of (dividing the bhikkhus into) batches/groups (*gaṇa-maggena gaṇetuṃ*) or counting by way of taking tickets (*salākaṃ gahetuṃ*); Mv II 18,3–4/Vin I 117.

There is an offence of wrong-doing for a bhikkhu who does not undertake the exhortation of bhikkhunis after having been authorised by the *bhikkhusaṅgha*; Cv X 9,4–5/Vin II 263–64. Likewise the bhikkhunis have a

⁵⁸ Kkh 2 (Be): *Tattha hemantagimhavassānānaṃ tiṇṇaṃ utūnaṃ tatiyasattamapakkesu dve dve katvā cha cātuddasikā, avasesā atthārāsa pannarasikā ti evaṃ ekasaṃvacchare catuvisati uposathā, idaṃ tāva pakaticārittaṃ. “Anujānāmi, bhikkhave, sakiṃ pakkhassa cātuddase vā pannarase vā pātimokkhaṃ uddisitun”ti vacanato pana “āgantukehi āvāsikānaṃ anuvattitabban”ti ādivacanato ca tathārūpapaccaye sati aññasmimpi cātuddase uposathaṃ kātuṃ vaṭṭati.* “Herein, two times in the third and the seventh fortnights of the 3 seasons of summer, winter, and the rains, (gives) six fourteen day (uposathas), remaining are 18 fifteen day (uposathas), thus in one year there are 24 uposathas. So far, this is the normal practice. But due to the saying: ‘Once on the fourteenth or fifteenth of the fortnight’ (Mv II 4.2/Vin I 104) and due to the saying ‘the visitors have to follow the residents’ (Mv II 34.1/Vin I 132), etc., when there is a cause like that or when there is another, it is proper to do the Uposatha on the fourteenth.”

⁵⁹ *ito paraṃ sīhalapotthakaṃ ṭhapetvā sabbapotthakesu ajjuposatho paṇṇasarasoti pālī paññāyati. sā pana yasmā idha divaso na tāva anuññāto hoti tathā hi vakkhati tena kho pana samayena bhikkhū bhagavatā pātimokkhuddeso anuññātoti devasikaṃ pātimokkhaṃ uddisantīti ādiṃ sace idha divasaṃ anujāneyya te bhikkhū devasikaṃ na uddiseyyuṃ tasmā idha na yujjati divasassa pana anuññātakālato paṭṭhāya vaṭṭati. ayampāna sīhalapotthakaṃ anuvattitvā sodhitoti veditabbo.* (Se p.203)

pācittiya rule, Bhī Pāc 59, stating that they are to ask two things from the *bhikkhusaṅgha* every half month: the questioning about the Uposatha, and the coming for the instruction.⁶⁰

According to the Kkh 6 “Whatever” refers to at least four bhikkhus being within armslength in a boundary (*sīmā*) Vin IV 315. There is only one Canonical reference about bhikkhus having to be within armslength during a *saṅghakamma*—in the Padabhājana on Pāc 80, Vin IV 154—and it can be taken to apply for all *saṅghakammās*. The padabhājana states that a bhikkhu commits the *pācittiya* offence when he goes away more than one armslength (-distance) from the assembly; “*parisāya hatthapāsāṃ ... vijahite*.”

Sīmā

The validity of the legal act of Uposatha (*uposathakamma*) is dependent on the coming together in one appointed place of all the bhikkhus living in one residence (that is surrounded by a formally authorised boundary), therefore it is of use to list in brief the relevant rules found in the Uposathakkhandhaka regarding the place where the Uposatha is to be held.

In order to prevent bhikkhus from breaking up into groups the Buddha forbade bhikkhus to recite the Pātimokkha to their own companies (*parisā*) and prescribed a legal act of Uposatha for united ones⁶¹ (*samaggānaṃ*); Mv II 5,1/Vin I 105. This unity is limited to one residence (*ekāvāsa*); Mv II 5,2/Vin I 105.

A residence is limited by a boundary (*sīmā*) that is to be formally authorised through a legal act (*saṅghakamma*). Preceding this legal act the (boundary-) markers (*nimitta*) are mentioned/described (*kitteti*). There are eight kinds of boundary markers: hills/mountains, rocks, forests, (individual) trees, roads, termite-mounts, rivers, (areas covered with) water (such as lakes). After this mentioning of the markers, one competent bhikkhu is to make a formal motion followed by an announcement (*ñattidutiyakamma*) through which a boundary as far as the markers (extend) all around is authorised for the single Uposatha for the same communion; Mv II 6,1–2/Vin I 106.

The boundary can be three *yojanas* at the most; Mv II 7,1/Vin I 106. (Sp 1046: One and a half *yojana* from the centre of the residence in each direction.)

To avoid confusion with regards the place where the Uposatha is held, an Uposatha-hall (*uposathāgāra*) i.e., a building or a cave, should be formally appointed through an announcement followed by a motion; Mv II 8,1/Vin I 107.

No more than one Uposatha-hall can be formally authorised in one residence. If there is more than one Uposatha-hall in one residence, then the extra one(s) have to be withdrawn by a formal announcement followed by a motion; Mv II 8,3–4/Vin I 107.

If there are too many bhikkhus to fit into the Uposatha-hall, then it is allowable that bhikkhus sit outside and listen to the Pātimokkha from there; Mv II 9,1/Vin I 108.

An area around the Uposatha-hall can be formally authorised for this purpose through first mentioning the markers (delimiting the area) and then having one bhikkhu make a formal announcement followed by a motion; Mv II 8,4/Vin I 107.

Senior bhikkhus (*theras*) are to gather together before the junior bhikkhus on the Uposatha-day; Mv II 10,1/Vin I 108.

If there are several residences, *vihāras*, sharing the same *sīmā* then the Uposatha is to be held by all the bhikkhus together after having gathered in one (agreed upon) residence or in the residence where the most senior bhikkhu lives; Mv II 11,1/Vin I 108.

The Uposatha should not be done by a non-united (*vagga*)⁶² community; Mv II 11,1/Vin I 108. When there is no formally authorised and established boundary (*asammatasīmā*), then the boundary of the village or town depending on which a bhikkhu lives is (the boundary for) the same communion and the single Uposatha; Mv II 12,7/Vin I 111.

In the case that a bhikkhu lives in a non-village area, a wilderness (*arañña*), (the boundary for) the same

⁶⁰ *Upasathapucchakaṇ-ca ovādupasaṅkamaṇ-ca*; Mv II 26,1/Vin I 124. Cf. the Nandakovādasuttanta; M III 270.

⁶¹ BD IV 136: “all together”; see the note on *samagga* at Sd 10.

⁶² BD: “incomplete”; see the note on *samagga* at Sd 10.

communion and single Uposatha is seven *abbhantara*⁶³ all around; Mv II 12,7/Vin I 111.

All (the area in a river) river, sea, and lake is without boundary. In a river, sea, or lake (the boundary for) the same communion is (the area) that an average-height man can throw water all around (i.e., the area he can throw water around when standing in one place); Mv II 12,7/Vin I 111.⁶⁴

Boundaries can not be connected or made to overlap. When authorising a *sīmā* an interspace (between the *sīmās*) is to be set aside; Mv II 13,1–2/Vin I 111.

In the Vinaya-commentaries the original regulations regarding *sīmās* have been clarified, refined, and also expanded upon. Further, new methods, e.g. the method for describing boundary markers, are laid down. Whereas there is some flexibility in the original regulations, i.e., they can be open to different interpretations, the commentaries try to eliminate these “grey areas” and instead regulate, define, and elucidate everything. For example, in the last regulation the exact size of the interspace between two *sīmās* is not defined and is left open for the bhikkhus to decide what is suitable, but the commentary states it is to be another 7 *abbhantaras* in the case the *sīmās* are in between not formally authorised wilderness-*sīmās* and another space a man can throw water around in case the *sīmās* are in water; see Kkh 10–11.

New terminology is also used in the commentaries, e.g. the *sammata-sīmā* is called *baddhasīmā* (bound-boundary) and the *asammata-sīmā* is called *abaddhasīmā*. This *baddhasīmā* is due to the new procedure of connecting or binding (*bandhati*) *sīmā* markers instead of the original procedure of simply mentioning them (*kitteti*).

Nowadays, the Uposatha is usually held in an Uposatha-hall in a so-called *khaṇḍasīmā*, which literally means a “broken off boundary,” i.e., a subsidiary boundary. This too is a commentarial development and the *khaṇḍasīmā* is authorised in order to avoid that unaware bhikkhus would enter a large *sīmā* while a *saṅghakamma* is going on and thus invalidate it.⁶⁵ It is also to avoid the problem of having to hold a *saṅghakamma* in the presence an ill monk who can not come, which can be problematic if they are in separate places in the *sīmā*.

The *khaṇḍasīmā* is thus a small *sīmā* within a larger *sīmā* which is therefore called a *mahāsīmā*: “large/greater boundary” in the commentaries. According to the Uposathakkhandhaka an interspace has to be set aside between different *sīmās*, see above, and, according to the commentarial regulations, in the same manner an interspace (of about 60 cm) is to be made between the *khaṇḍasīmā* and the *mahāsīmā*. For more information on the complex and controversial subject of *sīmā*, see Kkh chapter 1, Sp 1035–1056, Kieffer-Pülz, and BMC II chapter 13.

Common Offences

The term “common offences,” *sabhāgāpattiya*, refers to an offence, such as eating in the wrong time, which two or more bhikkhus, or all of the bhikkhus of a community, have fallen into. It is an offence of wrong-doing, *dukkata*, to confess an offence to another bhikkhu with the same offence and it is also a wrong-doing for the bhikkhu who acknowledges/accepts the common offence. Instead, such an offence common to both bhikkhus has to be confessed to a bhikkhu who has not fallen into the offence; Vin I 126/Mv II 27,3.

If all the bhikkhus in one monastery have fallen into the same offence then this confession can be done by sending one of the bhikkhus to another community to confess the offence there and come back, or if that is not possible, to make an announcement that the community has fallen into a common offence and shall confess it when a pure bhikkhu visits. After this announcement the Pātimokkha is to be carried out.

⁶³ According to Sp 654 one *abbhantara* is 28 forearm lengths, *hattha* (the length from the elbow to the fingertip). Taking a *hattha* to be about 40 cm this gives a length of about 80 m for 7 *abbhantaras*. See BD II 1-li. The Thai interpretation as given in the Vinayamukha (Entrance to the Vinaya III p.44) is that an *abbhantara* is 14 m., giving a length about 100 m.

⁶⁴ This *asammata-sīmā* is important, for example, when bhikkhus are visiting a village or town where there is no monastery, or when travelling or staying in a wilderness, or when travelling on a ship.

⁶⁵ *Anupasampanna* persons can enter a *sīmā* without invalidating a *saṅghakamma*, however, they can not come within *hatthapāsa*, except if one is receiving *upasampadā* when he is supposed to be within *hatthapāsa*.

Persons Unqualified to Participate in the Pātimokkha Recitation

A “person to be excluded” refers to the Buddha’s order that the Pātimokkha should not be recited in the presence of any persons who are not in communion with the bhikkhusaṅgha such as sāmaṇeras, bhikkhunīs, etc.

At Mv II 36/Vin I 135–36 the Buddha orders that the Pātimokkha is not be recited to an assembly where persons who are not in communion⁶⁶, *asaṃvāsa*, are seated within *hatthapāsa*: householders (Mv II 16,8/Vin I 115), bhikkhunīs, male and female novices, persons who have left the training, those who have committed an offence involving defeat, those who have been suspended/taken out⁶⁷ for not seeing an offence and are not yet restored (*anosārita*) by the community, those who have been suspended for not making amends (*appaṭikata*) for their offences etc., those who have been suspended for not giving up their bad views⁶⁸, etc., those living in communion by stealth⁶⁹, those who have departed to another (non-Buddhist) sect, animals, matricides, parricides, killers of *arahants*, those who have raped bhikkhunīs, schismatics, shedders of blood (of the Buddha), hermaphrodites, and eunuchs.

A novice who has seduced a bhikkhunī is to be expelled (*nāsetum*); Mv I 60/Vin I 85.

Persons not to be admitted into the Bhikkhusaṅgha, and if admitted to be expelled (*nāsetabbo*), are: the eunuch (*paṇḍaka*); the one who associates by stealth; an animal, the matricide and the patricide; the killer of an arahant; the seducer of a bhikkhunī⁷⁰; the hermaphrodite; Mv I 61–68/Vin I 85–89.

Suspending the Pātimokkha

The Buddha, not wishing to recite the Pātimokkha in the presence of a bhikkhu who presumably (judging from the terms by which the person is described) had committed a pārājika offence, ordered that no one who has committed an offence should listen to the Pātimokkha-recitation and that the Pātimokkha-recitation can be suspended for a bhikkhu who has fallen into an offence; Vin II 240. If a bhikkhu sees, hears, or suspects that another bhikkhu has committed an offence, he can in the midst of the assembly present at the Uposathakamma announce that that bhikkhu has committed an offence and suspend him from attending the Pātimokkha recitation⁷¹. The Pātimokkha can then not be recited in that bhikkhu’s presence, i.e., the bhikkhu has to go away out of *hatthapāsa*. It is not said what a bhikkhu who has committed a lesser offence has to do when he has been suspended from attending the Pātimokkha. Maybe what is meant is that only a bhikkhu who does not want to see or amend his offence, whether coarse or minor, should be suspended.

At Vin II 240–47 there are ten lists with legally valid and invalid reasons for suspending the Pātimokkha, *Pātimokkha-ṭhapanā*, ascending from one to ten reasons. At A V 70 the Buddha relates also ten reasons to Upāli, but these ten do not completely correspond to those in the Cullavagga.

In the sutta to Upāli only the various types of unqualified persons seated in the assembly—any persons who have left the training, those who have committed an offence involving defeat, persons not fully admitted into the Bhikkhu-community, eunuchs, and those who have seduced a bhikkhunī⁷²—and unfinished legal talk about their presence, are given as reasons. In the Cullavagga different reasons are given that include even bhikkhus who have fallen into a wrong-doing.

The fact that ten lists are given in the Cullavagga might indicate that the reciters of the Vinaya-piṭaka were not unanimous about what the right reasons were, or that the reasons were originally less strict and later—when there were more disputes and schisms in the Saṅgha—became more strict. The reasons of falling

⁶⁶ See Ann Heirman, 1995.

⁶⁷ *Ukkhittaka*, cf. BD 28 n. 3, Mv I 79,2/Vin I 97, Mv IX 5/ Vin I 323 ff., IV 137, 218.

⁶⁸ Cf. Pāc 69 where a bhikkhu who knowingly recites the Pātimokkha in the presence of such a bhikkhu commits a Pācittiya.

⁶⁹ *Theyyasaṃvāsa*, i.e., those pretending to be bhikkhus for the sake of gain; see explanation at *theyya* at Pār 2.

⁷⁰ Here robbers (*cora*) were the culprits in the origin-story.

⁷¹ Vin II 240–41: “... *tasmiṃ puggale sammukhībhūte saṅghamajjhe udāharitabbaṃ: “Suṇātu me bhante saṅgho. Itthannāmo puggalo sāpattiko, tassa pātimokkhaṃ ṭhapemi, na tasmiṃ sammukhībhūte pātimokkhaṃ uddisitabban-ti ṭhapitaṃ hoti pātimokkhan-ti.”*”

⁷² *Bhikkhunīdūsaka*: “seducer of a bhikkhunī” or “rapist of a bhikkhunī”, H.: “seducer of nuns.” The term *dūsaka* lit. means ‘spoiler’, see Sd 13, but here it is a synonym for a “seducer.” “Rapist” would be better in some contexts; i.e., the origin-story to Pd 4, but it also seems to include voluntary intercourse.

away from virtue, conduct, livelihood, and view⁷³ in Cv IX 3,3/Vin II 241–42 might correspond to the reasons in Mv II, 36,2/Vin I 135f for making a bhikkhu a “suspended one” (*ukkhittaka bhikkhu*).

The Invitation by the Elder

When the bhikkhu/bhikkhus have gone through the preliminary duties the senior bhikkhu makes a formal invitation to recite the Pātimokkha; see Be, Mi Se, Nd 32, and a slightly different version in Nm/Mm Se 16.

This invitation is based on a regulation that one who recites the Pātimokkha uninvited, *anajjhittā*, incurs a *dukkata* offence; Mv II 16, 8/Vin I 115: “... *chabbaggiyā bhikkhū saṅghamajjhe anajjhittā pātimokkhaṃ uddisanti. Na bhikkhave anajjhittena pātimokkhaṃ uddisitabbaṃ ... anujānāmi therādheyya pātimokkhaṃ.*”⁷⁴

The Pātimokkha is to be assigned by the (most) senior bhikkhu (*therādheyyaṃ Pātimokkhaṃ*), when the *thera* is not able to do so since he is foolish and unskilled and does not know the Uposatha or the Pātimokkha then the Buddha allowed the Pātimokkha to be assigned to another competent bhikkhu (*tassādheyyaṃ*); Mv II 17,2/Vin I 116.

A simple request appears to have been made originally as the Mv mentions that monks invited the senior bhikkhu, or another bhikkhu, to recite the Pātimokkha by saying: “Let the Venerable Sir recite the Pātimokkha.”

Te theram ajjhesanti, ‘uddisatu, bhante, thero pātimokkhan-ti. ... Eten’eva upāyena yāva saṅghanavakam ajjhesanti, uddisatu āyasmā pātimokkhan-ti. (Mv II 17/ Vin I 116)

The Sp and Kkh do not mention that the invitation to another bhikkhu should be made by the formal request as found in the modern Pātimokkha manuals and nothing comparable to this formal request is found in the introductions to the Prātimokṣasūtras. This formal invitation is first found in the medieval Vinaya summary-manual called the *Mūlasikkhā* (JPTS I 129):

*“Pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni samādapetvā desitāpattikassa samaggassa bhikkhusaṅghassa anumatiyā pātimokkhaṃ uddisituṃ ārādhanaṃ karoma.”*⁷⁵

“Having made to undertake the preparations and preliminary duties we make the invitation to recite the Disciplinary Code with the approval of the united community whose offences have been confessed.”

Preliminary Duties in the Introductions to the Prātimokṣasūtras

In the Prātimokṣasūtras preserved in Buddhist Sanskrit and Chinese the preliminary duties are mentioned in the section of the introduction that precedes the section corresponding to the Theravādin Pātimokkha-nidāna.

In the Nidāna of the Mahāsaṅghika-lokottaravādin Prātimokṣasūtra⁷⁶ the reciter mentions the day, how much of the season has passed and is left, the absence of persons who are not fully admitted (into the Community) and unsuitable persons (matricides etc.), the number of bhikkhus that reached within the boundary (*sīmā*). He makes known which bhikkhu is the conveyor of the consent (and purity) of the bhikkhunīs⁷⁷, the size of the boundary, the ten reasons for establishing the training precepts and the Pātimokkha by the Buddha, and he also asks for the announcing of the consent and purity of absent bhikkhus.

The Sarvāstivādin reciter mentions the season, how many months of the season have past and how many are left, the day, the absence of persons who are not fully admitted (into the Community), and that the community is united/living in concord. He does not mention the number of bhikkhus, but he mentions that the bhikkhus who are absent have conveyed their purity and consent.⁷⁸

⁷³ *Sīla-*, *ācāra-*, and *diṭṭhi-vipatti*. Defined in Mv IV 16,12/Vin I 172.

⁷⁴ The correct reading here is *therādheyya* in line with *tassādheyya* below at Mv II 17,2, not *therādhi* (Ee). In Skt *ādheya*, see MW, means “to be assigned”, “to be attributed”, “... given.” Cf. M III 10: “... *yassa taṃ vattati taṃ ajjhesāma* ...” : “... he by whom it is practised we invite”

⁷⁵ For variant readings see the Appendix I.

⁷⁶ See Taita 6, BV 64, Dhiraṣekera 104, and BMD p.46. Cf. above “Preliminary duties: *pārisuddhi* and *chanda*,” where parts of the Mā-L Nidāna are quoted.

⁷⁷ I.e., the bhikkhu who has accepted their consent and purity is to convey it and also is to convey their request for the instruction. After this the instructor of bhikkhunīs is to be appointed; see BV 64 p.96. Cf. BMD p.46, n. 7.

⁷⁸ See CSP 69–71, Finot 13–16, and PrMoSa p.157. Quoted above in: “Preliminary duties: *pārisuddhi* and *chanda*.”

The Mūlasarvāstivādin reciter mentions the day and the season, and he asks for the announcing of the purity and consent of the absent bhikkhus.⁷⁹

In the Mā-L and Mū Prātimokṣasūtras, the reciter asks at the end of this section, which precedes the Pāli Nidāna section, what preliminary duties are to be done. The response is that there is little to be done.⁸⁰ There is no indication what exactly these preliminary duties are. In the Sa sūtra the reciter asks what should be done first, i.e., the preliminary duties, and, according to a footnote in the Chinese translation, one bhikkhu is to reply that it is the Uposatha-day and that the Prātimokṣasūtra should be recited; see Finot 15 and PrMoSa p.157.

The Dharmaguptaka Prātimokṣasūtra, as preserved in two Chinese versions, has a dialogue: the leader/reciter asks the assembly whether the bhikkhus have assembled⁸¹, whether things are arranged (seats, water, sweeping etc.), whether there is any person who is not fully admitted into the Community in the assembly, whether the consent and purity of absent bhikkhus has been conveyed, whether the bhikṣuṇīs have been instructed (mistranslated in BPP), and what the present business/purpose is, i.e., to recite the Pātimokkha⁸².

In the present day Taiwanese Dharmaguptaka Bhikṣuṇī tradition two bhikṣuṇīs are appointed for the *Poṣadha*; see Wu Yin, 2001, p.113. One recites the *Prātimokṣasūtra* and the other responds on behalf of the assembly to the questions the reciter asks in the introduction. The questions the reciter asks are the same as the ones for the Dharmaguptaka bhikṣus, except that there is no question on instructing the bhikṣuṇīs, and there is a question by the reciter after the announcement, *ñatti*, i.e., after mentioning the type of uposatha day and asking whether the community is ready for the recitation; see Wu Yin, 2001, pp.113–120. The question is whether this announcement will do. In Tsomo, 1997, p.33 the question is whether this is the *karman*. In the other Dhg Prātimokṣasūtra translations this question is not found and in the translation given in Beal (1871) the title “Commencement” is given after this section indicating that the Pātimokkha starts here.

The dialogues in the introductions to the other traditions might indicate that the dialogue about the preliminary duties done in some of the Theravādin monastic groups might have an ancient origin. It is noteworthy that in all the *sūtras* the dialogue is between the reciter and the rest of the assembly, not between two bhikkhus, and that it is quite short compared to the modern Theravāda versions.

The mention of the preliminary duties preceding the Theravāda Pātimokkha recitation might also indicate an ancient tradition since the reciter mentions the season etc. in the introductions to the *Prātimokṣasūtras*.

The introductions, and conclusions, to the *Prātimokṣasūtras* include prose-passages and verses about the benefits of keeping the Pātimokkha rules etc. These verses are not found in the Pāli Nidāna. However, before and/or after the Pātimokkha recitation modern Theravāda bhikkhus, depending on the monastery and the sect (*nikāya*) to which they belong, will usually chant some verses and a recollection based on a short instruction by the Buddha (found at M I 33 and elsewhere) encouraging the bhikkhus to be endowed with *sīla* and the Pātimokkha-restraint; see Ñm 88 and Dickson 64–69.

The Relation between the Nidāna and the Padabhājana

Although, there are independent palmleaf manuscripts and printed editions of the Pātimokkha, including the Nidāna, almost the whole of the Pātimokkha, including the section-introductions, section-conclusions, chapter-divisions, concluding remarks, and the Pātimokkha conclusion, is embedded in the Suttavibhaṅga. Only the Nidāna is not found in the Suttavibhaṅga, instead, it is found embedded in the Uposathakkhandhaka of the Mahāvagga (Mv II 3,3/Vin I 102f).

⁷⁹ See BMD p.47, Dhirasekera, 1982, 104, CSP 69–73. (In the Tibetan Gelukpa tradition, which follows the Mū Vinaya, importance is still attached to bringing the purity and consent of absent bhikkhus before the recitation of the Pātimokkha, although usually only the Nidāna is recited; see Tekchok, 1984, pp.31–32, 45–47, 66–69, and also Tsomo, 1997, p.133.

⁸⁰ Quoted above in “Preliminary duties: *pārisuddhi* and *chanda*.”

⁸¹ = Beal 207. In BPP, Tsomo, 1997, p.33, and Wu Yin, 2001, p.118, the question is whether the community is living in harmony. (See Vin IV 52: “*Samagg’attha bhaganiyo ti?*” : “Are you united sisters?”) This is probably due to these being translations of different Chinese versions.

⁸² See Beal 207–08, BPP 3, Wu Yin, 2001, pp.113–121, Tsomo, 1997, p.32–33.

A terse word for word commentary on the words in the Pātimokkha rules in the Suttavibhaṅga and the Pātimokkha-nidāna in the Mahāvagga has been included in those two works. Rhys Davids and Oldenberg (RD & O) appropriately call it the “Old Commentary”; see *Vinaya Texts* I xvi.

In the Vinaya commentaries this word for word commentary is called *Padabhājana* or *padabhājanīya*: the “dividing of words (of a phrase)” or “division of a sentence,” i.e., treating each word in a phrase separately”; see PED.

RD & O state that they do not know one phrase uncommented upon by the old commentary, but they overlooked that in the Nidāna the phrase “*Kiṃ saṅghassa pubbakiccaṃ? Pārisuddhiṃ ... ārocetha.*” is, for some reason, not commented upon by the old commentary; see “[Some remarks on the pubbakaranapubbakicca.](#)” The *adhikaraṇasamathas* are also not commented upon. Further, RD & O do not question why the Nidāna is in the Mahāvagga and not in the Suttavibhaṅga. See above section “[Sutta and Suttavibhaṅga](#)” for more on the Padabhājana.

This type of commentary is only found in the earlier parts of the Pāli Canon commenting upon the Pātimokkha rules in the Suttavibhaṅga, and also in the Mahāvagga where it comments upon the introduction of the Pātimokkha, the Nidāna, at Mv II 3,4–8./Vin I 103–04. However, similar types of commentary are found elsewhere in the Canon. A more extensive style of Canonical commentary is found in the Niddesa⁸³, the Canonical commentary on the Aṭṭhakavagga and Pārāyanavagga of the Suttanipāta. It is likely that these two *vaggas* were originally independent works. Similar commentaries are found in the Jātaka-aṭṭhakaṭṭhā, the Paṭisambhidāmagga, and the the last portion of the *Nikkhepaṇḍa* of the Dhammasaṅgaṇi.⁸⁴

The old word-commentary could have been recited at first as a separate text and when the Canon was written down the old commentary and the Pātimokkha, including the reciter’s questions etc., were made to form the Suttavibhaṅga. The Nidāna was not included in the Suttavibhaṅga for some reason. Perhaps because it was necessary to be included in the Uposathakkhandhaka to give the proper starting-procedure for the Pātimokkha recitation.

Strictly speaking, the Nidāna is not part of the Pātimokkha as it is said in the Nidāna: “... I shall recite the disciplinary code. Let all of us (who are being) present carefully listen and pay attention to it.” “... *pātimokkham uddisissāmi ... tam sabbe va ... manasikaroma.*” This indicates that what follows, i.e., the rules, are considered to be the Pātimokkha, not the Nidāna itself. Maybe this is the reason why the Nidāna is not included in the Suttavibhaṅga since the Suttavibhaṅga is just the analysis (*vibhaṅga*) of the Pātimokkha clauses/rules, the *suttas*. The conclusion of the Pātimokkha is found in the Suttavibhaṅga though.

There are also *nidānas* preceding the Prātimokṣasūtras of other schools, which also proves the antiquity of the Pāli Nidāna. In the Vinayas of other schools what is corresponding to the Pāli Pātimokkhanidāna is, besides being found preceding the Prātimokṣasūtras of all the below mentioned schools (including the motion [*jñāpti/ñatti*]), only found in the Poṣadhavastu of the Dharmaguptaka school and the Mahīśāsaka school (both preserved in Chinese translations).

In the Dharmaguptaka Poṣadhavastu the same introduction as the Pāli is found without the motion (*jñāpti*), (T 1428, p.817c4–11). Like in the Pāli Uposathakkhandhaka the motion is followed by an analysis of words and concepts that are used in the introduction or are related to the introduction. The Dhg analysis is less systematic than the Pāli analysis (*padabhājana*), (T 1428, p.817c11–25). The Nidāna motion is added

⁸³ It is noteworthy that the Niddesa sometimes uses the same wording as the Suttavibhaṅga’s Padabhājana, i.e., the explanation of *āyasmā/āyasmanto* is exactly the same in the Nidāna’s Padabhājana (Vin I 103) and in the Niddesa (Nid I 138), i.e., “*Āyasmanto ti piyavacanam-etam garuvacanam-etam sagāraavasappatissādhivacanam-etam āyasmanto ti.*” Maybe both were composed by the same author or one was copied and used by the other. Cf. “*ekaggacitta avikkhittacitta avisāhaṭacitta*” at Vin I 103 and Nid II 479 etc. As far as I know no research has been done on the word-commentaries found in the Canon and their relationship to each other.

⁸⁴ The word-commentary on the Jātaka verses is found in the Jātaka commentary but it also seems to have been an independent work originally.

In the Paṭisambhiddamagga, Paṭis I 172–75ff, a word-commentary on Th 548 and part of the Ānāpānasati-suttanta is found, and in Paṭis II 19–20 there is a word-commentary on an untraced quotation (The first part is in S IV 189 but the latter part nowhere else.).

The same style of commentary (on verses) was also used by other early Buddhist traditions, i.e., found among the Kharoṣṭhī birchbark manuscripts of the British Library is a word-by-word commentary, called *nideśa*, on verses which have parallels in the Pāli Theragāthā etc; see Salomon, 1999, p.26–30.

separately, without the rest of the introduction, at the end of the Dharmaguptaka Poṣadhavastu (T 1428, p.821a29–b2).

In the Poṣadhavastu of the Mahīśāsaka school the introduction including the motion is found; (T 1421 p.122a7–14). This introduction is followed by an explanation of the term *prātimokṣa*.

In the Vinayas of the Mahāsaṅghika school (in the Chinese translation), the Sarvāstivādin school (in the Chinese translation), and the Mūlasarvāstivādin school (in Sanskrit [i.e., the version found in the Gilgit mss] and in the Chinese translation) there is nothing corresponding to the Pāli Nidāna. It is neither found in the *Sūtravibhaṅga* or in the *Poṣadhavastu* in the *Skandhakas* of these schools.⁸⁵

To sum up:

A. The Nidāna including the *ñatti/jñapti* is found preceding the Prātimokṣasūtras of all schools, including the Theravādin Pātimokkha.

B. However, besides the Prātimokṣasūtras and the Pātimokkha, the Nidāna is only found in the Uposathakkhandhaka/Poṣadhavastu of the Theravāda, Dharmaguptaka, and Mahīśāsaka schools.

C. In these three schools the Nidāna is followed by a word-analysis of which the Theravāda analysis is the most systematic and comprehensive, and the Mahīśāsaka analysis the most incomplete.

The Pātimokkha and its Meaning

The Pātimokkha consists of two hundred and twenty training precepts (*sikkhāpada*): 7 *pārājika*, 13 *saṅghādisesa*, 2 *aniyata*, 30 *nissaggiya pācittiya*, 92 *pācittiya*, 4 *pāṭidesanīya*, and 75 *sekhiya*.

The number of two hundred and twenty seven rules, which some modern scholars give, is incorrect. The seven *adhikaraṇasamatha-dhammas* are ways of settling legal issues and can therefore not be counted as training precepts. In the Suttavibhaṅga there is not any Padabhājana comment on the *adhikaraṇasamathas* and this also indicates their non-*sikkhāpada* status. It might also suggest that their inclusion in the Pātimokkha was a later addition.

Buddhaghosa therā did not include the seven *adhikaraṇasamathadhamma* in the Mahāvibhaṅga (= Bhikkhuvibhaṅga): “Thus the Great Analysis is two hundred and twenty training training rules ...”: “*Evam vīsādhikāni dve sikkhāpadasatāni mahāvibhaṅgo ti ...*”; D-a I 13.

In a suttanta in the Aṅguttara Nikāya “more than hundred and fifty” are given as the number of rules that come up for recitation. A I 230: “Venerable Sir, more than 150 training precepts come up for recitation every half-month.”: “*Sādhikam-idaṃ, bhante, diyaḍḍhasikkhāpadasataṃ anvaddhamāsaṃ uddesaṃ āgacchati..*” As the commentary⁸⁶ suggests, this could be an earlier reckoning from the period when the Buddha was regularly laying down new rules. (See also MN 65/M I 44–45 where Ven. Bhaddāli asks why there were fewer rules before.) However, it could also be that the 75 sekhiyas were originally not included in the Pātimokkha or were not considered and counted as full training rules. The divergence in the number of Sekhiya rules in the early Buddhist schools also indicates this. (Note that 150 + 75 = 225, which approximates the number of rules in the Pm.) It could also be a round number, like the number 500 which is often used to denote a large group of monks in the Pali Canon.

The exact meaning and derivation of the word *pātimokkha* is uncertain. Several meanings and etymologies and word-plays are given by the ancient commentators and the modern translators and scholars. The *pātimokkha* in terms of a word, as well as a code of discipline and the recitation of it, is unique to the Buddhist tradition and no other Indian religious traditions, such as the Jain tradition (which has *sūtras* with rules but no Pātimokkha recitation or the like) have anything corresponding to it; see Dutt 72.

The Padabhājana gives an etymology based on the word *mukha*: entrance: “*Pātimokkhan-ti ādiṃ etaṃ mukhaṃ etaṃ pamukhaṃ etaṃ kusalānaṃ dhammānaṃ*.”: “The Pātimokkha: this is the start, this is the entrance/ front/face, this is the forerunner of good states.”

⁸⁵ The details regarding the Nidānas in the Chinese translations of the Vinayas have been kindly supplied to me by Dr. Ann Heirman of the University of Gent, Belgium. Cf. the references in Frauwallner, 1956, p.79.

⁸⁶ AA: “*Diyaḍḍhasikkhāpadasatan-ti paññāsādhikāni sikkhāpadasataṃ. Tasmiṃ samaye paññattāni sikkhāpadān’eva sandhāy’etaṃ vuttaṃ*.”: “... : more than a hundred and fifty training precepts. This has been said with regards the training precepts declared at that time.

As Horner notes in BD IV 133 n. 2, this seems to be more a word-play than an etymology. The same counts for the following commentarial etymologies.

At D-a II 479 three etymologies are given; the first one is based on the word *mukha*: entrance and the next two on the root √*muc*: “releases”: “*Yaṃ taṃ atimokkhaṃ atipamokkhaṃ uttamasīlaṃ, pāti vā sugatibhayehi⁸⁷ makkheti duggatibhayehi, yo vā naṃ pāti taṃ makkheti ti; pātimokkhaṃ ti vuccati*”: “That which is the very front, the very foremost⁸⁸, the highest virtue. Or: it protects one from (*pāti*: √*pā* + *a*) the fears of good bourns (and) delivers one from the fears of bad bourns. Or: it delivers the one who protects it, thus it is called the *pātimokkha*.”

Other commentarial etymologies & word-plays are:

Vism 16 & Vibh-a: 330: “*Pātimokkhasaṃvaraṃvuto ti ettha pātimokkhan-ti sikkhāpadasīlaṃ, tañ-hi yo naṃ pāti rakkhati, taṃ makkheti mocayati āpāyikādīhi dukkhehi, tasmā pātimokkhan-ti vuccati. Saṃvaraṇaṃ saṃvaro, kāyikavācasikassa avītikamass’etaṃ nāmaṃ. Pātimokkham-eva saṃvaro pātimokkhasaṃvaro, tena pātimokkhasaṃvarena saṃvuto pātimokkhasaṃvaraṃvuto upagato samannāgato ti attho*.”:

“*Pātimokkhasaṃvaraṃvuto*: restrained with the *Pātimokkha* restraint’: here *pātimokkhaṃ* is the virtue of the training precept, for it delivers that one who protects (*pāti*) and guards it, it delivers one from the sufferings starting with hell.⁸⁹ Therefore it is said *pātimokkhaṃ*. Restraining, *saṃvaraṇa* (action-noun), is restraint, *saṃvara*, this is the designation for the physical and verbal non-transgression. The *pātimokkhaṃ* is restraint (i.e., a Kammadhāraya cpd, one thing being the other) , therefore *Pātimokkha* restraint. *Pātimokkhasaṃvaraṃvuto* is being restrained with the *Pātimokkha*-restraint, undertaken, endowed with, is the meaning.

Kkh 2: “*Pātimokkham: pa-ati-mokkhaṃ ati-pa-mokkhaṃ ati-seṭṭhaṃ ati-uttaman-ti*.”: “*Pātimokkhaṃ*: that which is the very very front, the very very foremost, the very best, the very highest.” The prefix *ati-* here means “very,” “extremely.”

Pa- is an intensifying prefix and can also be translated as “very.” The Kkh explanation, or rather word-play, suggests that *pāti-* in *pātimokkha* is an inversion of the prefixes *ati-* and *pa-*.

Vibh 511 (quoted in Sp 787): “*Pātimokkhan-ti sīlaṃ patitṭhā ādi caraṇaṃ saṃyamo saṃvaro makkhaṃ pamokkhaṃ⁹⁰ kusalānaṃ dhammānaṃ samāpattiyā*.”: “*Pātimokkhaṃ*: the base founded on (or beginning with) virtue (cf. S V 143), the conduct, the control, the restraint, the front, the forerunner for the attainment of wholesome states.”

These commentarial etymologies imply that Buddhaghosa made use of manuscripts with the reading *pāti-mokkha*, rather than the Thai reading *pāṭi-mokkha*, and this gives further support for *pātimokkha* as the correct reading.

What the explanations also imply is that traditionally the word *pātimokkha* is regarded as a neuter noun, not a masculine noun, as every explanation above gives it as a neuter form. This is also attested by the plural *pātimokkhāni*; e.g. in “*ubhayāni ... pātimokkhāni svāgatāni honti*” at Vin I 65. This is why in the titles and the conclusion of *Pātimokkha* editions and manuscripts the neuter form *bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ* is given.

The other early Buddhist traditions use the term *prātimokṣa* (as part of the compound *prātimokṣasūtra*) and derive it from the root √*muc*; see CSP 3–7.⁹¹

This derivation based on the root √*muc* resonates with the last line of the Nidāna where it is said that there is ease for one who has revealed his offences. This ease is explained by the word-commentary, Vin I 104, as ease in the attainment of *jhānas* etc.

⁸⁷ Be: *agativisesehi*.

⁸⁸ *Mokkha* and *pamokkha* have the same meaning as *mukha* and *pamukha* in the Padabhājana quoted above.

⁸⁹ This etymology might have given rise to a belief in Thailand that a bhikkhu who has learnt the *Pātimokkha* by heart will be reborn in heaven.

⁹⁰ Be Vibh: *pāmokkhaṃ*. Ce: *mukhaṃ pamukhaṃ*. The (Be) subcommentary (*tika*) expains this as *mukhaṃ pamukhaṃ*.

⁹¹ An exception is the explanation of the Mahīśasaka school—a school which had close relations with the Theravāda school—which is similar to the *mukha* explanation in the Theravāda Suttavibhaṅga: “*Prātimokṣa* means that by (observing) the *Śīla* (*chieh*) one will protect his sense organs and hence his meritorious qualities (*saddharma*) will be increased. It is the first entrance (*ch’u-men*) to all the good Dharmas. Therefore, it is called *Prātimokṣa*.” See CSP 5.

Remorse and guilt are a great hindrance for attaining superhuman states. A I 1–7: “*Avippaṭṭisārattthāni kho kusālāni sīlāni ... avippaṭṭisāro kho pāmujjattho ...*”: “The goal of wholesome virtues is non-remorse ... the goal of non-remorse is joy...”; M I 440: “... *attanā pi attānaṃ upavādito na uttarimanussadhammā ... sacchikaroti*”: “... having reproved himself he does not realise superhuman states ...”; cf. A III 15, IV 336.

The Buddha often said, both to bhikkhus and laypeople, that it is growth in the noble discipline when one has seen a transgression as a transgression, makes amends in accordance with the Law, and practices restraint in the future.”: “*Vuddhi hi esā ariyassa vinaye yo accayaṃ accayato disvā yathādhammaṃ paṭikaroti āyatiṃ saṃvaraṃ āpajjati*,” M I 440, Vin I 315 etc. Cf. Pār 4: “... *visuddhāpekkho ...*”: “desiring purification.”

The explanation given in Vasubandhu’s *Abhidharmakośabhāṣya* IV 16 is: “... *pāpasya tena prātimokṣaṇād utsarjanād ity arthah*”: “... because of that *prātimokṣaṇa*, abandoning/expelling of evil, thus is the meaning.”; see BV xxxv. *Prātimokṣaṇa* is an action noun.

Horner, BD I xii–xiv, giving the interpretations and derivations of various scholars, argues that the meaning of being bound by the restraint of the *Pātimokkha*, “*Pātimokkhasaṃvaraṃvuta*” (Vin IV 51, D I 62 etc.), originally was of more importance than the meaning of freeing from remorse through confession. Horner quotes PED 450, which takes *pātimokkha* to have the same meaning as *paṭimokkha* at J V 25: “*taṃ saṅgamaṃ paṭimokkhaṃ na mutthaṃ*”: “that promise to be obliged has not been released.” PED explains it as the directional prefix *paṭi*: against, opposite (the *a* lengthened in the cpd) + *mokkha*: to be released, the future passive participle (f.p.p.) of the causative of *muñcati*, = Skt: *mokṣya* (see PED 451), thus: “that which should be made binding, obligation.” It is derived from the verb *paṭimuñcati*: to fasten, bind. Cf. the past participle *paṭimukka* “bound down/fastened”, e.g. S IV 91: “*paṭimukk’assa mārāpāso* .”

Childers, CDPL 363, also favours the etymology based on the future past participle noting that this is an appropriate name for a collection of precepts, or a criminal code. Olivelle, 1974, p.43, also supports this etymology and meaning, and concludes: “*Saṃvara* is a restraint, a bond. *Pātimokkha* is here taken to be a *saṃvara* ...”

Hinüber, 1985 p.61, gives two other references, besides the above mentioned one of J V 25, to support the f.p.p. etymology: J V 166: “*Yaṃ (sc. bandhanaṃ) natthuto paṭimokkh’assa pāse*”: “(the bondage) which was tied through his nose (of the *nāga*) in a noose.” and D I 12 & 181: “*osadhīnaṃ paṭimokkho*”: “the binding on of medicinal herbs” (as wrong livelihood). Hinüber argues that *paṭimokkha* probably is an adjective meaning “to be bound, connected” and a substantive meaning “binding,” the opposite of *vimokkha* “release.” The Pāli is here is close to the Vedic usage, which only has *prati-muc* in the meaning of “tightening, fastening.” In the time of the Epics the meaning “releasing” arose and this appeared to be the only meaning acceptable to the commentators.

Some additional support for this meaning suggested by these scholars might be found in the simile of Vin I 8f, see below, in which the disciples of previous Buddhas who let the *brahmacariya* disappear are likened to loose flowers on a board that are scattered by the wind since they are not tied together by a thread: “*suttana asaṃgahitattā*.”

This meaning also fits the passage describing the introduction to the *Pātimokkha* by the Buddha according to Hinüber.

Vin I 102: “*Yaṃ nūnāhaṃ yāni mayā bhikkhūnaṃ paññattāni sikkhāpadāni tāni nesaṃ pātimokkhuddesaṃ (= Be; Hin: paṭimokkhuddesaṃ) anujāneyyaṃ, so nesaṃ bhavissati uposathakamman-ti. Anujānāmi bhikkhave pātimokkhaṃ uddisitum*.”: “Why shouldn’t I allow those training precepts decreed by me as the *Pātimokkha* recitation for them? It will be the legal act on the Uposatha for them.”

Hinüber suggests that *paṭimokkhuddesa*, “recitation of what is binding” or “obligatory recitation,” might have been the original reading, but was changed in the course of transmission to *pātimokkh’uddesa*, “*Pātimokkha* recitation,” under influence of the newer meaning. He notes that *paṭimokkh’uddesa* means a binding obligation to regularly recite the rules, in the same sense as “*saṅgamaṃ paṭimokkhaṃ*.” (Hinüber reads *paṭimokkhuddesaṃ* in his quotation of the text but this is not found in any edition and therefore is speculative.)

Before the formulation of each training precept given in the Suttavibhaṅga the Buddha said: “*Evañ-ca pana bhikkhave imaṃ sikkhāpadaṃ uddisseyyātha: ...*”: “And thus, bhikkhus, you should recite this training precept:” This passage shows that from the time when the very first rules were laid down the rules given

in the Suttavibhaṅga were specifically laid down to be recited as part of the Pātimokkha recitation. It also indicates that the Pātimokkha was already recited when new rules were still laid down and therefore there was still no fixed amount of rules included in it.

The term *pātimokkha* also refers to a short verse-discourse, given by the Buddha Vipassī to his bhikkhus, D II 49–50, in which the basic principles of the Instruction of Buddhas, including *pātimokkhasaṃvara*, are enumerated. It is referred to in the commentaries as the *ovādapātimokkhuḍḍesa*, e.g. Kkh 15. This enumeration might support that *pātimokkha* means “obligation.” For more on the *ovādapātimokkha*, see Olivelle, 1974, pp.47–50, who suggests that the verses, which are also found elsewhere in the Canon⁹² and not called a Pātimokkha there, capture in brief the spirit⁹³ behind the rules.

It is possible that the term *pātimokkha* has more than one meaning as wordplays are not uncommon in Pāli. For example, it might convey that confession frees (*muccati*) one from remorse, thus opening up the entrance (*mukha*) to wholesome states. See BD I xii–xiv for more on the meanings and etymologies of Pātimokkha.

In the Sanskrit Buddhist traditions the Pātimokkha is always referred to as the *prātimokṣasūtra*, but there is not a single reference to a *pātimokkhasutta* in the Pāli Canon. It is also not found in the commentaries and the subcommentaries. The attachment of *sūtra* to *prātimokṣa* might have originated from a misunderstanding of the usage of the word *sutta* in the Pātimokkha (Pāc 73 and the Pātimokkha conclusion) by the Sanskrit editors/translators; see the note on *suttāgata* below.

Sometimes the Pātimokkha is referred to by way of synonyms in the rules and section introduction and conclusions contained in the Pātimokkha, i.e., *sutta* (Pāc 73, Vin V 123: *suttuḍḍesa*), *uddesa* (section introductions and conclusions, Sd 12, Pāc 73. Cf. Vin III 26 and A I 230.). It is referred to as *mātikā* in the commentaries (i.e., Kkh); see the note on *sutta* below.

The Purpose of the Pātimokkha Recitation

Some of the purposes of the Pātimokkha recitation are mentioned or implied in the Pātimokkha itself. They are: remembering the rules and learning about them: Nid & Pāc 73; the unity and ease of bhikkhus: Sd 10–11 (... *samaggo ... phāsu viharati.*), Concl.; bringing bhikkhus together regularly: Sd 10 (... *ekuddeso ...*), Concl. (... *anvaddhamāsa ...*); mutual trust: Pāc 73 (... *mohanake ...*) and section endings (... *parisuddh’etthāyasmanto ... dhārayāmi.*); causing shame in offenders due to having to confess, and causing fear of wrong doing in potential offenders: Nid, section- endings (*Kacci’ttha ...*); freeing offenders from guilt and remorse: Nid (... *avikatā hissa phāsu hoti.*); purity: Nid, section-endings (*parisuddhā*).

The standard ten reasons (*atthavasa*) for establishing the Pātimokkha and the training precepts are given at A I 98, A V 70, Vin III 20 etc.:

“Therefore, bhikkhus I make known a training precept dependent on ten reasons: for the well-being of the community, for the comfort of the community, for the control of shameless persons, for the dwelling in comfort of well-behaved bhikkhus, for the restraining of taints here and now, for the repelling of taints in the hereafter, for the belief of those who are not believing, for the increase of those that are believing, for the persistence of the True Teaching, for the supporting of the Discipline.”:

“Tena hi bhikkhave bhikkhūnaṃ sikkhāpadaṃ paññāpessāmi dasa atthavase paṭicca: saṅghasutthutāya, saṅghaphāsutāya, dumaṅkunaṃ puggalānaṃ niggaḥāya, pesalānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ phāsuviḥārāya, diṭṭhadhammikānaṃ āsavānaṃ saṃvarāya, samparāyikānaṃ āsavānaṃ paṭighātāya, appasannānaṃ pasādāya, pasannānaṃ bhiyyobhāvāya, saddhammaṭṭhitiyā, vinayānuggahāya.”

In the introduction to the Suttavibhaṅga, Vin III 8 f., the Buddha says that the *brahmacariya* under some of the previous Buddhas did not last long because these Buddhas (BD I 15:) “were idle in preaching dhamma in detail to the disciples; and of these there was little Sutta, verse, ... , the training for their disciples was not made known, the Pātimokkha was not recited.”: “... *appakañ-ca nesam ahoṣi suttaṃ geyyaṃ ... vedallaṃ, appaṇṇattaṃ sāvakaṇaṃ sikkhāpadaṃ anuddiṭṭhaṃ Pātimokkhaṃ.*”

Those disciples who let the *brahmacariya* disappear are likened to loose flowers on a board that are

⁹² Dhṛp 183–85, Ud 43, and Nett.

⁹³ For the spirit see also A I 230. See also Dhirasekera 14 & 162–63.

scattered by the wind since they are not tied together by a string/thread: “*suttena asaṃgahitattā*.” (Cf. *Sāmagāmasuttanta*; MN 104.) Ven. Sāriputta then requested the Buddha to declare the training and to recite the Pātimokkha. The Buddha declined saying that he would not do so until the conditions causing taints/outflows (*āsava*) appeared in the Saṅgha. When these conditions appeared he would recite the Pātimokkha for the repelling of those taints. (... *āsavāṭṭhānīyaṃ dhammānaṃ paṭighātāya*.)

Ven. Bhaddāli once asked the Buddha why there were at the time there more rules than before while there were fewer bhikkhus established in wisdom; M I 445. The Buddha answered that more things that are the basis for taints (*āsava*) appear when the Saṅgha has come to greatness, gain, fame, great learning and long-standing, and these things need to be checked by laying down training precepts.

These two passages show that the main purposes of reciting the Pātimokkha every fortnight, and observing the rules it contains, are uniting the Saṅgha and preserving the Dhamma for future generations. See also MN 108 where Ven. Ānanda explains that the cause for unity (*sāmaggī*) in the Saṅgha when there is no personal replacement for the Buddha after his *parinibbāna* is the refuge of Dhamma in the form of the Pātimokkha-recitation. One can thus say that the Pātimokkha is the collective body of rules that bhikkhus are obliged to train in, and are obliged to recite every two weeks, when living in communities, for the sake of unity, harmony, continuity, and the various other reasons mentioned above.⁹⁴

Sutta and Suttavibhaṅga

The Pātimokkha, also called the Sutta, is the only *complete* Canonical text that, besides being an independent

⁹⁴ Asaṅga Tilakaratane, in his article “Saṅgīti and Sāmaggī”, draws attention to the close connection between the act of *saṅgāyana*, reciting together, and *saṅghasāmaggī*, unity in the Saṅgha. *Saṅgāyana* is the reciting of the Dhamma and Vinaya in a great formal meeting, usually held after a crisis in the Saṅgha.

The Buddha emphasised that the Dhamma and Vinaya was the true refuge after his passing away as there would be no other Buddha to take his place, so the collective recitation of Dhamma and Vinaya was the proper way for the Saṅgha to express allegiance to the Dhamma and Vinaya, and the Saṅgha which represents it, as the true authority. The Pātimokkha recitation every fortnight serves the same purpose since with both Saṅgāyana and Pātimokkha recitations even non-participants are expected to show their allegiance by accepting and abiding by what has been recited.

The most important purpose of the fortnightly Pātimokkha recitation is assuring the unity of the Saṅgha by meeting frequently, united, and harmoniously -- one of the factors of non-decline mentioned in the Mahāparinibbāna-suttanta; D II 76–77. This is supported by existence of the *Sāmaggī-uposatha* which is done whenever a schism of the Saṅgha is resolved. In this type of Uposatha a faction that did formerly not abide by all the rules of the Pātimokkha now shows its agreement by uniting with the rest of the Saṅgha in the Pātimokkha recitation. This performing of undivided single recitations of the Pātimokkha, *ekuddesa*, in regular compulsory meetings has held the Saṅgha together from the lifetime of the Buddha right up to the present day.

Thus, the Pātimokkha recitation can be seen as a mini-Saṅgāyana performed fortnightly by the entire Saṅgha of the four quarters, in smaller groups, wherever they are residing, that affirms their unitedness and their allegiance to the Dhamma and Vinaya. The concept *ek’uddesa* in the Vinaya and the concepts of *Saṅgāyana* and *saṅgīti*, collective recitation, (as in the Saṅgītisuttanta) are very similar as both can not be done in an undivided group.

The Saṅgītisuttanta of the Dīgha-Nikāya can be regarded as a type of proto-type of Saṅgāyana whereby the entire Dhamma could be recited in condensed form (like the Pātimokkha contains the Vinaya in condensed form) by a Saṅgha. Through this a Saṅgha could affirm that it was united in accepting these teachings as authoritative. The context of the Saṅgītisuttanta—the disunity among the Nigaṇṭhas after the passing away of their teacher—and the emphasis on *sāmaggī* suggest that it was mainly employed as a comprehensive summary of Dhamma, the true refuge to which allegiance was crucial after the Buddha’s passing away. The Vinaya, in the form of the Pātimokkha, was recited every two weeks, but there was no such arrangement with regards Dhamma and what Ven. Sāriputta might have tried to do was to instigate a similar practice as the Pātimokkha recitation for the Dhamma.

Tilakaratana did not mention in his article that Ven. Sāriputta also was the one who requested the Buddha to establish the Pātimokkha and the training precepts; see the introduction to the Suttavibhaṅga mentioned above. Further, he did not mention the similarity between the introductions and conclusions to the each of the ten sections in the *saṅgīti* in the Saṅgītisuttanta and the conclusion of the Pātimokkha. Compare D III 211–71:

“*Idaṃ kho tena bhagavatā jānatā passatā arahatā sammāsambuddhena eko dhammo sammadakkhāto, tattha sabbeheva saṅgāyitabbaṃ, na vivaditabbaṃ, yathayidaṃ brahmacariyaṃ addhaniyaṃ assa ciraṭṭhitikaṃ, tad-assa bahujaṇahitāya ...*” : “**This is the one dhamma which has been well proclaimed by the Blessed one ..., herein: it is to be recited by all, (and) not to be argued,** so that this holy life will be lasting and remaining for a long time, this would be of benefit to many people, ...” with the Pātimokkha conclusion: “*Ettakaṃ tassa bhagavato suttāgataṃ ..., tattha sabbeheva samaggehi samodamānehi avivadamānehi sikkhitabbaṃ.*” : “**This much (training-rule) of (laid down) by that Fortunate One has come down in the Rule-string ... Herein by all who are united, who are being on friendly terms, (and) who are not disputing is to be trained.**

text, is also found embedded in another Canonical text: the Suttavibhaṅga: the analysis of the Sutta.

Although the Pātimokkha is found as an independent text in palm leaf manuscripts and printed editions, in the modern editions of the Pāli Canon the Pātimokkha has not been given as such. In the Sri Lankan Buddha Jayanti edition it is only found in the Suttavibhaṅga and in the Burmese and Thai editions only as an introduction or supplement to its commentary, the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī*. However, independent palm-leaf manuscripts and printed texts, used by bhikkhus who learn the Pātimokkha or for bhikkhus checking the recitation, do exist. In the Sanskrit Canons there is also separate text called Prātimokṣasūtra. The Pāli commentarial tradition places the Bhikkhu- and Bhikkhunī-Pātimokkha in the Vinaya-piṭaka. Sp 18 & D-a I 17: “*Tattha paṭhamasaṅgītiyam saṅgītaṇ-ca asaṅgītaṇ-ca sabbam-pi samodhānetvā ubhayāni pātimokkhāni dve vibhaṅgāni dvāvīsati khandhakā soḷasaparivārā ti idaṃ vinaya-piṭakam nāma.*”: “Having collected all that was recited or not recited at the First Council, i.e., the two Pātimokkhas, the two Vibhaṅgas, the twelve Khandhakas, the sixteen Parivāras: this is the Basket of Discipline.” In the Canon itself the Bhikkhu- and Bhikkhunī-pātimokkhas are mentioned as things to be learnt by senior bhikkhus; see Vin I 65, II 95 in the note “[Sutta and suttavibhaṅga.](#)”

The existence of the “Old Commentary” (the Padabhājana), the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* commentary on the Pātimokkha, and the Prātimokṣasūtras (besides Vibhaṅgas) of the non-Theravāda Buddhist schools such as the Mahāsaṅghikas, suggests that there was an independent Pātimokkha text in use at the time of the second council before the rise of different schools.

Probably the reason why the Pātimokkha is embedded in the Suttavibhaṅga is that, after the passing away of the Buddha, the elders felt that the Pātimokkha should be strictly interpreted according to the explanation and analysis given in the Suttavibhaṅga so that no devious interpretations would arise, which could happen if it were not embedded in the Suttavibhaṅga and was just a separate Canonical text; see the reasons given for the recitation of the Vinaya given by Ven. Mahākassapa at the first council: “Let us recite together the Dhamma and Vinaya before non-Dhamma ... non-Vinaya is elucidated and the Vinaya is discarded, before speakers of non-Dhamma ... non-Vinaya are strong and speakers of Vinaya are weak.”; Vin II 285.

In the account of the first council in the Cūlavagga there is no mention of the Pātimokkha, Cv XI 1,7/Vin II 286f, but the Suttavibhaṅgas are mentioned. Ven. Mahākassapa questions Ven. Upāli not only about the Pārājika rules but also about the details connected with it: place, origin, person, regulation, consequent regulation(s), offence(s), non-offence(s), which is exactly the analysis method of the Suttavibhaṅga. The section-conclusion states that Ven. Upāli answered Ven. Kassapa questions about the twofold Vibhaṅgas⁹⁵.

⁹⁵ I.e., the Bhikkhu- and Bhikkhunī-vibhaṅgas. Ee, Ke: *ubhato vinaye*. Be, Ce: *ubhato vibhaṅge*. I follow Ce here as Ven. Kassapa is asking questions on Vinaya in accordance with the Vibhaṅga method. Further, *ubhato* is elsewhere used to denote the bhikkhu- and bhikkhunī division, e.g. *ubhatosaṅgha*, and as there are a Bhikkhu-vibhaṅga and a Bhikkhunī-vibhaṅga, not a Bhikkhu and Bhikkhunī-kkhandhaka compilation, this makes good sense in this context. This might indicate that at the First Council the Vinaya was regarded to be the two Vibhaṅgas.

The Vinaya texts of other schools preserved in Chinese are not of great help. The Mahīśāsaka Vinaya says that the vinaya (*bini*) for monks and the *vinaya* (*bini*) for nuns have been recited, and that together this is called the *vinaya* (*bini*) (T 1421, ch. 30, p.191a 13–14). One recension of the Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra (T 5, ch. 2, p.175c 8–9) says that 250 precepts (*jiē*) for monks have been recited, and 500 for nuns. The word *vinaya* itself does not appear. (Translation by Anne Heirman.) The statement in Etienne Lamotte’s *History of Indian Buddhism* p.171 about *ubhatovinaya* (The accounts of the first council differ in opinion over the length of the Vinaya recited by Upāli. For some, it was only an embryonic Vinaya limited to a description of the precepts relative to the bhikṣus and bhikṣuṇīs or, according to the traditional expression, the *ubhatovinaya*: this is the opinion of the Cūlavagga [Vin., II, p.287, 1.8], the Mahīśāsaka Vinaya and one recension of the Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra [T 5, ch. 2, p.175c 8–9].) is therefore not completely correct.

In two schools, the Mā and schools, the terms *Bhikṣu-* and *Bhikṣuṇī-vinaya* are used to denote the overall division into two parts of their Vinayas between the texts related to the *bhikṣu-* and *bhikṣuṇī-*rules and regulations. First the *Bhikṣuvibhaṅgas* are given, then the *Bhikṣu-dharmakas/prakrīṇakas*, and then the same happens in the *bhikṣuṇī-vinaya*; see Hirakawa 16–18. In contrast the other schools, such as the Thv and Dhg, have the *Bhikṣu-* and *Bhikṣuṇī-vibhaṅgas* first and then the *skandhakas*.

The Mā school called what corresponds to the Pāli Mahā- and Cūlavagga *khandhaka*-compilations the *Prakrīṇakas* “Miscellaneous parts.” Roth notes that the title *Prakrīṇaka* (Pāli *pakiṇṇaka*) in Sanskrit frequently designates a supplementary section; see BV p.xlv. In Pāli it usually marks section or chapter the end of a text with miscellaneous topics or a digressive topic which does not fit in the main text; see Hinüber 1996 p.114, 124, 218. Cf. the last section of the Sekhiyas in the Mm and Mi Se Pātimokkha: “*tayo pakiṇṇakā.*” These *Prakrīṇakas* thus seem to have been intended to include the mass of various rules and regulations supplementary to the *Vibhaṅgas* which did not fit in the main topic of those

However, in the account of the second council, Cv XII 2,2/Vin II 306–307, the Suttavibhaṅga is explicitly quoted as the authoritative text in which the offences in question were found. The fact that only the Vibhaṅga is mentioned does not mean that there was no independent Pātimokkha and that the Sutta was subsequently extracted from the Suttavibhaṅga as Dhirasekera 13f., 79f. & 156f suggests.

An independent text would have been recited by the *Vinaya*-reciters for the recitation at the Uposatha and as a basic guidance in conduct for bhikkhus. The *Vinaya*-experts and admonishers of bhikkhunīs (*vinayadharas* and *bhikkhunovādakas*) as law-experts and enforcers needed to be very familiar with the details concerning regulations that are given in the Suttavibhaṅga and they would need to learn this treatise; see A IV 140 & 279 and also Vin II 96f. Those bhikkhus were supposed to learn both Pātimokkhas in full extent, the *suttas* with the details connected with them, “*suttaso anubyāñjanaso*.” (See note on [sutta](#)). These details presumably make up the Bhikkhu- and Bhikkhunī-Vibhaṅga; see Dhirasekera 79 & 156.

The Suttavibhaṅga might have been a shorter text than it is now since no mention is made in the account of the first council of the Padabhājana word-commentary and the origin-stories. In Vin II 249 & A V 80 it is said that if a bhikkhu, who desires to admonish other bhikkhus, has not learnt both Pātimokkhas with the details, admonishes, and then, on being asked (for example) where the Buddha laid down the rule, cannot reply, they will tell him to master the *Vinaya*.⁹⁶ The place where a rule was laid down was most important and was the first thing asked by Ven. Mahākassapa at the first council. The Pārājika rules of the Mā-L school each have a sort of appendix, called *anudharma*, which gives details as to the person who committed it first, the time of day and the season when, and the place where it was committed⁹⁷.

works: the Pātimokkha rules. It might thus be that at the first council these supplements were seen as parts of or appendices to the *Vibhaṅgas* rather than separate works and this might be the reason why they are not mentioned separately in the account of the first council.

In the account of the second council the Suttavibhaṅga is explicitly mentioned in the answers to the questions on *Vinaya*, while two chapters, or *khandhakas*, of the *Mahāvagga* are referred to under different names: the *Uposathasamīyutta* and the *Vinayavatthu* are mentioned in the answers and these correspond to the *Uposathakkhandhaka* and the *Campeyyakkhandhaka*, the second and ninth chapters of the *Mahāvagga*.

Horner mistranslates “*Campeyyake vinayavatthusmiṃ*” as “In a matter of discipline on things pertaining to (the monks of) Campa,” but this should be “In Campeyyaka, in the *Vinaya*-topic” (or “[regulations] with *Vinaya* as Topic.”) Campa was the place where the rule was laid down, while *Vinayavatthu* is the text wherein the rule is preserved. (In the translations of the other questions and answers in this section Horner translates correctly: “At Sāvattī, in the Suttavibhaṅga. ... In Rājagaha, in what is connected with the Observance.” Although, the latter might be better rendered as “... in [Regulations] connected with the Observance.”)

In the *Bhikṣuprakīrṇaka* of the Mā and Mā-L school the section-names *Karmavastu* and *Posadhapratisamīyuktam* are given. The *Karmavastu* probably corresponds to the Pāli *Vinayavatthu* and *Campeyyakkhandhaka* (see the chart in Frauwallner p.3). This is significant as it shows that the Mā school preserved an earlier tradition of naming texts, mentioned in the Pāli account of the second council, which has been lost in other traditions, including the Mahāvihāra Theravāda school, as each school went its own way in naming these texts; see Hinüber 1996 p.29, BV p.13, 16, and 294 (I have not been able to trace in Frauwallner’s *The Earliest Vinaya* or Hirakawa’s *Monastic Discipline for the Buddhist Nuns* the title *Vinayavastu* of the Mū school given in Hinüber, 1996, p.29, so it might be incorrect.) (Note the way of naming the second, third, and fourth *Seḍhiya* sections in the Kkh and Mm & Mi Se Pātimokkha: *bhojanapaṭisaṃyutta*, *desanapaṭisaṃyutta*, *pakiṇṇaka*. This might be based on an old tradition preserved in the Kkh.)

In the corresponding *Vinaya* of the Mūlasarvāstivādins the term *vastu*, the Sanskrit equivalent of Pāli *vatthu*, is used to denote what corresponds to the Pāli *khandhakas*, e.g., the *Uposathakkhandhaka* is called *Posadhavastu*. Thus it seems that the term *vatthu* was used in the Theravāda school to denote compilations of rules and possibly also stories. Later the Thv school shifted over to the term *khandhaka* while other schools, except the Mū, shifted to other names. Other Thv works, i.e., *Petavatthu*, *Vimānavatthu*, and *Kathāvatthu*, preserved *vatthu* in their titles.

In the *Sammohavinodanī*, the commentary on the Vibhaṅga, three jātakas are referred to as *vatthus*, stories. The stories are shorter than those in the Jātaka-collection and they contain fewer verses; Vibh-a 470f. According to Hinüber, 1996, § 321 this indicates the Ja collection as it exists now did not yet exist when this commentary was composed.

It is possible that these two texts mentioned in the account of the Second Council were independent compilations of rules and regulations and not yet called *khandhakas*. Possibly the compilations of *khandhakas* called *Mahāvagga* and *Cullavagga* did not yet exist as Canonical texts at the time of the Second Council and were later compiled by the (Mahāvihārin) Theravādins in a similar way as the *Suttanipāta* which was compiled out of several smaller originally independent verse-sutta-compilations and possibly verse-suttas already found in other texts; see GD Introduction p.9–11, 19–20, 26–28, and Brough, 1962, pp.26–30. See also the note on the compilation of the *Khandhakas* in the footnote at the end of the note on the Language of the Pātimokkha and the text at the end of this section.

⁹⁶ See Dhirasekera p.156.

⁹⁷ See BMD p.50f. & Taita 6f.

The Pātimokkha or *sutta* was referred to by later commentators as the *mātika*—meaning an extract-list or table—which might suggest its less authoritative status than the Suttavibhaṅga. To recite the Pātimokkha takes about one hour, but to recite the Suttavibhaṅga, which Dhirasekera (pp 78–9) equates with the original Pātimokkha, would take two days or more so this would not have been practical. Further, the concatenation system, causing the rules to form a more or less unbroken chain, would not be needed if the Suttavibhaṅga was recited.

The Buddha introduces each rule in the Suttavibhaṅga with “This you must recite ... ” and there is no recommendation by him to recite the details concerning the rules (which, in fact, are not attributed to the Buddha in the Suttavibhaṅga). The account of the start of the Pātimokkha recitation in the Uposathakkhandhaka, Vin I 102, where the Buddha says that the rules laid down by him will form the Pātimokkha recitation also suggests this.

That the Pātimokkha was an independent text is also confirmed by its “Old Commentary” the *Padabhājana*. This commentary is not mentioned in the account of the first council and this suggests that it was first recited as an independent commentary on an independent Pātimokkha, and has been inserted later, maybe when the Canon was written down, into the Suttavibhaṅga as a supplement. In a similar way the Aṭṭhakavagga and the Pārāyanavagga of the Suttanipāta were originally independent texts with their own commentary, which is now the Canonical text called the Niddesa.⁹⁸

At the first council there would have been no need for a word-commentary since the language of the Sutta would have been clear and there would be direct disciples of the Buddha such as Upāli who could explain the meaning to new bhikkhus if needed. Later with changes in language and the teachings spreading to regions where different dialects or languages were spoken such a commentary would be needed to make the meanings of words clear.

Maybe the Suttavibhaṅga is to be seen as the continuation of the Nidāna in the Uposathakkhandhaka of the Mahāvagga. Hinüber, 1999 p.83, suggests that the whole Pātimokkha was at first contained in the Mahāvagga and later was separated from it with the word-commentary and origin-stories to form the Suttavibhaṅga, leaving the Nidāna in the Mahāvagga. This, however, disagrees with the account of the first council where the Suttavibhaṅga is mentioned but not the Khandhakas. The Khandhakas are dealing with the disciplinary regulations and procedures that do not fit within the scope of the Suttavibhaṅga, which only deals with the offences found in the Pātimokkha; see Dhirasekera 16. The works now called the Khandhakas might have been gradually compiled and re-arranged into compilations after the first council out of the mass of independent regulations and rules that were remembered and recited by different (groups of) bhikkhus, and then possibly these small compilations got compiled into large compilations such as the Mv and Cv of the Theravāda school after the second council or even later; see footnote two pages up. An evolution in Vinaya treatises from the most simple and essential—the Pātimokkha or Sutta—to the more detailed, complex, and historical—the Suttavibhaṅga—and then to the even more detailed, complex, and historical—the Khandhakas—seems natural.⁹⁹

On the Meaning of *Sutta* in *Suttāgata* and *Suttavibhaṅga*

Sutta can mean both “rule” as well as “string” or “sequence” and, as it is not really possible to give an adequate as well as elegant rendering into English, the word has been left untranslated. In order to capture both those meanings the rendering “Rule-String,” i.e., a string or sequence of rules, could be use.

Sutta in *suttāgata*, as used in Pāc 73 and the Pātimokkha conclusion, and also in *Suttavibhaṅga*, is a synonym for the Pātimokkha since the structure of the Pātimokkha is one of being made up of rules, *suttas*, strung together into one string. (In a similar way the “Rule” of Saint Benedict is made up of rules.)

See Vin I 65, II 95: “*Ubhayāni kho paṇ’assa pātimokkhāni vitthārena svāgatāni honti suvibhattāni suppvattāni suvinicchitāni suttaso anubyañjanaso*.”: “Both *pātimokkhas* are well handed down in breadth to him, well analysed, well set forth, well investigated, as to rule, as to detail.” *Sutta* refers to both the *Bhikkhu*- and

⁹⁸ See above “Relation between the Nidāna and Padabhājana.”

⁹⁹ See comments on the “*yena vā ...*” clause in Aniyata 1 and 2, which appears to be an early rule later superseded by the Vibhaṅga commentary on it and guidelines in the Khandhakas.

Bhikkhunī-Pātimokkha rules as contained in the *Suttavibhaṅga*, while *anubyañjana*, detail, refers to the analysis as given the *Suttavibhaṅga*.

Suttāgata is not commented upon in the Sp nor in the Kkh, but see the Kkh commentary on *suttāgataṃ* in the *Pātimokkha* conclusion: “*Suttāgatan-ti: sutte pātimokkhe āgato*.”: “... handed down in the Sutta, in the *Pātimokkha*.” Cf. the inverted bahubhihi compound *āgatāgama*: “(one to whom) the tradition has come down” (i.e., “*yassa āgamo āgato so*”) found in the stock-phrase: “*bhikkhu bahussuto āgatāgamo dhammadharo vinayadharo* ...” (Vin I 119). See Vin texts I xxviii–xxxi, BD I x, and BD I 15 n. 3 for more on this use of *sutta*.

Horner renders *sutta* as “clause”, taking it to refer to the individual clauses of the *Pātimokkha*; see BD I x & III 43 n. 3.

Another interpretation is given by Hinüber who suggests that *sutta* (also in the enumeration of the nine factors of the Dhamma, *aṅga*) is a synonym for the *Pātimokkhasutta*, see Hinüber 1994 p.131, 1995 p.8, and 1996 p.7. Although the term *Prātimokṣasūtra* is used in the Sanskrit Buddhist traditions to denote what is called *Pātimokkha* in the Thv tradition, there is not one single reference to a *Pātimokkhasutta* in the entire Pāli Canon and its commentaries etc. The use of *Prātimokṣasūtra* might have originated from a misunderstanding by the Sanskrit editors of the use of *sutta* in Pāc 73, in the *Pātimokkha* conclusion and in the *Suttavibhaṅga*. Hinüber himself (1994 p.127) mentions that neither *sutta* nor *suttanta* occur in any of the titles¹⁰⁰ of texts referred to in the five Pāli nikāyas.

In the Pāli Canon, the term *sutta* does not refer to a discourse by the Buddha. What is usually called a *sutta* nowadays, is referred to as a *suttanta* in Canonical texts (e.g. Mv VIII 5,11/Vin I 141, A III 106); see the note on *Pātimokkha* below and Hinüber 1994 p.132 and BD I x. The titles using *sutta* that are put after each discourse are the work of reciters or editors.¹⁰¹

According to the *Mahāpadesa* at D II 124 that which is claimed to be Dhamma and Vinaya is to be compared and checked with the Sutta and Vinaya, and if it agrees then it is the Buddha’s Word (*buddhavacana*). Thus *sutta* here seems to correspond to the Buddhas words as is contained in the Sutta-piṭaka and Vinaya to what is contained in the Vinaya-piṭaka; see D-a where other interpretations are given.

In the Vinaya commentaries and sub-commentaries one of the three types of Uposatha is called the *suttuddesa*¹⁰². This *suttuddesa* is the *pātimokkhuddesa* according to Kkh 15: “*suttuddeso nāma pātimokkhuddeso vuccati*.” This shows that *sutta* was understood to be synonymous with the *Pātimokkha* by the commentators. They do not explain *sutta* here, but elsewhere they explain it as *mātikā*: a basic reference list, tabulated summary, list, register, tabulation.

Mātikā is a synonym for the *Pātimokkha* in the Vinaya commentaries. The Kkh calls itself the “*mātikā-atṭhakathā*”: “the Commentary on the *Mātikā*.” Cf. Kkh 164: “*n’eva mātikāyaṃ na padabhāṇane vuttaṃ*.”: “it has not been said in the *mātikā* nor in the word-analysis..” Vin II 96: “... *tassa n’eva suttantaṃ āgatam hoti no suttavibhaṅgo* ...”: “... to whom neither the Sutta nor the Analysis of the Sutta has been handed down”

According to the Sp *sutta* here means *mātikā*: Sp 1197: “*N’eva suttantaṃ āgatan-ti na mātikā āgatā*. No *suttavibhaṅgo ti vinayo na paṇo*.”: “The Sutta has not been handed down’: the *mātikā*-table has not been handed down. ‘Nor the analysis of the Sutta’: he is not well versed in the Discipline.” See also Ee Kkh (1981) p.xi, TP xxxviii, and Hinüber, 1999 p.37. Thus, *sutta* refers to the collective body of *suttas*: a *mātikā*-table that equals the *Pātimokkha* clauses as contained in the *Suttavibhaṅga*, rather than the individual rules.¹⁰³

¹⁰⁰ The other divisions of the *navāṅga* might also refer to the structure or content matter of the texts in the Canon rather than text-titles i.e., one *suttanta* can contain *veyyākaraṇas*, *gāthas* and *abbhutadhammas*; see MN 49, esp. M I 330, and the *Dhammacakkapavattanaveyyākaraṇa* which contains an *udāna* and an *abbhutadhamma* (an earthquake).

¹⁰¹ This is also confirmed by the fact that in the commentaries some discourses are given titles that are no longer in use. Compare the P.T.S. edition of the Majjhima Nikāya, where the first 50 suttas have a conclusion with “-suttantaṃ” (e.g., *Mūlapariyāyasuttaṃ paṭhamantaṃ*) while the next 28 have “-suttantaṃ” (e.g., *Kandarakasuttantaṃ paṭhamantaṃ*). A footnote in the second book (Vol. II, p.22, n. 3) states that some manuscripts use *suttanta*, while others use *sutta*; and that some use *niṭṭhitaṃ*, while others use an ordinal.

¹⁰² The others are: the *pārisuddhi-uposatha* (i.e., the one done by less than four bhikkhus and the *adhiṭṭhānuposatha* (i.e., done by one bhikkhu).

¹⁰³ Macdonnell (1899, p.29) makes some observations about the Vedic *sūtras* which also apply to the Pāli *Pātimokkha*: “These are compendious treatises dealing with Vedic ritual on the one hand and customary law on the other. The rise of this class of writings was due to the need of reducing the vast and growing mass of details in ritual and custom, preserved in the Brāhmaṇas and in floating tradition, to a systematic shape, and of compressing them within a compass which did not

In Vin III 8 f., quoted above in the section on Pātimokkha, it is said that the *brahmacariya* under some of the previous Buddhas did not last long because these had little “*sutta*,” etc., and the training precept for disciples had not been made known and the Pātimokkha had not been recited. The Buddha likened disciples of those Buddhas who let the *brahmacariya* disappear to loose flowers on a board that are scattered by the wind since they are not tied together by a string (“... *yathātaṃ suttēna asaṃgahitattā*.”).

This simile shows the meaning of *sutta* as something that preserves the tradition, a concise text consisting of a string or thread of aphorisms to hold the tradition together; a thread in a similar sense to the “thread of a story” in the English language. (Compare the English word “suture.”)¹⁰⁴

Ñāṇamoli noted the following about this in his translation of this passage in the *Life of the Buddha*¹⁰⁵: “There is a word-play on the word *sutta*, literally “thread” and metaphorically “thread of argument” or stringing together of connected ideas; it is in this latter sense that the Buddha’s discourses are called “suttas,” because the teaching is put together in the form of a connected thread of argument.”

On the Term *Pārājika*

The term “*pārājika*” is used to denote the first class of offences given in the Pātimokkha. It is also first in gravity as it has the gravest consequences for who commits this type of offence, i.e., as soon as one breaks one of these rules one automatically loses one’s status of being one fully admitted into the Saṅgha and one is also disqualified from becoming a bhikkhu again in this lifetime. The exact meaning of this term is somewhat obscure (see, e.g. BD I xxvi f. + 38 n. 3) and the following discussion might shed some light on its meaning.

The similes given in the Padabhājana (Vin III 28) to elucidate the gravity of the four *pārājika* rules are:

“... like a man who has the head cut off is not able to live with(-out) that physical connection, just so a bhikkhu who has engaged in the sexual act is (one who is) non-ascetic, not a son of the Sakyan. ... (like) a withered leaf freed from its connection (to the tree) is incapable of becoming green ... (like) a flat rock broken into two is one that cannot be reconnected ... (like) a Palmyra-palm cut off at the crown is incapable of growing again ...”¹⁰⁶

These four similes are also found with the four “things not to be done” (*akaraṇīya*) that are to be explained to newly admitted bhikkhus (Vin I 96–97). In the Aṅguttara Nikāya a similar simile is given in which a bhikkhu who has fallen into a *pārājika* offence is likened to a criminal punished by public decapitation (A II 240f).

The *Samantapāsādikā* commentary (Sp 259–60) gives the following explanation:

“*Pārājika* [means] disqualified, fallen into disqualification. This word *pārājika* is used in connection with

impose too great a burden to the memory, the vehicle of all teaching and learning. The main object of the Sūtras is, therefore, to supply a short survey of the sum of these scattered details. They are not concerned with the interpretation of ceremonial or custom, but aim at giving a plain and methodical account of the whole course of the rites or practises with which they deal. For this purpose utmost brevity was needed, a requirement which was certainly met in a manner unparalleled elsewhere. The very name of this class of literature, *sūtra* “thread” or “clue” (from √*siv*, “sews”), points to its main characteristic and chief object—extreme conciseness. The prose in which these works are composed is so compressed that the wording of the most laconic telegram would often appear diffuse compared with it. Some of the Sūtras attain to an almost algebraic mode of expression, the formulas of which can not be understood without the help of detailed commentaries.”

MW 1241: “*Sūtra*: a thread ... , that which like a thread runs through and holds together everything, rule, direction ... a short sentence or aphoristic rule, and any work or manual consisting of such rules hanging together like threads...”

¹⁰⁴ Har Dayal in *The Bodhisattva Doctrine in Buddhist Sanskrit Literature*, London, 1932, p. 7, (and after him, Gombrich in “How the Mahāyāna began”, referred to in Gethin, 1998, pp.45–46) has suggested that Pāli word *sutta* is “related to the Sanskrit word *sūkta*, and not to Skt. *sūtra*, as the latter word is a very inappropriate word for the lengthy and prolix Buddhist discourses. The Buddhists attached great importance to *subhāṣita* (good sayings), and the Pali word *sutti* does correspond to Skt. *sūkti*.” *Sūkta* = *su* + *ukta*, and means “(something) well said” or “wise saying,” (see MW 1240), and is used as a designation for inspired hymns in the *Rg Veda*. The above mentioned simile by the Buddha seems to suggest that *sutta* as used in the Vinaya context is derived from *sūtra*: “string,” while *suttanta* as used for discourses in the nikāyas is from *sūkta* “good saying”; cf. Norman, 1992, p.3.

¹⁰⁵ *Life of the Buddha* (1992, Kandy), footnote 3 to chapter 9. Cf. the note by Ñāṇamoli on *sutta* in his translation of the *Netti-pakarāṇa*, *The Guide*, p.xxxiif.

¹⁰⁶ ... *seyyathā pi nāma puriso sīsacchinno abhabbo tena sarīrabandhanena jīvituṃ, evam-eva bhikkhu methunaṃ dhammaṃ paṭisevitoṃ asamaṇo hoti asakyaputtiyo*. ... *paṇḍupalāso bandhanā pamutto abhabbo harittāya* ... *puthusilā dvedhā bhinnā appaṭisandhikā hoti* ... *tālo matthakacchinno abhabbo punavirūhāya* ...

training precepts, offences, and persons. Herein, ‘It is impossible, not possible, that the Tathāgata, because of some action of the Vajjis or the sons of Vajjis would abolish a training precept which is involving disqualification.’ thus the using in connection with a training precept is to be understood. ‘Bhikkhus, you have fallen into an offence which is involving disqualification.’ thus in connection with an offence. ‘We are not ones who have been disqualified’ (and) ‘Whoever has taken away/stolen is one who has been disqualified,’ thus the using in connection with a person is to be understood. In what starts with: ‘should accuse with a case involving disqualification’ (= Sd 9) it is used with a case/rule (*dhamma*), but because here (with) ‘case’ any offence (and) any training precept is understood, it can not be used independently.

Regarding the training precept (*sikkhāpadam*): [it] disqualifies him (*parājeti*) whoever transgresses it, therefore it is said *pārājikaṃ* [i.e., an adjective qualifying *sikkhāpadam*]; the offence (*āpatti*), [it] disqualifies him whoever falls into it, therefore it is said *pārājikā* [agreeing with *āpatti*]; the person (*puggalo*), because he has been disqualified, fallen into disqualification, therefore *pārājiko* [agreeing with *puggalo*] is said.

In connection with this meaning, it is said in the Parivāra (Vin V 148): ‘What is called *pārājikaṃ*, listen to it as it is: [He] has fallen away from/is deprived off (*cuto*), fallen short of (*paraddho*), and dropped out (*bhaṭṭho*), he has indeed been rejected (*niraṅkato*) from the True Teaching¹⁰⁷ (*saddhammā*), therefore there is no communion too, because of that it has been said so.’¹⁰⁸ For the meaning herein is: “the person who is transgressing the training precept and has fallen into the offence is one who has fallen away” [and thus] is to be interpreted everything.

‘Therefore it has been said,’ because of which reason he is a non-ascetic, not a son of the Sakyan, is one who has dropped out (*paribhaṭṭho*), fallen away (*cuto*), has been disqualified (*parājito*) from the Institution (*sāsanato*), therefore it has been said. What [is he]? He is one who has been disqualified.”¹⁰⁹

The etymology suggested in the Mahāsaṅghika-Lokottaravādin Vinaya is: *pāra*: “the other shore” + *jīna*: “deprived of”: “*Pārājike ti pāraṃ nāmocyate dharma-jīnānaṃ, tato jīnā ojinā saṃjīnā parihīṇā tenāha pārājike ti*.”: “*Pārājika*: the so-called other (shore) is the Knowledge of Dhamma, she is deprived of, lost from, disposed of, fallen away from that, therefore it is said (she is one who is) ‘*pārājikā*.’”¹¹⁰

In the Chinese Dharmaguptaka PraMo the translation for *pārājika* is *bō-luo-yi* (波羅夷) meaning “excluded” (Beal, 1871, p.209) or “expulsion” (BPP 4).

The etymology of *pārājika* supported by Horner in BD I xxvi and R & O in *Vinaya Texts* 3 n. 2 is *parā* = *para* + *ā*: over (i.e., mastering) + passive of the root *√ji*: conquers + suffix of connection *-ka* or *-ika*. It might also be a derivation from *parājita*, the p.p. of *parājeti* (*parā* + *√ji* + *e*): defeats, conquers, deprives of.

Some scholars i.e., Hinüber (following H. Smith: *Saddanīti* Index) and Childers CDPL 333 (following Burnouf, see BD I xxvi n. 6) prefer the derivation from the Vedic verb *parā-aj*: “involving expulsion.” (See also

¹⁰⁷ Horner renders: “destroyed by the true rules” in BD VI 241, but an instrumental in *-ā* is singular, therefore this can’t be correct. The Sp explanation is: “from the Teaching,” *sāsanato*, see below.)

¹⁰⁸ Sp 1371 on these verses: “*Tattha pārājikan-ti gāthāya ayam-attho: yadidaṃ puggalāpattisikkhāpadapārājikesu āpattipārājikaṃ nāma vuttaṃ, taṃ āpajanto puggalo yasmā parājito parājayam-āpanno saddhammā cuto paraddho bhaṭṭho niraṅkato ca hoti, añaṇṇaṃ tasmā puggale puna uposathappavāraṇādibhedo saṃvāso natthi. Ten’etaṃ iti vuccatī ti tena kāraṇena etaṃ āpattipārājikan-ti vuccatī. Ayañ-h’ettha saṅkhepattho: yasmā parājito hoti tena, tasmā etaṃ pārājikan-ti vuccatī.*”

¹⁰⁹ *Pārājiko ti parājito, parājayam āpanno. Ayam hi pārājikasaddo sikkhāpadāpattipuggalesu vattati. Tattha: Aṭṭhānam-etaṃ, Ānanda, anavakāso yaṃ tathāgato vajjīnaṃ vā vajjiputtakānaṃ vā kāraṇā sāvakānaṃ pārājikaṃ sikkhāpadam paññattaṃ samūhaneyyā ti evaṃ sikkhāpade vattamāno veditabbo. Āpattiṃ tovaṃ, bhikkhu, āpanno pārājikan-ti evaṃ āpattiyaṃ. Na mayaṃ pārājikā, yo avahaṇo so pārājiko ti evaṃ puggale vattamāno veditabbo. Pārājikeṇa dhammena anuddhamseyyā-ti ādisu pana dhamme vattati ti vadanti. Yasmā pana tattha dhammo ti kattha-ci āpatti kattha-ci sikkhāpadam-eva adhippetam, tasmā so visum na vattabbo. Tattha sikkhāpadam yo taṃ atikkamati, taṃ parājeti, tasmā pārājikan-ti vuccatī. Āpatti pana yo naṃ ajjhāpajati, taṃ parājeti, tasmā pārājikā-ti vuccatī. Puggalo yasmā parājito parājayamāpanno, tasmā pārājiko ti vuccatī. Etaṃ-eva hi atthaṃ sandhāya parivāre pi:*

Pārājikan ti yaṃ vuttaṃ, taṃ suñhi yathātatham;

Cuto paraddho bhaṭṭho ca, saddhammā hi niraṅkato.

Samvāso pi taṃ n’atthi, ten’etaṃ iti vuccatī ti

vuttaṃ. (Vin V 148). Ayañ-h’ettha attho: taṃ sikkhāpadam vītikamanto āpattiñ-ca āpanno puggalo cuto hoti ti sabbaṃ yojetabbaṃ.

Tena vuccatī ti yena kāraṇena assamaṇo hoti asakyaputtiyo paribhaṭṭho chinno parājito sāsanato, tena vuccatī. Kin-ti? Pārājiko hoti ti.”

¹¹⁰ See BV 85 & n. 6, Roth, 1968, p.341, and Hirakawa, 1982, pp.104–105.

TP p.xliii: “involving exclusion” or “referring to expulsion.”) According to Hinüber (1996 p.10) the Vedic verb *parā-aj* is found in Pāli only in this context and therefore was no longer understood at a rather early date. Hinüber (1985 p.62 n.14) notes other occurrences in Pāli with the root \sqrt{aj} : “excludes”¹¹¹, could also be given as examples; see PG § 39,3.).

Rhys Davids & Oldenberg, who were not aware of these occurrences of the root \sqrt{aj} in Pāli, disagree with Burnouf and Childers’ etymology in *Vinaya Texts* I 3 n. 2 (see also BD I xxvi). They state that the root \sqrt{aj} does not occur in Buddhist expressions, does not occur even in the Vedas with *parā-* prefixed, and that the Buddhist forms of speech have quite different terms with which to convey the idea of expulsion. There are a number of words in Pāli with which *pārājika* stands in close connection: *parāji*: to suffer defeat; *parājitā*: defeated; *parājaya*: defeated. Therefore RD & O take *pārājika* to be “defeat” in the struggle against Māra, defeat in the effort to attain arahantship.

The main problem with this interpretation, besides the grammatical ones, is that there is no direct support in terms of similes for this interpretation in the texts or commentaries. The meaning of “defeat” for *pārājika* might be supported by Sn 440, and the “warrior-suttantas” at A III 89–100, however, *haññati* and *vyāpajjati* are used there, not *parājeti*.

Ann Heirmann¹¹² discusses the various Pārājika etymologies and compares them with the explanations found in the Vinayas of the various Buddhist schools extant in Chinese and Sanskrit. She notes that the etymology with the root \sqrt{aj} and the idea of “excluding” is not supported by any of the Vinayas and that the root \sqrt{nas} , as found in Pāc 70, is used for expressing exclusion in Pāli and Sanskrit. She also finds the Pāli commentarial derivation unlikely as none of the Vinayas, including the Pāli, mention the idea of defeat and no context suggests the idea that someone is defeated by someone. Instead the various Vinayas support the etymology based on *parā(ñ)c*: “turned away,” “separated,” “disconnected” as suggested by Roth, 1968, p.341f. and Levi 1912, p.505f..

Levi suggests that *pārājika* is derived from *parāñc* / *parāc* via the intermediate form *pārācika*: “The Pārājika offences would be those that cause a total and definite separation from the Saṅgha.” See also PG p.39 n. 5: **pārācika* / AMg: *pārāñciya* > *pārājika*.

Heirmann’s rendering is also supported by the obscure Jain terms *pārāñcika* (and *pārāñciya*), also derived from *pāra*; and by *pārāñcika* as used in the *Kauṭīliya Arthaśāstra* for a kind of physical injury, a dislocation of a limb: “*hasta-pāda-pārāñcika*”; see Roth, 1968, p.342. This last meaning is supported by the decapitation-simile and the other similes, see below, in the various Vinayas including the Pāli. According to Heirman the etymologies based on *parā* + \sqrt{ji} or *pāra* + *jīna* (see below) have to be seen as secondary attempts to explain *pārājika*.

Heirman, and also Roth, did not notice the similarity between the Mahāsaṅghika explanation and the explanation given in the Theravādin Parivāra, Vin V 148, quoted in the Sp explanation of *pārājika* given above. Heirman also did not mention the other three similes in the Padabhājana, which are connected with the next three Pārājikas, and which convey similar imagery.

The meanings attributed by MW to *parāñc* (cpd form = *parāñ-*): “... turned away, averted ... being beyond or outside of (abl.)” suggest that this word can also have the sense of “disqualifying” and “excluding” and that it might not be necessary to see *parāñc* just in terms of “separation” or “disconnection.” This sense of excluding” is also suggested by the verb used in the Pāli Vinaya to indicate the course of action other bhikkhus have to take when a bhikkhu has committed *pārājika*, i.e., *nāseti*: “one expels,” the causative of *nassati* (see Pāc 70); see Vin III 33, 40, and Vin I 173 (Mv IV 16,18).

Western Pāli scholars have interpreted and translated the Pāli verb *parājeti*, and its different forms and derivatives, solely in terms of “defeat”; see PED and BD I xxvi. However the usage of the p.p. *parājita* with an ablative: “*parājito sāsanato*,” in the Sp commentary above makes it difficult to believe that the term was understood by the commentator merely in the sense of defeat...

The MW entry on *parā-√ji* indicates that the sense of “defeat” is only one of the several meanings of this verb, the principle one of which is “is deprived of.” MW 589: “*parā-√ji*, ... -*jāyate*, to be deprived of, suffer

¹¹¹ I.e., *nir-aj*, (*sam*) *ud-aj* (See SPPS 149: *udājita*: driven off.) Cf. *pāceti*: “drives forth” (Dhp 135) and *pājeti* [= *pa* + \sqrt{aj}] (J II 122).

¹¹² Ann Heirmann, “On Pārājika,” BSR, 1999, pp. 51–59.

the loss of (acc.), be conquered, succumb, ... *Parājaya*, m., the being deprived of or conquered, loss, defeat ..., turning away from, desertion, ... *Parājita*: conquered, defeated, overthrown, cast (in a lawsuit), condemned by law"

The first synonym given in the Parivāra verse, *cuta*, is the Sanskrit *cyuta*, which can mean "fallen away from," but also "expelled from, deprived of (abl.)," e.g. *cyutādhikāra* means "dismissed from an office"; see MW 403.

If this is compared with the explanations given in the Parivāra and the Mā-L Bhikṣuṇī-Vinaya, and the similes in the Suttavibhaṅga, then it appears that the meaning of *pārājika* is "... is disqualified," "one who is excluded," "... is barred," "... is deprived of" or "... is deposed of."

The most specific meaning that might correspond to the one of *pārājika* is "deprivation" as this originally had the specific sense of removing or deposing someone from an office, especially an ecclesiastical one. However, this sense has become archaic according to the *Oxford English Dictionary*. The word "deposition" has the sense of forcefully removing from office as in a coup, and does not fit completely. "Debarment" means "exclusion from admission or right" but probably is too formal and "being barred" would be better. "Disqualification"¹¹³ and "exclusion"¹¹⁴ are probably the best fits.

As *pārājika* occurs together with the adjective *asaṃvāsa* ("not in communion") in the rules themselves, with *asamaṇa*: "non-ascetic" in the Padabhājana, with the verb *nāseti*: "expels" in the Suttavibhaṅga to indicate the course of action other monks have to take with a monk who fell into a *Pārājika* offence, and with the similes indicating the non-possibility of being re-connected or living again, a rendering of *pārājika* that more or less fits all the etymologies and explanations—whether based on *parā* + √ji, *pāra* + *jīna*, *parā* + √aj, or *parāñc*—would be "involving disqualification" when it is qualifying *dharmā*, and "(one) who is disqualified" when it is qualifying *bhikkhu*.

On the Term *Saṅghādisesa*

The meaning and etymology of the word *saṅghādisesa* has not been clearly defined in the Suttavibhaṅga and there has been a lot speculation about its meaning by modern as well as ancient scholars. Some of these interpretations will be given below. The meaning given in the translation in this work is in accordance with the Padabhājana and Sp explanations. These ancient explanations, I believe, are to be preferred above the speculations of modern scholars for several reasons that are discussed below.

The traditional Theravāda Commentarial etymology as given in the *Samantapāsādikā* (see below) is: *saṅgha*: community + *ādi*: start, commencement, beginning; a masculine noun. + *sesa*: rest, remainder, left-over; neuter noun from *seseti* (√sis + e). Cf. BD I 195 n. 1.

The compound can be resolved in different ways. It can be a tappurisa compound involving an instrumental of accompaniment: "the beginning and rest (of the legal procedures is to be done) with the Community" or, more in accordance with the Padabhājana, an instrumental of means: "the beginning and rest (is done) by the Community," or it could be a genitive or dative tappurisa: "the beginning and rest is of/for the Community," or, in accordance with the Sp, an inverted locative tappurisa compound: "the Community (is required) in the beginning and in the rest." For inverted and irregular compounds see IP p.138, 155 (*onītapattapāṇi*), and BHSGD II II § 23,10. Cf. *pattapūra* at Pāc 34.

The Padabhājana at Vin III 112 explains: "*Saṅghādiseso ti saṅgho va tassā āpattiyaṃ parivāsaṃ deti, mūlāya paṭikassati, mānattaṃ deti, abbhethi, na sambahulā, na ekapuggalo, tena vuccati saṅghādiseso ti. Tass'eva āpattinikāyassa nāma-kammaṃ adhiyacanaṃ, tena pi vuccati saṅghādiseso ti.*"

"*Saṅghādiseso*: only the community gives the probation for that offence, throws back to the start, gives the deference, reinstates; not a number (of persons), not one person, therefore it is called "the community in the beginning and in the rest." It is the naming, the designation, for that very group of offences, therefore too it is called "the community in the beginning and in the rest."

¹¹³ *Oxford English Dictionary*: "Disqualify: pronounce (someone) ineligible for an office or activity because of an offence or infringement. > (of a feature or characteristic) make (someone) unsuitable for an office or activity."

¹¹⁴ OED: "exclude: deny access to; keep out. > rule out. > prevent the occurrence of. > expel (a pupil) from a school."

Cf. BD I 196–97. Cf. Vin II 83: “*taṃ saṅgho amūlḥavinayaṃ deti ...*”: “The Community gives him the removal through not being insane ...,” Vin I 324: “*taṃ saṅgho adassane ... ukkhipati.*”: the Community suspends him for not seeing (the offence).”

The Padabhājana’s “*saṅgho va ... na sambahula, na ekapuggalo*” is not explained in the Sp commentary. It refers to the three ways of doing a legal act; see Vin I 323–25 & II 82: “*taṃ enaṃ codeti saṅgho vā sambahulā vā ekapuggalo vā.*”: “The Saṅgha or a number (of persons) or one person admonishes him.” A *saṅghādisesa* offence can only be made up for with the co-operation of a Saṅgha, not with a number of persons less than a Saṅgha; i.e., at least four for the *parivāsadāna* and *mānattadāna* and twenty for the *abbhāna*.

Sp 522: “*Vacaṇ’attho paṇ’ettha saṅgho ādimhi c’eva sese ca icchitabbo assā ti saṅghādiseso. Kiṃ vuttaṃ hoti? Imaṃ āpattiṃ āpajjitvā vuṭṭhātukāmassa yaṇ-taṃ āpattivuṭṭhānaṃ tassa ādimhi c’eva parivāsadān’atthāya ādito sese majjhemānattadān’atthāya mūlāya paṭikassanena vā saha mānattadān’atthāya avasāne abbhān’atthāya ca saṅgho icchitabbo. Na h’ettha ekaṃ pi kammaṃ vinā saṅghena sakkā kātun-ti saṅgho assā ti saṅghādiseso.*”:

“The meaning of the word here is that a Community is required (lit. to be wanted/wished: *icchitabba*) for it in the beginning (*ādimhi*) as well as in the rest (*sese*). Why is this said? By one who has fallen into this offence and is desiring to emerge (from it) for those (procedures) that are emergences from the offences, a Community is to be required by him at the start for the purpose of giving the probation, as well as from (this) start onward in the rest (of the procedure, i.e.) in the middle for the purpose of giving deference, or for the purpose of giving deference together with the throwing back to the beginning, and in the end for the purpose of the reinstatement. For herein not even one single (legal) act can be done without a Community.”

The Sp thus takes *ādi* to mean the start of the procedure to make up for a Sd offence and *sese* to mean the rest or remaining part that comes after the start of the procedure i.e., the middle and the end of the procedure. This gives the translation: “The community in the beginning and in the rest.” This explanation and rendering fits the Padabhājana’s explanation since the Padabhājana indicates that only the Saṅgha can do the legal actions for the offence. The procedure of *parivāsa-dāna* mentioned in the Padabhājana is the beginning (*ādi*) while the three procedures of *mūlāya paṭikassana*, *mānatta-dāna*, and *abbhāna* are the rest (*sese*). The first two procedures of the four are not required in all cases and the *sese* part can be consisting of one, two, or three procedures. “Remainder” or “rest” for *sese* will cover all cases. *Saṅghādisesa* is an odd compound but then there are other odd compounds in Pāli, see above, and it is preferable above the Sanskrit equivalents that will be mentioned and discussed in the next paragraphs.

The Mū & Sa schools use the term *saṃghāvaśeṣa*, the Mā-L school: *saṃghātīśeṣa*; see BMD pp.11–12, and BHSGD II 549. In accordance with the so called principle of *lectio difficilior* *ādi* is to be preferred above *ati* as those who transmitted the text in these schools perhaps misunderstood the meaning of *ādi* and changed it to the for them more understandable form *ati* and then subsequently to *ava*.

Hinüber, 1985 p.62 f., finds that the commentarial explanation entails grammatical difficulties and thinks that the Padabhājana explanation supports *saṅgha + atisesa*. The latter derivation is translated by him (1996 p.10, Cf. 1999 p.17), as “the rest (*sese*, i.e., the duration of the suspension) is with the Saṅgha (i.e., determined by the Saṅgha).”

However, the duration of the suspension is not determined by the Saṅgha but by the number of days the bhikkhu has concealed the offence. When the bhikkhu does not conceal the offence he does not have to undergo suspension at all. Instead, the decision whether the bhikkhu is given the *parivāsa*, *mānatta*, and *abbhāna* is with the Saṅgha as the bhikkhu has to request these procedures to the Community that then can give approval through a (legal) act of a motion (and an announcement) as the fourth (i.e., one motion followed by three announcements, *ñatticatutthakamma*). In the subsequent announcements of this *kamma* any participating bhikkhu is asked whether he agrees to it, and if not, for example when a bhikkhu has noticed that the bhikkhu requesting *mānatta* has not done the specified time through *ratticcheda* or miscounting during *mānatta*, he can object against giving the *parivāsa* to that bhikkhu.

Norman & Pruitt, TP xlv, suggest: “*Saṅghādisesa* probably meant “involving the remainder of the saṅgha,” but the tradition assumed that the *ādi* element of the name meant “beginning” and gave an interpretation, “The saṅgha is required at the beginning and on a subsequent (occasion)”

This interpretation, i.e., that that this offence involves the rest of the Saṅgha, is not supported by any any

tradition.

The different forms for this offence in the different traditions probably arose during transmission in a dialect where the *-t-* was voiced as *-d-* or vice versa; see PG 38.3 and CP I 51–52, III 238 and/or because the prefixes *ati-*, *adhi-*, *abhi-* and *ava-* are frequently interchanged; see CP II 5 and PED 27: *adhi-*, 61: *abhi-*, and 80: *ava-*.

The Sa form *saṃghāvaśeṣa* might have occurred because of an interchange of prefixes or because *avaśeṣa* and *atiśeṣa* have the same meaning: remainder, remnant, see MW. *Avaśeṣa* (= Pāli *avasesa*: remainder, rest) might have been a more understandable form for the Sarvāstivādins. The Mā-L school was the first school to split off from the Theravādins and is likely to have an older form than the Sa school.

It is suggested by Norman, CP IV 53, that different forms of technical terms might have their origin in the Buddha himself who preached in different dialects. The various early schools might then have remembered and standardised some of these forms.

Levi, 1912, p.503–05, suggests that *ādi*: beginning does not fit with *sesa*: rest and suggests that more natural is the use of *ādi* with *anta*: end, as in Skt *daivādyaṇṭa*: “(homage) to god at the start and end’ (Cf. the Pāli usage of *ādi* with *pariyosana* as at M I 267: *ādi-*, *majjhe-*, and *pariyosāna-kalyāṇaṃ*.) Compounds with *avasesa* are regularly found, e.g. *ardhāvaśeṣa*. He suggests the original reading was *saṅghātīśeṣa* meaning “a remainder of (association with) the order’ (‘un reste de communauté’). This explanation, however, overlooks the fact that *sesa*: the rest, does not have the same meaning as *anta*: the end. *Sesa* includes anything after the beginning, the middle as well as the end.

Roth, Roth, 1968, p.342, BV 104 n. 5 & 108 n. 8, disagrees with Levi that *saṅghātīśeṣa* was the more original form since an explanation found in the Bhikṣunivīnaya of the Mā-L school, *upādiśeṣa*, seems to indicate otherwise: “... *saṅghātīśeṣa upādiśeṣo saṅgho saṅghaṃ evādhīpatiṃ kṛtya nihsaraṇīyo*.” He translates this in BV 103 n. 4: “... the group of offences (*saṅgho*) that is the supplement (*śeṣa*) to the first group (*upa + ādi*)

(the group of Pārājika offences)”; cf. Roth, 1968, p.344. The second phrase he does not translate here, but it means: “having made the Saṅgha the only authority (she) is to be sent away.”

Later in the same work, BV 108, it is said that *saṅgha* here means the eight bhikṣunī pārājika offences: “*saṅgho tā nāma vuccanti aṣṭa pārājikā dharmā* .”

In BV 104 n. 5, Roth notes: “*Upādiśeṣa* deserves special attention because it contains an explanation of the term that is inserted in the disciplinary Sūtra text itself! This gloss obviously thinks of *saṅgha + ādi + śeṣa*, close to Pāli *saṅghādisesa*, and not of *saṅgha + ati + śeṣa*. It is, therefore, more likely that *saṅghādisesa* is the more original reading, and *saṅghātīśeṣa* of our text the Sanskritised changed form of it than vice versa, as Levi, 1912, p.504 suggests..” Taking this gloss into account Roth sees in Pāli form: “... *saṅghādisesa*: *saṅgha + ādi + sesa*”: “supplement to the eight pārājika, which are the first (disciplinary group)”; BV 108 n. 8.

This explanation seems unlikely since *saṅgha* does not have the meaning of offence-group in the Pāli Vinaya. In this meaning the Pāli compound would be *ādisaṅghasesa*... Roth does not comment on the phrase “*saṅghaṃ evādhīpatiṃ kṛtvā*” above. It is not found in the Pāli but seems to be in line with the Pāli Padabhāṣana commentary on Sd, which explains that only the Saṅgha (*saṅgho va*) gives the probation etc.

The Chinese translation of the explanation of *saṅghātīśeṣa* in the Mā-L Bhikṣunī-vibhaṅga is: “‘Saṅgha’ refers to the so-called eight pārājika offenses. ‘Atīśeṣa’ literally means: that this offence has a remainder and the Order should handle it by a karma (formal meeting). Thus they are called ‘saṃghātīśeṣa’ (offenses). Another explanation is that since this matter may be confessed and repented of in the Order, it is called ‘saṃghātīśeṣa.’”¹¹⁵

The Tibetan and Chinese translation of the Sa & Mū *saṃghāvaśeṣa* is “a remainder in the *saṃgha*.”; see Hirakawa p.136.

The explanation of the term of the Sarvāstivādin tradition preserved in Chinese is: “The term *saṃghāvaśeṣa*’ means that this type of wrongdoing is subject to the monastic Order, (that is, it can be expiated by confession to the Order). In other words there is a remainder in the Order. (In contrast pārājika offences are said to have no remainder in the Order and thus may not be expiated by the Order.) By confessing to the Order, one can expiate his error.”

¹¹⁵ Hirakawa, 1982, p.141.

The Mū explanation in Chinese is: “The term “*avaśeṣa*” means to remain. When a pārājika offence is committed, the transgressor may not remain in the Order. He or she is automatically expelled from the Order. However when a *saṃghāvaśeṣa* offence is committed, the offence may be expiated. The transgressor confesses in front of the Order. If the Order accepts his confession, it may charge him with the violation by performing a *karma*. After the transgressor has done penance, the Order may perform a *karma* and declare that he has expiated his wrong-doing. The term indicates that the final decision remains with the Order.”¹¹⁶ (The meaning of the last line is that the Saṅgha decides whether the bhikkhu remains in the Saṅgha or not.)

A similar Tibetan explanation is found in Gyatso, 1986, p.64 n. 19: “Remainder (*lhag.ma.*) It is stated in Collected Works of Gyalwa Gedun Drub (2) “For a defeat there is no remainder (that can be) subsequently purified. Here (however) there is a remainder (that can be) subsequently purified, and because it depends on the Saṅgha Community for restoration, it is called ‘saṅgha community’ remainder.”¹¹⁷

Maybe this explanation is related to the *avasesa* and *anavasesa āpatti*: offences with remainder and offences without remainder, which are found in the Pāli Canon, e.g. Vin I 354 & A I 20. With the *avasesa āpatti* a bhikkhu can remain in the community while with the *anavasesa*, i.e., the pārājika, he can not. (Sp 1329: “*Sāvasesā ti: thapetvā pārājikaṃ sesā. Anavasesā ti pārājikāpattī ti.*”) If *ādisesa* in *saṅghādisesa* is related to this then “a remainder (of association) with the order” would be the translation.

Note on the Arrangement and Translation

The Pāli text of the rule is given first, and then each Pāli word in the rule is listed with a translation. Sometimes alternative translations of words or phrases are given, and also the translations of other translators. After the word-translation the case, number, gender of the nouns are given; for verbs the person, number, and tense has been given.

The Pāli verbal root system as given in CPED has usually been followed in this work, rather than the Sanskrit system as given in PED and A.K. Warder’s *Introduction to Pali*. However, Warder’s system, see IP pp.11 + 216, of showing bracketed twins of the initial consonant of roots liable to doubling when compounded with a prefix, e.g. (*s*)*su*, has also been used.

The analysis of junctions, *sandhi*, as given in Geiger’s *Pāli Grammar* § 66–74 has generally been followed.

Other additional information, such as extracts from the Pāli commentaries etc., is also given if it sheds light on the meaning of the words discussed. The terms used for the classification of compounds are in Pāli because no adequate equivalents exist in English (see IP pp.77f).

“See above: ...” refers back to the translation and explanation of a word that has occurred earlier.

When a word is given several times in a rule, or in a sequence of rules, it is not listed after the first few times it has occurred.

The analysis of the commentarial rule-titles is only in given at Pār 1. Thereafter it is only given when the rule-title contains words that are not found in the rule itself.

The Pāli sections given in square brackets (such as the rule-titles) are not recited. In the English translation the words in square brackets are not found in the Pāli but are supplied to make the translation more readable.

¹¹⁶ Hirakawa, 1982, p.136

¹¹⁷ There are Mū Prātimokṣasūtra commentaries in Tibetan that might have more information; see Prebish, 1994, pp.100–11.

[Bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ.¹¹⁸]

[Nidān'uddeso¹¹⁹]

Namo tassa bhagavato arahato sammāsambuddhassa.¹²⁰

Suṇātu me bhante saṅgho,¹²¹ ajj'uposatho paṇṇaraso,¹²² yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ, saṅgho uposathaṃ kareyya pātimokkhaṃ¹²³ uddiseyya.¹²⁴

Kiṃ saṅghassa pubbakiccaṃ? Pārisuddhiṃ āyasmanto ārocetha. Pātimokkhaṃ¹²⁵ uddisissāmi. Taṃ sabbe va santā sādhuṃ suṇoma manasikaroma.

[The Disciplinary Code of the Bhikkhu.]

[The recitation of the Introduction.]

Venerable Sir, let the Community listen to me! Today is a fifteenth [day] Observance. If it is suitable to the Community, [then] the Community should do the Observance [and] should recite the Disciplinary Code.

What is the preliminary for the Community? Venerables, announce the purity, [for] I shall recite the Disciplinary Code. Let us all [who are] present listen to it carefully [and] let us take it to mind.

bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ: Disciplinary Code of the Bhikkhu; nom. sg. nt. Gen. tapp. cpd. consisting of *bhikkhu* and *pātimokkhaṃ*. This is not recited. See *bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ* at the Pm Conclusion.

bhikkhupātimokkhapāli: the text of the Disciplinary Code of the Bhikkhu; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. = *bhikkhupātimokkha*: Disciplinary Code of the Bhikkhu; gen. tapp. cpd. + *pāli*: a text, lit.: a line. In the commentaries it denotes an original, i.e., Canonical, text as opposed to a commentarial text (*aṭṭhakathā*). Later it came to mean the language of Pāli literature. The usage of *pāli* as part of the titles of texts is a late development and originally the word *pāli* was not a part of titles. The Mm Se title therefore is more original. In any case Pāli palm-leaf manuscripts (at least in Sri Lanka and Thailand) do not have a title at the start of a text. Instead of a title, the “*namo tassa ...*” formula is found and then the text starts; see De Silva, 1938, p.xxi.¹²⁶

¹¹⁸ Dm, UP, Um: *Bhikkhupātimokkhapāli*. Mi Se: *Pātimokkhaṃ, bhikkhupātimokkhapāli*. Mm Se: *Bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ*. BhPm 1 & 2: *Bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ*.

¹¹⁹ = Dm. D: *Nidānaṃ*. Nd Ce: “(Ñatti).” Mi Se: “Ñattikammaṃ” and “Nidānuddeso” before “Kiṃ saṅghassa....” Nothing in other eds. Cf. PrMoSa p.161, where “*eṣā jñaptiḥ*” comes after the section that corresponds to the Pāli *ñatti*. So Dhg, see Beal 208, where “commencement” is put after this section. Cf. Tsomo, 1997, p.33, BPP 3, Finot 15, Paschow 5.

¹²⁰ In V preceded by: *Buddhaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi. Buddhanāhāsmi dāso va, buddhāmesāmikissarā, buddhānañca sire pādā mayhaṃ tiṭṭhantu sabbadā. Dhammaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi. Dhammānāhāsmi dāso va, Dhammāmesāmikissarā, sabbe dhammā pi tiṭṭhantu mamaṃ sire va sabbadā. Paccekabuddhaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi. Paccekasambuddhānāhaṃ dāso va, sāmikassarā, tesam pādā pi tiṭṭhantu mamaṃ sire va sabbadā. Saṃghaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi. Saṃghānāhāsmi dāso va, saṃghāmesāmikissarā, tesam gunā pi tiṭṭhantu mamaṃ sire va sabbadā. Aniccaḍukhanātañca natthi me buddhadhammato paccekabuddhasaṃgho ca nātthañño saraṇā mamaṃ.*

¹²¹ BhPm 1, C, G, V, W: *saṃgho*. Throughout the texts of C, G, V, W, and BhPm 1 the *niggāhita* (ṃ) is used instead of the nasal ṇ, e.g., *saṃghādisesa* and *ṇisatisaṃgha*. This will not be noted everywhere.

¹²² In brackets in Mi Se. Dm, Mv Ee, W: *pannaraso*. Not in Vibh Ce: “... me saṅgho, yadi saṅghassa ...”

¹²³ G, Mi, Mm Se, V: throughout the text: *pāṭi*.

¹²⁴ The BNF 733:10 Mūl script manuscript in the Bibliothèque Nationale de France has *ñatti niṭṭhitaṃ* following this. See EFEO DATA 101.

¹²⁵ G, Mi, Mm Se, V: *pāṭi*.

¹²⁶ On the wooden covers protecting the manuscripts there are also no titles. This can make it difficult to find a manuscript with a specific text in a monastery library if there are no modern tags or labels with titles and reference-numbers. In this case one has either to be familiar with the text and be able to recognise it from its start or one has to look at the conclusion

The Pātimokkha is traditionally referred to in different ways. When both the Bhikkhu- and Bhikkhunī-pātimokkhas are given in a monastery manuscript reference list and in printed texts, the titles *bhikkhu-bhikkhunī-pātimokkha*: “the Bhikkhu- and the Bhikkhunī-pātimokkha,” *Ubhaya-pātimokkha*: “both the Pātimokkhas,” *ubhaya-mātikā*: “both the Mātikās,” and *dve-mātikā*: “the two Mātikās” can be used. These titles are sometimes used in the commentaries and subcommentaries. All of them can have *-pāḷi*: “text” appended. When given as single texts, there are: *Pāṭimokkha*, *Mātikā-pāḷi*, *Bhikkhu-pātimokkha*, *Bhikkhunī-pātimokkha*; with or without *-pāḷi* appended.

nidān’uddeso: the recitation of the introduction; nom. sg. m. This could be an acc. tapp. cpd. (cf. *pātimokkhaṃ uddiseyya/uddisissāmi* further on in the Nidāna) or an appositive kammadhāraya cpd (see NP 10: *cīvaravagga*), however, in English it sounds nicer when translated as a genitive tappurisa.

Junction of *nidāna* and *uddesa* through elision of the final *-a* of *nidāna*.

nidāna: introduction, ground (lit. & fig.), foundation, occasion, origin, source. = Pref. **ni**:- down + **dāna** of $\sqrt{dā}$: binds + **uddesa**: recitation, recital; abstract noun der. fr. *uddisati* (*ud* + \sqrt{dis} + *a*): recites, appoints. *Uddesa* can also mean “designation” as in Sd 6.

suṇātu: let listen; 3 sg. imp. of *suṇāti* (\sqrt{su} + *ṇā*).

me: to me; (enclitic) dat. sg. of *amha*: I.

bhante: Venerable Sir!, Ñm: venerable sir, H: honoured Venerables; voc. sg. m.

Bhante is a shortened form of *bhadante*, voc. sg. m., or a shortened form of Skt *bhavantah*, the ending *-e* being a Māgadhism of the Skt ending *-ah* according to PED 498 and PG § 98,3. A polite addressing by the reciter to the senior bhikkhu(s) in the assembly.

V. Perniola, *Pali Grammar*, § 246b states that “In addressing persons of great authority, besides the proper honorific word in the vocative case, another word is used referring to the same person and is put in the nominative case as subject of the verb. ... D I 179: “*Etu kho bhante bhagavā*.”: “O Lord, may the Blessed One come.”

It is to be added that the verb in this usage is always in the third person. Warder, IP p.35, states that when the verb is in the 2nd person the sense is usually that of a command whereas the 3rd person imperative used in a similar situation with the title or name of the person addressed expresses a polite invitation.

See the usage of the nominative *āyasmā* with third person verbs in Sd 10: “*Samet’āyasmā ...*” etc; see notes in Sd 10 and Pāc 68 on *āyasmā*.

According to Geiger *bhante* besides being a vocative/nominative of address can also be used as an attribute/adjective in any case, e.g. D I 179 (see above), and any number, e.g. “*Api bhante passeyyāthā ti*.”; see PG § 98,3. This attributive usage suggested by Geiger is probably incorrect and the usage suggested above by Perniola and Warder is preferable. In accordance with Geiger’s suggestion “*suṇātu me bhante saṅgho*” would be translated as: “Venerable Community listen to me!”

Kkh 4 states that when the (most) senior bhikkhu of the Community recites the Pātimokkha *āvuso* is to be used instead of *bhante*. This was done, for example, in the account of the first council at Cv XI,4 where Venerable Mahākassapa, who was the most senior bhikkhu at the time, addressed the community with “*Suṇātu me āvuso saṅgho*.”: “Friends, (please) let the Community listen to me.”

Āvuso, which is a polite address to juniors (see the note on *āyasmanto* below), can, in contrast to *āyasmā*, be used as an attribute; e.g. M I 372: “... *āvuso Gotama*..” and D II 156: “... *bhante Anuruddha ... āvuso Ananda ...*.”

The Sa Prātimokṣasūtra has “*śṛṇotu bhadantah saṃghah*”: “Listen Venerable Community!”; PrMoSa p.160–61. (Cf. PrMoMū p.12.) The Chinese translation of this given in French by Huber in Finot 475 is “*Écoutez, Vénérable Assemblée!*”

of the text as all texts finish, like the Pātimokkha, with “(title) *niṭṭhito/ā/aṃ*” or with “(title) *samatto/ā/aṃ*.” It seems that the bhikkhus who used the manuscripts in the past would recognise which manuscript was which through familiarity with the different wooden covers (painted or plain) and the location of the manuscripts in their libraries.

āvuso: friend(s); voc. pl. m. (Can be sg. elsewhere.) *Āvuso* is the (more colloquial) form of address used by senior bhikkhus to junior bhikkhus and by all bhikkhus to laypeople. By junior bhikkhus the term *āyasmā*, or the plural *āyasmanto*, is used to address more senior bhikkhus; see the note on *āyasmanto* below. Although the number is singular *āvuso* is also used to address more than person like here; see the word *bhante* above, which can also be used in sg. or pl. At NP 10 the bhikkhu is addressed as *bhante* and *āyasmā* by the steward and the bhikkhu addresses the steward as *āvuso*. However in NP 8, 10, and 27 a bhikkhu addresses a donor of robes as *āyasmā*, sir, apparently in order to please him.

According to PED and PG § 46,1 *āvuso* is, like *āyasmā*, from the Sanskrit *āyusmant*, but Wijesekera, Syntax § 27, disagrees with this for phonetic reasons and argues that is from an older form **āyuṣaḥ*, which is the derived adjective from *āyuṣ*: life. DP suggests it is from **āyuṣvas*.

saṅgho: Ñm: community, H: the Order, assembly; nom. sg. m.; see the note *bhante* above. *Saṅgha* is derived from the verb *saṃharati* (*saṃ* + *√har* + *a*): collects, assembles, draws together. A *saṅgha* is a community or assembly of at least four bhikkhus; see @@.

ajj'uposatho: today (is) an observance day. A junction, sandhi, of *ajja* + *uposatho* in which the final -a of *ajja* has been elided. **ajja:** today; indecl. + **uposatho:** observance day; nom. sg. m. *Uposatha* corresponds to the Vedic *upavasatha*. (In Pāli the prefix *ava-* is often contracted to *o-*; see PG § 19.) *Upavasatha* is the sacred day of preparation for the lunar sacrifice, for which the gods were expected to come to the house, through observing vows (*vrata*) such as not-eating, celibacy, and not working. The sacrifice happened on the new moon and the full moon.

Cf. Olivelle, 1971, p.42, especially n. 2: "... *upavasatha* (from *upa* + *√vas*) literally means "abiding with" and in this case, "abiding in the presence of the gods." As this involved fasting, it came to mean specifically the fast on the eve of the sacrifice, and later any form of fasting."

The members of other sects observed these days as times of coming together and teaching laypeople. On the request of King Bimbisāra the Buddha allowed the bhikkhus to assemble on this day and teach the laity. Later he told the bhikkhus to recite the training precepts on this day; see note on [Pātimokkha](#), and Vin I 100f. Cf. A IV 248–55 and D I 47f.

Uposathas fall on the day preceding the moon's waxing and waning and the two days in the middle of these phases, i.e., the 8th, 15th, 23th, and 30th night of the lunar month in the case of 15th day Uposathas, and on the 8th, 14th, 22nd, and 29th night in the case of 14th day Uposathas.

pañṇaraso: fifteenth (day of the fortnight; ordinal. Ordinals are declined and act like adjectives; see IP p.125. Here *pañṇarasa* agrees with *uposatha* and comes after it, indicating emphasis: "which is ..." Cf. Mv II 4,2: "*Anujānāmi bhikkhave sakiṃ pakkhassa cātuddase vā pannarase vā pātimokkhaṃ uddisitum ti*." "I allow, bhikkhus, to recite the Code of Discipline once on the fourteenth or fifteenth of the fortnight." and Th 546: "*cando pannaraso yathā*." "like a fifteenth (day of the fortnight) moon."

= **pañca:** five; ordinal. + **dasā:** ten; num. *Pañcadasa* (Sn 402) > *paññarasa* > *pañṇarasa/pannarasa*.¹²⁷

On fourteenth day observance days, which occur on the 3rd and 7th Uposatha of each four-month season (according to the commentary), *cātuddaso* is to be used; see Mv II 4,2 above. **cātuddaso:** fourteenth; ordinal agreeing with *uposatho*. = **cātu(r):** four; ordinal cpd form + **dasā** = assimilation of a liquid with a mute consonant (see PG § 51 & 52 c). CPED lists a feminine *cātuddasī*, but Mv II 4,2: "... *cātuddase pannarase atthamiyā ca pakkhassa* ..." indicates that it is a masculine ordinal in -a. (Note that *atthamiyā* remains feminine here.)

¹²⁷ Geiger (PG § 48.2) mentions that rarely *pañṇarasa* (15), is found instead of *pannarasa* & *pañcadasa*, and that *paññāsa* (50) is found besides *paññāsa*. In Pkt *pañṇarasa* and *paññāsaṃ* are used. Also, in footnote 2 to § 53.1, he mentions that, instead of the usual *jñ* > *ññ* development in Pāli (described in § 53.1), the Prākṛit *jñ* usually becomes *ññ*. The form *paññatti* (manifestation), found in the Pāli commentaries, etc, instead of *paññatti*, is not mentioned by Geiger. The influential Burmese *Saddanīti* grammar gives two substitution rules (*ādesa*) of *ñ* for *ñ*: *Saddanīti* § 89: *paññatti-paññāsānaṃ ññassa ññ*; § 90: *pañcavīsatiyā pañcassa pañño*. Therefore the forms *pañṇarasa* and *paññatti* might have arisen under the influence of the *Saddanīti*, which might in turn have been influenced by Prākṛit in this. The older *Kaccāyana* grammar does not mention these substitutions, which suggests that forms like *paññatti* were unknown to the grammarian Kaccāyana.

yadi: if; indeclinable (unlike *ce* not enclitic).

saṅghassa: to the community; dat. sg. m. of *saṅgha*. Some nouns and adjectives having the sense of suiting, like *pattakallaṃ*, take the dative of suitability; see Syntax § 108.

pattakallaṃ: suitable, right and well, has reached suitability, Ñm: it is convenient, H: it seems right, Norman: the proper time has come, *Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha* (Ñāṇamoli and Bodhi) p.858 (MN 104.20): if it is approved by the Saṅgha; nom. sg. nt. = **patta:** right, fit, reached, arrived; p.p. of *pāpunāti* (*pa* + *√pā* + *unā*) having the connotation of rightness and fitness. See MW: *prāpta:* ... proper, right... Cf. A II 68: "... *imāni cattāri pattakammāni kattā hoti.*" Aa: "*Pattakammānīti yuttakammāni anucchavīkakkammāni.*" + **kalla:** well, suitable, ready, proper, fit, able; nt. (related to *kalyāṇa*) usually an adverb (e.g. in "... *kallaṃ nu taṃ samanupassituṃ ...*"; D I 157), but sometimes an adjective (e.g. "*kallo pañho*"; S II 13.) MW: "*Kalya:* well ... sound, perfect ... ready or prepared for..."

The Prātimokṣasūtras have *prāptakāla*; Mā-L, Sa and Mū (PrMoMā-L p.2, Ban 12, PrMoSa p.161). MW: "*prāptakāla ... a fit time, proper season, ... one whose time has come, suitable, opportune ...*"

Maybe *pattakallaṃ* is a dvanda cpd used as an adverb, see IP p.97, rather than a bahubbhi cpd; i.e., "*patta ca kalla ca*": "right and well." "*Yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ*" would then mean: "when it is right and well to the Saṅgha." *Patta* is then having the same sense as in *kammappatta*; see [the "summary of preparations and preliminary duties"](#); and *pattakalla* and *kammappatta* might have similar meanings. In this case *patta* is a past participle used as a noun since dvanda compounds consist of nouns; see IP p.41 & 62. *Kalla* is an adjective appearing in the neuter gender as an abstract noun (IP p.62). In the sense the commentary attributes to *pattakallaṃ*, it is a bahubbhi cpd used as an abstract noun; see IP p.62.

Pattakalla is not commented upon by the Padabhāṇa. Kkh: "*Ettha patto kālo imassa kammassā ti pattakālaṃ*": "Herein the time has come for this action, therefore 'the time has come' is said." The Kkh thus derives *kalla* from *kāla*: time. It further states that *pattakalla* is here comprised of the four items given in the Pubbakicca-summary mentioned above. However, elsewhere in the Vinaya *pattakallaṃ* does not have this special sense and it is used for any Saṅghakamma, e.g. Vin I 94f, 113, II 288. The term is only found in Vinaya contexts.

saṅgho: see above. **uposathaṃ:** acc. sg. m. of the above.

kareyya: should do, perform, carry out; 3 sg. opt. of *karoti* (*√kar* + *o*).

pātimokkhaṃ: Disciplinary Code; acc. sg. nt.

uddiseyya: should recite, declare; 3 sg. opt. of *uddisati* (*ud* + *√dis* + *a*).

kiṃ: what; nt. inter. pron.

saṅghassa: for the community; dat. sg. m. dat. of advantage; see Syntax § 101a.

pubbakiccaṃ: preliminary, preceding duty, preparatory duty; acc. sg. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd consisting of adj. or adv. **pubba:** before, preceding + **kiccaṃ:** duty, to be done; (nt.) the f.p.p. of *karoti*, used as a neuter noun. See "[Remarks on pubbakarana](#) ..."

pārisuddhiṃ: purity; acc. sg. f., der. fr. the verb *parisujjhati* (*pari* + *√suddh* + *ya*): one becomes clean, ... pure. Prefix *pari* denotes completion. See "[Remarks on pubbakarana](#) ... " on the question whether *pārisuddhi* refers to the attending bhikkhus' purity or the purity of absentees.

āyasmanto: venerables, sirs, Ñm: venerables (but later in the Nidāna: "venerable sirs"), H: venerables; voc. pl. m. of **āyasmā:** the respectful and honorific form of address used by junior bhikkhus to senior bhikkhus, see the Mahāparinibbānasuttanta, D II 154, by bhikkhus to layfollowers or non-buddhists and vice versa, see NP 8–10 and DP. In Sanskrit *āyusmant* literally means "having life," ie. "old," fig. "having standing in life." The term *āyasmā* was used by bhikkhus to address each other but it was not used by the Buddha to address the bhikkhus and was also not used by the bhikkhus to address the Buddha. D II 154: "*Navakatarena bhikkhunā theratāro bhikkhu bhante ti vā āyasmā ti vā samudācaritabbo.*": "By a more junior bhikkhu a more senior bhikkhu is to be addressed as 'bhante' or 'āyasmā.'" Padabhāṇa (Vin I 103): *Āyasmanto ti piyavacanam-etam garuvacanam-etam sagāravasappatissādhivacanam-etam āyasmanto ti.*: "*Āyasmanto:* this is a term of endearment, this is a term of esteem, this is a respectful and reverential addressing."

The plural *āyasmanto*, in contrast to the nominative singular *āyasmā*, can be used in the vocative voice; see Sd 10 note. See also the note on *āvuso* above.

ārocetha: announce; 2 pl. imp. of *āroceti* (*ā* + *√roc* + *e*). A command when used in the 2nd person, cf. the 3rd person usage of the imp. tense in *suṇātu* above (under *bhante*).

pātimokkham: see above.

uddisissāmi: I shall recite; 1 sg. fut. of *uddisati*: see above.

taṃ: that, it; acc. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

sabbe va: just all, one and all. Maybe a junction of *sabbe* + *eva* through elision of the initial *e* of *eva* (see PG § 71,1a) like the English ‘s in *he’s* or *that’s*, but more likely it is **sabbe**: all; nom. pl. m. pronominal adjective (see IP p.74) + **va**: just; emph. particle. An independent side-form (Geiger calls it a “frozen sandhi form”) of *eva*; see PG § 66,1. Cf. “*ubho’va santā*” at NP 9.

santā: being present; pr.p. of *atthi* (*√as* + *a* + *ti*) used as an adjective qualifying *sabbe*.

sādhukam: carefully, thoroughly, well; adverb of manner. An adjective used as an adverb in acc. sg. nt.; IP p.116.) = *sādhu*: well + adjectival suffix *-ka*.

suṇoma: let us listen; 1 pl. imp. of *suṇoti* (*su* + *√ṇo* = 4th conjugation ending; see IP p.317).

manasikaroma: let us take to mind, ... pay attention; 1 pl. imp. of *manasikaroti*. = **manasi**: in mind; loc. sg. m. of *manas/mano*. + **karoti**: does, makes; see above. A verbal compound; i.e., a noun combined with a verb; see IP p.156. Cf. *āvikareyya* and *tuṇhibhavitabbaṃ* below.

[Nidāna continuation]

Yassa siyā āpatti, so āvikareyya.¹²⁸ Asantiyā āpattiyā, tuṇhī bhavitabbaṃ. Tuṇhībāhena kho panāyasmante parisuddhā ti vedissāmi. Yathā kho pana paccekapuṭṭhassa veyyākaraṇaṃ hoti, evam-evam¹²⁹ evarūpāya parisāya yāvatatiyaṃ anussāvitam¹³⁰ hoti. Yo pana bhikkhu yāvatatiyaṃ anussāviyamāne¹³¹ saramāno santiṃ āpattiṃ nāvikareyya,¹³² sampajānamusāvād’assa hoti. Sampajānamusāvādo kho pan’āyasmanto antarāyiko dhammo vutto bhagavatā. Tasmā saramānena bhikkhunā āpanna¹³³ visuddhāpekkhena¹³⁴ santi āpatti¹³⁵ āvikātabbā,¹³⁶ āvikatā¹³⁷ hi’ssa phāsu hoti.¹³⁸

Whoever may have an offence, he should disclose [it]. When there is no offence, [then it] is to be silent. By the silence I shall know the Venerables [with the thought]: “[They are] pure.” As an answer occurs to [a bhikkhu] who is asked individually, just so in such an assembly [as this one] there is the announcement up to the third time. But if any bhikkhu, [who is] remembering [an offence] when the announcement is being made up to the third time, should not disclose the existing offence, there is [a further offence of] deliberate false speech for him. Now, venerables, deliberate false speech has been called an obstructive act by the Fortunate One. Therefore, by a bhikkhu who is remembering, who has committed [an offence], who is desiring purification, an existing offence is to be disclosed; because, [after] having disclosed [it], there is comfort for him.

yassa: for whoever, of whom; gen/dat. of rel. pron. *ya(d)*: who(ever)/which.

¹²⁸ V, Ce Mv, Ra: *āvikareyya*.

¹²⁹ C, D, G, V, W, Dm, Ce Mv, Ra, Mi Se, BhPm 1 & 2, Pg, Ee Kkh: *evam-evam*, Mv Ee: *evam eva*. Mm Se: *evam evam*. UP, Um, Be Mv v.l & Mi Se v.l.: *evam-eva*.

¹³⁰ C, D, G, V, W, Dm, Ce Mv, Ra, BhPm 1 & 2, Um, UP, Pg: *anusāv-*.

¹³¹ C, D, G, V, W, Dm, Ce Mv, Ra, BhPm 1 & 2, Um, UP, Pg: *anusāv-*.

¹³² V, Ce Mv, G, Ra: *nāvikareyya*.

¹³³ BhPm 2: *saramānena ... āpanna*.

¹³⁴ BhPm 2 v.l.: *visuddhāpekkhena* (Cf *-āpekh-* v.l. at Pāc 36, 56, and 60.)

¹³⁵ C, G, V, W, BhPm 2, UP, Um: *santi āpatti*. Ra: *santī āpattī*.

¹³⁶ V, Ce Mv, Ra: *āvikātabbā*.

¹³⁷ V, Ce Mv, Ra: *āvikatā*.

¹³⁸ = C, D, G, V, W, Mi & Mm Se, BhPm 1 & 2. Other eds.: *hotī ti*.

siyā: may be; 3 sg. opt. of *atthi*: is; see above.

yassa siyā: whoever may have, lit.: for whom there may be.

āpatti: an offence, a transgression, Ñm: a fault, H: an offence; nom. sg. f.; feminine action-noun der. fr. *āpajjati* (\bar{a} + \sqrt{pad} + *ya*): gets into, produces, commits. No completely satisfactory translation is possible. *Āpatti* literally means the “committing (of an offence).”

so: he; nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

āvīkareyya: he should disclose, H: reveal, Ñm: declare; 3 sg. opt. of *āvīkaroti* (or *āvīkaroti*); = *āvī* (or *āvi*): open; indecl. (Skt: *āvis*) + *karoti*: does, makes; see above. A verbal compound consisting of a an indeclinable combined with a verb; see IP p.156. BD 132 n. 4: “*Āvikaroti* is to make clear, to manifest, thus to disclose, to bring to light. This method of clearing oneself of an offence is perhaps a forerunner to the more formal confession, *āpattidesanā*, to an Order, a group, or to one individual bhikkhu.”

The Sanskrit form is *āviṣ-* + $\sqrt{kṛ}$, see DP and MW. Both forms *āvī* and *āvi* are found in manuscripts and editions; see DP 346: “*āvi*, *āvī*.” The *āvī* form might be a Sanskritisation like the form *āyudha* in Sekh 60 instead of Pāli *āvudha* in Ce Mv. On Sanskritisation in the Burmese tradition see the footnote to *addhānamagga(p)paṭipannassa* at NP 16.

The lengthened final *-ī* in *āvī-* in Ce Mv is maybe due to the assimilation of the final *-ṣ* of the original Sanskrit form *āviṣ-* to the initial *k-* of the root \sqrt{kar} and then a lengthening of the *-i-* to make a long syllable and avoid the in Pāli non-existent consonant-combination *-kk-*; cf. *kātabba* below.

The verb *āvīkaroti* is found in Sn 84–85, Sn 351/Th 1278, Ja 20.316 where the syllable is in a metrically critical position that indicates the length of the syllable. In each case the proper metrical form should be *āvi-* and this might be an indicator that the correct form is *āvi-*.

Mā-L: “*so’viṣkarotu*”; PrMoMā-L p.6. Sa: *sāviṣkartavyā*; PrMoSa p.161.

asantiyā āpattiyā: when there is no offence, when there is no existent offence; locative absolute construction. According to the word-commentary in Mv II 3,5/Vin I 103 “not existent” encompasses offences that one has made amends for: “... *āpajjitvā vā vuṭṭhitā*.”

asantiyā: not existent, not being present; adjective qualifying *āpattiyā* = neg. pref. *a-* + *santa*: see above.

āpattiyā: offence; loc. sg. f. of *āpatti*: see above.

tuṇhībhavitabbam: it is to be silent, lit.: there is to be silence = **tuṇhī:** silence, silent; indeclinable used as adverb. Derived from the verb *tussati* (\sqrt{tus} + *ya*): “is content, is satisfied.” When used with forms of the root $\sqrt{bhū}$ it signifies consent by silent agreement. + **bhavitabbam:** it is to be; f.p.p. of *bhavati* ($\sqrt{bhū}$ + *a*): becomes, is. The f.p.p. agrees with the patient in the sentence; see *āvīkātabbā* below. When there is no patient, as in this sentence, the f.p.p. is used as impersonal passive verb in nom. sg. nt and it is best translated impersonally as “it is to be ...,” rather than personally as “one is to be” An unexpressed impersonal patient “(it)” has to be added when translating into English; see IP p.107. One could even argue that the f.p.p. in cases where there is no patient agrees with an unexpressed patient *taṃ*, “it”, the nom. sg. nt. dem. pron.

Although no edition except the Simon Hewavitarne edition of the Mv does so, the indeclinable *tuṇhī* is better compounded with *bhavitabbam* into the verbal compound *tuṇhībhavitabbam* like *tuṇhībhāvena* and *āvīkareyya* and *manasikaroma* above, and *aṭṭhikatvā* at Pāc 73; see IP p.156.

tuṇhībhāvena: by the state of silence, by being silent (= consenting); ins. sg. m. Cpd of **tuṇhī** + the ins. sg. m. of **bhāva:** state, state of being; noun derivative from $\sqrt{bhū}$; see IP p.156, usually found in cpds denoting an abstract derived from the first part of the cpd.

kho pana: then indeed, now, surely, then, really. There is no satisfactory translation possible of the combination and sometimes there is no need or possibility to translate it. The combination gives a shift of emphasis to the sentence. There are three occurrences of “*kho pana*” in this paragraph and they can not be translated uniformly. **kho:** indeed; emphatic particle. **pana:** then; conn. particle that connects and continues the story.

panāyasmante: = junction of *pana* + *āyasmante* by way of contraction; see PG § 69,1.

āyasmante: the Venerables; acc. pl. m. of *āyasmā*, see above. The accusative used here is the so called “accusative of external object”; see Syntax § 32.

parisuddhā: pure; adj. qualifying an unexpressed *te*; see above *āyasmante* and the noun *pārisuddhi*, but here the prefix is *pari* not *pāri*.

With verbs of knowing, etc., that which is stated about the object or patient is denoted by the predicative nominative followed by (*i*)*ti*. The clause is used predicatively, i.e., it is stating something about the agent of the sentence, which is here *te*, and a substantive verb, (i.e., a verb denoting being,) here *honti*, is implied. Cf. M I 453: “... *puggalaṃ saṃyutto ti vadāmi*.”: “About this man I say: ‘(one who is) in bondage’..” See Syntax § 20–21 (& § 42).

ti: “... ,” end quote; emphatic quotation particle. Untranslatable. The particle *ti* is equivalent to quotation marks in English: “ ... ,” and is here marking off the statement or thought of the reciter. *Ti* is a genuine side-form of *iti* as is shown in junctions with consonants; e.g. *cāveyyan-ti* at Sd 8.

The final short vowel of the word preceding *ti* is lengthened; see IP p.36. The suggestions by Geiger in PG § 69 of contraction taking place in *-i + iti* (e.g. *gacchāmīti*), and elision of the initial *-i* in *iti* after *-a* and other dissimilar short vowels (e.g. *gacchāmā 'ti*) in § 70 (& n .1) are not followed here.

Although the assimilation *-i + i-* > *-ī-* is normal, the assimilation of *-a + i-* > *-ā-*, or *-u + i-* > *-ū-*, or *-e + i-* > *-ē-*, or *-o + i-* > *-ō-* can not be expected and therefore *-i + iti* > *-ī + ti* (e.g. *gacchāmi + iti* > *gacchāmī ti*) rather than > *-īti* (*gacchāmīti*).

K.R. Norman, in a private correspondence, suggests that: “these developments are extensions of *-i + i-* > *-ī-*, arising from a faulty division of words, i.e., *-i + iti* > *īti* was felt by speakers to be *-i + iti* > *-ī ti*. This then led to a feeling that the marker was *ti*, with a final *-i* lengthened before it. By analogy this led to other final vowels being lengthened before *ti*. Final *-e* and *-o*, being already long, were left unchanged. A comparable generalisation is found in some Prākritis, arising from the normal alternation of long vowel before a single consonant and short vowel before double consonant. In those Prākritis there is the further development of *-i + iti* > *-īti* > *-itti*, felt to be *-i tti*. From this arose the developments of *-a + iti* > *-a tti*, and *-u + iti* > *-u tti*. Final *-e* and *-o* remained before *tti*, but they were presumably pronounced as short *-e* and short *-o*.”

vedissāmi: I shall know, sense, feel; 1 sg. fut. of *vedeti* (*√vid + e*).

yathā: as, (just) as, like; relative indeclinable. = rel. pron. *ya* + suffix of manner *-thā*. Cf. IP p.292 and PED.

paccekapuṭṭhassa: to (a bhikkhu) who is individually asked; Dat. sg. m. Adjective. Bb cpd qualifying an unexpressed *bhikkhussa*. = **pacceka**: individually, personally, separately; adv. A contracted form of the adverb *paccekam*. = a junction of the pref. *paṭi*: against + numeral *eka*: one, alone, single. *Paṭyeka* > *pacceka*; see Sd 10 *iccetam*. + **puṭṭhassa**: to (a bhikkhu) who is asked; p.p. of *pucchati* (*√pucch + a*) with dat. sg. m. suffix.

veyyākaraṇaṃ: answer, explanation; nom. sg. nt. Action-noun der. fr. *viyākaroti*: answers, explains; *vi + y + ā* > *viyā* > *vyā-* or *vēyā* (with *guṇa* strengthening) > *veyyā-* + *karaṇa*: doing, action; action-noun fr. *karoti*.

hoti: has, occurs, thinks, there is; 3 sg. pres. ind. of the contracted form of *bhavati* (*√bhū + a*). A genitive construction with *hoti* is equivalent to “to have” in English if there is no other verb in the sentence; see IP p.56. This gives: “As (a bhikkhu) who is asked individually has an answer ...” According to Wijesekera in Syntax § 97c and 17b a dative of person with the verb *hoti* used impersonally means “it occurred to,” i.e., “As an answer occurs to (a bhikkhu) who is asked individually.”

yathā kho pana paccekapuṭṭhassa veyyākaraṇaṃ hoti: as an answer occurs to (a bhikkhu) who is asked individually, as (a bhikkhu) who is asked individually has an answer, H: For as there is an answer for each question, Nm: Just as one who is questioned individually has an answer ready, *Vinaya Texts*: As to each question put there must be an answer, Norman: As there is an answer for one questioned individually, BMD pp.48–49: Just as there is an explanation for one questioned individually.

Puṭṭhassa in *paccekapuṭṭhassa* is an adjective qualifying an unexpressed *bhikkhussa*. Elsewhere *puṭṭhassa* is used in this way, e.g. D I 249: “... *tassa purisassa ... maggaṃ puṭṭhassa*.”

Another meaning of *veyyākaraṇa* is “explanation”, and Prebish’s rendering might be correct. The line is referring to the *anussāvita*, see below, and explanation might fit better than answer. However, *veyyākaraṇa* might rather refer to the answer a bhikkhu is giving by remaining silent, or confessing, when “questioned individually” by the triple *anussāvita* of the reciter.

Kkh 24: “*Yathā kho pana paccekapuṭṭhassa veyyākaraṇaṃ hotī ti: yathā eken’eko puṭṭho byākareyya, yathā eken’eko paccekapuṭṭho “Maṃ esa pucchati ti nātvā byākareyyā ti vuttaṃ hoti.”*”: “As one who has been asked by one would explain. As one who has been individually asked by one would explain, having known: “To me this is asked,” is said.”

Mā-L: “*Yathā kho punarāyaṣmante pratyekaṃ pratyekaṃ pucchitasya bhikhuṣya vyākaraṇaṃ bhavati evam-evam (...)rpāye*”; PrMoMā-L p.3. Roth in NBP p.319 + 325 reads the Mhg-L Ms as “*evam eva-m-evamrūpāye*.” Sa: “*evam evaivamrūpāyaṃ*”; PrMoSa p.161. This corresponds to Pāli *evam* + *eva*. Mū: “*yathāpi pratyekaṃ prṣṭasya bhikṣor vyākaraṇaṃ bhavati evame(vam evamrūpā)yaṃ*.”; PrMoMū p.13.

evam-eva: just so, in just the same way. Junction of *evam* + *eva* through weakening of *m*; see PG § 71,2b. Introducing the second part of a comparison; see D I 110,28: “... *yathā ... evam-eva ...*,” and DP 550. **evam**: so, thus; adv. + **eva**: just; emph. particle.

Reading uncertain. In other contexts *evam-eva* (e.g. D I 104, 199) is used at the start of comparisons; *evam-evam* (e.g. D I 151, Sn 1115) is found at the conclusion of comparisons. Cf. the PrMo readings above.

evam-evam: likewise, in the same way; is *evam* doubled for emphasis.

evarūpāya: such-like (i.e., like the one individually questioned), similar, alike, like that; adj. qualifying *parisāya*. Bb cpd. = **eva**: so, just; + **rūpa**: form.

parisāya: to the assembly, retinue (of bhikkhus, cf. NP 22); dat. sg. f., or loc. sg. f., of **parisā**; = pref. *pari*:- around + *sā* fr. √*sad*: sits; thus *parisā* lit. means “sitting around.”

evarūpāya parisāya: Ñm: in such an assembly, H: in an assembly like this.

yāvatatiyaṃ: up to the third time, adv. = acc. sg. nt. *abbayībhāva* cpd. **yāva**: as far as, up to; indecl. + **tatiya**: third: ordinal, *ta* (= *ti*- before *-tiya*): three + ordinal suffix *-tiya*.

anussāvitaṃ: announcement, Ñm: proclamation, H: so it is proclaimed; nom. sg. nt. The past participle of *anussāveti* (*anu* + √(*s*)*su* + *e*): “makes heard,” “announces,” used as an action-noun.

MW 39 lists *anu* + √*śru*: to hear repeatedly (esp. what is handed down in the Veda).

Pref. **anu** = after, along + **sāveti**: make (someone) listen, causes to hear; causative of *suṇāti*: see above .

Although the usual meaning of *anussāveti* seems to be “announces” (as in the *Dhammacakkapavattanasuttanta*: “*saddam anussāvesuṃ*”; S V 423), here “request” might fit better with the questions at the end of the offence-sections. No completely satisfactory translation is possible, but it is an announcement that is made after something has been done, which is here the *ñatti*.¹³⁹

¹³⁹ Kkh 24–25: “*Evam-evam evarūpāya parisāya yāvatatiyaṃ anussāvitaṃ hotī ti. Ettha ekacce tāva ācariyā evaṃ vadanti: evam-evam imissāya bhikkhuparisāya yad’etaṃ yassa siyā āpatti, so āvikareyya, asantiyā āpattiyā tuñhī bhavitabbaṃ, tuñhībhāvena kho panāyasmante parisuddhā ti vedissāmī ti tikkhattuṃ anussāvitaṃ. Taṃ ekam-ekena: maṃ esa pucchati ti evaṃ jānitabbaṃ hotī ti attho ti. Taṃ na yujjati. Kasmā? Atthabyañjanabhedato. Anussāvanaṃ hi nāma atthato ca byañjanato ca abhinnaṃ hoti: Dutiyam-pi etam-atthaṃ vadāmī ti ādisu viya.*

Yassa siyā ti ādivacanattayaṃ pana atthato pi byañjanato pi bhinnaṃ. Ten’assa (= Be; Ce: tena tassa.) anussāvanattayaṃ na yujjati. Yadi c’etaṃ yāva-tatiyānussāvanaṃ siyā, nidānuddese anīṭṭhite pi āpatti siyā, na ca yuttaṃ anāpattikkhetto āpattiṃ āpajjitum.”

“Just so in such an assembly there is a subsequent announcement up to three times.”: regarding this some teachers say thus: “Just so in this assembly of bhikkhus when this (is recited): “For whom there may be an offence he should disclose (it); when there is no offence (then it) is to be silent. Now, by the silence I shall know the Venerables (with the thought): “(They are) pure.” (this) is a triple subsequent announcement (lit. this has been subsequently announced three times) (and) it is to be understood by everyone individually (i.e., each participant) as “He (i.e., the reciter) asks this to me..” (This) is the meaning.”

This (interpretation of these teachers) does not fit. Why? Due to dividing of the meaning and letter. For the so-called subsequent announcement is not divided as to the meaning and the letter, like in such passages as: “Thus for the second time I say this matter...” (= Vin I 95). But with a triple (announcing of the) statement that starts with “For whom ...” the meaning and also the letter are divided and because of this it does not fit as a triple subsequent announcement. For if this would be a triple subsequent announcement there would be an offence even before the recitation of the Introduction has

There are two forms of this word: one with a double –ss-, and one with a single –s-. PED only gives forms with the double –ss-, which is probably the correct one. The $\sqrt{(s)}su$ = Skt $\sqrt{s}ru$ and therefore the –ss- form, being a regressive assimilation, is probably correct; see IP p.11, 216, and 380 and PG § 54.4.

hoti: there is, H: it is; see above.

yo: which, who; nom. sg. m.; rel. pron.

pana: but, however, now; adversative particle. This particle creates the contrast between the pure bhikkhu and the impure bhikkhu who conceals his offences by remaining silent; see Pār 1.

bhikkhu: bhikkhu, (alms-) monk, religious mendicant, religious beggar; nom. sg. m. Der. fr. *bhikkhati* (\sqrt{bhikkh} + *a*): begs, asks for. For the Padabhājana, see Vin III 24: "...*'bhikkhako ti bhikkhu, bhikkhācariyaṃ ajjhūpagato ti bhikkhu...*": "(He is) a bhikkhu because he is a (alms-) beggar, (he is) a bhikkhu because he has come to

been finished, and it is not fitting to commit an offence in a category of non-offences."

"*Apare anussāvitān-ti padassa anussāvetabban-ti atthaṃ vikappetvā yāvattatiyaṃ-ti idaṃ upari uddesāvasāne: kacci'ttha parisuddhā ... pe ... tatiyaṃ-pi pucchāmi ti etaṃ sandhāya vuttan-ti āhu. Tam-pi na yujjati. Kasmā? Atthayuttinaṃ abhāvato. Idañ-hi padaṃ keci anussāvitān-ti [= Be; Ee: anussāvitān-ti] sajjhāyanti, keci anussāvetān-ti [= Be; Ee: anussāvitān-ti; Ce Kkh (S. Hewavitarne ed. p.15) has "keci anussāvitān-ti sajjhāyanti keci anussāvetān-ti."], taṃ ubhayathā [= Ce, Be: "ubhaya vā"] pi atitakālam-eva dīpeti, na anāgataṃ. Yadi c'assa ayaṃ attho siyā, anussāvitāṃ hessatī ti vadeyya evaṃ tava atthābhāvato na yujjati. Yadi c'etaṃ uddesāvasāne vacanaṃ sandhāya vuttaṃ siyā, na āvikarissāmi ti cittaṃ uppādentassa nidāne samatte pi vutta-musāvādo na siyā. Kasmā? Yāvattatiyaṃ anussāviyamāne ti vacanato yāvattatiyaṃ-ti idaṃ vacanam-eva niratthakaṃ siyā. Kasmā? Nidānuddese yāvattatiyānussāvanassa abhāvato ti evaṃ yutti-abhāvato tam-pi na yujjati. Yāvattatiyaṃ anussāvitāṃ hotī ti idaṃ pana lakkhaṇavacanamatthaṃ.*

"Others* misconceiving the meaning of the word "has been subsequently announced" as "is to be subsequently announced", said (that) "up to the third time" is said with reference to "Are you pure ... For the third time I ask..." further on at the end of the recitation (of the pārājikas etc. *uddesāvasāne*, not *niddānāvasāne*)." This also does not fit. Why? Because of an absence of a meaningful connection. For this line some recite as *anussāvetāṃ* and some as *anussāvitāṃ*. This in both ways indicates only the past tense and not the future. If there would be this meaning of it (then) "It will be subsequently announced" would be said (and) thus because of the absence of meaning it does not fit. And if this would be said with reference to the statement at the end of the recitation (of the pārājikas etc) (then) there would be no spoken lie/false speech for the one who has aroused this thought (i.e., who thinks): "I shall not disclose" at the end of the Introduction. Why? Because the statement "up to the third time" of this statement "when it is being announced up to the third time" would be without meaning. Why? Because of the absence of "up to the third time subsequent announcement" in the recitation of the Introduction, without fitness (i.e., appropriateness. Or: "connection.") it also does not fit. This (statement:) "up to the third time" is but a mere figurative statement (*lakkhaṇavacanamattha*)."

(* I.e., those of another school, usually of the Abhayagīrivihāra; see CP IV 202.)

"*Tena imam-atthaṃ dassetuṃ: Idaṃ pātimokkhaṃ nāma yāvattatiyaṃ anussāviyaṃ, tasmim yāvattatiyaṃ anussāviyamāne yo saramāno santim āpattim nāvikaṃ tassa yāvattatiyānussāvanāvasāne sampajānamusāvādo hotī ti.*

Tad-etaṃ yathā anussāvitāṃ yāvattatiyaṃ anussāvitāṃ nāma hoti. Taṃ dassetuṃ (= Be; Ee: dasseti.) tatthāyasmante pucchāmi ti ādi vuttaṃ. Taṃ pañ'etaṃ pārājikādināṃ āvasāne dissati, na nidānāvasāne. Kiñcāpi na dissati, atha kho uddesakāle āvikatā hissa phāsu hotī ti vatvā: uddiṭṭhaṃ kho āyasmanto nidānaṃ, tatthāyasmante pucchāmi ti-ādinaṃ nayena vattabham-eva. Evañ-hi nidānaṃ su-uddiṭṭhaṃ hoti, aññathā du-uddiṭṭhaṃ. Imam-eva ca atthaṃ sandhāya uposathakkhandhake vuttaṃ: Yāvattatiyaṃ anussāvitāṃ hotī ti. Sakim-pi anussāvitāṃ hoti, dutiyaṃ-pi anussāvitāṃ hoti, tatiyaṃ-pi anussāvitāṃ hotī ti. Ayam-ettha ācariyaparamparābhato vinicchayo."

"With that this meaning is to be shown: "This so-called Disciplinary Code indeed is subsequently announced up to the third time. When it is being subsequently announced up to the third time whichever (bhikkhu who is) remembering should not disclose an existent offence at the end of the up to the third time subsequent announcement, for him there is (an offence of) false speech."

That which is announced as (said)/accordingly is indeed announced up to the third time; to show this that which starts with: "Concerning that I ask the Venerables..." etc. is said. But this is first seen (in the text) at the end of the Pārājika (-section), not at the end of the Introduction (-section). Although it is not seen (in the text), nevertheless at the time of the recitation, having (first) said: "having disclosed there is comfort for him", it is to be said in the way beginning thus: "Recited, Venerables, has been the introduction. Concerning that I ask the Venerables...." For thus the Introduction is well-recited, otherwise it is wrongly recited.

With reference to this very matter it is said in the Uposathakkhandhaka (Vin I 103): 'subsequently announced up to the third time: once it has been subsequently announced, again the second time it has been subsequently announced, again the third time it has been subsequently announced.' This here is the judgement/opinion handed down by the lineage of teachers."

This is a difficult passage. The commentator complicates things because he sees the phrase "*yāvattatiyaṃ anussāvitāṃ hoti*" as referring to the Nidāna itself, which, as he says himself, has no such announcement after it in the Pātimokkha and therefore he sees the need to have this triple announcement recited at the end of the Nidāna through inference. However, "*yāvattatiyaṃ ... hoti*" more likely refers to the triple announcement at the end of the offence-sections, i.e., if a bhikkhu does

wander for alms...”; see also BD I xl—I.

The legal Vinaya sense of *bhikkhu* as an *upasampanna*, one fully admitted (into the Community), is taken as most important by the Padabhāṣana: “*Tatra yvāyaṃ bhikkhu samaggena saṅghena ñatticatutthena kammena akuppena ṭhānārahena upasampanno, ayaṃ imasmiṃ atthe adhippeto bhikkhū ti.*”:

“In this respect this bhikkhu who has been fully admitted (into the Community) by a united community by means of a legal act that has a motion and an announcement as the fourth, which is unshakeable/ indisputable, worthy of the position, this, in this sense, *bhikkhu* is intended.”

The Oxford Dictionary of World Religions, ed. John Bowder, p.652, entry on (Buddhist) Monasticism states: “In its purest form, ‘monk’ refers to one who has taken the full vows of a bhikkhu ... However, bhikkhus, although celibate, perform ceremonies for the laity in the manner of priests, and indeed the ritual of *upasampadā*, by which they become bhikkhus is commonly called ‘ordination’ rather than ‘profession’ ... It seems best to abandon the English term monk and use terms such as *bhikkhu* ...”

yo pana bhikkhu: but whichever bhikkhu; see the note on this in Pār 1.

anussāviyamāne: when the announcement is being made, lit: when [it is] being announced, when being subsequently announced, proclaimed; loc. absolute sg. of the pr.p. passive (see PG § 191) of *anussāveti*: see above.

saramāno: remembering; pr.p. of *sarati* (√*sar* + *a*) qualifying *bhikkhu*.

santiṃ: that exists, existent, being present; pr.p. of *atthi* used as an adjective qualifying *āpattiṃ*; see above *santā*.

āpattiṃ: offence, acc. sg. f.; see above.

santiṃ āpattiṃ: H: existent offence, Ñm: actual (undeclared) fault.

nāvikareyya: not disclose; a junction through contraction (see PG § 69,1) of **na**: not, neg. indecl. + **āvikareyya**: see above.

sampajānamusāvād’assa: deliberate false speech for him. Junction of *sampajānamusāvādo* + *assa* through elision of the final -o in -*vādo* (see PG § 71,b) = **sampajāna**: deliberate, fully aware, fully knowing, fully comprehending; adjective. Present participle of the verb *sampajānāti* (*saṃ* + *pa* + √*nā* + *ṇā*): one is fully knowing, used as an adjective. This present participle without -*ant* is a shortened form of the full form *sampajānant*; see Norman’s notes to Sn 413 and Sn 931 in GD.

musāvādo: false speech, lying; nom. sg. m. Kammadhāraya cpd. = **musā**: false, wrong; adv. (fr. Vedic ins. sg. *mṛṣa*) here used as an adjective; cf. M I 288: “... *na sampajānamusā bhāsītā hoti*,” Sn 757: “*taṃ hi tassa musā hoti* ...” and Pār 2: “*musā vilapiṃ*” and Syntax § 2.

+ **vāda**: speech, talk; m. fr. *vadati* (√*vad* + *a*): one speaks, says + **assa**: to this one, for him; dat. sg. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*: this one, he.

hoti: there is; see above.

sampajānamusāvādo: nom. sg. m. Kammadhāraya cpd. = **sampajāna** + **mūsāvāda**; see above.

kho: see above.

pan’āyasmanto: see above. **āyasmanto** is here voc. pl.

antarāyiko: Ñm: obstructive, H: stumbling block; adj.; = *antarāya*: obstacle; see Pāc 68 + -*ika*: adjectival connective suffix. *Antarāya* = *antara*: between (see Sd 6) + *aya*: coming; from √*i*: comes; thus lit. “coming between”). It is obstructive to progress on the eight fold path. For the *antarāyikā dhammā* see BD III 21 n. 5.

dhammo: act, state, thing, matter; nom. sg. m. For *dhamma* as “act” see Pār 1.

vutto: said, p.p. of *vadati*: see above.

bhagavatā: by the Fortunate One, lit.: by the one who has good fortune, Ñm: Blessed One, H: Lord; ins. sg. m.

not confess an offence recited in the section, then he falls into false speech; see the section “Confession” above. This is also supported by the Nidāna as given in the Mahāvagga where the triple announcement is not given. In all other *saṅghakammas*, such as the one for the Upasampadā, the announcement(s) and conclusion are given after the *ñatti*.

of *bhagavant*; from the Skt *bhaga*: good fortune, luck. Cf. Pāc 68 and Sd 4 *bhagini*.

sampajānamusāvādo ... antarāyiko dhammo vutto bhagavatā: see Pāc 68.

tasmā: therefore; abl. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*, but here used as an indeclinable with a causal meaning; see IP p.89.

saramānena: see above; here ins. sg. **bhikkhunā**: by a bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

āpannena: (who) has committed; p.p. of *āpajjati*, see above, used as an adj.

visuddhāpekkhena: (who is) desiring purification; adj. Loc. tapp. cpd used as bahubbīhi cpd. = **visuddha**: purification, purified, cleaned; p.p. of *visujjhati* (*vi* + *√sudh* + *ya*): “is cleaned/purified” used as action-noun. + **apekkha**: desiring, longing for, looking for, seeking for, expecting; (fem.) action-noun fr. *apekkhati* (*apa* + *√ikkh* + *a*), taking a locative.

santī: existent, that exist; pr.p. of *atthi* used as an adj. qualifying *āpatti*; see above.

āpatti: offence; nom. sg. f. Note that the adj. *santī* ends in long *ī*, while *āpatti* in short *i*, this difference in ending is probably to avoid confusion with the third person plural of the *√as*: *santi*: they are. Kkh 26: “*Santī āpattī ti āpajjitvā avuṭṭhitā āpatti*.”: “... having committed an offence that has not been emerged from.”

Sa: “*satī āpattir*”; PrMoSa p.161. Mā-L: “*santī āpattī*”; PrMoMā-L p.6.

āvikātabbā: to be disclosed; f.p.p. of *āvikaroti*—see above—agrees with the feminine *āpatti*. There are two forms of the f.p.p. of *karoti* in Pāli: *kattabba* and *kātabba*, which are both corresponding the Skt *kartavya*. In *kattabba* the *-r* of *√kar* has been assimilated to the *-t* of the f.p.p. suffix *-tabba* giving the consonant combination *-tt-* as in Pāli no *-rt-* consonant combination is used, while in *kātabba* the vowel *-a-* in the *√kar* has instead been strengthened to *-ā-* and the final *-r* elided in accordance with the law of Morae; cf. Pd 3 *sekha/sekkha*.

Sa: *āviṣkartaṇṇa* [= *-vyā*]; PrMoSa p.161. Mā-L: *āviṣkartaṇṇā*; PrMoMā-L p.6.

āvikatā: having disclosed; abs. or an p.p. agreeing with *āpatti*.

Cf. Sa: *āviṣkṛtvāṇṇa*; PrMoSa p.161. Mā-L: *āviṣkṛtvā*; PrMoMā-L p.6. The absolute endings here are noteworthy because in the Pāli an absolute would seem more appropriate than a past participle. This type of construction, in which a f.p.p. is followed by an absolute of the same verb, is not uncommon in Pāli and would seem more natural than a construction with a past participle; cf. “... *paṭiggahetabbāni, paṭiggahetvā* ...” at NP 16; “... *osāretabbo, osāretvā* ...” at Vin I 197; “... *yācitabbo, yācetvā* ...” at Vin III 158, etc. Possibly, there was originally an absolute in *-ttā, āvikattā*, which got misunderstood and changed to a p.p. in *-ta*, as has happened elsewhere; see Hinüber 1982.

hi’ssa: because because for him, indeed for him. Junction of *hi* + *assa* in which the initial *a-* of *assa* is elided; PG § 70,2b. = **hi**: because, for, indeed; emphatic particle. + **assa**: for him; see above.

phāsu: comfort, ease; adv. (or nom. sg. nt. adj.). According to PED this is an adjective that is construed with a dative and that only occurs in compositions with verbs such as *hoti* and *viharati*. However, CDPL 382 takes it to be an adverb here and this seems more correct; CDPL also gives *phāsu* as a neuter noun. See Sd 10, Pāc 42 + 77. See commentary in the note on Pātimokkha above, and Ud 5.5/Vin II 240: “It rains on what is covered, on the opened it does not rain. Therefore one should open what is covered, thus it will not rain upon it.”

hoti: there is; see above.

[Nidāna conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhaṃ kho āyasmanto nidānaṃ.

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci’ttha parisuddhā?

Dutiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci’ttha parisuddhā?

Tatīyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci’ttha parisuddhā?

Parisuddh'etthāyasmanto, tasmā tuṇhī, evam-etam dhārayāmi. ¹⁴⁰

*Nidānan'uddeso niṭṭhito.*¹⁴¹

Venerables, the introduction has been recited.

Concerning that I ask the Venerables: [Are you] pure in this?

A second time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

A third time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

The venerables are pure in this, therefore there is silence, so do I bear this [in mind].

The recitation of the introduction is finished.

uddiṭṭham: has been recited; p.p. of *uddisati*; see above.

kho: indeed (no need to translate.); emph. particle.

āyasmanto: Venerables; voc. pl. m.

nidānam: introduction; nom. sg. nt. see above.

Tatth'āyasmante: = junction of *tattha* + *āyasmante* through contraction (see PG § 69,1).

tattha: concerning that, in this connection, Ñm: herein, H: now about that; adv. = dem. pron. *ta(d)* + suf. of place/mode/time *-ttha*, cf. Pār intro. PED 295 gives it as a locative case of *ta(d)*. See Pār intro *tatra* in *tatr'ime*; Sd concl: *ayam tattha*; NP 6 & 10: "*tatthāyaṃ samayo*."

Kkh 56: “*Tatth’āyasmante pucchāmī ti tesu catūsu pārājikesu āyasmante: kacci’ttha parisuddhā ti pucchāmi.*”: “... with regards these four Pārājikas I ask to the Venerables:”

āyasmante: the Venerables; acc. sg. m. of *āyasmā*; see above Nid and Syntax § 36a.

pucchāmi: I ask; 1 sg. pres. ind. of *pucchati*: see above Nid.

kacci'ttha: = a junction of *kacci* + *ettha* through elision of the initial *e-* of *ettha*.

kacci: ?, perhaps?, I hope?; indefinite interrogative particle expressing doubt.

Sp 516/Kkh 56: *Kacci'tthā ti kacci ettha, etesu catūsu pārajikesu kacci parisuddhā ti attho. Atha vā kacci'ttha parisuddhā ti kacci parisuddhā attha, bhavathā ti attho.*": "*Kacci'ttha* is *kacci* + *ettha*, 'with regards these four Pārajikas (are you) pure?' is the meaning. Or perhaps rather: *kacci'ttha parisuddhā* is: 'Are (*attha*: 2nd pers. plur. pres. ind.) you pure?' (*kacci parisuddhā attha*), 'Are you (*bhavatha*) pure?' is the meaning."

In the final line the *ettha* in “*parisuddh’ettha*” would indicate that the first interpretation of the commentators is the correct one. Other contexts in which *kaccittha* is found (A IV 217f, Vin I 212, J III 528) support the *ettha* interpretation.

ettha: here, in this matter, Nm: in this, H: in this matter; adv. = dem. pron. *eta* + suf. of place/time/mode *-tha*.
(The initial *e-* has been elided in the junction with *kacci*.)

parisuddhā: pure; adj. to unexpressed *āyasmanto*; see above Nid.

dutiyam-pi: = junction of *dutiyam* + *pi* through the labialisation of *-m*; PG § 74.3.

¹⁴⁰ = C, D, G, V, W, Mi & Mm Se. Dm, UP, Ra, Um: *dhārayāmī ti*. (So in the conclusions of the offence sections of Vibh Ce & Vibh Ee, but this can not be regarded as a v.l. It is the normal way the Vibh presents its material as there is no Nidāna in the Vibh and therefore no conclusion. In the Nidāna conclusion C reads *dhārayāmi*, but in the other sections *dhārayāmī ti*, however, in the other sections the latter reading is clearly a later correction as the *ti* has been written over the *kuṇḍaliya* [serpent-like] paragraph markers [𑀧𑀺𑀢𑀺] and the *i* stroke has been changed to *ī*.)

BhPm 1 & 2: *dhārayāmi iti*. The whole Nidāna conclusion (from *uddittham* to *dhārayāmi*) is not found in Mm Se.

¹⁴¹ = Mm Se, D, V, W, P . UP, Um, Ńd Ce & Mi Se: *Nidānuddeso paṭhamo*. Be, BhPm 1 & 2, C, G, Ra: *Nidānuddeso*. Dm: *Nidānaṃ nitthitam*.

dutiyam: a second time; acc. sg. nt. ordinal used adverbially; see Syntax § 51,c. = *du-*, a shortened compound form of numeral *dvi* before *-tiya*: two + ordinal suffix *-tiya*. = Skt *dvitīya*; see PG § 118 and 23.

pi: too, also, again; indecl. A side form of *api*, proved by its occurrence after the *niggahīta m*, which becomes *m* before it, as happens here; see PG § 66,1.

tatiyam-pi: a third time too; see the preceding *dutiyam-pi* and Nid: *yāvatatiyaṃ*.

parisuddh'etthāyasmanto: junction of *parisuddhā* + *ettha*, in which the final *ā* of *parisuddhā* is elided, and a junction of *ettha* + *āyasmante* through contraction (PG § 69,1).

tasmā: therefore; abl. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

tuṇhī: there is silence, Ñm & H: they are silent; adv. The verb *honti* is implied but unexpressed. It can be understood as “(they are) silent” or “(it is) silent.” The second option is preferable; see the usage in the Nidāna above.

evam-etam: = junction of *evam* + *etam* through retrograde change of *m* into *m*; PG § 71,2b. **evam:** thus, so; indecl. + **etam:** this, it; acc. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *eta*.

dhārayāmi: I keep (in mind), hold, remember, Ñm: I record; 1 sg. pres. ind. of *dhāreti* (\sqrt{dhar} + *e*): “holds,” “bears,” with the suffix *-aya* instead of its contracted form *-e*; PG § 178,2a.

uddiṭṭhaṃ ... dhārayāmi. The Mū (Ban 13, BMD p.49), Dhg (BBP 4, Beal, 1871, p.208, CS121), and Sa (Finot 16, PrMoSa p.162) Prātimokṣasūtras also have this conclusion; but the Mā-L Prātimokṣasūtra does not have it (PrMoMā-L p.6, BMD p.50).

Since the Nidāna is not an offence-class, the conclusion seems out of place here. The conclusion to the Nidāna is clearly mentioned in Sp 1057/Kkh 4 in the section commenting on the Pātimokkha recitation in brief, Mv II 15, 1–4/Vin I 112 f. However, in the Kkh’s commentary on “*yāvatatiyaṃ anussāvitaṃ*,” see above Nid, it is said that there is no announcement after the Nidāna and that it is (first) seen (in the text) at the end of the Pārājika-section. However, the Kkh states, the conclusion should be recited at the end of the Nidāna according to the tradition of the teachers.

The Nidāna conclusion is not mentioned or commented upon at the end of the section on the Nidāna in the Kkh, but it is commented upon at the end of the section on Pārājika section where the words of the conclusion (“*uddiṭṭha*,” “*Tatth’āyasmante*,” and “*kacci’ttha parisuddhā*”) are commented upon.

Kkh 28 states that the introduction of the Pārājika section immediately follows the Nidāna section: “*Idāni yad-etam nidānānantaram tatr’ime cattāro ti-ādi pārājikakaṇḍam*.”: “Now, this which is immediately following the Nidāna, the section on Pārājika starting with ‘Here these’” This suggests that there was no conclusion to the Nidāna.

Moreover, at the end of the Sd and Aniyata sections there is a clear reference back to “*uddiṭṭhaṃ kho*” by “*vuttanayen’eva*”: “in the manner of what has been said,” but there is no such reference forward at the end of the Nidāna section and this might also indicate that the Kkh editor had a text without the conclusion at the end of the Nidāna.

The *Pātimokkhaganṭhidīpanī* (p.12) states: “*uddiṭṭhaṃ kho āyasmanto nidānan-tyādi vuttaṃ nidānāvasāne na upalakkhati, taṃ ca uddesakāle vattabbavacanam-eva*”: “‘venerables, the introduction has been recited,’ etc., has been said, [this] is not discerned [in the text] at the end of the Introduction, yet it is a statement to be recited at time of the recitation.”

nidān’uddeso: recitation of the introduction; nom. sg. m. See above at the start of this section. This is the first of the four ways of reciting the Pātimokkha in brief; see the section on “Recitation of the Pātimokkha” in the Introduction.

niṭṭhito: finished, ended; p.p. of *niṭṭhāti* (*ni(s)* + \sqrt{t})*ṭhā* + *a*).

[Pārājik'uddeso¹⁴²]

Tatr'ime¹⁴³ cattāro pārājikā dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti.

[The recitation of the disqualification (cases)]

Herein these four cases involving disqualification come up for recitation.

pārājik'uddeso: the recitation of the disqualification (cases); nom, sg. m. Probably an appositive kammadhāraya but here rendered as a genitive tappurisa; see *niddān'uddesa* in Nid intro. Junction of *pārājika* + *uddeso* through elision of the final -a of *pārājika*.

pārājika: involving disqualification; see below + **uddesa**: recitation; see above Nid.

tatr'ime: herein these, in this connection these; = junction of *tatra* + *ime* in which the final -a of *tatra* is elided; PG § 70,1b.

Kkh 28: “*Tatrā ti tasmiṃ pātimokkhaṃ uddisissāmi ti evaṃ vutte pātimokkhe. Ime ti idāni vattabbānaṃ abhimukhikāraṇaṃ.*”: “*tatra*: in that connection ‘I shall recite the Disciplinary Code,’ in the Disciplinary Code which has been said so. ‘*Ime*’ is a turning towards those (cases) that are to be said at that moment/now.”

Tatra here has the meaning of time and place as it introduces the recitation of the rules while referring back to something said earlier, i.e., the Nidāna. Cf. D III 102 “*Aparaṃ pana, bhante, etadānuttariyaṃ, yathā bhagavā dhammaṃ deseti kusalesu dhammesu. Tatrime kusalā dhammā, seyyathidaṃ, cattāro satipaṭṭhānā, cattāro sammappadhānā, ...*” Ud 56 “*ayaṃ dhammavinayo mahataṃ bhūtānaṃ āvāso; tatrime bhūtā: sotāpanno ...*”. Cf. Vin I 112.

Tatra is the Sanskrit side-form of *tattha*, which has the same meanings, and is used in this junction for the sake of euphony. Cf. Nid. conclusion; “*tatth'āyasmante pucchāmi ...*”. Cf. Pātimokkha concl: “*Tattha sabbeheva*” All the other rule section introductions leave out *tatra* and start with *ime kho panāyasmanto....*

tatra: here, now, herein, in this connection, in this respect; adv. of place. Dem. pron. *ta(d)* + suffix of place, mode, or time -*ttha* / -*tra*.

ime: these; nom. pl. m. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*: this.

cattāro: 4; num. m.

pārājikā: involving disqualification, ... deprivation, H: involving defeat, Nm: (case) of defeat, CDPL 333: meriting expulsion, Hinüber 1995 p.9: relating to expulsion, Hinüber, 1999 p.17: zur *vertreibung* (aus der monchsgemeinde) *führend*, Heirman: separated; adjective qualifying *dhammā*. See the discussion of the term *pārājika* in the section “On the term *pārājika*” in the Introduction.

dhammā: Nm: cases, H: rules, Norman: matters; nom. pl. m. See Pāc 73 for this usage of *dhamma*.

uddesaṃ: recitation; acc. sg. m. see above Nid.

āgacchanti: (they) go to, come up for; 3 pl. pres. ind. of *āgacchati* (*ā* + *√gam* + *a*) that normally takes an accusative.

[Pār 1: Methunadhammasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhūnaṃ¹⁴⁴ sikkhāsājīvasamāpanno sikkhaṃ appaccakkhāya¹⁴⁵ dubbalyaṃ anāvikatvā¹⁴⁶ methunaṃ dhammaṃ paṭiseveyya,¹⁴⁷ antamaso tiracchānagatāya pi; pārājiko hoti, asaṃvāso.

[The training precept on the act of sexual intercourse]

¹⁴² = Dm & Mi Se. D: Pārājikā. Um has Pārājikā in brackets. Nothing in other texts.

¹⁴³ V, BhPm 2: *tatrime* (BhPm 2 gives *tatrime* as v.l.).

¹⁴⁴ V: *bhikkhūna-sikkhā-*

¹⁴⁵ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ce, Ra, UP, Vibh Ee, Mi Se, BhPm 1 & 2, Pg: *apaccakkhāya*.

¹⁴⁶ V, Vibh Ce, Um, Ra: *anāvikatvā*.

¹⁴⁷ C, W, UP, Um, BhPm 1 & 2, Ra, Pg: *paṭiseveyya*.

If any bhikkhu [who] has entered upon the training and livelihood for bhikkhus, not having rejected the training, not having disclosed [his] incapability, should engage in the act of sexual intercourse, even with just a female animal, he is disqualified, not in communion.

methunadhammasikkhāpadaṃ: the training precept on the act of sexual intercourse; nom. sg. nt. = Label use of the nominative; see Syntax § 22–23. An appositive kammadhāraya cpd: “the act of sexual intercourse training precept,” see note on *cīvaravagga* at NP 10, or a locative tappurisa, as it has been translated here. = methunadhamma: act of sexual intercourse; gen. tapp. cpd.

consisting of methuna: sexual intercourse, see below, and dhamma: act; see below + sikkhāpada: training precept, training guideline, training rule, rule, precept, code of training; gen. tapp. cpd.; lit. guideline for training. = sikkhā: training; see below + pada: precept, guideline, rule, item, constituent, part, way.

As mentioned in the chapter on the “Titles of the rule sections” in the Introduction, these rule titles are commentarial and are not recited. The analysis of the commentarial rule-titles is only given here and when a rule-title contains words that are not found in the rule itself.

yo: who; nom. sg. m. of rel. pron. *ya(d)*.

pana: again, further, and, and now; a connective particle merely connecting and continuing the text. There is no need to translate it here.

bhikkhu: a bhikkhu; nom. sg. m.

yo pana bhikkhu: if any bhikkhu, whatever bhikkhu, a bhikkhu who, Nm: any bhikkhu, Norman: if any bhikkhu, H: whatever monk; see above Nid.

Padabhājana: “Yo panā ti: yo yādiso yathā yutto yathā jacco yathā nāmo yathā gotto yathā sīlo yathā vihārī yathā gocaro, therō vā navo vā majjhimo vā, eso vuccati yo panā ti.”:

“Yo pana: who, any/whatever (= yādisa; see PG § 112,3 & PED 553), according to connection, ... birth, ... name, ... clan, ... virtue, ... dwelling, according to area, a senior, a junior or one of middle standing, this is called ‘yo pana.’” (Vin III 23).

The relative pron. *yo* with the correlative dropped can have the meaning of “if any,” the latin *si quis*, as in Dh 76, Sn 96, and Th 282; see PG § 110,5, MW 844 s.v. *yad*, Norman, 1971, note, Norman, 2000, p.76 note, and Norman, 1992, p. 96 note. If a generalisation would be intended, i.e., “whatever,” then “yo koci” or “yo yo” would be normally be used. It could also be adversative: “but a bhikkhu who” as in Dh 10 and 190.

Hinüber suggests that “yo pana” here connects this rule, and all others, with the same introduction, back to “yo pana bhikkhu” in the Nidāna, by which the bhikkhu who conceals offences by remaining silent is contrasted to the pure bhikkhu. During the recitation it is assumed that a bhikkhu is free from offences and does not listen with unconfessed offences, see Vin II 240. The recurring *pana* is thus, according to him, for the sake of referring back to the statement in the Nidāna; see Hinüber, 1999 p.49–50.

The Pātimokkha, however is not done only for bhikkhus who have fallen into offences and Hinüber overlooks the purpose of the Pātimokkha recitation as a reminder for all bhikkhus, whether they have fallen into offences or not.

Hinüber compares the form of the four *akaraṇīyā*, Vin I 96 -97, to the four Pārājikas and notes that the *akaraṇīyā*-form is “yo bhikkhu” instead of “yo pana bhikkhu.” There is also an indicative in the *akaraṇīyā* instead of an optative: “Yo bhikkhu methunaṃ dhammaṃ paṭiseveti, ...,” instead of “Yo pana bhikkhu methunaṃ dhammaṃ paṭiseveyya, ...” The reason for this difference is that the *akaraṇīyā* are commands, which start with an f.p.p. while the Pārājika rules, and the other rules in the Pātimokkha, are warnings to remind the bhikkhus of the offences and their consequences, i.e., the punishment when an offence has been committed, assuming that the bhikkhus are free from offences.

Not all rules start with: “yo pana ... ” and Hinüber argues that some of the rules that start with a locative might have their source in pre-Pātimokkha common-place *samaṇa* conduct and might have been taken from a

proto Pātimokkha-version, a *mātikā*, a summary, see below @. For example NP 18 is found in the Cūlasīla-section of the Brahmajālasutta, D I 5, as “*jātarūparajatapaṭiggahaṇā paṭivirato*” (cf. Vin I 84); see Hinüber, 1999 p.29.

Hinüber mentions that this NP 18 is also found as “*jātarūparajatapaṭiggahaṇe pācittiyaṃ*” in the section about the Second-council in Vin II 307/Cv XII 2,9. According to him several Pātimokkha rules quoted there are in the locative form, like the first Pācittiya rule: “*sampajānamūsāvāde pācittiyaṃ*,” rather than starting with “*yo pana*” see Hinüber, 1999 p.33–38.

However, in the Cv XII it is an abbreviated form of this rule referring to an offence as when confessing for it is given as an answer to “*Kim āpajjati ti*”: “What (offence) does one commit?” (Answer): “A *pācittiya* that is concerned with the acceptance of gold and silver.” So in the Cv the so-called locative of relation is intended; see Syntax § 174 a. Hinüber, 1999 p.38–39 & 49–50, also notes that in the Pārājika rules, in contrast to some rules in other sections, the sentences are properly constructed. *Yo* should correlate with *so*, and in the Pārājika rules *yo* correlates with *pārājiko*, (in the Nidāna with *assa*), to get a proper relative clause, but in some of the Sd and Pāc rules the correlative word is lacking. For example in “*Yo pana bhikkhu jātarūparajataṃ uggaṇheyya ..., pācittiyaṃ*.” Hinüber overlooked that MW s.v. *yad* states that the correlative is sometimes dropped; cf. Norman, 1992, note on p.282.

bhikkhūnaṃ: for the bhikkhus; dat. pl. m. of *bhikkhu*, cp. NP 23, could also be gen.: “of the bhikkhus.”

sikkhāsājīvasamāpanno: entered upon the training and livelihood, Ñm: having undertaken the bhikkhus’ training precepts and way of life, H: possessed of the training and mode of life for monks; adjective qualifying *bhikkhu*. Bahubbhi cpd. = **sikkhā**: training, training precept; f. fr. *sikkhati* (√*sikkh* + *a*): one trains oneself. + **sājīva**: livelihood, living, living together; nt. = pref. *sa*: with, together + *ājīva*: livelihood. See MW s.v. *saṃjīva*. + **samāpanno**: having undertaken, entered upon, endowed with; p.p. of *samāpajjati* (*saṃ* + *ā* + √*pad* + *ya*).

sikkhāsājīva: the training and way of livelihood, system of training, livelihood of training, training-livelihood; the Sp 243 takes it as a dvanda cpd: “*Sikkhañ-ca sājīvañ-ca samāpannattā*,” so do H and Ñm. However, it could also be a tappurisa-cpd. The commentary on the term in M-a II 205 and Pugg-a 236, which is more concise and easier to quote than the Sp 245, is: “*Bhikkhūnaṃ sikkhāsājīvasamāpanno ti: Yā bhikkhūnaṃ adhisīlasaṅkhātā sikkhā tañ-ca, yattha c’ete saha jīvanti ekajīvika sabhāgavuttino honti taṃ bhagavatā paññattasikkhāpadasaṅkhātataṃ sājīvañ-ca. Tattha sikkhanabhāvena samāpanno ti bhikkhu sikkhāsājīvasamāpanno ti sikkhaṃ paripūrento sājīvañ-ca avitikkammanto hutvā tadubhayaṃ upagato ti attho*.”

“...: those trainings of bhikkhus that are reckoned as the higher-virtue, and that in which those (bhikkhus) who are living together in these (training, and) due to having the same livelihood are behaving congenially, (i.e.) that livelihood which is reckoned to be the Training precept made known by the Fortunate One. The monk who has entered the training in that respect is “One who has entered the training and livelihood.” The meaning is: fulfilling the training and not transgressing the livelihood he has undertaken both.”

sikkhaṃ: training; acc. sg. f. of the above.

appaccakkhāya: not having rejected, refused, repudiated, H: not disavowing, Ñm: disclaimed. Traditionally called a “*na-nipāta-pubba-kammadhāraya*”: “a kammadhāraya in which the preceding word is the particle *na*.”; Duroiselle, 1906, p.166. Cf. *anādā*, NP 13, and *anāgata* in NP 28. = neg. pref. *a*:- not+ *paccakkhāya*: having rejected; the absolutive of *paccakkhāti* (*pati* + *ā* + √*khā* + *a*): repudiates; cf. BD I 40 n. 2.

dubbalyaṃ: incapability, weakness, inability; acc. sg. nt. = **dur**:- difficult, hard, bad; prefix + **balya** = *bala*: strength + abstract suffix *-ya*. The doubling of the initial *b* of *balya* is due to an assimilation with the final *r* of *dur*-, as the consonant combination *rb* does not occur in Pāli. It is spelt as *dubballa* in the compound *jigacchādubballa* in M I 13 (also in Be), and at A IV 456 (Ee) a Burmese and a Sinhalese manuscript read *sikkhādubbhallāni* instead of *-dubbalyāni*. Often the consonant-combination *-ly-* is assimilated to *-ll-*, see PG § 52.5 and the note on Dh 1–2 in Norman, 2000.. Thus *dubbalya* might be a later Sanskritisation; see note on *-maggappaṭipannassa* at NP 16 and *āvīkareyya* in the Nid. Cf. *dubbaca* at Sd 12.

anāvikatvā: not having disclosed; Kammadhāraya cpd. abs. of *āvīkaroti*, see Nid + neg. pref. *an*-, the cpd form

of *a-* before vowels.

methunaṃ: related to sexual intercourse, coitus, copulation; adjective qualifying *dhammaṃ*.

dhammaṃ: act, practice, conduct, matter, thing; acc. sg. m. The term *dhamma* is here best translated as “act”, see also Sd 4: “... *etena dhammena paricareyya ...*”: “one who should minister with this act,” Pāc 53: *hassadhamma*: the act of amusement,” and Pāc 68: *antarāyika dhamma*: act which is obstructive.

methunaṃ dhammaṃ: the act of sexual intercourse, coitus.

paṭiseveyya: Ñm: should engage in, H: indulge in, practice, pursue; 3 sg. opt. of *paṭisevati* (*paṭi* + \sqrt{sev} + *a*), = directional pref. *paṭi*: towards, after + *sevati*: follows, associates, serves. Cf. *paṭisevato* at Pāc 68.

antamaso: even so much as, even; indecl. Originally an ablative of *anta*: end, extreme (cf. Sd 5, NP 27).

tiracchānagatāya: with a female animal, literally: “one gone to the female horizontal state”; ins. sg. f. = **tiracchāna**: horizontal; a synonym for an animal since it moves with its body horizontal to the ground. + **gatāya**: gone; p.p. of *gacchati*, “one goes”, declined as an ins. sg. f. in *-ā*. The figurative meaning here is: “having gone into a state of being”; see PED 242. A female animal is given in the rule, but the Suttavibhaṅga also includes male animals. Compare the Bhikkhunī-Pātimokkha’s first Pārājika rule that has the opposite gender: *tiracchānagatena*: “with a masculine animal.”

Tiracchānagata is often used as an adjective qualifying *pāṇa*: a living being; e.g. S III 152; see PED 303. In the Padabhājana it is explained as an adjective too: *tiracchānagatitthiyā pi*. Cf. *tiracchānagatapurisā* & *tiracchānagatapaṇḍaka* at Vin III 28. However, here it appears to be a noun and elsewhere in the Vinaya it is also used in that way, e.g. “*gadrabho’si tiracchānagato’si*” at Vin IV 7 (Cf. Vin III 76 & 122).

Mā-L: *tiryagyonigatāyamapi*; PrMoMā-L p.6, BV 76. The Mā-L Bhikṣunī rule has *tiryagyonigatenāpi*; BV 76 & 79. Sa: *tiryagyonigatayāpi*; PrMoSa p.163.

pi: just, even; emph. particle. For this sense of *pi/api*; cf. NP 3 & 16.

pārājiko: disqualified, one who is disqualified, excluded, deprived, debarred, deposed, Ñm: defeated, H: one who is defeated, CDPL 333: deserving expulsion; see above. Adjective qualifying an unexpressed “*bhikkhu*.” This part of the rule is the main clause of the sentence; see IP p.71. In this main clause the correlative pronoun *so* to the relative *yo* in the preceding subordinate relative clause is unexpressed: “*Yo pana bhikkhu ..., so bhikkhu pārājiko hoti asaṃvāso*.” In the next rules the correlative word is expressed by *ayaṃ*.

Note that *pārājika* is not a past participle, but there is no other suitable way of rendering it in English other than by a past participle. The similes given in the Padabhājana, the verse in the Parivāra, and the explanation in the Commentary on the meaning of *pārājika* involve past participles. Further, it appears to be a past participle by implication because it comes after some action has taken place. For past participles used as nouns, see Norman’s note on Dh 104 in Norman, 2000..

hoti: he is; 3 sg. pres. ind. of *bhavati*; see above Nid.

asaṃvāso: not in communion, H & Ñm: not in communion, not living with, not associated; adjective. = neg. pref. *a-*: not + *saṃvāsa*: “communion,” der. fr. *saṃvasati* (*saṃ* + \sqrt{vas} + *a*): lives together with, associates (= pref. *saṃ*: with + *vasati*: lives, dwells). The Padabhājana states: “*Saṃvāso nāma ekakammaṃ ekuddeso samasikkhatā eso saṃvāso nāma, so tena saddhiṃ n’atthi, tena vuccati asaṃvāso*”: “In communion: one single (legal) act, one recitation, the state of equal training, this is ‘in communion’. He is not together with that, therefore it is said: ‘not in communion.’”

Sp 260: “*Saha vasanti etthā ti saṃvāso. Taṃ dassetuṃ saṃvāso nāmā ti vatvā, ekakammaṃ-ti ādimāha. Tatrāyaṃ saddhiṃ yojanāya vaṇṇanā catubbidham-pi saṅghakammaṃ sīmāparicchinnehi pakatattehi bhikkhūhi ekato kattabbattā ekakammaṃ nāma. Tathā pañcavidho pi pātimokkhuddeso ekato uddisittabbattā ekuddeso nāma. Paññattaṃ pana sikkhāpadaṃ sabbehi pi lajjipuggalehi samaṃ sikkhitabbabhāvato samasikkhatā nāma. Ettha yasmā sabbe pi lajjino etesu kammādisu saha vasanti, na eko pi tato bahiddhā sandissati, tasmā tāni sabbāni pi gahetvā, eso saṃvāso nāma ti āha. So ca vuttappakāro saṃvāso tena puggalena saddhiṃ n’atthi, tena kāraṇena so pārājiko puggalo asaṃvāso ti vuccati ti.*”

“‘They dwell together’ is ‘communion’ (*saṃvāsa*). To show that, (the Padabhājana) having said ‘Communion,’ said ‘one single (legal) act,’ etc. Herein this, together with the explanation of the

grammatical construction, is the fourfold (legal) community-act by regular bhikkhus limited by a boundary, the state of having to be done by all together (or: ‘as one body,’ *ekato*; see DP) is called ‘one (legal) act.’ In that manner the five-fold (legal) community-act including the recitation of the Disciplinary Code is the state of having to be recited by all together is called “one single recitation.” The state of having to train in the declared training precept by all conscientious persons equally is called ‘state of equal training.’ Herein, because all who are conscientious live together in these (legal) acts, etc., not even one is seen outside of it, therefore having taken/comprehended them all, this is called ‘communion,’ is said. And there is no communion in the manner said above together with that person. Therefore the disqualified person is said to be ‘not in communion.’”

[Pār 2: Adinnādānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu gāmā vā araṇṇā vā adinnaṃ theyyasaṅkhātāṃ¹⁴⁸ ādiyeyya, yathārūpe adinnādāne rājāno coraṃ gahetvā haneyyumaṃ vā bandheyumaṃ vā pabbājeyyumaṃ vā: “Coro’si, bālo’si, mūḷho’si,¹⁴⁹ theno’si ti,” tathārūpaṃ bhikkhu adinnaṃ ādiyamāno; ayam-pi pārājiko hoti, asaṃvāso.

[The training precept on the taking of what has not been given]

If any bhikkhu should take [what has] not been given from a village or wilderness-area, which is reckoned as theft, [and] the taking of what has not been given [is] of the kind [that] on account of [it] kings, having caught the robber, would physically punish or imprison or banish [him, saying]: “You are a robber! You are a fool! You are insane! You are a thief!,” a bhikkhu taking [what has] not been given of such a kind, is also disqualified, not in communion.

adinnādānasikkhāpadaṃ: the training precept on the taking of what has not been given; nom. sg. nt. See *methunadhammasikkhāpadaṃ* at Pār 1 above.

yo pana bhikkhu: whatever bhikkhu; see discussion at Pār 1 above.

gāmā: from a village; abl. sg. m.

vā: or; disjunctive indecl. particle; **vā ... vā ...:** either... or...

araṇṇā: from a wilderness-area, forest; abl. sg. nt. of *araṇṇa*, fr. *araṇa*: remote + abstract suffix *-ya*. The description in the Padabhāṣana indicates that “forest” is not sufficient to cover the meaning of *araṇṇa* and that “wilderness” is more appropriate: “*araṇṇaṃ nāma ṭhapetvā gāmaṃ-ca gāmupacāraṇ-ca avasesaṃ araṇṇaṃ nāma*”: “an *araṇṇa*: having excepted a village and the surrounding of a village, the rest is called “*araṇṇa*.”

adinnaṃ: that which is not given; acc. sg. nt.; kammadhāraya cpd. = neg. pref. *a-* + *dinna*: given, p.p. of *dadāti* (*√dā + a*; the root is reduplicated and the reduplicated syllable is in a weak form; see IP p.352.) used as a noun; cf. Pāc 40.

theyyasaṅkhātāṃ: in a way which is reckoned as theft, ... reckoned as (taking) by theft, ... , H: by means of theft, Ñm: with intent to steal, Norman: in a way which is called theft. It could be an instrumental tappurisa cpd (see IP p.78) used in acc. sg. nt. as an adverb of manner qualifying *ādiyeyya*, see below, meaning “reckoned as (taking) by theft.” It could also be a comparative kammadhāraya cpd made up of two nouns (Cf. *setṭhasammata*: “agreed upon as the best”; A II 75.) used as an adverb; see Perniola, *Pali Grammar*, § 130,c and 132. As a comparative kammadhāraya *theyyasaṅkhāta* would mean: “reckoned as theft.”

= **theyya:** theft, nt. Cf. Sn 119. “*Gāme vā yadi vā raṇṇe, yaṃ paresaṃ mamāyitaṃ; theyyā adinnaṃ-ādeti, taṃ jaṇṇā vasalo iti*.”: “Whether in the village or in the wilderness, he who takes by theft what is not given (and which is) a belonging of others, know that one as an outcaste.” (See Norman’s note on this verse in GD, esp. on *theyyā* as ins. sg. in *-ā*.) , S I 23: “*bhuttaṃ theyyena tassa taṃ*,” A I 129: “*Theyyena kūṭakammena ...*” M I 268: “*... dinnādayi ... athenena ... viharati*.” Vim 131 (p. 16). “*Pāṇātipātā viratā, ... theyyā ca aticārā ca ...*” S I 204 “*Ekaṅgam-etāṃ theyyānaṃ ...*”

¹⁴⁸ G, V: *saṃkhātāṃ*.

¹⁴⁹ Mm Se, BhPm 1, V: *mūḷho*.

Cf. *theyyasaṃvāsaka*: one who lives in communion by stealth. Cf. *Vajirabuddhi-ṭīkā* (Myanmar p.429, § 110).

+ **saṅkhāta**: reckoned, agreed on; (As last part of cpds. :) so-called, named, reckoned as; p.p. of *saṅkhāyati* (*saṃ* + *√khā* + *ya*): considers, reckons, agrees upon, calculates, deliberates. See D I 163: “*dhammā akusalā kusalasāṅkhātā*.” D-a: “*Tattha akusalā akusalasāṅkhātā ti akusalā c’eva akusalā ti ca saṅkhātā nātā koṭṭhāsaṃ vā katvā ṭhapitā ti attho*.”: “... just unwholesome and reckoned, known (as) “unwholesome,” or established having made a division is the meaning..” D-a to D II 324: “*Asucisaṅkhāto ti asucikoṭṭhāsabhūto asuci ti nāto vā*.”

The meaning of *theyyasaṅkhātāṃ* is uncertain. The Padabhājana, see below, comments upon it as “thought of theft.” The commentary gives *saṅkhāta* the meaning *citta*. *Theyyacitta* is used in the Vibhaṅga in the clauses dealing with the kind of offences which are stealing as the definition of the crucial factor of intention. However, in the rule *theyyasaṅkhātāṃ* is used and this seems not to refer to the intention of the one who takes, but rather to the way or manner of the taking, in combination with the value of the object that is taken, is perceived by the rulers of the country as is elaborated in the rule, i.e., if the rulers would arrest one then it is an offence of Pārājika. This emphasis on the manner seems to be supported by the Sn 119 passage quoted above under *theyya*. This verse might support that *theyya-* in this compound stands for an instrumental *theyyā* or *theyyena*. If, on the other hand the cpd is an accusative or nominative tappurisa then it could also refer to the value of the thing taken.

It is not certain whether *theyyasaṅkhātāṃ* refers to the manner of taking or to the value of the object taken or to both. In the origin-story the Buddha asks a bhikkhu who is a former judge-minister (*vohārika-mahāmatta*) the value (*kittakena*) (of a thing taken) for which the king would punish a thief, a *pada*, and then lays down this training precept; Vin III 45. This seems to indicate that the emphasis in the rule is on the value of the stolen object, which is also confirmed by the way the Padabhājana analyses *yathārūpa* and *tathārūpa* in the rule as referring to the value (see below). The value ultimately defines what is a *pārājika* offence (i.e., value of a *pada* or more) and what is a lesser offence (i.e., a value of less than a *pāda*), the intention of the taker or the manner the object is taken are secondary factors.

Theyyasaṅkhātāṃ is probably a kammadhāraya or tappurisa cpd that is either an adverb of manner in acc. sg. nt. (see Perniola, *Pali Grammar*, § 132, and Syntax § 52), putting the emphasis on the way the object is taken and on the intention of the taker, i.e., “taking in a manner which is considered (taking by) theft”, or it an adjective qualifying *adinnaṃ* and referring to the value: i.e., “what has not been given being considered (an object) of theft” as suggested above.

This word also occurs in other places in the Canon as part of the definition of *micchā kammanta*, e.g. in M I 286 and M III 46: “*Yaṃ taṃ parassa paravittūpakaraṇaṃ gāmagataṃ vā araṇṇagataṃ taṃ adinnaṃ theyyasaṅkhātāṃ ādātā hoti*.” Here there is no verb, but an agent-noun, *ādātā*, and an adverb can not qualify an agent-noun. (Agent-nouns can be used as participles, but this is not the case here; see IP pp.209–11), maybe this is just a mechanical extension, but it could also suggest that *theyyasaṅkhātāṃ* is an adjective qualifying *adinnaṃ*, i.e., what is not given that is considered (an object of) theft. See MW 1260 where *steya* is given as “theft” but also as “anything stolen”. The Sanskrit noun *stainya* means, besides “theft,” also “thief,” and this is the way the commentary seems to have interpreted it; see below.

Vibh Padabhājana: “*Theyyasaṅkhātān-ti: theyyacitto avaharaṇacitto*.”: “*Theyyasaṅkhātāṃ*: the thought of theft, the thought of taking away/stealing.”

Kkh 42: “*Theyyasaṅkhātān-ti ettha theno ti coro, thenassa bhāvo theyyaṃ. Avaharaṇacittass’etaṃ nāmaṃ. Saṅkhātān-ti atthato ekaṃ; koṭṭhāsass’etaṃ nāmaṃ, “saññānidānā hi papañcasāṅkhā” ti ādisu viya. Theyyañ-ca taṃ saṅkhātāñcā ti theyyasaṅkhātāṃ, theyyacittasaṅkhāto eko cittakoṭṭhāso ti attho. Karaṇatthe c’etaṃ paccattavacanaṃ; tasmā theyyasaṅkhātēnā ti atthato daṭṭhabbaṃ. Yo ca theyyasaṅkhātēna ādiyati, so yasmā theyyacitto hoti tasmā byañjanaṃ anādiyitvā attham-eva dassetuṃ: “theyyacitto avaharaṇacitto” ti evam-assa Padabhājanaṃ vuttan-ti veditabbaṃ*.”:

“*Theyyasaṅkhātāṃ*: here thief (*thena*) is a robber, the state of being a thief is theft: this is a name for the thought of stealing. *Saṅkhāta* has same meaning; this is a name for the part (*koṭṭhāsa*) like in (passages such as:) “for originating from perception are proliferations and considerations (Sn 874.)” Theft that has been considered (= kammadhāraya cpd.), “considered with thought of theft is one part of mind” is the meaning. This nominative

has an instrumental meaning, therefore “with the consideration of theft’ is to be shown as the meaning. And whoever takes with the consideration to steal, because he is thinking of theft, therefore, not having taken up the detail/mark, the meaning is to be shown: “thought of theft, thought of stealing,’ thus it has been said about it in the line analysis. is to be known.”

Thus the commentary takes *saṅkhātāṃ* to mean “considered’ or “deliberated’, which is possible as *saṅkhāyati* can mean “considers, reflects, deliberates” as in “*saṅkhātadhamma*”: “having considered the Dhamma.” Cf. A-a to A IV 169: “*Theyyasaṅkhātān-ti theyyacittena*.”

Mā-L: “... *adinnamanyātakaṃ stānyasaṃskāramādiyeya yathārūpeṇādinnādānena*

rājāno gṛhītvā hanyeṃsu ...”; PrMoMā-L p.6/BV 80. Sa: “... *ādattaṃ steyyasaṃkhyātāṃ ādadyād yathārūpeṇādattādānena rājā hy enaṃ gṛhītvā ...*”; PrMoSa p.163. Mū: “(... *pareṣāṃ adattaṃsteyyasaṃskh*)yātāṃ ādad(ī)ta yadrūpeṇādattādānena rājā vainaṃ gṛhītvā”; LC 2.

ādiyeyya: should take; 3 sg. opt. of *ādāti* (*ā* + *√dā* + *a*). This optative requires the completion of “*pārājiko hoti*” and the whole rule is one sentence as in Pār 1. The two sentences are a parenthesis in it, the same applies for the next two rules: Pār 3 and 4.

adinnaṃ theyyasaṅkhātāṃ ādiyeyya: should take what is not given in a way that

is reckoned as theft, Ñm: with intent to steal take ... what is not given, H: whatever monk

should by means of theft take ... what has not been given to him, Norman: should take away ... what is not given in a way that is called theft. cf. the definition in the *Akaranīyas* at Vin I 96.

yathārūpe: of the kind, according to the kind, which is being of such nature; adjective qualifying *adinnādāne*. Bahubbīhi cpd. = **yathā**: according to, as, like; relative indeclinable; see above Nidāna and IP p.292 and PED +

rūpa: form; see above Nid.

Vibh Padabhājana: “*yathārūpaṃ nāma pādaṃ vā pādārahaṃ vā atirekapādaṃ vā*.”: “of the kind is the name for a *pāda* or what is worth a *pāda* or more than a *pāda*.” Kkh 29: “*yathārūpe ti yādise*”: “...: which kind.”

Yathārūpe as adjective is qualifying the noun *adinnādāne* and this seems to indicate that it refers to the manner of taking rather than the value of the object. However, both the Padabhājana and the origin-story to the rule at Vin III 45 (“... *kittakena ... rājā ... coraṃ gahetvā hanati ... pādena vā ...*”: “Because of how much ... the king executes having caught a robber?... for a *pāda* ...”) seem to indicate that it refers to the value of the thing taken, i.e., *adinnaṃ*. This is also supported by its correlative *tathārūpaṃ* in the next clause, which qualifies *adinnaṃ*.

adinnādāne: on account of ... the taking of what has not been given; loc. sg. nt. Gen. tapp. cpd. Here the locative of reason and motive is used, which indicates the cause for some action, i.e.: for, due to, on account of. See A IV 65: “*kismiñ-cid-eva karaṇe ... jīvītā voropesuṃ*”: “on account of some offence ... they did deprive him from life” and Syntax § 176. This is also supported by the origin-story to the rule (*kittakena*: because of how much); see above *yathārūpe*, and the way it is given in the *Prātimokṣasūtras*, see above.= **adinna**: see above + **ādāna**: taking; action-noun der. fr. *ādāti*: see above.

yathārūpe adinnādāne rājāno coraṃ gahetvā: the taking of what has not been given is of the kind [that] on account of [it] the kings, having caught a robber, Ñm: the taking of what is not given being of such a nature that on its account kings would have the robber arrested ..., H: what has not been given to him in such a manner as kings, catching a thief in the act of stealing..., Norman: in such a manner of taking what is not given that kings, having arrested a robber...

rājāno: royal officers, rulers, authorities, king’s officers, Ñm & H: kings; nom. pl. m. of *rājā*. As PED 568–69 points out the term *rājā* has a far wider meaning than our term “king”. It includes monarchs, princes, noblemen, chieftains etc. According to the Vibh, Vin III 47, the plural form *rājāno* means any of those who have the authority to punish. They probably were some kind of noble royal officers or knights; see PED 569 and also the Vibh to NP 6 where a *rājā* is one of the kinds of persons stealing a bhikkhu’s robe. The commentaries explain *rājāno* as *rājapurisa*, king’s men: J-a III 33 “*Tattha rājāno ti rājapurise sandhāya vuttaṃ*” (on J 311: “*mā taṃ gahesuṃ rājāno*”), and A-a II 88 (on A I 47) “*Rājāno gahetvā vividhā kammakāraṇā kārenteti coraṃ*

gahetvā vividhā kammakāraṇā rājapurisā karonti,

It is not likely that a king himself would catch robbers but had royal officers or members of the royal guard who would do that dirty job for him; cf. S II 100 where a robber gets caught and is shown to the king who just gives the kind of punishment; cf. D III 65f. “*rājāno pana tā kārenti nāma.*” In Sanskrit *rājan* and *rājanya* can have the meaning of “a man of the royal tribe or the military caste, a Kshatriya, a warrior” see MW and VINS II 215–16.

The Vibhaṅga origin story at Vin III 44 clearly refers to a king: “*kittakena kho bhikkhu rājā māgadho seniyo bimbisāro coraṃ gahetvā hanati vā bandhati vā pabbājeti vā*”^{ti} and it is therefore best to keep this meaning, although in the plural sense it seems rather to have the meaning of king’s officers. Perhaps, as elsewhere, both senses are implied.

coraṃ: the robber; acc. sg. m.

gahetvā: having caught, seized, arrested; abs. of *gaṇhāti* (√*gah* + *ṇhā*). Not a causative as Ñm renders this and the next verbs (“kings would have the robber arrested and either executed”); see IP p.376.

Gahetvā is best translated as “caught”; see Th 786: “*Coro yathā sandhimukhe gahito, sakammunā haññati pāpadhammo.*”: “Like a robber caught in a window-opening, is struck because of his own action of evil nature ...”

haneyyūṃ: they would physically punish, Ñm: execute, Horner: flog, Norman: beat; 3 pl. opt. of *hanati* (√*han* + *a*). See the Vibh Padabhājana that shows he is struck/beaten by hand, foot, or stick etc. Kkh 47: “...: *hatthādīhi vā potheyyūṃ satthena vā chindeyyūṃ.*” Cf. M I 87 where the types of physical punishment given by the king to one caught for some misbehaviour are listed; including flogging with whips, clubs and cutting with knives etc. At S II 100 a robber has been caught and, when shown to the king, gets sentenced to be struck by swords.

bandheyūṃ: they would bind, imprison; 3 pl. opt. of *bandhati* (√*bandh* + *a*).

pabbājeyūṃ: they would banish, exile; 3 pl. opt. of *pabbājeti* (*pa* + √(*v*)*vaj* + *e*), the causative of *pabbajati*, used in a double sense of “make go forth’ (as a *samaṇa*) and “to banish’ (For -*vv*- > -*bb*-; see NP 14: *chabbassāni*)

coro’si: you are a robber; = junction of *coro* + *asi* in which the *a* of *asi* is elided; PG § 71,1a. = **coro**: see above + **asi**: you are; 2 sg. pres. ind. of *atthi* (√*as*).

bālo’si: you are a fool; **bālo**: fool; nom. sg. m. + **asi**.

mūlho’si: you are insane, one who has gone astray, a madman, you are stupid. **mūlho**: one who is astray, a stupid person, a madman,; p.p. of *muyhati* (√*muh* + *ya*): one is confused, used as a noun or as an adjective qualifying an unexpressed nominative personal pronoun *tvaṃ*: you. Cf. M I 368: “*mūlhassa vā maggaṃ ācikkheyya*”: “should point out the (right) way to one who is astray/confused.”

The Mm Se reading *mūlho* is a corruption. Mm Se has the -*ū*- correctly in *amūlḥavinayo*; see Adhik.

theno’si ti: you are a thief; = **theno**: thief; nom. sg. m. + **asi** of which the initial *a*- has been elided in the junction with *theno* and the final -*i* has been lengthened due to being followed by *ti* + **ti**: end quote; see above Nid.

tathārūpaṃ: of such a kind, ... nature; adjective qualifying *adinnaṃ*, see Vibh. = Bahubbihi cpd; see IP p.189 & Vin I 16. It is not agreeing with *bhikkhu*, as this would require a nominative ending, but it is a correlative to *yathārūpe*. Padabhājana: “... *tathārūpaṃ nāma pādaṃ ...*’ (as for *yathārūpe*). Cf. Mv I 7,8/Vin I 16: “... *yanūnāhaṃ tathārūpaṃ iddhābhisaṃkhāraṃ abhisaṃkhāreyyaṃ, yathā seṭṭhi ... yassaṃ kullaputtaṃ na passeyyā ti.*”

ādiyamāno: taking; pr.p. of *ādiyati* (*ā* + √*dā* + *i* + *ya*), the passive form of *ādāti*: see above.

ayam-pi: this one too; = **ayam**: this one, he; nom. sg. m. dem. pron. qualifying an unexpressed *bhikkhu*. This clause is correlative to the “*Yo pana ...*” main clause above. The final -*ṃ* of *ayam* has been palatalised to form a sandhi with the initial *p*- of *pi*. + **pi**: too, also; indecl. (enclitic form of *api*).

pārājiko hoti asaṃvāso: see Pār 1.

[Pār 3: Manussaviggahasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu sañcicca manussaviggahaṃ jīvītā voropeyya, satthahārakaṃ vāssa pariyeseyya, maraṇavaṇṇaṃ vā saṃvaṇṇeyya, maraṇāya vā samādapeyya: “Ambho purisa, kiṃ tuyh’iminā pāpakena dujjīvitena? Matan-te¹⁵⁰ jīvītā seyyo ti!”, iti cittamano cittaśaṅkappo anekapariyāyena maraṇavaṇṇaṃ vā saṃvaṇṇeyya, maraṇāya vā samādapeyya; ayam-pi pārājiko hoti, asaṃvāso.

[The training precept on (killing) a human being]

If any bhikkhu should deliberately deprive a human being of life, or should seek an assassin for him, or should praise the attractiveness of death, or should incite [him] to death [saying]: “Dear man, what [use] is this bad, wretched life for you? Death is better than life for you!” should he, [having] such-thought-and-mind, [having such-] thought-and-intention, praise in manifold ways the beauty of death or incite [him] to death, he also is disqualified, not in communion.

Yo pana bhikkhu: see Nid & Pār 1.

sañcicca: deliberately, H: intentionally, Ñm: purposely; adv. to *voropeyya*, = the abs. (“having intended”) of *sañcinteti*: plans, intends, thinks over; pref. *saṃ*: with + *cinteti*: thinks (over), plans. (*citta*: mind/heart was originally a p.p. of this verb in Skt.)

manussaviggahaṃ: a human being, one who has taken a human form; acc. sg. m. or nt.; = **manussa**: a human being; m. + **viggaha**: a figure, appearance, form, presence, person, lit.: “a taking hold of”; fr. *viggaṇhāti* (*vi* + *√(g)gah* + *ṇha*); cf. Pāc 7. No exact translation is possible of this rare word that might have been in use in the secular law system in Magadha. = Skt *vigraha*: keeping apart, separate, i.e.: individual form, form, the body, embodiment; see MW 957.

Maybe the *-viggaha*, which is neuter in gender and therefore can refer to both males and females, has been added because *manussa*, by itself, is masculine in gender. The compound *manussitthi* is used to denote a human female; see PED.

The Padabhāṣana only explains the application rather than the meaning of this word: “*Manussaviggaho nāma yaṃ mātukucchismiṃ paṭhamam cittaṃ uppannam paṭhamam viññānam pātubhūtam yāva maraṇakālā, etthantare eso manussaviggaho nāma*.”: “*Manussaviggaha* is the first mentality (*citta*) arisen in the mother’s womb, the first consciousness that has become manifest, until the time of death, in between this this one is called a *manussaviggaha*.”

The Mū version includes both *manussa* and *manussaviggaha* in the rule: “[*yaḥ punar bhikṣur manuṣyam vā manuṣya*]viggahaṃ jīvītād vyaparopayec ...”; LC 3. The Sa version (PrMoSa p.164) has nothing corresponding to *manussaviggaha* (*yaḥ punar bhikṣur manuṣyam svahastena saṃcintya jīvītād vyaparopaye...*), however, the translations from the Chinese in Finot 17 [“*pareil ... un être humain*”] and CSP 75 [“a man-like being”] suggest that there was a Sa manuscript tradition which included it.

jīvītā voropeyya: should deprive of life, should take away from life, Ñm, H, *Vinaya Texts*: should deprive of life. Padabhāṣana: “...: *jīvitindriyaṃ upacchindati uparodheti santatiṃ vikopeti*.”

jīvītā: lit.: from life; abl. sg. nt. of *jīvita*. This word can not be translated as an ablative in English with the verb “deprive” that takes a genitive, but there is no other suitable translation of *voropeti*

voropeyya: should deprive of, bereave of; 3 sg. opt. Possibly **-v-**: could be an euphonic consonant used to link the final *-ā* of *jīvītā* and the initial *o-* of *oropeyya*. + **oropeyya**: should deprive; 3 sg. opt. of *oropeti* the causative of *orohati* (*ava* + *√rup* + *a*): puts down, takes down, removes (hair etc.).

CPED 251 takes it as 3 sg. opt. of *voropeti* (*vi* + *ava* + *√rup* + *a*).

Geiger in PG § 66,1 and 72,2 gives the prothetic *v-* before the vowels *u* & *o* as a fossilised junction-form from Sanskrit; i.e., Pāli *voropeti* corresponds to Sanskrit *avaropayati*, *vuṭṭhāpana* at Sd 12 = *utthāpana* in Skt, *vutta* at Pāc 68 = Skt *ukta*, and *vosāsa* at Pd 2 = Skt *avasāya*.

¹⁵⁰ Dm: *matam te*.

The Skt form given in PrMoSa p.164 and LC 3 is *vyaparopaye*, the optative form of *vyaparopayati* the causative of the Skt verb *vyaparuhati* (*vy-apa-√ruh*): lays aside, remove, deprive of, expel from (ins. or abl.); see MW 1031. Mā-L: *vyāparopeya*; BV 80.

satthahārakaṃ: assassin, knife-carrier, one who brings the knife, Ñm: (life-) taking knife, H: knife-bringer; acc. sg. m. = **sattha**: knife; nt. + **hāraka**: carrier, taker; agent-noun, strengthened *√har* + agent-suffix *-aka*. Ñm translates it as “(life-) taking knife”, but see NP 16 where *hāraka* unambiguously means “carrier.” Elsewhere in the Pāli Canon “*satthaṃ āharati*” is used for a bhikkhu committing suicide by taking a knife; see S I 121, III 123, IV 59 & 63, V 320. In the origin-story to this rule it is a sham-recluse who takes the lives of bhikkhus with a sharp knife, *tiṇhaṃ āsiṃ*, after being requested by them to do so. The context of S IV 63 also makes it clear that with *satthahāraka* another person who kills with a knife is meant.

vāssa: = **vā**; or; see Pār 2. + **assa**: for him; dat. sg. m. of *ayaṃ*; see above Nid.

pariyeseyya: should seek, i.e., seek out, provide; 3 sg. opt. of *pariyeseti* (*pari* + *√es* + *a*).

maraṇavaṇṇaṃ: attractiveness of death, H: beauty of death, Ñm: advantages in death; acc. sg. m. = Gen. tapp. cpd. = **maraṇa**: death (nt.) + **vaṇṇa**: attractiveness, beauty, glory, praise.

vā ... vā ...: or ... or ...; see above.

saṃvaṇṇeyya: should praise, exalt; 3 sg. opt. of *saṃvaṇṇeti* (*saṃ* + *√vaṇṇ* + *e*).

maraṇāya: to death; dat. sg. nt. of *maraṇa*: see above.

samādapeyya: H: should incite, Ñm: encourage; 3 sg. opt. of *samādapeti* (*saṃ* + *ā* + *√dā* + *āpe*), the causative form of **samādāti*.

ambho: “I say!,” “Hey!,” “Ho!,” “Look!,” colloquial exclamatory particle used to address someone vigorously and which can also express a slight reproach: “You foolish man!”

purisa: man!; voc. sg. m. Cf. Sd 5.

ambho purisa: “Dear man!,” “Hey man!,” H: “Hullo there, my man, ...,” Ñm: good man.

kiṃ: what (use?); nt. inter. pron.

tuyh’iminā: = Junction of *tuyhaṃ* + *iminā* in which the *-aṃ* of *tuyhaṃ* has been elided before a vowel. Cf. Sd 12: *aññāmaññāvacanena* and Dhṛp 183: *buddhānasāsanaṃ*; PG § 71,2a.

tuyh’: to you, = *tuyhaṃ*; dat. of pers. pron. *tvaṃ*. **iminā**: with this; ins. sg. of dem. pron. *idaṃ*.

pāpakena: bad, evil, demeritorious; adj. = *pāpa*: bad, demerit (opposite of *puñña*) + conn. suf. *-ika*.

dujjīvitena: difficult life, bad life; ins. sg. nt. = *du(r)*: difficult, bad; pejorative prefix. Cf. *dubbalya* at Pār 1. + *jīvita*: see above. The *-r* of *dur-* is assimilated to the initial *j-* of *jīvita* as the consonant combination *-rj-* does not occur in Pāli; see PG § 51 & 67.

matan-te: = *matam* + *te*. **matam**: death; nom. sg. nt., p.p. of *marati* (*√mar* + *a*) used as a noun in acc. sg. nt. Cf. Sn 440: “*Saṅgame me matam seyyo, yañ-ce jīve parājito*.”: “Death in battle is better for me than being a defeated one in life.”

te: for you; dat. sg. nt. of pers. pron. *tvaṃ*.

jīvītā: than life; abl. sg. nt. Abl. of comparison construed with *seyyo*.

seyyo: better, superior; adv./indecl. Comparative used as adverb taking an abl. of comparison. = Skt *śreyas*. A comparative form of the noun *sirī*: “luck”, see IP p.125, used as an nom. sg. nt. adverb to an unexpressed verb *hoti*; see Dhṛp 76: “... *seyyo hoti na pāpiyo*..” See PG § 100.3, PED 723, Syntax 132a.

ti: “...,” end quote; see above Nid.

iti: such, thus, so; *iti* is a deictic particle referring to a statement that is just mentioned or that follows, here it refers to the motive of wanting to cause death; see IP p.36.

cittamano/iticittamano: who has such mind-and-thought, thus-mind-and-thought, Ñm: with such thoughts in mind, H: so the mind and thought; adj. qualifying *bhikkhu*, the meanings of this compound and the next one, *cittasaṅkappa*, are not totally clear as the compounds are not found anywhere else in the Pāli Canon. It is

probably a dvanda-compound or perhaps a locative tappurisa compound. Padabhājana: “*Iti cittaṃ mano ti: yaṃ cittaṃ taṃ mano, yaṃ mano taṃ cittaṃ*.”: “‘Thus-mind-and-thought’: what is mind that is thought, what is thought that is mind.”

It is possible that *iti* is included in the compound, like in the similar compounds *itivāda* or *itihāsa*, so that it is one word, but there is no *iti* in the following compound: *cittasaṅkappa* (Although it is implied according to the Sp; see below.) so *iti* and *cittamano* are probably two words. Cf. the similar construction “*iti jānāmi iti passāmi*” in Pār 4. It is also possible that *iti* just refers to the preceding quotation and connects it to what follows rather than defining the contents of the mind of the one who incites since what precedes *iti* is a quotation of the inciting speech rather than a quotation of the thoughts of the inciter. *Cittamano* and *cittasaṅkappa* would then emphasise that the mind of the inciter is fully aware of what he incites by way of speech and that the action was not done unintentionally; see the non-offence clauses at Vin III 78. Cf. D III 103: “*Evaṃ pi te mano itthaṃ pi te mano iti pi te cittaṃ*.”

The *Critical Pāli Dictionary* takes it to be one word: “*iticittamanocittasaṅkappa*,” but, as Hinüber points out in SPPS 134, this goes against the entire Pāli tradition since the Padabhājana and the commentaries comment upon two words. The parallels found in the *Prātimokṣasūtras* have two words.

Citta means “mind” as well as “intention” or “thought.” Later in the Suttavibhaṅga section dealing with this rule (Vin I 79 f.) one finds the Buddha asking doubters “*Kiṃcitto?*” “What intention/thought?” to which the bhikkhu answers: “*asañcicco ahaṃ ...*”: “I did not intend,” or “*nāhaṃ maraṇādhipāyo*.” “I didn’t mean death.”

The commentary seems to take it as a dvanda. Sp 442: “*Iticittamano: iticitto itimano: mataṃ te jīvītā seyyo ti, ettha vuttamaraṇacitto maraṇamano ti attho. Yasmā pañ’ettha mano cittaśaddassa atthadīpanatthaṃ vutto, atthato pañetaṃ ubhayam-pi ekam-eva, tasmā tassa atthato abhedam dassetuṃ*.”: “Thus-mind, thus-thought: having said ‘Death is better than life for you!’ the death-mind (and) death thought in this connection is the meaning. Therefore here ‘thought’ (*mano*) has been said to elucidate the meaning of the word ‘mind’ (*citta*), however, the meaning is just the same for both, therefore the meaning is to be shown undivided.”

cittasaṅkappa: mind and intention, or: mind-intention, Ñm: such intentions in mind; adj. qualifying bhikkhu. Just as with the previous compound the meaning of this compound too is not totally clear. It could be a dvanda or a locative tappurisa cpd. Vibh: “... *marañasaññī marañacetano marañādhipāyo*.”

The commentary says that the word *iti* is implied: “... in this line the *iti* word has to be brought in for assistance (*adhikāra*). This ‘such thought and intention,’ although not said so, it is to be understood as: ‘it is just said for assistance.’ For when indicating just that meaning of it in that way, ‘perception of death’ was said at the start. But because *saṅkappa* here is not the designation for thought (*vitakka*), nevertheless it is a designation for mere planning (*saṃvidahana*). And that planning is included in this meaning through perception and intention and wishing, therefore ‘the mind is various intentions’ is ‘*cittasaṅkappa*,’ thus the meaning is to be shown. Thus, in the Padabhājana its (meaning) has been said through perception-intention-wish, and here ‘wish’ is to be understood as ‘thought.’”

Sp 442: “*Cittasaṅkappa ti imasmiṃ pade adhikāravasena iti-saddo āharitabbo. Idaṃ hi iticittasaṅkappa ti evaṃ avuttam-pi adhikārato vuttam-eva hotī ti veditabbaṃ. Tathā hi’ssa tam-eva atthaṃ dassento marañasaññī ti ādim āha. Yasmā c’ettha saṅkappa ti na idaṃ vitakkassa nāmaṃ, atha kho saṃvidahanamattassa adhipaccanaṃ. Tañ-ca saṃvidahanam imasmiṃ atthe saññācetanādhippāyehi saṅgahaṃ gacchati, tasmā citto nānappakārako saṅkappa assā ti cittasaṅkappa’ti evaṃ atthaṃ daṭṭhabbo. Tathā hi’ssa padabhājanīyaṃ pi saññācetanādhippāyavasena vuttaṃ. Ettha ca adhippāyo ti vitakko veditabbo*.”

saṅkappa: intention, purpose, motive; pref. *saṃ* + *kappa*, fr. *kappeti* (√*kapp* + *e*): prepares, makes; cf. Aniy 1.

anekapariyāyena: in manifold ways, by various ways, multifariously; adv. In the Pāli the word is singular: “in a manifold way,” but in English the sense is expressed by the plural. Kammadhāraya cpd used as an adverb in ins. sg. m. An adverb of manner: “multifariously”; see Syntax § 75a. = **aneka**: many, manifold, various, lit. “not one”; adj. = neg. pref. *an-* + numeral *eka*: one. + **pariyāya**: manner, way, method, lit. “going around”; pref. *pari*: around + √*i* > *aya*: to go. Cf. Pāc 19 and 68.

marāṇavaṇṇaṃ ... asaṃvāso: see above.

[Pār 4: Uttarimanussadhammasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu anabhijānaṃ uttarimanussadhammaṃ attūpanāyikaṃ alamariyañāṇadassanaṃ¹⁵¹ samudācareyya: “Iti jānāmi, iti passāmi ti!”, tato aparena samayena samanuggāhiyamāno¹⁵² vā asamanuggāhiyamāno¹⁵³ vā āpanno visuddhāpekkho evaṃ vadeyya: “Ajānam-evāhaṃ¹⁵⁴ āvuso avacaṃ: ‘Jānāmi!’ apassaṃ: ‘Passāmi!’ Tucchaṃ musā vilapin-ti”, aññatra adhimānā, ayam-pi pārājiko hoti, asaṃvāso.

[The training precept on superhuman states]

If any bhikkhu, [though] not directly knowing [it], should claim a superhuman state pertaining to himself, [a state of] knowing and seeing [that is] suitable for the noble [ones], [saying]: “Thus I know! Thus I see!,” [and] then, on another occasion, [whether] being interrogated or not being interrogated, having committed [the offence], desiring purification, should say so: “[Although] not knowing [it,] I spoke thus [saying]: ‘I know,’ not seeing [it, I spoke, saying:] ‘I see.’ I bluffed vainly [and] falsely,” except [when said] in overestimation, he also is disqualified, not in communion.

Yo pana bhikkhu: see above.

anabhijānaṃ: not directly knowing, H: not knowing it fully, having no acquaintance; neg. pref. *an-* + nom. sg. m. Pr.p. in *-aṃ* agreeing with *bhikkhu*. Pr.p. of *abhijānāti* (*abhi* + √*ñā* + *ṇā*): directly knows, knows through experience. (Pref. *abhi*: over, on top of + *jānāti*: knows; see below.)

uttarimanussadhammaṃ: a superhuman state, a state beyond humans, H: a state of further-men, Ñm: superior human state; acc. sg. m. Genitive tapp. cpd. containing a kammadhāraya: **uttarimanussa**: superhuman, beyond human, superior human. = **uttari**: beyond, over; adj. or indecl. Cf. NP 3. = the comparative adjectival form based on *ud*: up/ above; i.e., *ud* + *tara*. The superlative form is *uttama*.

Uttari is not the cpd form of the adjective *uttara* as this is derived from the verb *uttarati* (*ud* + √*tar* + *a*): crosses over, goes beyond. *Uttari* in combination with an ablative (or “governing” an ablative) means: beyond, further, superior to; see DP and CPD.

+ **manussa**: human being + **dhamma**: state; see above Nid.

Sp 478: “Uttarimanussadhammo ti: manusse uttiṇṇadhammassa; manusse atikkamitvā brahmattaṃ vā nibbānaṃ vā pāpanakadhammassā ti attho. Uttarimanussānaṃ vā seṭṭhapurisānaṃ jhāyīnañ-ca ariyānañ-ca dhammassa.”: “Uttarimanussadhamma: a state of one gone beyond humans, having passed beyond humans a state of one who has reached the state of *brahmā* or (has reached the state of) quenching, is the meaning. Or a state of superhumans, of the best persons, of meditators and noble ones.” Cf. Syntax § 132b, D-a 338 to D I 211,10, D-a 817 to D III 12, and S-a III 101 to S IV 300f, where *uttarimanussadhammā* in “*uttarimanussadhammā iddhipāṭihāriyaṃ*” is explained as “a display of power that is beyond a human state”

In the Dasadhammasuttanta (A V 88/AN 10,48) and elsewhere (see CPD & DP) the phrase “*uttariṃ manussadhammā alamariyañāṇadassanaviseso*”: “a distinction sufficient for noble knowledge and vision that is beyond the human norm” is found. This suggests that *uttari(ṃ)* is an indeclinable taking an ablative (*manussadhammā*): beyond the human state/range/norm or a state. It might be that the Pātimokkha form here is a derivation of this form. CPD sv *uttari(ṃ)* 2 states that *uttariṃ* in this expression is an adjective to *alamariyañāṇadassanavisesa* or *iddhipāṭihāriya* and CPD states also that *uttarimanussadhamma* is an abstraction from the above expression *uttariṃ manussadhammā* and means: “superior to the human norm, superhuman” as adjective and “superhuman norm or quality” as substantive masculine noun. Wijesekera in Syntax § 132,b & n. 15 also suggests the ablative meaning: “excelling those of human nature.”

If the meaning was “superhuman’s state” then it would be hard to explain why *uttara* or *uttama* have not been

¹⁵¹ G: -dassanaṃ.

¹⁵² Dm: -ggahīya-.

¹⁵³ Dm: -ggahīya-.

¹⁵⁴ C, D, W, Dm, Mi Se, BhPm 1 & 2, Um, Ra: *ajānamevaṃ āvuso*. Vibh Ee, UP, Mm Se: *ajānaṃ evaṃ āvuso*.

used instead of *uttari*. The Sp allows for both interpretations although it connects *uttari* with *uttinṇa* the p.p. of *uttarati*: passes beyond.

The ablative form is also found, besides the other form, in the scriptures of other early Buddhist schools; see BHSGD p.123 (-124): “*uttari manuṣyadharmād ... jñānadarśanaviśeṣaṃ sakṣātkartum*”: “... beyond human conditions” (LV 246,16).

Compare Vin III 5: “... *dibbena cakkhunā ... atikkantamānusakena ...*”: “with the divine eye ... which transcends the human (eye)” (Sp: “*manussūpacāraṃ atikkamitvā*”), Ja VI 439–440: “*atītamānusa(ka)*”: “surpassing human power or standard, (Ja-a: “*manussehi kattabbaṃ kammaṃ atītaṃ*,” DhP 373: “... *santacittassa bhikkhuno amānusī ratī hoti ...*”: “For the bhikkhu who has a peaceful mind ... there is a non-human delight.” (DhpA: “*dibbā ratī*”)

attūpanāyikaṃ: pertaining to himself, concerning himself, Ñm: present in himself, H: with reference to himself; adj. Bahubbīhi cpd. = **attā**: self, oneself + **upanāyika**: with reference to, concerning, applying to; adj. der. fr. pref. *upa-*: up, near + *naya*: inference etc., fr. *nayati* (√*ni* + *a*): infers, conducts + conn. suf. *-ika*.

alamariyaññadassanaṃ: knowing and seeing that is suitable for the noble ones, Ñm: worthy of the Noble Ones’ knowledge and vision, H: sufficient ariyan knowledge and insight, *Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha* (Ñānamoli and Bodhi) n. 178: knowledge and vision worthy of a noble one, Norman: knowledge and vision deserving the name noble; adjective qualifying *uttarimanussadhammaṃ*. Kammadhāraya used as a bahubbīhi cpd containing a dative tappurisa used as a bahubbīhi cpd: *alamariya* and a dvanda: *ññadassana*. Not analysed in the Padabhāṇa.

Alamariya takes a dative of advantage or an infinitive; see DP 237–38. Other compounds involving *alaṃ-* such as *alamattha* (competent), *alamatthavicintaka* (able to discern the goal), *alampañña* (suitable for wisdom), *alaṃsajīva* (suitable for the communal life)—all are dative (of advantage) tappurisa cpds.

Although the commentaries quoted below mostly take *ariya* in *alamariya* to refer to the noble state (*ariyabhāva*), I prefer the second interpretation of A-a to A IV 363: “noble ones” (*ariyā*), as the noun *ariya* refers to noble persons in the Pāli Canon rather than to the noble state; e.g. “*ariyassa vinaya*”: “the Discipline of the Noble One” at M I 360.

It is worthwhile to quote Norman observation in “Why are the Four Noble Truths called ‘Noble’” (CP IV 171–174) here: “It is impossible to be certain of the original meaning of the compound *ariyasaccāni*. Almost certainly, as it is not uncommon in Indian languages, no one meaning was intended, and those who used the word were conscious of all the meanings simultaneously as they used it. In English it has become standard to use the translation ‘noble truth’. When we use this translation we are excluding the other explanations, and are in fact probably choosing the least important of the possible meanings. To conclude: those persons who first translated the compound *ariyasaccāni* into English could have translated “the noble’s truths,” or “the nobles’ truths,” or “the truths for nobles,” or “the nobilising truths,” or “the noble truths,” but they could only have one of them. The one they choose was perfectly correct, but it was only part of the translation.”

There are different interpretations in the commentaries.

Sp 487 splits the cpd into *alaṃ* + *ariyaññadassana*: “*Ariyaññadassana: alaṃ pariyattaṃ kilesa-viddhaṃsana-samatthaṃ ariya-ññadassana-ettha, jhānādibhede uttarimanussadhamme alaṃ vā ariyaññadassana-assā ti alamariyaññadassano. Taṃ alamariyaññadassanaṃ uttarimanussadhamman-ti evaṃ padatthasambandho veditabbo*”: “Noble knowing and seeing: here (it is) noble knowing & seeing that is suitable (*alaṃ*), sufficient (*pariyatta*), capable/conducive (*samattha*) to destroy defilements, or when the superhuman states of the *jhāna*-kind etc (*jhān-ādi-bhede*) would be suitable/sufficient for noble knowing and seeing: suitable for noble knowing & seeing. That suitable noble knowing and seeing is a superhuman state, thus the connection/syntax of the meaning of the word is to be understood.”

However, M-a to M I 68 has: “*Tattha alamariyaṃ kātun ti alamariyo, ariyabhāvāya samattho ti vuttaṃ hoti*”: suitable to make noble, suitable for the noble (state): conducive for the noble state is said.” A-a to AV 88: “... *ariyaṃ visuddhaṃ uttamaṃ ññaṃ dassana-ti ariyaññadassanaṃ, alaṃ pariyattakataṃ kilesa..*(as VinA)”: “The noble, pure, highest knowledge and seeing, suitable, sufficient to do, capable to destroy defilements ... (as

Sp). Further, in DN and AN *alamariya* occurs by itself: D I 163: "... dhammā ...(na) *alamariyā* (na) *alamariyasankhatā* ..." D-a: "Na *alamariyā* *niddosattthena* *ariyā* *bhavitum* *nālaṃ* *asamatthā*." "... not conducive/capable to become faultless.." D-a to D III 82: "Na *alamariyan-ti* *ariyabhāve* *asamatthā*." A-a to A IV 363: "Nālamariyā: *ariyabhāvaṃ* *kātuṃ* *asamatthā*, *ariyānaṃ* *vā* *ananucchavikā*": "Not conducive/capable to make the noble state; not suitable for noble ones." These AN & DN references show that *alaṃ* + *ariya* act together as a bahubbīhi cpd and are not only found in the cpd. *alamariya-ñāṇadassana*.

alaṃ: suitable, worthy, proper, sufficient, surely, really; the basic meaning is 'enough' (see Sd 13, Aniy 1 + 2); indecl. which takes a dative. + **ariya**: a noble one, noble (adj.). It is uncertain whether *ariya* is here a noun, i.e., noble one, as Ñāṇamoli and Bh. Bodhi (1995) take it, or an adjective qualifying *ñāṇadassana* as Horner and Norman—following Sp—take it. *Alamariya* occurs as a separate word—see above—so it is possible that *alaṃ* takes *ariya* as a dative noun. However, the resolution of the similar compound *alamatthavicintaka* (competent to see the goal) in which *alaṃ* takes the genitive tappurisa *atthavicintaka* rather than *attha* indicates that the explanation of Sp can be correct. Th-a to Th 252: "Atthavicintakan-ti: *attano* *paresaṃ* *ca* *atthaṃ* *hitāṃ* *vicintetum* *samatthaṃ*."

alamariya: suitable for the noble (ones), sufficient for the noble (state); adj. Dative tappurisa used as bahubbīhi cpd.

ñāṇadassana: knowing and seeing; dvanda-cpd = **ñāṇa**: knowing, knowledge; (cp. *jānana*) fr. *jānāti*, see below + **dassana**: seeing, vision; action-noun fr. *√dis*.

samudācareyya: should lay claim to, assert, H: boast, Ñm: suggest; 3 sg. opt. of *samudācarati* (*saṃ* + *ud* + *ā* + *√car* + *a*): addresses, assails, befalls; the padabhājana explains as *āroceyya*: should announce; 3 sg. opt. of *āroceti*; see above Nid. (Cf. Pāc 8: "... *uttarimanussa-dhammaṃ* *āroceyya* ...") It seems that *samudācarati* has a stronger, more negative connotation than *āroceti*; cf. Vin I 9: "Mā *bhikkhave* *Tathāgataṃ* *nāmaṃ* *samudācaratha*." "Bhikkhus, do not address the Such-gone with a name."

iti: thus; see above Pār 3.

jānāmi: I know; 1 sg. pres. ind. of *jānāti* (*√jā* + *nā*): knows. **iti**: see above.

passāmi ti: "I see," = **passāmi**: I see; 1 sg. pres. ind. of *passati* (*√dis* + *a*) + **ti**: quotation mark; see above Nid.

tato: then, thereafter, thereupon, Ñm: and afterwards, H: then; dem. pron. *ta(d)* with the ablatival suffix *-to*. Cf. Dh 1, 369, 376, and NP 3 & 7

aparena samayena: Ñm: on another occasion, H: if later on, Norman: afterwards, Warder: at another time, after some time; idiom expressing an indefinite point in time, see Syntax § 79b and IP p.45.

aparena: another, i.e., next, following; adj., directional pref. *apa* + comp. suf. *-ra*. (Not *a-* + *para*.)

samayena: at an occasion, meeting, lit.: coming together; ins. sg. m. Instrumental used in a locative sense, i.e., time at which; see IP p.45 and Syntax § 79b. = pref. *saṃ*: together + *√i* > *aya*: to go.

samanuggāhiyamāno: being interrogated, being (verbally) pressed; passive pr.p. nom. sg. m. of *samanuggāhati* (*saṃ* + *anu* + *√gah* + *a*): interrogates, (verbally) presses, asks for reasons or means.

asamanuggāhiyamāno: not being interrogated; neg. pref. *a-* + see above.

vā: or; disj. particle.

āpanno: having committed (a Pārājika); p.p. of *āpajjati*; see above Nid. It would technically be possible to translate *āpanno* as "the one who has offended" or "the offender," i.e., in the way that it is used in *sotāpanna*, "stream-enterer," however, it does not seem to have this sense in the Vinaya and the present context suggests that it is an adjective qualifying *bhikkhu*; see DP s.v. *āpajjati*.

visuddhāpekkho: desiring purification, longing for purification; adj. (bb cpd) qualifying *bhikkhu*; see above Nid.

evaṃ: thus; adv. cf. Nid.

vadeyya: should say; 3 sg. opt. of *vadati* (*√vad* + *a*): says.

ajānam-evāhaṃ: a junction of *ajānaṃ* + *eva* through the weakening of *ṃ*, and a junction of *eva* + *ahaṃ* through

contraction.

ajānaṃ: not knowing, unknowing, unknowingly; neg. pref. *a-* + *jānaṃ*: nom. sg. m. Pr.p. of *jānāti* (see above) indicating an action taking place contemporarily with the main action (*jānāmi*). It is agreeing with *ahaṃ* in gender, case, and number. Sometimes present participles like *jānaṃ* are used like indeclinables, i.e., adverbs; see Perniola, *Pali Grammar*, § 227. Adjectives in *-aṃ* are sometimes used as adverbs and apparently this is also done with present participles like *jānaṃ* (and *ajānaṃ*) as present participles are adjectives.

eva: although, even; emphatic particle.

ahaṃ: I; 1 sg. pers. pron.

The Ce Vibh. reading *ajānamevāhaṃ āvuso* is supported by the Padabhājana: “*Nāhaṃ ete dhamme jānāmi ...*” and also by the Prātimokṣasūtras of other schools: Mā-L: “... *ajānann evāhaṃ āyuṣmanto ...*”; BV 80, PrMoMā-L p.7. Mū: “... *ajānanty evāhaṃ āyuṣmanto ...*,” LC 2, and: “... *vadde-jānannevāhaṃ āyuṣmanto ...*”; PrMoMū p.15.

āvuso: friend(s); address to fellow bhikkhus, junior or equal, see note on *āvuso* and *āyasmanto* in the Nid. Can be pl. or sg. Contracted colloquial form of Skt *āyusmanto* = Pāli *āyasmanto*, with *y > v* alternation, cf. Sekh 60: *āyudha/āvudha*.

avacaṃ: I said; 1 sg. aor. of *vadati*; see above. **jānāmi:** see above.

apassaṃ: not seeing; neg. pref. *a-* + pres.p. of *passati*: see above. **passāmi:** see above.

tucchaṃ: vainly, empty; adverb. Here the adjective *tuccha* is used as an adverb of manner in acc. nt. sg.

musā: falsely; adv.; cf. Nid.

vilapin-ti = a junction of *vilapiṃ* and *ti* through dentalisation of *ṃ*.

vilapiṃ: I bluffed, boasted, prattled, babbled; 1 sg. aor. of *vilapati* (*vi* + *√lap* + *a*) + **ti:** quotation mark; see above Nid. Norman, TP 10, translates *vilapiṃ* as “spoke” in the same sense as *lapati*. However, *lapati* can have the sense of boasting, see *kuhana* & *lapana* as forms of *micchājīva*, M III 75; cf. A III 430. BHSGD II 461: “*lapana*... boasting (of one’s own religious qualities to extract gifts from patrons);...” Other contexts in Pāli show that *vilapati* does not mean speaking, but has the sense of either wailing or moaning, e.g. Th 705, Thig 446, or more rarely: empty speech, boasting, bluffing; e.g. M I 234: “*Vilāpaṃ vilapitaṃ maññe.*” (Ñāṇamoli and Bodhi, 1995: “it was mere prattle”), S IV 344, 348: “... *te tucchaṃ musā vilapanti ...*”

MW 984 gives *vilapati* in the sense of wailing, chatter, and talking variously, idly, wildly, and talking much.

tucchaṃ musā vilapinti: *Vinaya Texts*: telling a fruitless falsehood, Ñm: what I said was vain and false, Norman: I spoke falsely, lying, Bodhi (Bodhi 2000, p.1362 translation of S IV 344.): “those who prattle empty falsehood.”

aññatra: except, unless, apart from, beside; preposition that takes an ablative of distance/ins. of dissociation; see Syntax § 82a & 130c, IP p.91. IP p.46 & 91 notes that *aññatra* with this ablative in *-ā* is sometimes regarded as an instrumental in *-ā*. The instrumental or ablative with *aññatra* denotes the limits of exclusion, the thing set aside, or kept off in reckoning; see Syntax 82 a and 130c. Thus it is not proper to render *aññatra* as “except through” or “by” as if it were an instrumental of means or an ablative of cause. Cf. NP 2, 6, Pāc 47 & 48.

adhimānā: in overestimation, from overestimation; abl. sg. m., pref. **adhi:** excess + **māna:** conceit, pride.

[Pārājika conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhā kho āyasmanto cattāro pārājikā dhammā. Yesaṃ bhikkhu aññataraṃ vā aññataraṃ vā āpajjitvā na labhati bhikkhūhi saddhiṃ saṃvāsaṃ. Yathā pure, tathā pacchā, pārājiko hoti, asaṃvāso.

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci’ttha parisuddhā?

Dutiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci’ttha parisuddhā?

Tatīyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Parisuddh'etthāyasmanto, tasmā tuṇhī, evam-etam dhārayāmi.¹⁵⁵

*Pārājik'uddeso niṭṭhito.*¹⁵⁶

Venerables, the four cases involving disqualification have been recited, a bhikkhu who has committed any one of them, does not obtain the communion with bhikkhus. As [he was] before, so [he is] after [committing it]: he is one who is disqualified, not in communion.

Concerning that I ask the Venerables: [Are you] pure in this?

A second time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

A third time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

The venerables are pure in this, therefore there is silence, so do I bear this [in mind].

The recitation of the [cases involving] disqualification is finished

udditṭhā: recited; p.p. of *uddisati*; see above Nid. **kho**: indeed (no need to translate); emph. particle.

āyasmanto: Venerables; voc. pl. m. See Nid.

cattāro pārājikā dhammā: four cases involving disqualification; see Pār intro.

yesam: of them, lit. of which; gen. pl. m. of rel. pron. *ya*. **bhikkhu**: bhikkhu; nom. sg. m.

aññataram: one, a certain one; pron. adj. qualifying an unexpressed *pārājikaṃ*; pron. *añña*: other + comparative suf. *-tara*.

vā: or; disjunctive indecl. particle; **vā ... vā ...**: either... or...

aññataram vā aññataram vā: any one, one or another, any one. Cf. Sd 2.

āpajjitvā: has committed; abs. of *āpajjati*; see above Nid. **na**: not; neg. particle.

labhati: he obtains, gets; 3 sg. pres. ind. (*√labh + a*).

bhikkhūhi: with bhikkhus; ins. pl. of *bhikkhu*.

saddhim: together; (here:) postposition taking ins.

saṃvāsam: communion; acc. sg. m.; see Pār 1.

yathā: as; adv. of manner correlative to *tathā*; see above Nid. **tathā**: so; adv. of manner correlative to *yathā*. Dem. pron. *ta(d)* + suf. of manner *-thā*.

pure: before, previously; indecl. **pacchā**: after, later, afterwards; indecl. From Vedic abl. sg. *paścāt*; Syntax § 2 & 134 b.

yathā pure, tathā pacchā: as before, so after; according to the Sp this idiom means that as the disqualified bhikkhu was before he was in communion with the bhikkhu-community—a layman—so he is after having committed one of these offences involving disqualification. See BD I 190 n. 3.

tatth'... dhārayāmi: see Sd intro. + Nid. concl.

pārājik'uddeso: recitation of the disqualification (cases); nom. sg. m. See Pār intro. This is the second of the four ways of reciting the Pātimokkha in brief; see "Recitation of the Pātimokkha." section in the Introduction. (V.l.: *pārājik'uddeso dutiyo*: the recitation of the [cases involving] deprivation is the second one).

niṭṭhito: finished; see Nid. concl.

¹⁵⁵ Dm, UP, Ra, Um: *dhārayāmi ti*. See Nidāna conclusion.

¹⁵⁶ Dm: *Pārājikaṃ niṭṭhitam*. Nid Ce, UP, Um, Mi Se: *Pārājikuddeso dutiyo*.

[Saṅkhitta-pātimokkh'uddesa]

[Uddiṭṭhaṃ kho āyasmanto nidānaṃ, uddiṭṭhā cattāro pārājikā dhammā. Sutā kho panāyasmantehi terasa saṅghādisesā dhammā, dve aniyatā dhammā, tiṃsa nissaggiyā pācittiya dhammā, dvenavuti pācittiya dhammā, cattāro pāṭidesaniyā dhammā, pañcasattati sekhiyā dhammā, satta adhikaraṇasamathā dhammā, ettakaṃ tassa bhagavato suttāgataṃ suttapariyāpannaṃ anvaddhamāsaṃ uddesaṃ āgacchati, tattha sabbeheva samaggehi sammodamānehi avivadamānehi sikkhitabban-ti.]¹⁵⁷

[The Pātimokkha Recitation in Brief]

[Venerables, the introduction has been recited, the four cases involving disqualification have been recited. Heard, by the venerables, have been the thirteen cases [involving] the community in the beginning and in the rest have been recited, the two indefinite cases, the thirty cases involving expiation with forfeiture, the ninety-two cases involving expiation, the four cases that are to be acknowledged, the cases related to the training, the seven cases that are settlements of legal issues.

This much (training-rule) of the Fortunate One has been handed down in the Sutta, has been included in the Sutta, comes up for recitation half-monthly. By all who are united, who are on friendly terms, who are not disputing, is to trained herein.]

[For the analysis of the words found elsewhere in this work, please see the Nidāna, the relevant rule sections, and the conclusion of the Pātimokkha.

sutā: heard; p.p. of *suṇāti* (√su + ṇā); see Nidāna.

panāyasmantehi = junction of *pana* + *āyasmantehi* by way of contraction; see Nidāna.

āyasmantehi: by the venerables; ins. pl. m. of *āyasmā*; see Nidāna.]

[Saṅghādises'uddeso¹⁵⁸]

Ime kho panāyasmanto terasa saṅghādisesā dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti.

The recitation (of the cases concerning) the community in the beginning and the rest (of the procedure.)

Venerables, these thirteen cases [concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure] come up for recitation.

saṅghādises'uddeso: the recitation [of the cases concerning] the community in the beginning and the rest [of the procedure]; nom. sg. m. Probably an appositive kammadhāraya but here rendered as a genitive tappurisa; see *nidān'uddesa* in Nid intro. Cf. Sd conclusion.

ime: these; see Pār intro. kho panāyasmanto: Venerables; see above Nid.

terasa: thirteen; numeral adj.; = *ti*: three + *dasa*, -d- > -r- as in *pañṇarasa*; see above Nid.

saṅghādisesā: [concerning] the community in the beginning and the rest [of the procedure], (of which) the

¹⁵⁷ D, BhPm 1 & 2, Um, and UP give in brackets this conclusion of the Pātimokkha recital in brief (= *saṅkhitta-pātimokkh'uddesa*) which can be recited in times of an emergency. It is found in the Sp commentary (Sp V 1057) on Mv II 15,1/Vin I 112.

¹⁵⁸ = Be & Mi Se. Not in other texts. (D: *saṅghādisesā*, Um has *saṅghādisesā* in brackets.) BhPm 1, C, G, V, W: *saṅgh-* throughout the text.

start and the rest is (to be done) with/by the community, involving the community initially (and) subsequently, H: (BD I 196:) requiring a formal meeting of the Order, H: (BD I 197:) an offence which in the earlier as well as the later stages (requires) a formal meeting of the order, Ñm: entails initial and subsequent meeting of the Community, Norman: entailing a formal meeting of the saṅgha, Hinüber: the rest (*sesa*, i.e., the duration of the suspension) is with the Saṅgha (i.e., determined by the Saṅgha); adj. qualifying *dhammā*.

Probably the compound *saṅghādisesa* is an inverted locative tappurisa compound containing a dvanda cpd (*saṅgho ādimhi ca sese*: the community in the start and the rest), which is used as a bahubbīhi compound qualifying *dhammā*. See the discussion of the meaning of this term in “On the term *saṅghādisesa*” in the Introduction.

dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti: cases come up for recitation; see Pār intro.

[Sd 1: Sikkavissatṭhisikkhāpadaṃ]

Saṁcetanikā sikkavissatṭhi,¹⁵⁹ **aññatra supinantā, saṅghādiseso**.

[The training precept on emission of semen]

The intentional emission of semen, except in a dream: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

saṁcetanikā: Ñm & H: intentional; adjective qualifying *sikkavissatṭhi*. pref. *saṃ*: with + *cetanā*: will, active thought; fr. *cinteti* (√*cint* + *e*): thinks + possessive suf. *-ika*.

sikkavissatṭhi: Ñm & H: emission of semen; nom. sg. f. Gen. tapp. cpd = **sukka**: semen, lit. “white stuff” + **vissatṭhi**: emission; action-noun derived from the p.p. of *visajjati/vissajjati* or *vissajati/vissajjati* (*vi* + √*saj*(*j*) (= Skt √*srj*) + *a*): discharges, cf. NP 14.

It is not clear why in this rule the nominative is used and not the locative as in Pācittiya 1 etc, or vice versa. The Mā-L version of this rule uses the locative.

When in Pāli it is asserted that one thing is something two nouns may be juxtaposed and there may be no verb in the sentence; see IP p.9 & 61. When translating into English “to be” should be added.

PED gives both *vissatṭhi* and *visatṭhi* forms under *visatṭhi*. The *visatṭhi* reading appears to be the correct one. Probably, the *-ss-* form arose under the influence of *paṭinissajeyya* where it is appropriate due to the assimilation of *nis* + *saj*, here however, there is no assimilation and there is no reason for a double *-ss-*. See the note on *paṭinissajeyya*; Sd 10 and *visajjetvā* at NP 14.

Mā-L: *saṁcetanikāye śukrasya viśrṣṭhiye* (“In the deliberate emission of semen ...”), PrMoMā-L p.8. Mū: *saṁcintya śukravissatṭhi*; PrMoMū p.16. Sa: *saṁcintya śukravissargo*; PrMoSa p.166.

aññatra: except, other than; see Pār 4.

supinantā: Ñm: in a dream, H: during a dream; abl. sg. m. = **supina**: a dream + **anta**: in, within, inside, near; noun, having a similar meaning as in *antevāsin*, or could be used pleonastically here; see PED & DP. Cf. Vin I 39: *supinantena*: by one in a dream, and Sn 293: “Yo nesaṃ paramo āsi ... sa vā pi methunaṃ dhammaṃ supinantena pi nāgama.”: “He who was the supreme one of them ... did not come to a sexual act even in a dream.” See also the use of *supinantena* in Vin III 162 & Vin I 295 where it is also said that an arahant can not engage in sex or release semen in dreams.

saṅghādiseso: (a case concerning) the community in the beginning and in the rest; adj. qualifying an unexpressed *dhammo*; i.e., “*ayaṃ dhammo saṅghādiseso*” like “*ayaṃ dhammo aniyato*” in Aniyata 1.

Since in the introductions and conclusions to the rule-sections of the Pātimokkha all terms used for offences (*pārājika*, *saṅghādisesa*, etc.) are used as adjectives qualifying *dhamma*, it can be assumed that the terms, including *saṅghādisesa*, are used as adjectives rather than nouns. Both the nouns *sesa* and *avasesa* are neuter in gender and if *saṅghādisesa* would be a noun here the nominative neuter *saṅghādisesaṃ* would be expected.

¹⁵⁹ C, G, V, W, Dm, Um, UP, Bh Pm 1 & 2, Pg, Ra, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee: *visatṭhi*. Mm & Mi Se: *vissatṭhi*.

Cf. the rule-formulation of the Bhikkhunī Sd rules: “*Ayaṃ bhikkhunī paṭhamāpattikaṃ dhammaṃ āpannā nissāraṇīyaṃ saṅghādisesaṃ*” where *saṅghādisesaṃ* qualifies the accusative *dhammaṃ*.

[Sd 2: Kāyasamsaggasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu otiṇṇo vipariṇatena cittena mātugāmena saddhiṃ kāyasamsaggaṃ samāpajjeyya, hatthagāhaṃ¹⁶⁰ vā veṇigāhaṃ¹⁶¹ vā aññatarassa vā aññatarassa vā aṅgassa parāmasanaṃ, saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on physical contact]

If any bhikkhu, under the influence of an altered mind, should engage in [intimate] physical contact together with a woman [such as]: the holding of a hand, or holding a braid [of hair], or caressing any limb: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

yo pana bhikkhu: see above Nid.

otiṇṇo vipariṇatena cittena: under the influence of an altered mind, Ñm: assailed by thoughts misled (by lust), H: affected by desire, with perverted heart.

The phrase expresses one idea as in the stock-phrase “... *otiṇṇo’ mhi jātiyā ... dukkh’ otiṇṇo ...*”: “I am affected by birth ... affected by suffering ...” (e.g. M I 192) in which *otiṇṇo* takes the instrumental too.

otiṇṇo: affected, under the influence of, overwhelmed, smitten, infatuated; (pass.) p.p. (used as adj. qualifying *bhikkhu*) of *otarati* (*ava* + √*tar* + *a*): to descend, go down into, penetrate (into water etc.). Vibh: “... *sāratto, apekkhavā, paṭibaddhacitto*.”: “... infatuated, full of desire, bound-mind”; prob. in a similar sense as “*tañhāsallena otiṇṇo*” of S I 40 & Th 448 (cf. Sn 939), i.e., being affected (“smitten”) by Māra’s arrow.¹⁶² Cf. A IV 290: “... *otiṇṇo sātārūpena ...*”

Sp 532: “*Otiṇṇo ti yakkhādīhi viya sattā anto uppajjantena rāgena otiṇṇo, kūpādīni viya sattā asamavekkhitvā, rañjanīye ṭhāne rañjanto sayamaṃ vā rāgo otiṇṇo. Rāgasamangiss’ ev’ etaṃ adhivacanaṃ*.”: “Under the influence of: under the influence of lust arisen inside beings like spirits etc., (or) like one who not having considered (subcommentary: considered as *asubha* etc.) the interiors etc. (*kūpādīni*) of beings (? Or: he has not considered the beings like the ones in the internal organs etc. [i.e., worms]) he lusts in lustful states and is under the influence of his own lust. This is a designation of one endowed with lust.”

Cf. A III 67 & 259: “*Tesaṃ abhiñhaṃ dassanā saṃsaggo ahosi, saṃsagge sati viissāso ahosi, viissāse sati otāro ahosi; te otiṇṇacittā ... methunaṃ dhammaṃ paṭiseviṃsu*.”: “Due to the frequent seeing of each other there was contact (*saṃsagga*, also: “association,” “company,” see Bhī Sd 12.), there being contact there was intimacy (*viissāsa*, also: “trust”), there being intimacy there was affection (*otāra*), they with affected minds ... indulged in the sexual act.” Elsewhere—eg. S IV 178—*otāra* means the influence/access/lit. “descent” that Māra finds in unmindful bhikkhus.

In the Bhī Pār 5 & 8, and Sd 5 *avassuta*: “overflowing (with desire)” is used instead of “*otiṇṇo vipariṇatena cittena*.”

vipariṇatena: altered, perverted; p.p. of *vipariṇāmeti* (*vi* + *pari* + √*nam* + *e*): alters, changes (for the worse; cf. M I 123, D II 266), adjective qualifying *cittena*.

cittena: by a mind, by thought; ins. sg. m. of *citta*; cf. Pār 3. = Instrumental of attendant circumstances; see Syntax § 65.

mātugāmena: with a woman; ins. sg. m. **gen. tapp. cpd.**; originally “women” in general, i.e., “woman-kind,” but here used in a particular sense. = **mātu:** mother + **-gāma:** -collection, -kind, -group; postposition. *Gāma* is here in the original Vedic sense of “collection” and “heap” rather than in the normal sense of “village” as in

¹⁶⁰ Dm: *hatthagāhaṃ*.

¹⁶¹ Dm: *veṇigāhaṃ*. (Pg: *veṇigāhaṃ*)

¹⁶² In the Vedic literature Kāma (Cupid) is found instead of the Buddhist Māra. *Artharvaveda* ii. 25, 2 (quoted in Macdonell, A., 1899, p.166): “Tis winged with longing, barbed with love, its shaft is formed of fixed desire: With this his arrow leveled well shall Kāma pierce thee to the heart.”

Pār 2. Cf. *bhūtagāma*: “being-kind” at Pāc 11, on which Sp 761 comments: “*Gāmo ti rāsi ...*”: “A *gāma* is a heap/quantity/collection.”

saddhim: together with; (here:) postposition taking ins.

kāyasamsaggaṃ: (intimate) physical contact, contact with the body, H: physical contact, Ñm: bodily contact; acc. sg. m.; genitive tappurisa cpd. “contact of the body” or instrumental tappurisa cpd.: “contact with the body.” = **kāya**: body + **samsagga**: contact, connection, company, association; an action-noun from *samsajati* (*saṃ* + √*saj* + *a*). Incidental physical contact by itself is not an offence, rather, it needs to be deliberate intimate and sexually oriented physical contact. The Padabhājana explains it as *ajjhācāra*: “indecenty” or “obscenity.”

samāpajjeyya: should enter into, engage in; 3 sg. opt. of *samāpajjati* (*saṃ* + *ā* + √*pad* + *ya*).

hatthagāhaṃ: the holding of a hand; acc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **hattha**: hand + **gāhaṃ**: holding, seizing; action-noun from *gaṇhāti* (√*gah* + *ṇha*): grasps, grips, seizes. = Dependent word only appearing at the end of (usually genitive) tappurisa cpds; see IP p.92. For other dependent words see *veyyāvaccakara* (NP 10), *tantavāya* NP 26), *piṇḍapāta* (NP 27), *vinayadhara* (Pāc 71).

V.l. *hatthagāhaṃ*. The double consonant form might have arisen under the influence of the double consonant in the Sanskrit root √*grah*, being a regressive assimilation. The single consonant form might be a more Prākritic form, or a form which arose under the influence of the parallel form √*grh*. See note on *magga(p)paṭipanna* in NP 16.

vā ... vā ...: either ... or ..., disjunctive particles.

veṇigāhaṃ: the holding of a braid; acc. sg. m. = **veṇi**: a braid (of hair) + **gāha**: see above.

aññatarassa ... aññatarassa ...: any, one or the other; pronominal adjective qualifying *aṅgassa*. See Pārājika concl.

aṅgassa: limb, member; gen. sg. nt. Lit.: “of a limb,” but this does not fit in English.

parāmasanaṃ: caressing, stroking, fondling, rubbing up; action-noun fr. *parāmasati*: rubs over, strokes over, holds onto; = pref. *para*: over + *ā*: at, closely + √*mas*: touches; thus literally it means: “touches closely over”; cf. BD I 203 n. 6.

saṅghādiseso: see Sd 1.

[Sd 3: Duṭṭhullavācāsikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu otiṇṇo vipariṇatena cittaṇa mātuḡāmaṃ duṭṭhullāhi vācāhi obhāseyya, yathātaṃ¹⁶³ yuvā yuvatiṃ, methunūpasamhitāhi,¹⁶⁴ saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on depraved words]

If any bhikkhu, under the influence of an altered mind, should speak suggestively with depraved words to a woman, like a young man to a young woman, [with words] concerned with sexual intercourse: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

yo pana bhikkhu otiṇṇo vipariṇatena cittaṇa: see Sd 2.

mātuḡāmaṃ: a woman; acc. sg. m.; cf. Sd 2.

duṭṭhullāhi: depraved, wicked, gross, defiling, vulgar, obscene, Ñm & H: lewd; adj. der. fr. *dussati* (√*dus* + *ya*): corrupts, spoils; = p.p. *duṭṭhu*, cf. Sd 8 + pejorative suf. *-alla(ka)*. Cf. *dussaka* at Sd 13. *Duṭṭhulla* can not be simply translated with “lewd” since this term implies sexual crudeness. The *duṭṭhullā āpatti*, see Pāc 64, encompass all the Pār and Sd offences, and most of these have nothing to do with sexuality. Further, this Sd rule implies that there are *duṭṭhullā vācā* that are not related to sexuality (*methunūpasamhitā*). There is no other context where *duṭṭhulla* definitely means “lewd,” rather it seems to have a general sense of “depravedness” or “wickedness.”

¹⁶³ All printed eds, except Mi Se, Um, Ra: *yathā taṃ*.

¹⁶⁴ Dm, Vibh Ee: *-upa-*. Mi, Mm Se, V: *-sañhitāhi*, all other eds. *-saṃhitāhi*.

vācāhi: with words; ins. plur. f. of *vācā*: speech.

obhāseyya: should speak suggestively, should suggest, ... hint, ... propose, ... entice, H: ... offend, Ñm: ... address; 3 sg. opt. of *obhāsati* (*ava* + √*bhās* + *a*; a rare word only found in the few Vinaya occurrences given below. PED and Horner take this present occurrence to mean: “to offend, abuse,” the Pāli form of Skt *avabhāṣati* (*ava* + √*bhāṣ* + *a*). See PrMoSa p.166, 182: *ābhāṣeta*. PED gives one other occurrence in Pāli of *obhāsati* in this sense as support, but this occurrence does not really support this sense. Vin II 262: “... *bhikkhū kāyaṃ vivaritoṃ bhikkhunīnaṃ dassenti ... bhikkhuniyo obhāsanti bhikkhunīhi saddhiṃ sampayojenti*: ‘Appeva nāma amhesu sārājjeyyun-ti’.”: “... the bhikkhus, having exposed their bodies, showed off to the bhikkhunīs, ... hinted to the bhikkhunīs, associated together with the bhikkhunīs (thinking): ‘May they be attracted to us!’.” (Sp: “... *asaddhammena obhāsenti*.”)

It would be strange that the bhikkhus would abuse the bhikkhunīs if they wanted to attract them.

See DP I 580 s.v. *obhāsati*: “speaks to suggestively or lewdly or offensively.” It notes that *obhāsa* is possibly related with *bhāsati*.

PED does not give *obhāsati* in the sense of hinting or suggesting, but CDPL 297–98 and BHSGD II 73 (*avabhāsa*) do so, quoting D II 103: “*Olārike obhāse kayiramāne, olārike nimitte kayiramāne ...*”: “Making a broad hint, ... a broad sign ...” and Vism I 23: “... *nimittakammaṃ ... obhāsakammaṃ ...*.” BHSGD II 73 gives Sanskrit examples.

The meaning of the other verb *obhāsati* is ‘shines forth’; it is from the Skt root √*bhās*: to shine; not √*bhaṣ*: to talk. It is well possible that there is a contamination of two Skt roots here in Pāli as with *dosa*, see Sd 9, and that *obhāsati* in the sense of “hints” is from the root √*bhās*. “Hints” or “suggests” fits the offence-examples in the Vibh in which indirect, but easily understandable, suggestions are given.

At Vin IV 20 a daughter in law sees Ven. Udāyī whispering to her mother in law and thinks: “*Kim nu kho so samaṇo sassuyā jāro udāhu obhāsati ti?*.”: “Is the recluse (my) mother in laws’ paramour or does he speak suggestively?.” Sp III 547 on Sd 3: “*Obhāseyyā ti avabhāseyya nānappakāraṇaṃ asaddhammavacanāṃ vadeyya. Yasmā pañ’evam obhāsantassa yo so obhāso nāma, so atthato ajjhācāro hoti rāgavasena abhibhavitoṃ saññāmaṇavaṇṇaṃ ācāro, tasmā tam-atthaṃ dassento* (Vibh.:) *obhāseyyā ti ajjhācāro vuccatī ti āha*.” Cf. Aniy 2: *obhāsituṃ*.

yathātaṃ: like, as ... (would suggest) it; adv. = **yathā**: as; see above Nid. concl. + **taṃ**: that; dem. pron.

Yathātaṃ is a fairly common idiomatic expression in the Canon. It is found in subordinate clauses where verbs are lacking, but nevertheless are implied. A verb equalling the one in the main-clause is to be supplied in the translation of the subordinate clause “as ... (verb) it” or in more general sense: “as ... (would do) it.” E.g. M I 249: “*Okappaniyaṃ etaṃ bhoṭa Gotamassa yathātaṃ arahato ...*”: “This is to be believed of the Venerable Gotama, as it (is to be believed) of an accomplished one ...”

Yathātaṃ probably is one compound—an abhayibhāva cpd like *yathābhūtaṃ*. The commentaries, e.g. M-a to M I 150, take *taṃ* to be a mere particle (*nipātamatta*); see Syntax § 52b.

yuvā: young man; nom. sg. m. of **yuvan**.

yuvatīm: young woman; acc. sg. f. of **yuvatī**.

methunūpasamhitāhi: concerned with sexual intercourse; ins. pl. f. adjective qualifying *vācāhi*; Instrumental tapp. cpd. used as bahubbīhi cpd. = **methuna**: sexual intercourse; cf. Pār 1 + **upasaṃhita**: concerned with, connected with; p.p. of *upasandhāraṭi* (*upa* + *saṃ* + √*dhār* + *a*).

Here and in the next rule the adj. **methunūpasamhita** comes last in the sentence and not directly after the word it qualifies. This is for extra emphasis.

Mi & Mm Se: *-sañhitāhi*. For the anussāra *ṃ* changing to *ñ* before *h*; see PG § 74.3.

[Sd 4: Attakāmapāricariyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu otiṇṇo vipariṇatena cittaṇa mātuḡāmassa santike attakāmapāricariyāya vaṇṇaṃ bhāseyya: “Etad-aggaṃ bhagini pāricariyānaṃ yā mādisaṃ silavantaṃ kalyāṇadhammaṃ brahmacāriṃ

etena dhammena paricareyyā¹⁶⁵ ti,” methunūpasamhitena,¹⁶⁶ saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on (ministering) to himself with love]

If any bhikkhu, under the influence of an altered mind, [and] in the presence of a woman, should speak praise about the ministering to himself with sex: “Sister, this is the best of ministerings: she who would minister to a virtuous, good natured celibate like me with this act!,” [which is something] connected with sexual intercourse: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

Yo pana bhikkhu otiṇṇo vipariṇatena cittaṇa: see Sd 2.

mātugāmassa: of a woman; gen. sg. m.

santike: in the presence, ... vicinity; loc. sg. nt. = *sa*: with; pref. (PED states that *sa* here is the base of *so*, the nom. sg. of the dem. pron.: that, he, she.) + *antika*: near; nt. + conn. suf. *-ika*.

attakāmapāricariyāya: about ministering to himself with sex, H: ministering with sense-pleasures for self, Ñm: ministering to his own sensuality; loc. sg. f. Dative tapp. cpd. containing an ins. tapp. cpd.: *kāmapāricariya*: ministering with sex.

Vibh: “Attakāman-ti: attano kāmaṃ attano hetuṃ attano adhippāyaṃ attano pāricariyaṃ.”: “Sex for oneself, the cause for oneself, the sake for oneself, the ministering for oneself.”

Sp: “... methunadhammasaṅkhātēna kāmena pāricariyā: kāmapāricariyā; attano atthāya kāmapāricariyā attakāmapāricariyā.”: “The ministering with *kāma* reckoned as sexual intercourse: ministering with *kāma*; the ministering with *kāma* for the purpose of oneself is ministering to oneself with sex.”

In the latter part of the sentence in which this idiom indicates that is correct, i.e., the ministering with sex “to a virtuous liver of the holy life” in the latter part is the same as the ministering with love to himself in the first part.

In S I 75/ Ud 47 (Ud-a: “attano sukhakāmo”), A I 232 (AA: “attano hitakāmā”), and A II 21/III 91, *attakāma* means “one who loves/cares for himself,” this meaning is also given in MW 135. In the Upaniṣads, Br̥ Ār II 4, *atmakāma* means “one who desires/wishes/loves the supreme self,” i.e., Brahma. At M I 205 & III 155 one finds “... attakāmarūpā viharanti”: “... they dwell like desiring their selves.” In the Buddha’s time, just like nowadays, all religious seekers were seen to be desiring “Self” by most people and Buddhist monks were no exception.

There seems to be a wordplay with *attakāma* here, i.e., desiring self/sex to himself. Wordplays are common in Pāli. Cf. *atthakāma*: one who desires good.

= **atta**: himself. *Atta* is here used as a reflexive pronoun: “himself” or “oneself,” rather than in the Brahmanical sense of “eternal soul,” although there seems to be a wordplay here; see PG § 112,2 & IP p.185f. + **kāma**: sex, love; usually translated as “sense-pleasure” but here it has the erotic meaning like in D II 265–66 + **pāricariyā**: ministration, ministering, serving; fr. *paricarati* (*pari* + √*car* + *a*): attends to, ministers to, serves, often with sexual implications; e.g. S I 124.

vaṇṇaṃ: praise, glory; acc. sg. m. cf. Pār 3.

bhāseyya: should speak; 3 sg. opt. of *bhāsati* (√*bhās* + *a*).

etad-aggam: this (is) the very best, the best of this (type of); acc. sg. nt. adv.: With superlatives etc, a genitive of the thing or person of whom the statement is made is used: i.e., *paricariyānaṃ*; see DP 543 and Syntax § 144 g.

A similar view by women fancying a Jain bhikkhu is quoted in the Jain *Ācārāṅgasūtra* II 2,2,12 (translated by H. Jacobi in *Jaina Sūtras* I 124): “These reverend sramanas &c have ceased from sexual intercourse ...; whatever woman indulges with them in sexual intercourse will have a strong, ... , victorious son of heavenly

¹⁶⁵ Mm Se: *pāri*-.

¹⁶⁶ Dm,Vibh Ee: *methunupasaṃhitena*. Mi & Mm Se, V: *-ūpasaṃhitena*.

beauty.” There is still the belief in India that a barren woman can get pregnant (from their husband) after having kissed (in a non-sexual way) the private parts of a sādhu.

= **etad**: this; nom. sg. nt., referring to what follows, i.e., *paricāriyānaṃ*. *Etad* is the junction form of the dem. pron. *eta* in which the Skt -d- is restored to avoid hiatus; cf. *yad-idaṃ* in Sd 12, *kocid-eva* in NP 29, and *etad-eva* in Pāc 16; see PG § 72, 1 & 105.

this + **aggam**: the highest, the peak; nom. sg. nt.

In Pāli when it is simply asserted that a thing is something (as epithet or attribute) two nouns (incl. a pron. or adj.) may be juxtaposed; see Warder p.9.

bhagini: sister; voc. sg. f. Used as a polite way of addressing a woman, including a bhikkhunī, by a bhikkhu. Lit.: “fortunate one” (in so far that she has a brother); see VINS II 93 and MW 744. = √*bhag(a)*: good fortune (Cf. *bhagavā* in the Nid.) + possessive suffix -*inī*.

pāricariyānaṃ: of ministerings; gen. pl. f.

yā: she who, which; nom. sg. f. of rel. pron. *ya*.

mādisaṃ: one like me; adj. = *maṃ*: I; acc. sg. m. of pron. *ma(d)* + √*dis*: to see.

sīlavantaṃ: endowed with virtue, virtuous; adj. = **sīla**: virtue + possessive suf. -**vant**.

kalyāṇadhammaṃ: good-natured; adj. = **kalyāṇa**: (morally) good + **dhamma**: (here) nature, character.

brahmacāriṃ: celibate, practitioner of celibacy, observer of the holy life, Ñm: observer of the Good Life, H: leading the Brahma-life, IP p.128: a celibate, one who lives the supreme (life), Norman: liver of the holy life; acc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. (= Ñm) or acc. tapp. cpd. (= Horner) It could also be a kammadhāraya cpd, “one who lives divine”. I could only trace one commentarial explanation which explains the meaning of the closely related compound *brahmacariya*: *seṭṭhacariya*: “best life,” which suggests a kammadhāraya cpd. (Vin-a II 483: *Parisuddhaṃ brahmacariyaṃ carantanti nirupakkilesaṃ seṭṭhacariyaṃ carantaṃ*.) Cf *brahmvihāra*, “divine abiding” (Karaniyametta Sutta: “*brahmaṃ etaṃ vihāraṃ*”)

Padabhājana: “*Brahmacārin-ti: methunadhammā paṭivirataṃ*”: “*Brahmacāriṃ*: one who abstains from the sexual act.” See note to *brahmacariya* at Sd 8.

A synonym for a celibate. = **brahma**: divine, supreme + **-cārin**: walking, behaving, living; possessive adj. only in cpds., fr. *carati*: moves, lives.

The word *brahmacārin* in Sanskrit has a double meaning. It can mean an unmarried celibate Brahmin student who studies the Vedas and, more importantly, it can also mean someone who observes celibacy; see MW 738.

Although in our rule the bhikkhu who would have the woman ministering him with the best of ministerings would not be an observer of celibacy anymore, it seems that he uses the pretext of celibacy to attract the woman who might believe that she can get pregnant in this way; see *etad-aggam* above.

etena: by this; ins. sg. m. of dem. pron. *eta(d)*.

dhammena: with an act, practice; ins. sg. m. The word *dhamma* has the sense of “act” here, see Pār 1: *methuna dhamma*.

paricareyyā: = **paricareyya** with lengthening of final -a before *ti*: should minister; 3 sg. opt. of *paricarati*; see above. (V.l. *pāri-* is a corruption as *guṇa* strengthening does not occur in verbs, but only in nouns; cf. *pārisuddhi* / *parisujjhati*.)

ti: end quote; see above Nid.

methunūpasamhitena: (which is) connected with sexual intercourse; adjective qualifying *dhammena*; see Sd 3.

[Sd 5: Sañcarittasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu sañcarittaṃ samāpajjeyya, itthiyā vā purisamatim purisassa vā itthimatim,¹⁶⁷ jāyattane vā jārattane vā, antamaso taṃkhaṇikāya¹⁶⁸ pi, saṅghādiseso.

¹⁶⁷ Mi & Mm Se: *itthī-*.

¹⁶⁸ Be & Se Vibh: *taṃkhaṇikāya*.

[The training precept on mediating]

If any bhikkhu should engage in mediating a man's intention to a woman, or a woman's intention to a man, for being a wife or for being a mistress, even for being one on [just] that occasion: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

yo pana bhikkhu: see above.

sañcarittam: mediating, uniting, H: act as go-between, Ñm: engage to act as go-between; acc. sg. nt. fr. *sañcarati* (*saṃ + car + a*): moves between, ... together, unites.

samāpajjeyya: should engage in; see Sd 2.

itthiyā: to a woman; dat. sg. f. of *itthī*.

vā ... vā ...: or ... or ...; disjunctive indecl. parts.

purisamatim: a man's intention; acc. sg. f. = **purisa:** man + **mati:** thought, idea, intention.

purisassa: to a man; dat. sg. m.

itthimatim: a woman's intention; acc. sg. f.

jāyattane: for being a wife, for the state of wife, Ñm: about marriage, H: as a wife; loc. sg. nt. The locative is the so called dative-like locative; see Syntax § 170d. = **jāya:** wife + abstract suf. **-ttana**.

jārattane: for being a mistress, Ñm: about concubinage, H: as a mistress; loc. sg. f. **jārā:** mistress, paramour.

antamaso: even so much as, just; indecl; cf. Pār 1.

taṃkhaṇikāya: for being one (i.e., a mistress) on (just) that occasion, Ñm: for a temporary (arrangement), H: as a temporary wife; loc. sg. f. kammadhāraya cpd. = **taṃ:** that; dem. pron. nt. + **khaṇikāya:** for a moment; loc. sg. nt. = **khaṇa:** moment + conn. suf. **-ika**. Vibh: “*Antamaso taṃkhaṇikāya pī ti muhuttikā bhavissasi*.”: “...: ‘You will be a momentary (wife).’” A *muhuttikā* is one of the ten types of wives listed in the Vibh; see Vin III 139. Because the two preceding terms refer to the female and also because the feminine locative form *khaṇikāya* is used here, it is clear that *taṃkhaṇikāya* refers to the female being a mistress for the man temporarily and not to the temporary arrangement between man and woman as suggested by Ñāṇamoli's translation.

pi: even; emph. particle; cf. Pār 1.

[Sd 6: Kuṭṭikārasikkhāpadaṃ]

Saññācīkāya¹⁶⁹ pana bhikkhunā kuṭṭim kārayamānena assāmikam attuddesaṃ, pamāṇikā karetabbā. Tatr'idaṃ¹⁷⁰ pamāṇam: dighaso dvādasā vidatthiyo sugatavidatthiyā tiriyaṃ satt'antarā. Bhikkhū abhinetaṃ vātthudesanāya. Tehi bhikkhūhi vatthum¹⁷¹ desetaṃ anārambhaṃ¹⁷² saparikkamanam¹⁷³. Sārambhe¹⁷⁴ ce bhikkhu vatthusmiṃ aparikkamanam¹⁷⁵ saññācīkāya¹⁷⁶ kuṭṭim kāreyya, bhikkhū vā anabhineyya vātthudesanāya, pamāṇam vā atikkāmeyya, saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on making a hut]

By a bhikkhu who is having a hut, which is without an owner, [and] is designated for himself, built by means of his own begged requisites, [that hut] is to be built according to the [proper] measure. This is the measure here: twelve spans of the sugata-span in length, [and] inside seven [spans] across. Bhikkhus are to be brought to [it] for appointing the site. By those bhikkhus a site is to be appointed which is not

¹⁶⁹ C, D, W: *saṃyācīkāya*.

¹⁷⁰ V: *tatr'idaṃ*.

¹⁷¹ Dm, Um: *vatthu* (So UP in Sd 7).

¹⁷² Vibh Be v.l.: *anārambhaṃ*. UP (sīhala) v.l. *anārambhaṃ*.

¹⁷³ Ra, Um, Pg: *-kamaṇam*.

¹⁷⁴ Vibh Be v.l.: *sārambhe*.

¹⁷⁵ Ra, Pg: *-kamaṇe*.

¹⁷⁶ C, D, W: *saṃyācīkāya*.

entailing harm [to creatures and which is] having a surrounding space. If a bhikkhu, having requested it himself, should have a hut built on a site entailing harm [to creatures], [and] not having a surrounding space, or if he should not bring bhikkhus to [it] for appointing the site, or if he should let [it] exceed the measure: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

saññācīkāya: through his own begged requisites (or: having requested (it) himself), Ñm: (with means got) by his own asking, H: begging in company, Norman: by his own begging; = **saṃ**: a shortened form of **sayam**: own, self + **yācīkāya**: ins. sg. f. Shortened form of the noun *yācitaka*: begged goods, or *t > k*; or **yācīkāya**: having requested; abs. of *yācati* ($\sqrt{yāc} + a$): begs, requests, pleads.

The word only occurs in the present context. As it is, it can't be an absolute, as then *yācāya* or *yācīvā* would be expected. It can't be a *ṇamul* absolute too as these end in *-akam*. In other contexts, see below, *saññācīka* is an adjective, but what would it then agree with here? It can't agree with *kuṭiṃ*. Note that the origin story has *saññācīkāyo kuṭiyo* and here it is an adjective. If *yācīkāya* is a corruption, then it is a very old one because the Mā-L version also reads *yācīkāya*. It can't agree with an implicit form of *upakaraṇa* as that is a masculine noun.

The Sa version's *yācitam* agrees with *kuṭiṃ* and is an adjective. The Mū version's *yācitā* is a pp used as noun in as an feminine singular instrumental of means, like *sahatthā* in NP 16, "through his own request."

What seems to make most sense is to take the Pāli *yācīkāya* too as an instrumental of means. Wijesekera observes in Syntax § 66g that the ins. of means is also used in a participial sense; i.e., as a parallel to the absolute in *-tvā*. This only happens with verbal nouns or nouns with a strong verbal accent.

PED takes it to be a collective abstract of the prefix *saṃ*: "together" + $\sqrt{yāc}$, which only occurs as an instrumental adverb: "by begging together." According to PED, *saññācīkāyo* in the origin-story, instead of *-kāya*, is a corruption. (Vin III 144: "... bhikkhū saññācīkāyo kuṭiyo kārāpentī ..." Sp: "... sayam yācīvā gahitūpakaraṇāyo.": ... having themselves begged accepted-support.") PED also disagrees with the Padabhājana. If the word is compared to the usage in Bhī NP 7 & 9: "... parikkhārena ... saññācīkena ...": "... with a requisite ... that has been asked for by herself..." then it seems that an absolute is intended, otherwise the wording would be similar to the Bhī NP rules.

Padabhājana: "*sayam yācīvā purisam ...*"

The Sp takes it to be both an ins. pl. f. adj. and an abs.: "*Saññācīkāya pana bhikkhunā ti ettha saññācīkā nāma sayam pavattitayācanā vuccati, tasmā saññācīkāya ti attano yācanāyā ti vuttam hoti, sayam yācitakehi upakaraṇehi ti attho. Yasmā pana sā sayam yācitakehi kayiramānā sayam yācīvā kayiramānā hoti, tasmā tam atthapariyāyam dassetum: sayam yācīvā purisam-pī ti evam-assa Padabhājanam vuttam.*"

"By a bhikkhu through his-own-begged goods: here so-called his-own-begged (supports) are so-called own-generated askings/beggings, therefore "through his-own begged (supports)" is called "by his-selves" begged (supports)," (thus) "through his-own begged services/support/ goods" is the meaning. But because those through-him-self-begged (supports) are being done having begged him-self, therefore the meaning-mode is shown: (Vibh): "him-self having begged for a man," thus for that the line-analysis has been said."

Sp thus takes *yācīka* as a shortened form of the adjective *yācitaka* (= p.p. *yācita* + diminutive suffix *-ka*): begged, borrowed; *yācitaka* as a neuter noun can also mean "borrowed goods," see PED.

Mā-L: *svayam yācīkāya bhikṣuṇā kuṭiṃ kārayamāṇena*; PrMoMā-L p.9. Mū: *svayam yācitā bhikṣuṇā kuṭiṃ kārayitvā*; PrMoMū p.17. Sa: *svayācitam bhikṣuṇā kuṭiṃ kārayatā*; PrMoSa p.168.

pana: but, again; indecl. particle, no need to translate.

bhikkhunā: by a bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

kuṭiṃ: hut; acc. sg. f.

kārayamāṇena: is having built, is causing to build/make; pr.p. of *kāreti*, the causative of *karoti*. The 7th verb-class conjugational sign is *-aya*, normally this is contracted to *-e-* in Pāli but in some present participles it is retained, see PG § 178,2 & 191. Cf. NP 1: *atikkāmayato*, NP 10: *codayamāno*. *Kāreti* is causative, cf. NP 11–15, but the Padabhājana states: "... karonto vā kārāpento vā." Sp notes that the "spirit-meaning" is "by causing to be built," but "building" is included in the Vibh through inference to show the "purpose-meaning." According

to PED *kāreti* means “to build”; cf. NP 3. In the origin story the causative in *-āpe* form of the verb is used: “... *saññācīkāyo kuṭiyo kārapenti*.”

assāmikaṃ: without owner, ... patron, Ñm: with no (lay-) owner, H: which has no benefactor; adjective qualifying *kuṭiṃ*. Bb cpd. = neg. pref. *a-* + **sāmī**: owner, master, patron (fr. Skt *svāmin*: owner = adj. *sva*: own + suf. *-min*.) + conn. suf. *-ika*. The Padabhāṣana on this word has been mistranslated by Horner in BD I 254: “*Na añño koci sāmiko hoti ...*” is not Horner’s, “... there is not anyone who is the owner...,” but, “... there is not someone else who is the owner ...” The *kuṭi* has no owner or patron who builds it and patronises it, as in the next rule. The Sp on the origin-story states: “*Assāmikāyo ti anissarāyo, kāretā dāyakena virahitāyo ti attho*”: “Without owner: without master, the builders are without benefactor is the meaning.” Cf. M I 286–87: “*sassāmika*”: “(women) with an owner” i.e., husband.

attuddesaṃ: which is designated for himself, indicating, Ñm: destined for himself, H: for his own advantage; adjective qualifying *kuṭiṃ*, *bahubbīhi* cpd. = **attā**: self + **uddesa**: designation, specification, appointing; fr. *uddisati*, cf. Nid. The origin story has the form *attuddesika*, and the corresponding Sa PrMo rule (see below) has *ātmoddesikaṃ*. *Attuddesika* would fit better with *assāmika*. Bhi NP 7 has “*aññuddisakena*,” which is the opposite of *attudesika*. Vibh: “*attano atthāya*.” Sp: “... *yassā attā uddeso sā attano atthāya hoti ...*” The Mā-L rule 6 has: *asvāmikāmātmoddesikā*; PrMoMā-L p.9. Sa: *sasvāmikāmātmoddesikaṃ*; PrMoSa p.169.

pamāṇikā: according to the measure; adjective qualifying an implicit *kuṭi* in nom. sg. f. = **pamāṇa**: measure, standard size + conn. suf. *-ika*. *Pamāṇika* is a rare word only found in a few places in the canon.

kāretabbā: is to be built; f.p.p. of *kāreti*; see above.

Pamāṇikā kāretabbā is an independent clause in which *pamāṇikā* is agreeing with an unexpressed *kuṭi*, not with *kuṭiṃ* in the preceding clause. If it would be qualifying *kuṭiṃ* in the preceding clause, it would be *pamāṇikaṃ*. The f.p.p. takes the same subject, *bhikkhunā*, as the preceding clause, but the object of a passive participle is nominative and thus can’t be the accusative *kuṭiṃ*. Cf. the similar construction in NP 13, where the f.p.p. has an explicit object: “*navamaṃ pana bhikkhunā santhataṃ kārayamānena dve bhāgā suddhakāḷakānaṃ elakalomānaṃ ādātabbā ...*” and Pāc 87: “*navamaṃ pana bhikkhunā mañcaṃ vā pīṭhaṃ vā kārayamānena atthaṅgulapādakaṃ kāretabbamaṃ ...*” Cf. Pāc 89 & 90 where the qualified word is also unexpressed. Kkh 40: “*Pamāṇikā kāretabbā ti pamāṇayuttā kāretabbā*.”

tatr’idaṃ: here this; see Pār intro. Junction of *tatra* + *idaṃ* in which the final *a* of *tatra* has been elided. = **tatra**: here; adv. of place; see Pār intro. + **idaṃ**: this; nom. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

pamāṇaṃ: measure, standard; nom. sg. nt.

dīghaso: in length; adv. **dīgha**: long; adj. + distributive/ablativ. suf. *-so*; see Syntax § 133c.

dvādasa: twelve; num. used as adjective qualifying *vidatthiyo* (see Warder 117.) = **dvā**: two, only used in num. cpds. + **dasa**: ten; num.

vidatthiyo: span; acc. pl. f. of *vidatthi* (= 12 finger-breadths; see Pāc 87.)

sugatavidatthiyā: according to the sugata-span, in accordance with the Well-gone One’s span, H: span of the accepted length, Ñm: sugata-span; ins. sg. f. Gen. tapp. cpd. = Ins. of relation; see Syntax § 70c, and *sugataṅgulena* at Pāc 87. = **sugata**: well-gone, the Well-gone One; an epithet of the Buddha; noun or adj. Kammadhāraya cpd; see IP p.188. It might also mean “king-size,” or “ample-size,” “accepted size” or “standard-size.”

Thanissaro, BMC 528–29 Appendix II, estimates that the *sugatavidatthi* is 25 cm. Cf. Pāc 92. + **vidatthiyā**; gen. sg. f. of *vidatthi*; see above.

tiriyamaṃ: across, width; indecl. fr. \sqrt{tar} ; cf. Pāc 28.

satt’antarā: seven inside. Junction of *satta* + *antara* through elision of the final *-a* of *satta* before the following closed syllable; see PG § 69. = **satta**: seven, num. + **antara**: inside; adverb (= ablative of *antara*).

bhikkhū: bhikkhus; nom. pl. m.

abhinetabbā: to be brought to, to be led to, Ñm: to be assembled; f.p.p. of *abhineti* (*abhi* + \sqrt{ni} + *a*), agreeing with *bhikkhū*.

vatthudesanāya: for appointing a site; dat. sg. f. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **vatthu**: site, ground + **desanā**: appointing, indicating, designating; fr. *deseti*, see below.

tehi: by those; ins. pl. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

bhikkhūhi: by the bhikkhus; ins. pl. m.

vatthum: site; nom. sg. nt. Passive construction in which the patient is in nominative; see IP p.42 & 107.

V.l. *vatthu* is also nom. sg. nt. Sa rule 6: "... *bhikṣubhir vāstu deśayitavyam ...*"; PrMoSa p.168. Mā-L rule 6: "... *tehi bhikṣūhi vastu deśayitavyam ...*," PrMoMā-L p.9.

desetabbam: is to be appointed; f.p.p. of *deseti* ($\sqrt{dis} + e$), cf. Pāc 7. agreeing with *vatthum*.

anārambham: not entailing harm [to any creatures], Ñm: entailing no harm (to creatures), H: not involving destruction; adj. Bb cpd. = neg. pref. **an-** + **ārambha**: to slaughter, injure, destroy; according to PED 107 from the Sanskrit verb *ālabhati* ($\bar{a} + \sqrt{labh} + a$), not from the Pāli verb *ārambhati* ($\bar{a} + \sqrt{rabh} + a$). Cf. *samārambha*: injuring, PED 686, (not to be confused with the *samārambha* of Pāc 29) and *nirārambha*: without objects for killing/sacrificing.

saparikkamanam: having surrounding space, Ñm: with a surrounding walk, H: with an open space round it; adj. Bb cpd. = pref. **sa**: with, having + pref. **pari**: around + **kamana**: access, moving-space; fr. *kamati*: walks, accesses, goes through.

sārambhe: entailing harm, destruction; adj. qualifying *vatthusmiṃ* = pref. *sa*: with, entailing + *ārambha*: see above. (PG § 52,6 suggest an assimilation of *saṃ* + *rambha*, but this is incorrect as the negative form *anārambha* is found in the next rule.)

Mā-L rule 6: *sārambhe*; PrMoMā-L p.9. Sa rule: *sārambhe*; PrMoSa p.168.

ce: if; conditional particle.

bhikkhu: bhikkhu; nom. sg. m.

vatthusmiṃ: on a site; loc. sg. nt.

aparikkamane: not having a surrounding space; adj. qualifying *vatthusmiṃ*. Bb cpd. = neg. pref. *a-*: not + *parikkamana*: see above. According to the Padabhāṣana there is a dukkaṭa offence if one only fails in the aspects of *sārambha* or *aparikkamana* or both. Thus, the most important factor is bringing bhikkhus to the kuṭi.

saññācīkāya: see above. **kuṭiṃ**: see above.

kāreyya: should have built; 3 sg. opt. of *kāreti*; see above. Note the difference with the non-causative *kareyya* in the Nid.

bhikkhū: bhikkhus; nom. pl. m.; see above. **vā**: or; disjunctive particle.

anabhineyya: should not bring to; neg. pref. *an-*: not + 3 sg. opt. of *abhineti*: see above.

vatthudesanāya: see above. **pamāṇam**: see above.

atikkāmeyya: should let (it) exceed, make go beyond; 3 sg. opt. of *atikkāmeti* ($ati + \sqrt{(k)kam} + e$), the transitive, causative form of *atikkamati*. Cf. NP 1: *atikkāmayato*.

[Sd 7: Vihārakārasikkhāpadaṃ]

Mahallakaṃ pana¹⁷⁷ bhikkhunā vihāraṃ kārayamānena sassāmikaṃ attuddesaṃ bhikkhū abhinetabbā vatthudesanāya. Tehi bhikkhūhi vatthum¹⁷⁸ desetabbam anārambham saparikkamanam.¹⁷⁹ Sārambhe ce bhikkhu vatthusmiṃ aparikkamane¹⁸⁰ mahallakaṃ vihāraṃ kāreyya, bhikkhū vā anabhineyya vatthudesanāya, saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on making a dwelling]

¹⁷⁷ Mi Se, G, V: *mahallakam-pana*.

¹⁷⁸ Dm, UP, Um: *vatthu*.

¹⁷⁹ Ra: *-kamaṇam*.

¹⁸⁰ Ra: *-kamaṇe*

By a bhikkhu who is having a large dwelling built, which has an owner, [and] is designated for himself, bhikkhus are to be brought to [it] for appointing the site. By those bhikkhus a site not entailing harm [to any creatures] [and] having a surrounding space is to be appointed. If a bhikkhu should have a hut built on a site entailing harm [to creatures], [and] not having a surrounding space, or if he should not bring bhikkhus to [it] for appointing the site, [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

vihārakārasikkhāpadaṃ: the training precept on making a dwelling; nom. sg. m. Loc. tapp. cpd. or appositive kammadhāraya: “the dwelling-making training precept.” = **vihāra**: dwelling; see below + **kāra**: making, maker; action-noun, fr. *karoti*: makes.

mahallakam: large, great; adj. = **mahā**: large, great + (eastern dialect) suf.—**alla(ka)**.

vihāram: dwelling, residence; acc. sg. m. fr. *viharati*; see Sd 13.

sassāmikam: which has an owner; pref. **sa-**: with + **sāmika**: see Sd 6.

The rest as in the previous rule.

[Sd 8: Duṭṭhadosasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhum duṭṭho doso appatīto amūlakena pārājikena dhammena anuddhamseyya: “Appeva nāma naṃ imamhā brahmacariyā cāveyyan-ti,” tato aparena samayena samanuggāhiyamāno¹⁸¹ vā asamanuggāhiyamāno¹⁸² vā, amūlakañ-c’eva¹⁸³ taṃ adhikaraṇaṃ hoti, bhikkhu ca dosaṃ patiṭṭhāti, saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on being corrupted by malice]

If any bhikkhu, corrupted by malice [and] upset, should accuse a bhikkhu with a groundless case involving disqualification [thinking]: “If only I could make him fall away from this holy life!,” [and] then, on another occasion, [whether] being interrogated or not being interrogated, if that legal issue is really groundless, and if the bhikkhu stands firm in malice: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

yo pana bhikkhu: whichever bhikkhu; see above Nid.

bhikkhum: a bhikkhu; acc. sg. m.

duṭṭho doso appatīto: corrupted by anger (and) upset, corrupted (and) upset by anger.

duṭṭho: corrupted, depraved, wicked, Ñm: angry, H: malignant; p.p. of *dussati* (see Sd 3 & 13) used as an adjective agreeing with *bhikkhu*. Cf. *duṭṭhagāmabhojaka* in the Jātaka passage mentioned below at “*bhikkhu ca dosaṃ*”

doso: anger, malice, Ñm: desirous of venting anger, H: malicious; nom. sg. m. *Dosa* is elsewhere always a noun, not an adjective, and “*duṭṭho doso appatīto*” seems to be an idiom meaning “depraved through anger, upset” or “depraved, upset through anger.”

The Padabhāṣana, Vin III 163 explains both words together: “*duṭṭho doso ti kupito ...*” The Sp takes *doso* to mean “one who depraves”: “*Duṭṭho doso ti: dūsito c’eva dūsako ca uppanne hi dose puggalo tena dosena dūsito hoti pakatibhāvaṃ jahāpito tasmā duṭṭho ti vuccati, parañ ca dūseti vināseti tasmā doso ti vuccati; iti duṭṭho doso ti ekass’ev’etaṃ puggalassa ākāranattena dassitaṃ. Tena vuttaṃ duṭṭho doso ti dūsito c’eva dūsako cā ti tattha saddalakkhaṇaṃ pariyesitabbaṃ ...*”: “*Duṭṭho doso*: he is being depraved (*dūsita*) and also is a depraver (*dūsako*; cf. Sd 13.) for when anger arises (internally) one is depraved through it (*dosena dūsito*), one has been made to leave the normal state (of mind) therefore “one is depraved” is said, and one depraves and makes others get lost therefore “depraver” (*doso*) is said. Both are manifest in the various manners of the same one person.

¹⁸¹ Dm: -ggahīya-.

¹⁸² Dm: -ggahīya-.

¹⁸³ G: *amūlakam c’eva*.

Therefore it is said *duṭṭho doso* (meaning:) “depraved and a depraver”; therein the grammar (*saddalakkaṇaṃ*) is to be sought”

This explanation is problematic as the word *dosa* has nowhere else in the Pāli or Sanskrit the meaning of a person who corrupts.

The phrase “*duṭṭho doso appatīto*” is not found anywhere else in the Canon, but compare A I 201: “... *duṭṭho dosena abhibhūto* ...,” S IV 339: “*Yaṃ duṭṭho dosādhikaraṇena attavyābādhāya pi ceteti* ...,” It 2: “... *dosena duṭṭhāse* ...,” the Padabhājana on *appatīto* below in this rule: “... *tena ca dosena ... appatīto hoti*.”: “... due to this anger ... he is displeased.” MW 498 lists “*doṣa-dūṣita*”: “disfigured by a fault.” From these phrases it appears that it is both possible that *dosena* in our rule is governed by *appatīto* or that it is governed by *duṭṭho*. As *duṭṭho doso* is quoted as one phrase in the Padabhājana and the commentaries the latter was the one favoured by the tradition. Perhaps the original was “*duṭṭho dosena appatīto*” in which *dosena* was misunderstood and altered due to its being in between past participles, or it is possible that the original was *duṭṭhadosa*. (It might also be possible that originally there was the similar sounding “*dose patiṭṭho*” instead of “*doso appatīto*.”) Cf. the origin-story to this rule in the Suttavibhaṅga (Vin III 163): “*Amhehi ... kupitehi anattamanehi cāvanādhīpāyehi*.” By us ... who are angry, displeased, intending to make (him) fall away..”

The Prātimokṣasūtras have in this rule an ablative (in instrumental sense): *doṣad* or *dveṣad*; see below.

In Sanskrit *doṣa* means: corruption, blemish, fault, depravity, and *dveṣa* means: anger, hatred, malice. In Pāli both have merged into *dosa* (e.g. Dh 357: *dosadosa*: “the fault of anger” = Skt Udānavarga 347: “*dveṣadoṣa*”).

It is not uncommon that one Pāli word can have the meanings of two Sanskrit words since in Pāli there are much less sound-combinations than in Skt, see PG § 23,3; e.g. Skt -rg- and -sy- have been assimilated into -gg- and -ss- in Pāli, e.g. Sd 11: *vagga* = Skt *varga* & *vyagra*, Pāc 27: *sattha* = Skt *sārtha*, *śastra*, and *ṣāstra*, Pāc 34: *nī-* = Skt *nīs-* & *nī*, and Pāc 53 & 60: *hassa* = Skt *hāsyā* & *harṣa*. Unless the context makes it clear, it can be difficult to know what meaning is intended.

Sa: “*duṣṭo doṣād apratītaḥ*”; PrMoSa p.168, Rosen, 1959, p.65–66. Mū: “*dviṣṭo dveṣād apratītaḥ*” (I follow the reading given by Roth in BV 105 n. 10 rather than Banerjee’s reading.) (Skt *dviṣṭa*: hostile, from √*dviṣ*. Cf. Pāli *disa*: enemy). Both can be rendered as: “angered, upset due to anger.” Mā-L: “*duṣṭo doṣāt kupito anāttamano*”: “angered, upset due to anger, displeased”; PrMoMā-L p.9.

appatīto: upset, annoyed, displeased, N̄m: desirous of venting anger, H: ill-tempered; adjective agreeing with *bhikkhu*. = neg. pref. **a-** + **patīta**; the p.p. of *pacceti* (*paṭi* + √*i*): returns. Padabhājana: “*Appatīto ti: tena ca kopena tena ca dosena ... appatīto hoti*.”: “*Appatīto*: by that hatred and by that anger ... he is upset.”

amūlakena: groundless; adjective agreeing with *dhammena*. = neg. pref.—**a** + **mūla**: root, cause + conn. suf. *-ka*. In this case the accusing monk has not seen, heard or doubted that the monk he wants to get rid of has committed a pārājika. If the other monk has in fact, by chance, committed a pārājika, it would still be called *amūlaka*.

pārājikena: involving disqualification; adjective agreeing with *dhammena*. See Pār intro.

dhammena: case; ins. sg. m.; see Pār intro.

anuddhamseyya: should accuse, ... denounce, ... charge; 3 sg. opt. of *anuddhamseti* (*anu* + √(*d*)*dhas* + *e*).

appeva: if only, certainly, please may, hopefully; gives emphasis to the optative; see DP. Cf. Cv IV 10,1/Vin II 85: “*Appeva nāma saṅgho bhijjeyyā ti*.”: “If only the Community would split!” Sp 1192: “... *ayaṃ assa ajjhāsayo hoti*.”: “... this is his wish.” Cf. NP 27: “*appeva mayam-pi*.” = **api**: either an emphatic particle or a particle expressing uncertainty: perhaps. A junction of *api* + *eva* in which the final *-i* of *api* is followed by a dissimilar vowel and changes to *-y-* (cf. the Skt “*apy eva*” in the Mā-L and Sa versions of this rule), then *-py-* is palatalised to *-pp-*; see PG 55 & IP p.215 + 17. Cf. Sd 10 *iccetam*. + **eva**: just, emph. particle.

nāma: “!”, indeed, just; adv. used as emph. particle which emphasises other particles but can not be translated.

naṃ: him; 3 sg. acc. dem. pron.; variant of *taṃ*.

imamhā: from this; 3 sg. abl. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

brahmacariyā: from the holy life, Ñm: Good Life, H: Brahma-life; abl. sg. nt. = **brahma**: divine; cf. Sd 4 + **-cariya**: conduct, lifestyle; √car + conn. suf. -iya. See Sd 4 *brahmacārīn*. In some contexts *brahmacariya* clearly means celibacy; i.e., as third precept of the eight precepts, A III 70; and as part of the stock-phrase: “*abrahmacariyaṃ pahāya brahmacārī hoti, ārācārī, virato methunā gāmadhammā*.”: “He abandons non-celibacy and is an observer of celibacy, an observer of abstinence, abstaining from the sexual vulgar act.”; A IV 198. The *anāgāmin*, non-returner, and also the *arahant*, is a *brahmacārīn*, since he is incapable of indulging in sexual intercourse; see A V 180.

The commentaries give two meanings. One meaning is *seṭṭhacariya*: “the best life,” e.g. S-a I 307. The other is *methunavirati*: “abstinence from sexual intercourse,” S-a I 94; see the note to Th 236 in Norman, 1969, p.169. See also CP IV 274: “in the basic brahminical sense *brahmacariya*, the practice of *brāhmaṇa*, is celibacy and learning the Vedas. In the Buddhist sense it means to live a pure, undefiled, and celibate life.”

cāveyyan-ti = **cāveyyaṃ**: I could make fall away; 1 sg. opt. of the causative of *cavati* (√cu + a): to fall (away). + **ti**: “...,” end quote; cf. Nid. A junction of *cāveyyaṃ* and *ti* through the dentalisation of *ṃ*.

tato aparena samayena samanuggāhiyamāno vā asamanuggāhiyamāno vā: thereupon, on another occasion, being interrogated or not being interrogated; see Pār 4.

amūlakañc’eva: and if really groundless; a junction of *amūlakaṃ* and *ca* or *ce* through the palatalisation of *ṃ*. = **amūlakaṃ**: see above + **c’**: and if; = elided form of conditional particle *ce*: if, or the connective particle *ca*: and if; see PG § 69,1. Since there is also a *ca* in the next line, it might also be *ca* here in the conditional sense. + **eva**: really; emphatic particle.

taṃ: that; nom. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

adhikaraṇaṃ: legal issue, Ñm: litigation, H: legal question, Norman: legal process, Than: issue, formal dispute; nom. sg. nt. directional pref. *adhi-* + *karāṇa*: doing, making; √kar + action-noun suf. -aṇa. See below Adhik.

hoti: is; 3 sg. pres. ind.; the contracted form of *bhavati*, cf. Nid.

bhikkhu: the bhikkhu; nom. sg. m.

ca: and if; connective particle, probably in the conditional sense rather than the connective.

dosam: malice, or: fault, error; acc. sg. m. Probably an accusative of direction; see Syntax § 41. Corresponds to Skt *doṣa*; see above. The Padabhājana quoted below (... emptily, ... falsely...) suggests that “fault” is intended rather than “malice,” however the grammar and legal structure seem to require the meaning of “malice.”

paṭiṭṭhāti: stands firm in, establishes, bases on, persists; 3 sg. pres. ind. (*pati* + √ṭhā + a).

bhikkhu ca dosam paṭiṭṭhāti: and if the bhikkhu stands firm in malice, (or:) and if the bhikkhu confirms the fault, Ñm: and the bhikkhu admits to anger, H: if the monk confessed his malice.

A difficult phrase. The Padabhājana implies that the bhikkhu admits his mistake: “...: *tucchakaṃ mayā bhāṇitaṃ, musā ..., abhūtaṃ ..., ajānantena mayā bhaṇitaṃ*”: “...: It has been said emptily, falsely, non-factually, not knowingly, by me.”

Kkh 72: “*Yadi hi taṃ adhikaraṇaṃ diṭṭhādīhi mūlehi amūlakañc’eva hoti, ayaṃ codetuṃ āgato bhikkhu ca dosam paṭiṭṭhāti paṭicca tiṭṭhati: tucchakaṃ mayā bhaṇitaṃ ti ādini vadanto paṭijānāti. Tassa bhikkhuno anuddhamṣitakkhaṇe yeva saṅghādiseso ti*.”: “If that legal issue is without the (legal) grounds (consisting) of what has been seen, etc, and this bhikkhu who has come to accuse stands dependent on error (*dosa*) and admits saying: ‘It has been said emptily by me (= Padabhājana)’ etc., for that bhikkhu there is a *saṅghādisesa* offence at the very moment of accusation.”

Horner in BD I 281 n. 1 notes “*Paṭiṭṭhāti* with more general meaning of ‘to stand fast.’ But here, judging by the Old Com ... it must mean ‘confess’ with the sense that his words were standing on or founded in malice. The verb, however, in such meanings is followed by a locative. But *paṭi* governs the accusative.”

Paṭiṭṭhāti is an intransitive verb and can not take *dosam* as an patient, therefore the meanings “confirms,” or “admits” or “confesses” don’t make sense. Elsewhere in the Pāli Canon *paṭiṭṭhāti* only takes a locative (E.g. Cv IX 5,7/Vin II 251: “*dvīsu dhammesu paṭiṭṭhātabbaṃ sacce ca akuppe ca*.”; see Syntax § 163, a, V for other

examples.) and it is significant that the Prātimokṣasūtras, see below, all have a locative form here. It is therefore possible that *dosaṃ* is a corruption of *dose*. This might be due to misunderstanding the locative sg. m. as a Māgadhi form in *-e*; see Syntax § 10 and PG § 80,1. The meaning “confirms” also does not make good sense as elsewhere, e.g. Aniy 1–2, *paṭijānāti* is used to denote that word.

It is also possible that *paṭiṭṭhāti* is a corruption of its causative form *paṭiṭṭhāpeti*, which is transitive and can take *dosaṃ* as patient. In the sense suggested by the Padabhājana it needs to be a causative.

The following passage from the Kharassara Jātaka (J I 354) about a corrupt village headman (*duṭṭhagāmahojaka*) shows that “confirms” can be a meaning for the causative *paṭiṭṭhāpeti* and that it can take the accusative *dosaṃ* as patient: “*Rājā taṃ pakkosāpetvā dosaṃ paṭiṭṭhāpetvā, suniggahitaṃ nigahetvā ...*”: “The king having summoned him, having made him establish/confirm (his) fault, having punished him well-punished ...” *Dosa* in this context clearly means “fault”, the Skt *doṣa*, and not “anger,” *dveṣa*. Cf. Dhpa III 146: “... *thero parisamajjhe parisuddhabhāvaṃ paṭiṭṭhāpesi*.”: “the senior bhikkhu established (her) state of purity (= innocence) in the midst of the assembly.”

Paṭiṭṭhāti can thus be rendered in two ways. One is to render it in accordance with the Padabhājana in the causative meaning as “he establishes the fault” or “confirms the fault” giving the sense of the bhikkhu admitting his mistake. The other is to give the usual locative sense of “stands firm in malice,” i.e., the bhikkhu is under the influence of anger. What the clause then intends is that the accusing bhikkhu clearly acts out of malice, and not out of mere misjudgement.

Both these renderings are supported by the commentary, which explains that it means that the bhikkhu stands dependent (*paṭicca tiṭṭhati*) on *dosa* and admits it (*paṭijānāti*).

To ascertain the correct meaning of this phrase it is necessary to see what the two factors are which define and accomplish the Saṅghādisesa.

Firstly, the case is to be established as groundless, *amūlaka*, then, secondly, the bhikkhu is to be established as one who has gone on a wrong course through ill-will, *dosāgati* (one of the four wrong courses, see Sd 13). This is the factor of intention. It seems reasonable to assume that *dosa* has the same sense in both parts of this rule. In the initial part of this the two factors of *dosa* and *amūlaka* are introduced, then, in the last part, the two are again stated as defining factors. Therefore, like in the Aniyata rules, the bhikkhu’s admission is not necessary to make it a Sd offence. In this case a misunderstanding about this rule seems to have occurred before the Padabhājana was established.

In both occurrences of *dosa* in this rule a corruption in the Pāli seems to have occurred as the grammar is incorrect. This does not appear to have happened in the Prātimokṣasūtras as they give grammatically correct versions.

Mā-L: “*bhikṣu ca doṣe pratiṣṭhāti: doṣād avacāmī ti*.” “and (if) that bhikkhu stands in malice, saying, ‘I spoke out of malice.’”; BV 104, PrMoMā-L p.9. (Cf. BMD p.56). Sa: “... *doṣe pratiṣṭhed doṣenāvocaṃ iti*”: “... would stand in anger, ‘I spoke with anger.’”; PrMoSa p.170–171. Mū: “*bhikṣuś ca dveṣe prati(ṣṭhed) dveṣād avocaṃ iti ...*” (PrMoMū p.18/BV 105): “and if the bhikkhu would stand in malice, saying, ‘I spoke out of malice.’” Cf. Rosen, 1959, p.65–66 and Finot 89.

These Prātimokṣasūtras thus have in the rule itself what is roughly equivalent to the Pāli Padabhājana (see above). This is not a unique case. Norman (2006 p. 206f), gives examples of this phenomenon and states that because of the Buddha giving different explanations in different places, the commentarial explanation in one tradition or sect could be the canonical reading in another tradition, and vice versa.

It is noteworthy that Pācittiya 76 (*yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhuṃ amūlakena saṅghādisesena anudhamseyya, pācittiyaṃ*), which is basically the same rule but concerned with the making of a groundless accusation of a *saṅghādisesa* instead of a *pārājika*, does not have any mention of the intentional factor of malice, *dosa*, as given in the first part of Sd 8. The corresponding Prātimokṣasūtra rules (Dhg rule 80, Mā-L 75, Mū 69, but not Sa rule 69), mostly have this factor included in the rule: e.g. Mā-L: “*yo puna bhikṣu bhikṣusya duṣṭo doṣat kupito anāttamano amūlakena saṅghātiṣeṣeṇa dharmenānudhvaṃseyya pācattikaṃ*.”; BV p.199. Sa rule 69: “*yaḥ punar bhikṣur bhikṣum amūlakena saṅghāvaśeṣeṇa dharmenānudhvaṃsayet pāyantikā*.”; PrMoSa p.226–27.

Prebish (BMD p.123) suggests that if “the bhikkhu persists in malice” and does not abandon his wrong course but conceals it there is a Sd offence. However, this Sd is a *paṭhamāpattika* Sd offence, not a *yāvattatīyaka* Sd, so there is no question of persevering. See the commentary quoted above: “*anuddhamṣitakkhaṇe yeva*”: “at the very moment of accusation.” The point is that the bhikkhu commits the Sd offence as soon as he makes the false accusation. He has to admit though that he has made a false accusation under the influence of anger in order to undergo the *mānatta* and *parivāsa*. For as many days as he fails to admit the offence, and thus conceals it, he has to stay in probation.

[Sd 9: Aññabhāgiyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhum duṭṭho doso appatīto aññabhāgiyassa adhikaraṇassa kiñ-ci desam lesamattam upādāya pārājikena dhammena anuddhamseyya: “Appeva nāma naṃ imamhā brahmacariyā cāveyyan-ti,” tato aparena samayena samanuggāhiyamāno¹⁸⁴ vā asamanuggāhiyamāno¹⁸⁵ vā, aññabhāgiyañ-c’eva¹⁸⁶ tam adhikaraṇam hoti, koci deso lesamatto upādinno,¹⁸⁷ bhikkhu ca dosam patiṭṭhāti, saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on (an issue) belonging to another class]

If any bhikkhu, corrupted by malice [and] upset, should accuse a bhikkhu with a case involving disqualification, having taken [it] up [with] some point, which is a mere pretext, of a legal issue belonging to another class [thinking]: “If only I could make him fall away from this holy life!” [and] then, on another occasion, [whether] being interrogated or not being interrogated, if that legal issue is really belonging to another class, [and] some point, which a mere pretext, has been taken up, and if the bhikkhu stands firm in malice: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhum duṭṭho doso appatīto: see Sd 8.

aññabhāgiyassa: belonging to another class, connected to another class; adj. Bb cpd. = añña: other; adj. + bhāga: class, part, share + -iya: connective suffix.

adhikaraṇassa: of a legal issue; gen. sg. nt. of *adhikaraṇa*; see Sd 8.

kiñ-ci: some; indefinite pron. = junction of *kiṃ* + *ci* through the palatalisation of the *niggahita* of *kiṃ*. *kiṃ* the acc. sg. neuter form of interrogative pron. *ka*: “what?” + appended indef. particle *-ci*; see PG § 111,1.

desam: point, matter; acc. sg. m., fr. *deseti*: see Sd 6 and Pāc 7.

lesamattam: which is mere pretext; adjective qualifying *desam*. Bb cpd. = *lesa*: pretext, ploy +—*matta*: mere, only; adjective.

upādāya: having taken up; abs. of *upādiyati* (*upa* + √*dā* + *i* + *ya*) used as a postposition. Often the postposition *upādāya* matches the English “out of,” i.e.: “out of pretext”; cf. NP 9.

desam lesamattam upādāya: having taken up some point which is a mere pretext.

pārājikena ... vā: see Sd 8.

aññabhāgiyañ-c’eva: = junction of *aññabhāgiyam* + *c’eva* through palatalisation of the final *-ṃ* of *aññabhāgiyam*. = aññabhāgiyam: see above + *c’eva*: see Sd 8.

tam adhikaraṇam hoti: see Sd 8.

koci deso lesamatto: some point which a mere pretext; see above, here nom. sg. m.

upādinno: has been taken up; p.p. of *upādiyati* agreeing with *deso*.

bhikkhu ca dosam patiṭṭhāti, saṅghādiseso: see Sd 8.

¹⁸⁴ Dm: -ggahīya-.

¹⁸⁵ Dm: -ggahīya-.

¹⁸⁶ Ra: aññabhāgiyam ceva.

¹⁸⁷ Um, G, V: upādinno.

[Sd 10: Saṅghabhedasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu samaggassa saṅghassa bhedāya parakkameyya, bhedanasaṃvattanikaṃ vā adhikaraṇaṃ samādāya paggayha tiṭṭheyya, so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi evam-assa vacaniyo:¹⁸⁸ “Mā āyasmā¹⁸⁹ samaggassa saṅghassa bhedāya parakkamī¹⁹⁰ bhedanasaṃvattanikaṃ vā adhikaraṇaṃ samādāya paggayha aṭṭhāsi. Samet’āyasmā saṅghena, samaggo hi saṅgho sammodamāno avivadamāno ek’uddeso phāsu viharatī ti.”, evañ-ca so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi vuccamāno tath’eva paggaṇheyya, so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi yāvatatiyaṃ samanubhāsitabbo tassa paṭinissaggāya, yāvatatiyañ-ce samanubhāsiyamāno taṃ paṭinissajeyya,¹⁹¹ iccetam kusalam, no ce paṭinissajeyya,¹⁹² saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on the schism of a community]

If any bhikkhu should endeavor for the schism of a united community, or having undertaken, should persist in upholding a legal issue conducive to schism, [then] that bhikkhu should be spoken to thus by the bhikkhus: “Let the venerable one not endeavor for the schism of the united community, or having undertaken, persist in upholding a legal issue conducive to schism. Let the venerable one convene with the community, for a united community, which is on friendly terms, which is not disputing, which has a single recitation, dwells in comfort,” and [if] that bhikkhu being spoken to thus by the bhikkhus should persist in the same way [as before], [then] that bhikkhu is to be argued with up to three times by the bhikkhus for the relinquishing of that [course], [and if that bhikkhu,] being argued with up to three times, should relinquish that [course], then this is good, [but] if he should not relinquish [it]: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

Yo pana bhikkhu: see Sd 8.

samaggassa: united, unanimous, whole, Ñm: in concord, H: harmonious, *Vinaya Texts*: at union; adj. qualifying *saṅgha*. = pref. *saṃ* + *agga*: top; see Sd 4 = Skt *agra*: foremost, best, multitude. Mā-L & Sa: *samagrasya saṃghasya*; BV 149, PrMoSa p.171.

Samagga is the correlative of *vagga* (*vi* + *agga*): disunited, dissentious, factional; see Sd 11.

The Skt form *samagra* means: all, whole, entire, complete. The Skt form of Pāli *vagga*: *vyagra* means: dispersed, disunited.

In the context of this rule *samagga* has the more general meaning of “united” in the sense of “harmony” as it is contrasted with *saṅghabhedā*: “schism of the community,” and also because it here occurs with “rejoicing together and non-disputing”: “*sammodamāno avivadamāno*.” The latter are found elsewhere in a stock-phrase (underlined); e.g. M III 156: “*Yathā kathaṃ pana tumhe, Anuruddhā, samaggā sammodamānā avivadamānā khīrodakībhūtā aññamaññaṃ piyacakkhūhi sampassantā viharathā ti? Idha mayhaṃ, bhante, evaṃ hoti: Lābhā vata me, suladdhaṃ vata me yo’haṃ evarūpehi sabrahmacārīhi saddhiṃ viharāmī ti.*”: “But how do you, Anuruddhas, dwell in unity, agreeing with each other, not disputing, being like milk (blending with) water, regarding each other with dear eyes. Here, Venerable Sir, it occurs to us thus: ‘There are gains for me, it is well gained by me, that I live with such kind of companions in the Holy Life.’”

Cf. A I 70 where the united assembly is compared to the disunited assembly: “*Dve’mā, bhikkhave, parisā. Katamā dve? Vaggā ca parisā samaggā ca parisā. Katamā ca, bhikkhave, vaggā parisā? Idha, bhikkhave, yassaṃ parisāyaṃ bhikkhū bhaṇḍanaajātā kalahajātā vivādāpannā aññamaññaṃ mukhasattihi vitudentā viharanti, ayaṃ vuccati, bhikkhave, vaggā parisā. “Katamā ca, bhikkhave, samaggā parisā? Idha, bhikkhave, yassaṃ parisāyaṃ bhikkhū samaggā sammodamānā avivadamānā khīrodakībhūtā aññamaññaṃ piyacakkhūhi sampassantā viharanti, ayaṃ vuccati, bhikkhave, samaggā parisā.*”:

¹⁸⁸ V: *vacaniyo*.

¹⁸⁹ Dm, Um, UP: *māyasmā*.

¹⁹⁰ Ra: *parakkamī*.

¹⁹¹ = D, W, Vibh Ce (but has *-nissajeyya* in Pāc 68), Other eds.: *-nissajeyya*. C reads *-nissajeyya* here but *-nissajeyya* in Sd 12–13 and Pāc 68.

¹⁹² As in previous note.

“There are these two assemblies. Which two? A divided assembly and a united assembly. What is a divided assembly. Now, in which assembly bhikkhus dwell who are arguing, who are quarrelling, who are engaged in dispute, who are piercing one another with the swords of the mouth; this is called a divided assembly. And what is a united assembly? Now, in which assembly bhikkhus dwell who are in unity, who are agreeing with each other, who are not disputing, who are being like milk (blending with) water, (and) who are regarding each other with dear eyes. This is called a united assembly.”

The sense of harmony is also exemplified in Dh 194: “*sukhā saṅghassa sāmaggī, samaggānaṃ tapo sukho.*” Speech that unites, *sāmaggakaraṇiṃ vācam*, is a factor of right speech.

One of the conditions of non-decline of the Saṅgha, *aparihāniya dhamma*, is doing *saṅghakammas* in unity; see A IV 21f, D II 76.

However, in the more technical Vinaya sense, as in Pāc 81, *samagga* applies more to a community that is both united in body, i.e., completely attending and participating when carrying out a *saṅghakamma*, as well as united in mind, i.e., agreeing with each other and having a single opinion about a *saṅghakamma*. The physical sense is emphasised in the Vibh Padabhājana on this rule at Vin III 173: “*Samaggo nāma saṅgho samānasaṃvāsako samānasīmāyaṃ t̥hito.*”: “United is a community that is of the same communion, which is staying in the same boundary-area..”

It is also emphasised in Vin I 104–105/Mv II 5,1: “*Na yathāparisāya pātimokkhaṃ uddissitabbaṃ sakāya sakāya parisāya ... Anujānāmi bhikkhave samaggānaṃ uposathakammaṃ ... ettāvataṃ samaggī yāvataṃ ekāvāso.*”: “The Pātimokkha should not be recited according to assembly, each to his own assembly. I allow bhikkhus a legal act of Uposatha for (all) united ... as far as there is one residence so far extends the unity.”

In Vin I 318/Mv IX 3,5 three factors or conditions are given for a *samaggakamma*: “united legal action” or *vaggakamma* “disunited legal action”: “*Katamañca, bhikkhave, samaggakammaṃ? Ñattidutiye ce, bhikkhave, kamme yāvaticā bhikkhū kammappattā, te āgatā honti, chandārahānaṃ chando āhaṭo hoti, sammukhībhitā na paṭikkosanti: samaggakammaṃ. Ñatticatutthe ce ...*” How, bhikkhus, is there a united legal action? In a (legal) act of a motion (followed by an announcement) as the second, as far as there are monks who are entitled (to carry it out), they have arrived, the consent has been brought of those who are eligible for (giving) consent, through the non-objection of those who are present. ...”

In brief: 1. complete attendance, 2. consent (and purity in the case of the Uposathakamma) by proxy of the absent bhikkhus, and 3. no objection or protest against the kamma by any bhikkhu who participates.

The first factor complete attendance is discussed above in the section on *sīmā*, the second factor is discussed in the Nidāna, and an example of the third factor is the suspension of the Pātimokkha (*patimokkhaṭṭhapana*) for a bhikkhu with an offence; see above p. 100. Another example of an objection is the request about objections at the end of the three proclamations, *kammavācā*, for the full admission into the Saṅgha, *upasampadā*, at Vin I 93–95/Mv I 76,11–12.

These three conditions are also listed in the explanation on *samaggena saṅghena* in Sp 242; see Pāc 81.

In A V 73–75/AN X 35, a set of ten conditions for *saṅghasamaggī* (contrasted with the opposite conditions for *saṅghabheda*) is given, which if practised will lead to the non-seceding (and) not segregating (of bhikkhus), to not carrying out legal acts separately, and not reciting the Pātimokkha separately. In Vin II 204–205, = Cv VII 5,2–4, this set is found as a set of eighteen conditions: “*Kittāvataṃ nu kho, bhante, saṅgho samaggo hoti ti? “Idh’Upāli, bhikkhū adhammaṃ adhammo ti dīpenti, dhammaṃ dhammo ti dīpenti, avinayaṃ avinayo ti dīpenti, vinayaṃ vinayo ti dīpenti, abhāsitaṃ alapitaṃ tathāgatena abhāsitaṃ alapitaṃ tathāgatenā ti dīpenti, bhāsitaṃ lapitaṃ tathāgatena bhāsitaṃ lapitaṃ tathāgatenā ti dīpenti, anāciṇṇaṃ tathāgatena anāciṇṇaṃ tathāgatenā ti dīpenti, āciṇṇaṃ tathāgatena āciṇṇaṃ tathāgatenā ti dīpenti, apaññattaṃ tathāgatena apaññattaṃ tathāgatenā ti dīpenti, paññattaṃ tathāgatena paññattaṃ tathāgatenā ti dīpenti, anāpattiṃ anāpattiṃ dīpenti, āpattiṃ āpattiṃ ti dīpenti, lahukaṃ āpattiṃ lahukā āpattiṃ ti dīpenti, garukaṃ āpattiṃ garukā āpattiṃ ti dīpenti, sāvasesaṃ āpattiṃ sāvasesā āpattiṃ ti dīpenti, anavasesaṃ āpattiṃ anavasesā āpattiṃ ti dīpenti, duṭṭhullaṃ āpattiṃ duṭṭhullā āpattiṃ ti dīpenti, aduṭṭhullaṃ āpattiṃ aduṭṭhullā āpattiṃ ti dīpenti. Te imehi aṭṭhārasahi vatthūhi na apakassanti, na avapakassanti, na āveniṃ uposathaṃ karonti, na āveniṃ pavāraṇaṃ karonti, na āveniṃ saṅghakammaṃ karonti. Ettāvataṃ kho, Upāli, saṅgho samaggo hoti*”

ti.”:

“To what extent, Venerable Sir, is the Community united? Here, Upāli, bhikkhus elucidate/explain non-Dhamma as non-Dhamma, ... Dhamma as Dhamma, ... non-Vinaya as non-Vinaya, ... Vinaya as Vinaya, ... what has not been said and spoken about by the Tathāgata as what has not been said ..., what has been said ... as ... said ..., what has not been practised ... as ... not ... practised ..., what has been practised ... as ... practised ..., what has not been declared ... as ... not ... declared ..., what has been declared ... as ... declared ..., they elucidate a non-offence as a non-offence, ... an offence as an offence, ... a light offence as a light offence, ... a heavy offence as a heavy offence, ... an offence with remainder (in the Saṅgha, i.e., a Saṅghādisesa or less) as an offence with remainder, ... an offence with no remainder (in the Saṅgha, i.e., a Pārājika) as an offence with no remainder, a depraved offences as a depraved offence, ... a non-depraved offence as a non-depraved offence. With these eighteen factors they don’t secede, don’t segregate, they don’t do a separate Uposatha, ... Invitation, ... legal action. To this extent, Upāli, the Community is united.”

Cf. BD III 136 n. 1 + BD IV 267 n. 7 and the extensive discussion of *samagga* in Juo-Hsüeh Shih, 2000, chapter 4.

saṅghassa: of a community; gen. sg. m. Cf. Nid.

bhedāya: for the schism, breach, division; dat. sg. m. of **bheda**, action-noun fr. *bhedeti* ($\sqrt{bhid} + e$): causes to break. A dative of purpose; see Syntax § 107d.

parakkameyya: should endeavor for, strive for, Ñm: attempt to cause, H: should go forward with; 3 sg. opt. of *parakkamati* (*parā* + $\sqrt{kam} + a$) = pref. *parā*: onto, over + $\sqrt{(k)kam}$: moves. The final long *a* of the prefix *para* has been shortened before the double *k* of the root $\sqrt{(k)kam}$, Skt \sqrt{kram} , in accordance with the Law of Morae; see *sekha/sekkha* in Pd 3.

bhedanasaṃvattanikaṃ: conducive to schism, Ñm: conducive to schism, H: leading to dissension; adj. Dat. tapp. cpd used as Bb cpd. = **bhedana**: breaking, breach, schism; action-noun ($\sqrt{bhid} + ana$) + **saṃvattanika**: conducive to; adj. *saṃ* + $\sqrt{vatt} +$ suf. *-ika*; fr. *saṃvattati* (*saṃ* + $\sqrt{vatt} + a$).

vā: or; disjunctive particle.

adhikaraṇaṃ: legal issue; acc. sg. nt.; see Sd 8.

samādāya: having undertaken; absolutive of *samādiyati*, the passive form of *samādāti* (*saṃ* + *ā* + $\sqrt{dā} + a$).

paggayha: upholding, having upheld, favouring, kindling; abs. of *paggayhāti* = pref. *pa-*: forth, out + *gayhāti*: holds; see Sd 2.

tiṭṭheyya: should persist in, lit. “should stand”; 3 sg. opt. of *tiṭṭhati* ($\sqrt{tṭha} + a$). *Paggayha tiṭṭheyya*, “should persist in upholding” is a periphrastic construction in which *tiṭṭheyya* acts as an auxiliary verb; see IP 233ff, and Syntax § 19. Perhaps *tiṭṭheyya* acts as an auxiliary to both *samādāya* and *paggayha* (“should persist in undertaking and upholding”), but I am not aware of any other constructions of an auxiliary with the forms of two other verbs.

so: that; nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

bhikkhu: bhikkhu; nom. sg. m.

bhikkhūhi: by bhikkhus; ins. pl. m.

evam-assa: thus should be; = a junction of *evaṃ* and *assa* through weakening of *ṃ* into *m*; see PG § 71,2b. =

evam: thus; adv. + **assa**: should be; 3 sg. opt. of *atthi* ($\sqrt{as} + a + ti$), here used as an auxiliary verb; see IP p.234. This *assa* is not to be confused with *assa*, the dative of demonstrative pronoun *ayaṃ*; see above Nid.

vacaniyo: to be spoken to, told, addressed, Ñm: to be admonished, H: to be spoken to; f.p.p. of the root \sqrt{vac} , agreeing with *bhikkhu*. In this and the next rules the different forms of the root \sqrt{vac} have consistently been rendered by forms of “speaks to” in the sense of admonishing, although sometimes “admonishes” (as Ñm renders), especially in SD 12, would seem more appropriate. Cf. M II 200: “... *Subho māṇavo ... anattamano bhagavantaṃ yeva khuṃsento bhagavantaṃ yeva vambento bhagavantaṃ yeva vadamāno: samaṇo Gotamo pāpiko bhavissatī ti.*”

mā: don’t, let not; prohibitive particle taking an aorist.

āyasmā: the venerable one; nom. sg. m.; cf. Nid.

As the verbs (*sametu* etc.) used in this sentence are in the third person the nominative is used rather than the vocative. *Āyasmā* is not used as a vocative in Pāli but is only used as a nominative with 3rd person verbs; e.g. D II 206: "... *āyasmā Janavasabho yakkho ... sañjānāti ti.*" This is a polite form of speech; see Pāc 68.

The plural form *āyasmanto* is used in the vocative with (imperative) 2nd person verbs; e.g. Sd 11: "*Mā āyasmanto ... avacuttha.*"

Āvuso is used in the voc. sg. instead of *āyasmā*; see Pāc 70: "*Mā āvuso samañuddesa evaṃ avaca.*"

samaggassa saṅghassa bhedāya: see above.

parakkami: endeavor; 3 sg. aor. of *parakkamati*: see above. There is also a second person *i*-aorist in *-i* (see also NP 10 *vinassa/vinassi*) but as *sametu* below is definitely in the third person *parakkami* and *aṭṭhāsi* are also so.

bhedanasamvattanikaṃ vā adhikaraṇaṃ samādāya paggayha: see above.

aṭṭhāsi: persist; 3. sg. aor. of *tiṭṭhati*: see above.

samet'āyasmā: let the venerable one convene, assemble, come together, agree, be in accord, Ñm: let the venerable one be at peace with, H: let ... be associated with, *Vinaya Texts*: Be, Sir, at one with...; junction of *sametu* and *āyasmā* through elision of *-u*; PG § 70,2b. see note in the next rule.

sametu: let convene, come together, agree; 3 sg. imp. of *sameti* (*saṃ* + \sqrt{i} + *a*): convenes, comes together, joins, assembles, agrees; here *sameti* is personal, has a nominative agent, and takes the instrumental *saṅghena*; see note in Sd 11. + **āyasmā**: see above.

Mā-L: "*sametu āyuṣṣan sārddhaṃ saṅghena*"; BV 149.

saṅghena: with the community; ins. sg. m.

samaggo: which is united; adj. qualifying *saṅgho*.

hi: for, because; emphatic particle/indeclinable.

saṅgho: a community; nom. sg. m.

sammodamāno: which is on friendly terms, being congenial, Ñm: in agreement, H: on friendly terms, *Vinaya Texts*: in harmony; adjective agreeing with *saṅgho*, = pr.p. of *sammodati* (*saṃ* + \sqrt{mud} + *a*): is friendly with, agrees with, rejoices together.

Kkh 76/Sp 608: "*Tattha sammodamāno ti aññamaññasampattiyā suṭṭhu modamāno. Avivadamāno-ti: 'ayaṃ dhammo, nāyaṃ dhammo' ti evaṃ na vivadamāno.*" "Herein *sammodamāno* is rejoicing well in one another's success." Cf. the Kkh explanation of *sammodamāno* given in the Pātimokkha conclusion.

avivadamāno: which is not disputing, quarrelling, Ñm: without dispute, H: not quarrelsome; adj. agreeing with *saṅgho*, = neg. pref. *a-* + pr.p. of *vivadati* (*vi* + \sqrt{vad} + *a*). Cf. Pātimokkha conclusion and Pāc 78: *vivādāpannānaṃ*.

Kkh 76: "*Avivadamāno-ti: Ayaṃ dhammo, nāyaṃ dhammo ti evaṃ na vivadamāno.*" "Avivadamāno is not disputing thus: "This is the Dhamma, this is not the Dhamma."

ek'uddeso: which has a single-recitation, Ñm: holds undivided recitations, H: under a single rule; adjective qualifying *saṅgho*. Digu cpd. A junction of *eka* + *uddeso* through elision of the final *-a* of *eka*.

Kkh 76: "*Eko uddeso assā ti ek'uddeso, ekato pavattapātimokkh'uddeso ti attho.*" "Ek'uddeso: '(There is) one recitation of it.' '(There is) an ongoing Pātimokkha-recitation as one (body),' is the meaning."

= **eka**: one, single; num. + **uddesa**: recitation; see above Nid. + Pār intro. This refers to there being only one single recitation of the Pātimokkha within the community's monastery-boundary, *sīmā*, with no faction doing their own separate recitation; see Vin I 105 quoted above. See also the note on the purpose of the Pātimokkha in the Introduction.

phāsu: comfortably, at ease; adv. Cf. Nid. Dhp 194: "*Sukhā saṅghassa sāmaggī sāmaggīnaṃ tapo sukho.*" "Pleasant is the unity of the community, the striving of united ones is pleasant."

viharatī ti = **viharati**: dwells; (*vi* + \sqrt{har} + *a*) + **ti**: end quote; see Sd 8.

evañ-ca: and (if) thus; junction of *evaṃ* + *ca* through palatalisation of *ṃ*. =

evaṃ: thus; adv. + **ca:** and (if); connective particle; see Sd 8. The Sa version has the hypothetical particle *cet* “if” here instead of *ca*; see PrMoSa p.172f.

vuccamāno: being spoken to, told, addressed; pr.p. passive (see IP p.52) of \sqrt{vac} ; see above *vacanīya*.

tath’eva: in the same way (as before), in just that manner; junction of *tathā* + *eva* through elision of the final *-ā* of *tathā*. = **tathā:** so, in such manner; adverb of manner, cf. Nid. concl. + **eva:** just; emph. particle.

paggañheyya: should uphold; 3 sg. opt. of *paggañhāti*: see above.

yāvatatiyaṃ: up to the third time; adverb in acc. sg. nt. Abhayībhāva cpd. = **yāva:** up to, until; adv. + **tatiya:** third; ordinal; cf. Nid. concl.

samanubhāsitaḥ: to be argued with, remonstrated with, advised, addressed, Ñm: should be remonstrated with, H: should be admonished; f.p.p. of *samanubhāsati* (*saṃ* + *anu* + $\sqrt{bhās}$ + *a*) agreeing with *bhikkhu*; see IP p.42 & 107.

Vibh & Sp don’t comment upon this word. But according to D-a on D I 163 it means “argues” or “persuades”: “... *kāraṇe dosaṃ dassetvā: “Na tvaṃ idaṃ jānāsi ... idaṃ vissajjehi ti” ...*”: “... having made him see the fault in his argument/reasoning: you don’t know this ... relinquish it!” Cf. M-a II 103 to M I 130: “*Kena kāraṇena evaṃ vadesi ti kāraṇaṃ pucchanta samanubhāsanti nāma.*”: “ “Because of what reasoning do you say so?” asking the reason they challenge.” Ñānamoli/Bodhi render *samanubhāsati* at M I 130 as “cross-questioned.” This verb is often found together with *samanuggāhati*: “interrogates”; see Pār 4.

tassa: of that; gen. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*; refers to the course of misconduct leading to an offence, *vatthu*, lit. “ground [for offence]”. The Vibhaṅga (Vin III 173f) explains that a *ñatticatutthakamma* has to be carried out for the relinquishing of that course (*vatthu*): “*Suñātu me bhante saṅgho. Ayaṃ itthannāmo bhikkhu samaggassa saṅghassa bhedāya parakkamati. So taṃ vatthuṃ na paṭinissajati. Yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ, saṅgho itthannāmaṃ bhikkhuṃ samanubhāseyya tassa vatthussa paṭinissaggāya. Esā ñatti.*”: “Venerable Sir, let the community listen to me. This bhikkhu named such is endeavoring for the schism of a united community. He does not relinquish that course. If it is suitable to the community, it should admonish the monk named such for the relinquishment of that course. This is the motion.”

paṭinissaggāya: for the relinquishment, ... forsaking; dat. sg. m. fr. *paṭinissajati* (*paṭi* + *nis* + $\sqrt{(s)saj(j)}$ + *a*); see below *paṭinissajeyya*. A dative of purpose; see Syntax § 107d.

yāvatatiyañ-ce: junction of *yāvatatiyaṃ* + *ce* through the palatalisation of the final *-ṃ* of *-tatiyaṃ*; see above.

ce: if; conditional particle.

samanubhāsiyamāno: challenging; pr.p. of *samanubhāsati*; see above.

taṃ: that; acc. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ta(d)* referring to the schismatic legal action mentioned earlier in the rule.

paṭinissajeyya: should relinquish; 3 sg. opt. of *paṭinissajati*; see above.

I take the correct reading here to be the one with the single *j* rather than the double *jj*. There is a lot of confusion in the manuscripts and editions between the single and double forms of the root \sqrt{saj} ; see DP I 515 *ussajati* (*ud* + \sqrt{srij}) and 597 *ossajati* (*o/ava* + \sqrt{srij}) and the entry in CDP on *os(s)aj(j)ati*. According to Geiger, PG § 33 n. 4, this might be due to a contamination of the Sanskrit roots \sqrt{srij} and \sqrt{sarj} in Pāli.

Mā-L: *pratinissargāya*, *pratinissareya*; BV 149, PrMoMā-L p.20; Mū: *pratiniḥsargāya*, *pratiniḥsrjet* (LC 7) Cf. MW 666: *pratiniḥ-√srij*. Cf. NP 14: *visajjetvā*, Sd 1: *visaṭṭhi*, NP 1: *nissaggiya*, NP 22: *nissajeyya*.

iccetam: then this (is); = *iti* + *etaṃ* > *ity* + *etaṃ* > *iccetaṃ*. When the vowel *i* is followed by a dissimilar vowel it changes to *y* and then *ty* is palatalised to *cc*; see PG 55, & IP p.215 & 217. Cf. *appeva* in Sd 8, *iccete* in Pāc 57, *pacceka-* in the Nid., and *paccaya* in Pāc 47. = **iti:** thus, so, then; deictic particle; see Pār 3 + **etaṃ:** this; acc. sg. of dem. pron. *eta*.

kusalam: good, skilful; nom. sg. nt.

no: but not, not; negative and adversative particle. The particle *no* is more emphatic than the more common *na*.

ce: (but) if; see above. **paṭinissajeyya**: see above. **saṅghādiseso**: see above.

[Sd 11: Bhedanūvattakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Tass'eva kho pana bhikkhussa bhikkhū honti anuvattakā vaggavādakā, eko vā dve vā tayo vā, te evaṃ vadeyyūṃ: "Mā āyasmanto¹⁹³ etaṃ bhikkhuṃ kiñ-ci avacuttha, dhammavādī c'eso bhikkhu, vinayavādī c'eso bhikkhu, amhākañ-c'eso¹⁹⁴ bhikkhu, chandañ-ca ruciñ-ca ādāya voharati, jānāti no bhāsati, amhākam-p'etaṃ¹⁹⁵ khamatī ti," te bhikkhū bhikkhūhi evaṃ-assu vacanīyā¹⁹⁶: "Mā āyasmanto¹⁹⁷ evaṃ avacuttha. Na c'eso bhikkhu dhammavādī, na c'eso bhikkhu vinayavādī. Mā āyasmantānam-pi¹⁹⁸ saṅghabhedo rucittha.¹⁹⁹ Samet'āyasmantānaṃ saṅghena, samaggo hi saṅgho sammodamāno avivadamāno²⁰⁰ ek'uddeso phāsu viharatī ti," evañ-ca te bhikkhū bhikkhūhi vuccamānā tath'eva paggaṇheyyūṃ, te bhikkhū bhikkhūhi yāvatatiyaṃ samanubhāsittabbā tassa paṭinissaggāya, yāvatatiyañ-ce samanubhāsiyamānā taṃ paṭinissajeyyūṃ²⁰¹ iccetam kusalam, no ce paṭinissajeyyūṃ,²⁰² saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on the followers of the schism]

Now, there are bhikkhus who are followers of that same bhikkhu, [and] who are speaking for [his] faction: one, or two, or three, [and] they should say so: "Venerables, don't say anything to this bhikkhu! This bhikkhu is one who speaks in accordance with the Teaching and this bhikkhu is one who speaks in accordance the Discipline; this [bhikkhu], having received [our] consent and favour defines [the Teaching & Discipline]. Knowing us, he speaks, [and] this suits us too." [Then] those bhikkhus should be spoken to thus by the bhikkhus: "Venerables, don't say so! This bhikkhu does not speak in accordance with the Teaching, and this bhikkhu does not speak in accordance with the Discipline! Don't let the venerables too favour the schism of the community. Let there be convening with the community for the venerables, for a united community, which is on friendly terms, which is not disputing, which has a single recitation, dwells in comfort," and [if] those bhikkhus being spoken to thus by the bhikkhus should persist in the same way [as before], [then] those bhikkhus are to be argued with up to three times by the bhikkhus for the relinquishing of that [course], [and if those bhikkhus] being argued with up to three times, should relinquish that [course], then this is good, [but] if they should not relinquish [it]: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

bhedanānuvattakasikkhāpadaṃ: the training precept on the followers of the schism; nom. sg. nt. Loc. tapp. cpd or appositive kammadhāraya: "the followers of the schism training precept." = **bhedā**: schism; see below + **anuvattaka**: follower; see below.

tass'eva: of that same; junction of *tassa* + *eva* through the elision of the final *a* of *tassa*. = **tassa**: gen. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)* construed with *anuvattakā*; see Syntax 147b. + **eva**: (here:) very, same; emph. particle.

kho pana: now, then; see above Nid.

bhikkhussa: of that bhikkhu; gen. sg. m.

bhikkhū: bhikkhus; nom. pl. m.

honti: there are; 3 pl. pres. ind. of *bhavati* ($\sqrt{bhu} + a$).

anuvattakā: who followers, who are going along (with him), who are following (him), Ñm: who are followers, H: who throw in their lot with him; adjective qualifying *bhikkhū*, Bb cpd. = pref. *anu-*: along, after + *vatta*: moving; action-noun + pleonastic adjectival suf. *-ka*; see Pāc 12: *aññavādake*.

¹⁹³ Dm, Um, UP: *māyasmanto*.

¹⁹⁴ Vibh Ce, Um, W: *amhākaṃ c'eso*.

¹⁹⁵ C, D, W: *amhākaṃ p'etaṃ*.

¹⁹⁶ V: *vacanīyā*.

¹⁹⁷ Dm, Um, UP: *māyasmanto*.

¹⁹⁸ Dm, UP: *māyasmantānam-pi*, Um: *māyasmantānaṃ pi*.

¹⁹⁹ Mi & Mm Se, D, C, G, V, W: *rucittha* (= BhPm 1 & 2 v.l.)

²⁰⁰ G: *avivadamāno*.

²⁰¹ = Vibh Ce, C, D, W. Other eds: *paṭinissajjeyyūṃ*. Cf Sd 11.

²⁰² = Vibh Ce, C, D, W. Other eds: *paṭinissajjeyyūṃ*. Cf Sd 11.

vaggavādakā: who are speaking for (his) faction, who are professing his faction, or: who are speaking for disunity, Ñm: who speak on his side, H: take his part; nom. pl. m. adj. Dat. tapp. cpd. acting as an adjective qualifying *bhikkhū*. = **vagga**: faction, sect. *Vagga* can be equivalent to two Sanskrit words. It can be corresponding to the Sanskrit word *vyagra*: factious, dissentious, Pāli: *vi + agga*, an adj. as opposed to *samagga*; see Sd 10 & Vibh to Sd 10. Vin III 173: “*Bhedāya parakkameyyā ti: kathaṃ ime nānā assu vinā assu vaggā assū ti pakkhaṃ pariyesati gaṇaṃ bandhati.*”: “(Thinking) how could there be variance, separation, disunity for these? He seeks a faction, binds a group,” Vin I 316: “... *vaggattā ... samaggattā ...*” A. I 70: “... *vaggā parisā ca samaggā parisā.*” Vin I 108 & 120: “*Na tveva vaggena saṅghena uposatho kātabbo.*”: “You should not do an observance with a disunited community.”

It can also correspond to the Skt *varga*: a section, group, party; e.g. *cīvaravagga*, after NP 10, and Vin I 319: “... *catuvaggo bhikkhusaṅgho ...*”

It seems that in Pāli the distinction in meaning between the 2 words has blurred sometimes. For double meanings of one Pāli words due to being derived from two or more Sanskrit words, see the end of the note on *dosa*, Sd 8.

Vibh: “... *tassa vaṇṇāya pakkhāya ṭhitā honti.*”: “... they are standing in his rank, his party.” The Vibh. thus supports the *varga* sense.

Sa: *vyagravādina*; PrMoSa p.172. Mā-L: *vargavādakā*; BV 150, PrMoMā-L p.10.

+ **vādaka**: speaking, professing, asserting; = *vāda*: speaking; action-noun + pleonastic adjectival suffix *-ka*; see Pāc 12: *aññavādake*.

eko: one; num. **dve**: two; num. **tayo**: three; num. **vā ... vā ...**: or; disj. particle.

te: they; nom. pl. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. **evam**: thus; adv.

vadeyyum: should say; 3 sg. opt. of *vadati*, cf. Pār 4.

mā: don't; prohibitive article constructed with aor., imp., or opt.

āyasmanto: venerables; voc. pl. m. cf. Nid. The 2nd person plural verb *avacuttha* indicates that a vocative is used here.

etaṃ: this; acc. sg. m. of dem. pron. *eta*. **bhikkhum**: to (this) bhikkhu; acc. sg. m.

kiñ-ci: anything; acc. sg. nt. (= acc. of external object; Syntax § 31) indefinite pronoun here used as a nt. substantive; see PED *kiṃ*. Cf. “*kiñci desaṃ*” at Sd 9 .

avacuttha: you say; 2 pl. aor. of *√vac*; cf. Sd 10. Takes two patients here *bhikkhum* and *kiñci*.

dhammavādī: one who speaks in accordance with Teaching, Ñm: a speaker of the Law, H: one who speaks dhamma; adj. Gen. tapp. cpd. acting as a bb cpd. = **dhamma**: teaching, doctrine + **vādī**: one who speaks, one who is professing, asserting; adjective; = *vāda*; speaking + agent-noun suffix *-in*.

c'eso: and this; = a junction of *ca* and *esa* through the elision of the final *a* of *ca*. = **ca**: and; conn. particle. + **eso**: this; nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *eta(d)*. **bhikkhu**: bhikkhu; nom. sg. m.

vinayavādī: one who speaks in accordance with the Discipline; adj. Gen. tapp. cpd. acting as a bb cpd. = **vinaya**: discipline; fr. *vineti* (*vi + √ni + e*) dispels + **vādī**: see above.

amhākañ-c'eso: = junction of *amhākaṃ* and *c'eso* through palatalisation of *ṃ*. **amhākaṃ**: of us; gen. sg. m. of personal pronoun *amha*. + **c'eso**: see above.

amhākañ-c'eso bhikkhu, chandañ-ca ruciñ-ca ādāya voharati, jānāti no bhāsati, amhākaṃ-p'etaṃ khamati ti: Ñm: he speaks in accordance with our desire and choice, he knows and speaks (for us), and that is our wish, H: and this monk, adopting our desire and objective, gives expression to them, he knows that what he says for us also seems good to us.

chandañ-ca: = junction of *chandaṃ* and *ca* through the palatalisation of the final *ṃ* of *chandaṃ*.

chandaṃ: consent, desire; acc. sg. m. **ca**: and; connective particle.

ruciñ-ca: junction of *ruciṃ* + *ca*.

ruciṃ: favour, choice, pleasure, liking; acc. sg. f. Der. fr. *ruccati* ($\sqrt{ruc} + ya$): agrees with, is pleased with. Cf. Sn 781: “*Sakañhi diṭṭhiṃ kathamaccayeyya, chandānuniṭṭho ruciyaṃ nivāṭṭho, sayaṃ samattāni pakubbamāno, yathā hi jāneyya tathā vadeyya.*”: “For how would someone led on by consent and stuck in his choice, overcome his own view? Making assumptions by himself, he would speak as he knows.”

ādāya: lit. “having taken,” fig. “in accordance with”; abs. of *ādāti* ($\bar{a} + \sqrt{dā} + a$), cf. *upādāya* at Sd 9.

voharati: he defines, expresses; 3 sg. pres. ind. ($vi + ava + \sqrt{har} + a$).

jānāti: he knows; 3 sg. pres. ind. cf. Pār 4.

no: us; enclitic form of the acc. pl. of *amha*, or gen. pl. of us; see Sp below: *amhākaṃ*.

bhāsati: he speaks (to us); 3 sg. pres. ind. ($\sqrt{bhās} + a$).

jānāti no bhāsati: he knows us (and) speaks; or: he knows (and) speaks to us, or in better English: knowing us he speaks, Nm: he knows us and speaks for us, H: “He knows that what he says also seems good to us.”; according to the Sp *jānāti* qualifies *no*. Sp 611: “*Jānāti no ti: amhākaṃ chandādāni jānāti. Bhāsati ti: evaṃ karomā ti amhehi saddhiṃ bhāsati ti. Amhākaṃ p’etaṃ khamatī ti: yaṃ so karoti evaṃ amhākaṃ pi ruccati*”:

“‘He knows us’: he knows of our consent etc. ‘He speaks’: he speaks together with us (saying): ‘Thus we act,’ ‘This suits us too’: whatever he does, so it also agrees to us.”

Mā-L: “*jānan caiso bhikṣu bhaṣate no ajānan*”; BV 150, PrMoMā-L p.10. Sa: “*jānaṃ caisa bhikṣur bhāṣate nājānaṃ*”; PrMoSa p.173. Both can be translated as “... and this bhikkhu speaks knowing, not unknowing.”

amhākaṃ-p’etaṃ: = a junction through labialisation of the final *ṃ* of *amhākaṃ*: dat. sg. m. of *amha*; see above + **pi**: too; emphatic particle of which the *-i* has been elided in the junction with *etaṃ*. + **etaṃ**: this; see above

khamatī ti = **khamati**: (it) agrees, suits, is acceptable; 3 sg. pres. ind. ($\sqrt{kham} + a$) takes a dative of interest: *amhākaṃ*; see Syntax § 98a. + **ti**: “...,” end quote; indeclinable that lengthens the final vowel in the preceding word; see “*parisuddhā ti*” in the Nid.

te bhikkhū bhikkhūhi evam-assu vacanīyā mā āyasmanto: as in Sd 10, but what is singular there is plural here.

evaṃ: thus; see above. **avacuttha**: you say; see above. **na**: not; neg. particle.

c’eso bhikkhu dhammavādī na ceso bhikkhu vinayavādī mā: see above.

āyasmantānaṃ-pi: to the venerables too; a junction of *āyasmantānaṃ* and *pi* through labialisation of *ṃ*.

āyasmantānaṃ: dat. pl. of *āyasmā*, cf. Nid.

pi: too, also; emphatic particle.

saṅghabhedo: schism of the community; nom. sg. m., gen. tapp. cpd. Cf. Sd 10.

ruccittha: let be your choice; 2 pl. aor. of *ruccati*, takes dat. of interest.

samet’āyasmantānaṃ saṅghena: let there be convening with the community for the venerables.

samet’āyasmantānaṃ: junction of *sametu* + *āyasmantānaṃ* through elision of the final *-u* of *āyasmantānaṃ*.

āyasmantānaṃ: for the venerables; here the dat. pl. is used instead of the nom. sg. of Sd 10.

Why is there a change from nominative to dative? Sp takes it to be a genitive: “*Samet’āyasmantānaṃ saṅghenā ti: āyasmantānaṃ cittaṃ saṅghena saddhiṃ sametu samāgacchatu, ekībhaṇṇaṃ yātū ti vuttaṃ hoti.*” “...: let the mind of the venerables convene, meet together, with the community, let it proceed to a state of unity, is said.”

The verb *sameti* is normally constructed with a dative of the person for whom something else is agreeable, e.g. M II 239 f.: “*āyasmantānaṃ kho atthato hi sameti ...*”: “there is agreement to the venerables as to the meaning...,” Th 1036: “*navehi na sameti me*”: “to me there is no agreement with the new ones”; cf. M II 107, S II 285.

Sameti is impersonal (“There is agreement/convening”) and thus singular. In this Sd rule *sameti* is impersonal and takes a dative of advantage. Syntax § 98b: “the impersonal *sameti* ... takes the dative of the person for whom someone else (put in the instrumental) is agreeable or favourable.”

However, occasionally it is personalised and has a nominative agent, e.g. Ud 42: “*sameti cittaṃ cittena*”: “mind

agrees/convenes with mind” and S II 157: “... *telaṃ telena saṃsandati sameti*”: “oil flows together (and) convenes with oil” and this is the case in Sd 10: “*samet’āyasmā saṅghena*.”

In the Mā-L version the verb *sametu* has changed from singular 3 sg. imp. to 3 pl. imp.: *samentu*, while *āyusman* has changed from the nom. sg. to the nom. pl. *āyusmanto*.

Mā-L rule 10: “*sametu āyusman sārđhaṃ saṅghena*”; BV 149.

Mā-L Sd 11: “*samentu āyusmanto sārđhaṃ saṅghena*”; BV 150.

The rest is as at Sd 10, except that what is singular there is plural here.

[Sd 12: Dubbacasikkhāpadam]

Bhikkhu pan’eva dubbacajātiko hoti, uddesapariyāpannesu sikkhāpadesu bhikkhūhi sahadhammikaṃ vuccamāno attānaṃ avacanīyaṃ karoti: “Mā maṃ āyasmanto kiñ-ci avacuttha, kalyāṇaṃ vā pāpakaṃ vā, aham-p’āyasmante na kiñ-ci vakkhāmi, kalyāṇaṃ vā pāpakaṃ vā. Viramathāyasmanto mama vacanāyā ti”, so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi evam-assa vacanīyo:²⁰³ “Mā āyasmā²⁰⁴ attānaṃ avacanīyaṃ akāsi. Vacanīyam-evāyasmā²⁰⁵ attānaṃ karotu. Āyasmā pi bhikkhū vadetu²⁰⁶ saha dhammena,²⁰⁷ bhikkhū pi āyasmantaṃ vakkhanti saha dhammena. Evaṃsaṃvaddhā²⁰⁸ hi tassa bhagavato parisā, yad-idaṃ aññamaññavacanena aññamaññavuṭṭhāpanenā ti,” evañ-ca so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi vuccamāno tath’eva paggaṇheyya, so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi yāvatatiyaṃ samanubhāsitaṃ tassa paṭinissaggāya, yāvatatiyañ-ce samanubhāsīyamāno taṃ paṭinissajeyya²⁰⁹ iccetaṃ kusalaṃ, no ce paṭinissajeyya,²¹⁰ saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on being of a nature difficult to be spoken to]

Now, a bhikkhu is of a nature difficult to be spoken to, [and when] being righteously spoken to by the bhikkhus about the training precepts included in the recitation, he makes himself [one] who can not be spoken to [saying]: “Venerables, don’t say anything good or bad to me, and I too shall not say anything good or bad to the venerables! Venerables, refrain from speaking to me!” [Then] that bhikkhu should be spoken to thus by the bhikkhus: “Let the venerable one not make himself [one] who cannot be spoken to. Let the venerable one make himself [one] who can be spoken to. Let the venerable one speak to the bhikkhus with righteousness and the monks too will speak to the venerable one with righteousness. For the Blessed One’s assembly has grown thus, that is, by the speaking of one to another, by the rehabilitating of one another,” and [if] that bhikkhu being spoken to thus by the bhikkhus should persist in the same way [as before], [then] that bhikkhu is to be argued with up to three times by the bhikkhus for the relinquishing of that [course], [and if that bhikkhu,] being argued with up to three times, should relinquish that [course], then this is good, [but] if he should not relinquish [it]: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

bhikkhu: a bhikkhu; nom. sg. m.

pan’eva: now, now if, further, H: if; junction of *pana* + *eva* in which the final -a of *pana* is elided; PG § 70,1b. =

pana: again, and now; conn. particle; see above Nid. + **eva:** just; emph. particle.

dubbacajātiko: who is of a nature difficult to be spoken to, Ńm: naturally difficult to admonish, H: one who is difficult to speak to; adj. qualifying *bhikkhu*. Bb cpd. = **dubbaca:** difficult to be spoken to; adj. = kammadhāraya used as b.b. cpd. = pref. **dur-**: difficult, hard; see Pār 1: *dubbalya* + **vaca:** to be spoken to; usually *vaca* means speech, cf. Pāc 7, but here *vaca* is derived from the verbal stem *vaca* like other similar

²⁰³ V: *vacanīyo*. (Not so *avacanīyaṃ* and *vacanīyaṃ* below.)

²⁰⁴ See Sd 10.

²⁰⁵ Vibh Ee, Mm Se, BhPm 2, D: “... *vacanīyaṃ eva āyasmā*.” V: “... *vacanīyameva āyasmā*.”

²⁰⁶ Dm, Be Sp, Um: *vadatu*.

²⁰⁷ All printed editions, except Ra and BhPm 1 & 2: *sahadhammena*.

²⁰⁸ Mi & Mm Se, G, Um: *-vaḍḍhā*. All printed editions: *evaṃ saṃvaddhā*. Mi & Mm Se, G, V, Um: *-vaḍḍhā*.

²⁰⁹ = D, W, Vibh Ce (but has *-nissajeyya* in Pāc 68), Other eds.: *-nissajeyya*. C reads *-nissajeyya* here but *-nissajeyya* in Sd 12–13 and Pāc 68.

²¹⁰ As in previous note.

nouns such as “*duddasa*,” “*duranubodha*,” “*dubbinaya*,” “*susambudha*” etc; see IP p.188. The double *-bb-* is due to the assimilation of the final *-r* of *dur-* and the initial *-v* of *vaca* into *-vv-*, which then changes to *-bb-* as the consonant combinations *-rv-* and *-vv-* don’t occur in Pāli; see *dubbalya* at Pār 1.

The opposite form is *suvaro/subbaco*: easily spoken to. Sp III 612: “*Dubbaco ti: dukkheṇa kicchena vaditabbo, na sakkā sukhena vattun-ti attho*.”: “Difficult to be spoken to: with pain and difficulty he is to be spoken to; it is not possible to speak with ease is the meaning.” Kkh 79: “... *dubbacasabhāvo, vattuṃ asakkuṇeyyo ti attho*.”: “... with a nature of being difficult to be spoken to, one is not able to speak is the meaning.” Cf. BD I 310 n.1. + **jātika**: (here:) nature, character, lit. birth = **jāti**: birth + conn. suf. **-ika**.

hoti: he is; 3 sg. pres. ind.; the contracted form of *bhavati*; cf. Nid.

uddesapariyāpannesu: included in the recitation (of the Pātimokkha); adj. qualifying *sikkhāpadesu*. Bb cpd. = **uddesa**: recitation; see Pār intro. Padabhājana: “*Pātimokkhapariyāpannesu sikkhāpadesu*.” The Pātimokkha recitation is referred to as *uddesa*; see Pāc 73, Pātimokkha Concl., Sd 10, A I 230 + **pariyāpanna**: included; p.p. of *pariyāpajjati* (*pari* + \sqrt{pad} + *ya*): goes completely into, include.

sikkhāpadesu: with regards the training precepts; loc. pl. nt. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **sikkhā**: training; see Pār 1 + **pada**: rule, item, part, constituent, lit. “path.”

bhikkhūhi: by bhikkhus; ins. pl. m.

sahadhammikaṃ: righteously, reasonably, legitimately, in accordance with the law, H: according to dhamma, Ñm: lawfully; adjective (bb cpd) used as an adverb of manner; see Syntax § 52 and Bodhi 2000, p.747 n. 72 (to S II 33). = **saha**: with; pref. + **dhamma**: the Teaching + conn. suf. **-ika**; cf. Pāc 71, 79, and M I 231: “*Yo ... tathāgatena ... sahadhammikaṃ pañhaṃ puṭṭho*.”

vuccamāno: being spoken to, admonished; pr.p. see Sd 10.

attānaṃ: himself; acc. sg. m. of *attā*. = reflexive pron.; see Sd 4: *attakāma*.

avacanīyaṃ: one who cannot be spoken to, Ñm: unadmonishable; adj. Bb cpd. qualifying *attānaṃ*. Neg. pref. *a-*: not + *vacanīya*: to be spoken to; see Sd 10.

karoti: he makes; 3 sg. pres. ind. (\sqrt{kar} + *o*)

maṃ: to me; acc. sg. m. of pers. pron. *amha*.

mā ... āyasmanto kiñ-ci avacuttha: see above Sd 11.

kalyāṇaṃ: good; adjective qualifying *kiñ-ci* (here an acc. sg. nt. noun; see Sd 11), or an adjective qualifying an unexpressed *dhammaṃ* or *kiñ-ci*. Cf. Sd 4. **vā ... vā ...**: or ... or ...; disjunctive particle.

pāpakaṃ: bad; adj. Cf. Pār 3.

mā maṃ āyasmanto kiñ-ci avacuttha, kalyāṇaṃ vā pāpakaṃ vā: venerables, don’t say anything good or bad to me, Ñm: let the venerables not admonish me at all about what is either good or what is bad, H: do not say anything to me, venerables, either good or bad. Ñm translates *kiñ-ci* as an adverb but that would be unusual. Like in Sd 11 it rather seems to act as an accusative neuter substantive with *kalyāṇa* and *pāpaka* qualifying it as adjectives. Ñm translates it as a pronoun to both *kalyāṇaṃ* and *pāpakaṃ* and taking these as abstract nouns in neuter gender; see IP p.62. This seems unlikely, but it is not impossible since the root \sqrt{vac} can take two patients; see Syntax § 58,c,i, and IP p.18.

aham-p’āyasmante = *ahaṃ pi āyasmante*: junction of *ahaṃ* + *pi* + *āyasmante* through labialisation of the final *-ṃ* of *ahaṃ*, and the elision of the *-i* of *pi*.

ahaṃ: I; nom. sg. pron. **pi**: also; emph. particle. **āyasmante**: to the venerables; acc. pl. m.

na: not; neg. particle. **kiñ-ci**: anything; indef. pron.; see Sd 9.

vakkhāmi: I shall say; 1 sg. fut. of \sqrt{vac} .

viramathāyasmanto: junction of *viramatha* + *āyasmanto* through contraction; PG § 69,1.= **viramatha**: refrain from, abstain; 2 pl. imp. of *viramati* (*vi* + \sqrt{ram} + *a*), takes abl. (Cf. the five training precepts for lay-people formula: “*pāṇātipātā veramaṇī ...*”) + **āyasmanto**.

mama: to me; dat. sg. of pers. pron. *ma(d)*.

vacanāyā ti: = **vacanāya:** speaking to; dat. sg. nt. of action-noun *vacana*, √*vac* + action-noun suffix *-ana*. Normally *viramati* takes an ablative, but the ending *-āya* is dative in neuter stems. Occasionally there appears to be an assimilation of an ablative to a preceding dative in Pāli and here there is assimilation with the preceding *mama*. Cf. D II 27: "Yassa ... aññatra tathāgatassā ti." and Syntax § 143. + **ti:** "...," end quote; indeclinable that causes lengthening of the final vowel of *vacanāya*; cf. Nid.

so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi evam-assa vacanīyo mā āyasmā: see Sd 10.

akāsi: make; 2 sg. aor. of *karoti*.

vacanīyam-evāyasmā: a junction of *vacanīyam* and *eva* through weakening of the final *-ṃ* of *vacanīyam* and a junction of *eva* and *āyasmā* through contraction.

eva: just; emph. particle.

āyasmā: the venerable one; nom. sg. m. With a 3rd person verb the nominative is used, not a vocative; see Sd 10.

karotu: let make; 3 sg. imp. of *karoti*.

pi: also; emph. particle.

vadetu: let speak to; 3 sg. imp. of *vadeti* (√*vad* + *e*). Regarding the variant reading *vadatu* (√*vad* + *a*): Be Vibh & Vibh Ee have *vadeti* in the origin-story: "So *evam vadeti*: ... *vadeyyam*." Be & Ee Sp comment upon it with *vadatu*, see below. *Vadeti* is not a causative form (which is *vādeti*) and is just an alternative verbal class 10 form of *vadati*, see PG § 139,2 and PED s.v. *vadati*.

Mā-L: *vadatu*; BV 154, PrMoMā-L p.11 Sa: *vadatu*; PrMoSa p.178.

saha: with; indecl. *Saha* is here not taken as a prefix but as an indeclinable that takes the instrumental *dhammena*; see Syntax § 64d and the note to Pāc 5: *mātugāmena saha*. However, as some instrumentals are used as adverbs of manner, *sahadhammena* could be taken as one word corresponding to the adverb *sahadhammikaṃ*.

dhammena: with righteousness, with legitimacy, with lawfulness; ins. sg. m. Cf. the adverb *sahadhammikaṃ* above. It might refer to *vacanena* & *vuṭṭhāpanena* below. Sp: "*vadetu* (Be: *vadatu*) *saha dhammenā ti sahadhammikenā sikkhāpadena saha dhammena vā aññena pi pāsādikabhāvasaṃvattanikena vacanena vadatu* (= Be, Ee)." "Speak with legitimacy: speak with a legitimate training precept or with another speech leading to a pleasant state."

āyasmantaṃ: to the venerable one; acc. sg. m.

vakkhanti: they shall speak to, admonish; 3 pl. fut. of √*vac* (of which the present is not found.).

evamsaṃvaddhā: thus-grown, Ñm: comes to growth thus, H: thus is the multitude increased for the lord, Norman: has come to growth thus; adj. qualifying *parisā*. Bb cpd. This is a compound, like *evamvādin* (see DP s.v. *evam*), rather than two words as the editions have it. It refers to the past growth rather than to the future growth. = **evam:** thus; indecl. + **saṃvaddhā:** grown, prospered; adj. qualifying *parisā*. = p.p. of *saṃvaddhati* (*saṃ* + √*vaddh* + *a*), Cf. A IV 21: "Yāvakiṃvañ-ca bhikkhū samaggā sannipatissanti, samaggā vuṭṭhahissanti, samaggā saṅghakaraṇīyāni karissanti, vuddhi yeva bhikkhūnaṃ pāṭikaṅkhā no parihāni.": "For as long as the bhikkhus sit down in unity, rise in unity, do community-business in unity, growth can be expected for the bhikkhus, not decline."

hi: for, because; emph. particle.

tassa: of that; gen. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

bhagavato: of the Blessed One; gen. sg. m. of *bhagavā*, cf. Nid.

parisā: assembly; nom. sg. f. Cf. Nid. + NP 22.

yad-idam: that is, that is to say, i.e.; junction of rel. pron. *ya(d)* + *idaṃ* in which the Skt *-d* is restored to avoid hiatus; see Sd 4 *etadaggaṃ* & Pāc 16: *etad-eva*. Warder states that it is an indeclinable emphatic demonstrative; IP p.73. Cf. the masculine form *yo so* (NP 22) with a different demonstrative, and *seyyathidaṃ* at NP 23.

= **yad:** nt. of rel. pron. *ya(d)*: what. + **idaṃ:** this; nt. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

aññamaññavacanena: by the speaking of one to one another, Ñm: by mutual admonishment; ins. sg. nt. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **aññamañña**: one another, each other, mutual; lit. another to another; acc. sg. m. reciprocal pronoun. The *m* of *aññamaññam* has been elided in the junction with *vacanena*; cf. Pār 3: “*tuyh’iminā*.” DP suggests it is *añña-m-añña*. PED = *añña*: another one + *añña*: another one + **vacana**: speaking; see above *vacanāya*.

aññamaññavuṭṭhāpanenā ti: by the rehabilitating of one another, Ñm: by mutual rehabilitation, H: by assisting one another; Gen. tapp. cpd. = **aññamañña** + **vuṭṭhāpanena**: emerging, raising out of, rehabilitation; ins. sg. nt. Action-noun fr. *vuṭṭhāpeti*: makes emerge, makes rehabilitated; the causative of *vuṭṭhāti* (*vi* + *ud* + *√tha* + *a*): rouses, emerges. PED takes it as hiatus filler *-v-* + *utthāti*. It is often used, as here, in relation to “emerging” from offences through confession, e.g. Vin I 64: “*āpattiyaṃ vuṭṭhāna*.” The Skt form is *utthāpana* and the *-v-* is a fossilised junction consonant; see the note on *voropeti* at Pār 3. + **ti**: “...,” end quote; cf. Nid.

evañ-ca ... saṅghādiseso: as in Sd 10 but what is sg. there is pl. here.

[Sd 13: Kuladūsakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhikkhu pañeva aññataraṃ gāmaṃ vā nigamaṃ vā upanissāya viharati kuladūsako pāpasamācāro. Tassa kho²¹¹ pāpakā samācārā dissanti c’eva suyyanti²¹² ca, kulāni ca tena duṭṭhāni dissanti c’eva suyyanti²¹³ ca, so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi evam-assa vacanīyo:²¹⁴ “Āyasmā kho kuladūsako pāpasamācāro. Āyasmato kho pāpakā samācārā dissanti c’eva suyyanti²¹⁵ ca, kulāni cāyasmatā duṭṭhāni dissanti c’eva suyyanti²¹⁶ ca. Pakkamat’āyasmā imamahā āvāsā. Alaṃ te²¹⁷ idha vāsenā ti,”²¹⁸ evañ-ca so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi vuccamāno te bhikkhū evaṃ vadeyya: “Chandagāmino ca bhikkhū, dosagāmino ca bhikkhū, mohagāmino ca bhikkhū, bhayagāmino ca bhikkhū, tādīsikāya āpattiyaṃ ekaccaṃ pabbājenti, ekaccaṃ na pabbājenti ti,” so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi evam-assa vacanīyo: “Mā āyasmā²¹⁹ evaṃ avaca, na ca bhikkhū chandagāmino, na ca bhikkhū dosagāmino, na ca bhikkhū mohagāmino, na ca bhikkhū bhayagāmino. Āyasmā kho kuladūsako pāpasamācāro, āyasmato kho pāpakā samācārā dissanti c’eva suyyanti²²⁰ ca, kulāni cāyasmatā duṭṭhāni dissanti c’eva suyyanti²²¹ ca. Pakkamat’āyasmā imamahā āvāsā. Alaṃ te²²² idha vāsenā ti,” evañ-ca so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi vuccamāno tath’eva paggaṇheyya, so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi yāvatatiyaṃ samanubhāsitaṃ tassa paṭinissaggāya, yāvatatiyañ-ce samanubhāsiyamāno taṃ paṭinissajeyya²²³ iccetaṃ kusalaṃ, no ce paṭinissajeyya,²²⁴ saṅghādiseso.

[The training precept on the spoiler of families]

Now, a bhikkhu lives dependent upon a certain village or town who is a spoiler of families, who is of bad behaviour. His bad behaviour is seen and is heard about, and the families spoilt by him are seen and heard about. That bhikkhu is to be spoken to thus by the bhikkhus: “The venerable one is a spoiler of families, one who is of bad behaviour. The bad behaviour of the venerable one is seen and is heard about, and the families spoilt by the venerable one are seen and are heard about. Let the venerable one depart from this dwelling-place! Enough of you dwelling here!” and [if] that bhikkhu being spoken to thus by the bhikkhus should say thus to those bhikkhus: “The bhikkhus are driven by desire; the bhikkhus are

²¹¹ BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, G, V, W, Ra: *tassa pāpakā* ...

²¹² C, D, W: *sūyanti*.

²¹³ C, D, W: *sūyanti*.

²¹⁴ V: *vacanīyo*.

²¹⁵ C, D, W: *sūyanti*.

²¹⁶ C, D, W: *sūyanti*.

²¹⁷ Mi & Mm Se, BhPm 1 & 2, C, G, V, W, Um, Ra: *alan-te*.

²¹⁸ BhPm 1 & 2, Um, Vibh Ee: *idhavāsenā ti*.

²¹⁹ As in Sd 10.

²²⁰ C, D, W: *sūyanti*.

²²¹ C, D, W: *sūyanti*.

²²² Mi & Mm Se, BhPm 1 & 2, C, G, V, W, Um, Ra: *alan-te*.

²²³ = D, W, Vibh Ce (but has *-nissajjeyya* in Pāc 68), Other eds.: *-nissajjeyya*. C reads *-nissajjeyya* here but *-nissajeyya* in Sd 12–13 and Pāc 68.

²²⁴ As in previous note.

driven by anger; the bhikkhus are driven by delusion; the bhikkhus are driven by fear. They banish someone because of this kind of offence, [but] another one they do not banish.” [Then] that bhikkhu is to be spoken to thus by the bhikkhus: “Let the venerable one not speak thus! The bhikkhus are not driven by desire; and the bhikkhus are not driven by anger; and the bhikkhus are not driven by delusion; and the bhikkhus are not driven by fear. The venerable one is a spoiler of families, one who is of bad behaviour. The bad behaviour of the venerable one is seen and is heard about, and the families spoilt by the venerable one are seen and are heard about. Let the venerable one depart from this dwelling-place! Enough of you dwelling here!” and [if] that bhikkhu being spoken to thus by the bhikkhus should persist in the same way [as before], [then] that bhikkhu is to be argued with up to three times by the bhikkhus for the relinquishing of that [course], [and if that bhikkhu,] being argued with up to three times, should relinquish that [course], then this is good, [but] if he should not relinquish [it]: [this is a case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure].

bhikkhu pan’eva: “now, a bhikkhu ...”; see Sd 12.

aññataram: some, one or another, a certain; adjective; see above Nid. concl.

gāmaṃ: village; acc. sg. m. **vā**: or; disj. particle.

nigamaṃ: town; acc. sg. m.

upanissāya: dependent upon (for support; i.e., for alms, etc.); indeclinable, originally an abs. of *upanissayati* (*upa + nis + √(s)sī + ya*), which takes an accusative of the thing governed; see Syntax § 55, cf. *uddissa* in NP 8–10. *Upanissāya* can be regarded as a postposition; see IP p.239.

viharati: he lives, dwells; 3 sg. pres. ind. (*vi + √har + a*). Here an auxiliary verb expressing duration; see IP p.239.

kuladūsako: one who is spoiling families, one who is a spoiler of families, Ñm: who is a corrupter of families, H: one who brings a family into disrepute; adjective qualifying bhikkhu. Acc. or gen. tapp. cpd. acting as a bb cpd qualifying *bhikkhu*. = **kula**: family, clan + **dūsaka**: one who is spoiling, spoiler, corrupter; agent-noun. = *dūsa*: spoiling; action-noun fr. *√dus* + agent-noun suffix *-aka* causing lengthening in the root *√dus*; see Pāc 12. Cf. *duṭṭha* below.

pāpasamācāro: who is of bad behaviour, Ñm: of bad behaviour, H: of depraved conduct; adjective qualifying *bhikkhu*. Kammadhāraya cpd used as bb cpd. = **pāpa**: bad + **samācāra**: behaviour, conduct, activity; action-noun fr. *samācarati* (*saṃ + ā + √car + a*): behaves, acts, practises.

tassa: of him; gen. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. **kho**: no need to translate.; emphatic particle.

pāpakā: bad; adjective qualifying *samācārā*; cf. Sd 12.

samācārā: behaviour, conduct, activities, practices; nom. pl. m. Although the *samācārā* is plural here and should literally be translated as “behaviours,” this sounds odd in English and it has been translated as “behaviour” instead, which carries a plural sense.

dissanti: are seen; 3 pl. pres. ind. pass. of *√dis*.

c’eva: = junction of *ca + eva* in which the *-a* of *ca* is elided.

ca ... ca ...: both ... and; connective particle. **eva**: just; emph. particle.

suyyanti: are heard; 3 pl. pres. ind. pass. of *suṇāti*; see above Nid.

kulāni: families; nom. pl. nt. of *kula*; see above.

tena: by him; 3 sg. ins. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

duṭṭhāni: spoiled, corrupted; p.p. of *dussati* used as adj. qualifying *kulāni*; see Sd 8.

so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi evam-assa vacanīyo: see Sd 10.

āyasmā: venerable one; nom. sg. m. **āyasmato**: of the venerable one; gen. sg. m.

cāyasmatā: = junction of *ca + āyasmatā* by way of contraction; PG § 69.

āyasmatā: by the venerable one; ins. sg. m.

pakkamat'āyasmā: junction of *pakkamatu* and *āyasmā* through elision of the final *-u* of *pakkamatu*. = **pakkamatu:** let depart, let leave; 3 sg. imp. of *pakkamati* (*pa* + √*kam* + *a*): leaves, departs; cf. Pāc 14 + **āyasmā:** see above.

imamhā: from this; abl. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

āvāsā: dwelling-place, residence; abl. sg. m. fr. *āvasati* (*ā* + √*vas* + *a*) resides.

alam: enough; an indeclinable that takes an instrumental or a dative. It is not clear whether *alam* here takes the dative *te*, or the instrumental *vāsenā*, or both. *Alaṃ* with an instrumental expresses an invitation to stop; Syntax § 82b. *Alaṃ* with a noun in dative denotes a person for whom something is fit or proper; see Pār 4: *alam-ariya*, and Syntax § 108d.

te: for you; dat. sg. of pers. pron. *tvaṃ*.

idha: here; adv.

vāsenā ti: = **vāsenā:** dwelling; ins. sg. nt. action-noun; = √*vas* + action-noun suf. *-ana* + **ti:** "...," end quote; cf. Nid.

evañ-ca so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi vuccamāno: see Sd 10. **te bhikkhū evaṃ:** see Sd 11.

vadeyya: should say; 3 sg. opt. of *vadati* (√*vad* + *a*): says.

chandagāmino: driven by desire, moved by desire, going by desire; adjective qualifying *bhikkhū*. nom. pl. of *chandagāmi*; = **chanda:** desire + **-gāmin:** moved by, lit. going; adj. used in cpds.

dosa: hate, **moha:** delusion, **bhaya:** fear.

tādisikāya: this kind of, of such kind; Adjective qualifying *āpattiya*. Ins. sg. f. of adj. **tādisika** = *tādī*: such; fr. dem. pron. *ta(d)* + √*dis*: to see; cf. *mādisaṃ*; Sd 4. + conn. suf. *-ika*. It takes the ins. sg. ending of the feminines in *ā*; see IP p.9 & 61.

āpattiya: because of an offence, due to an offence; ins. sg. f. of *āpatti*. Instrumental of cause or motive; see IP pp.44–45.

ekaccaṃ: someone, a certain one; acc. sg. nt.; see PG 113,9. = *eka* + *ya* > *eka-t-ya* > *ekacca*; see Sd 10: *iccetam* & PG 73,5.

ekaccaṃ ... ekaccaṃ ...: someone ... another one ...; see PG 113,9.

pabbājenti: they banish; 3 pl. pres. ind. of *pabbājeti*, the causative of *pabbajati*—see Pār 2. This *bhikkhu* is referring to the legal act of banishment, *pabbājaniyakamma*. One of the acts of punishment, *daṇḍakamma*, which the Saṅgha can impose on an erring *bhikkhu*. A *bhikkhu* on whom this punishment has been imposed has to leave the area of his residence; see Dhirasekera 118–121.

ekaccaṃ na pabbājenti ti. So ... avaca: see above.

na: not; neg. particle. For the rest see above.

[Saṅghādisesa conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhā kho āyasmanto terasa saṅghādisesā dhammā, nava paṭhamāpattikā²²⁵ cattāro yāvatatiyakā. Yesaṃ bhikkhu aññataram vā aññataram vā āpajjitvā, yāvatiham²²⁶ jānaṃ paṭicchādeti, tāvatiham²²⁷ tena bhikkhunā akāmā parivatthabbaṃ.²²⁸ Parivutthaparivāsenā²²⁹ bhikkhunā uttariṃ²³⁰ chārattaṃ bhikkhumānattāya paṭipajjitabbaṃ. Ciṇṇamānatto bhikkhu, yattha siyā vīsatiṅgaṇo bhikkhusaṅgho,²³¹ tattha so bhikkhu²³² abbhetabbo. Ekena pi ce ūno²³³ vīsatiṅgaṇo bhikkhusaṅgho taṃ bhikkhuṃ abhheyya,

²²⁵ V: *patham-*

²²⁶ Be, UP, G, V: *yāvatiham*.

²²⁷ Be, UP, G, V: *tāvatiham*.

²²⁸ V: *parivaṭṭhabbaṃ*.

²²⁹ V: *parivutṭha-*.

²³⁰ Dm, Vibh Ce, Um: *uttari*.

²³¹ BhPm 1, C, V, W: *-saṅgho*.

²³² Mi v.l.: *bhikkhu bhikkhūhi*.

²³³ V, Bh Pm 2 (syāma) v.l.: *ono*. Um, G: *ūno*.

so ca bhikkhu anabbhito, te ca bhikkhū gārayhā. Ayaṃ tattha sāmīci.

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Dutiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Tatiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Parisuddh'etthāyasmanto, tasmā tuṇhī, evam-etaṃ dhārayāmi.²³⁴

*Saṅghādisesuddeso niṭṭhito.*²³⁵

Venerables, the thirteen cases [concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure] have been recited, nine [cases] are of the offence-at-once [-class], four [cases] are of the up-to-the-third [time admonition-class]. A bhikkhu who has committed any one of [these offenses], has to stay on probation with no choice [in the matter] for as many days as he knowingly conceals [it]. Moreover, by a bhikkhu who has stayed on the probation, a six-night state of deference to [other] bhikkhus has to be entered upon. [When] the bhikkhu [is one by whom] the deference has been performed: wherever there may be a community of bhikkhus, which is a group of twenty [or more bhikkhus], there that bhikkhu should be reinstated. If a community of bhikkhus, which is a group of twenty deficient by even one [bhikkhu], should reinstate that bhikkhu [then] that bhikkhu is not reinstated, and those monks are blameworthy. This is the proper procedure here.

Concerning that I ask the venerables: [Are you] pure in this?

A second time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

A third time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

The venerables are pure in this, therefore there is silence, so do I bear this [in mind].

The recitation concerning the community in the beginning and the rest [of the procedure] is finished.

uddiṭṭhā kho āyasmanto: see Nid concl.

terasa saṅghādisesā dhammā: see Sd intro.

nava: nine; numeral.

paṭhamāpattikā: which are of the offence-at-once-class, (lit. “first offence-ish”), Ñm: being established on the first transgression, H: which become offence at once; adj. qualifying *dhammā*. Bb cpd. = **paṭhama:** first, at once; ordinal + **āpattika:** belonging to the offence; = *āpatti:* offence + connective adjectival suf. -ka. Cf. Vin IV 226: “bhikkhunī paṭhamāpattikaṃ dhammaṃ āpannaṃ.”

cattāro: four; numeral.

yāvatatīyakā: which are of the (challenging) up to the third time-class, H: which are not completed until the third admonition; adj. qualifying *dhammā*. Bb cpd. **yāva:** as far as, up to; indecl. + **tatiya:** third: ordinal + connective adjectival suf. -ka. Ñm renders: “being established on the third transgression.” This is incorrect for what is meant here are the three challenges by other bhikkhus for giving up the wrong course. If the bhikkhu does not relinquish his behaviour upon the third challenge then he incurs the Sd offence.

yesaṃ bhikkhu aññataraṃ vā aññataraṃ vā āpajjitvā: a bhikkhu who has committed any one of which; see Pār concl.

yāvatihaṃ ... tāvatihaṃ ...: lit. for as many days ... for so many days; i.e., for as many days as; adverbs in

²³⁴ = Mm Se, Ra, BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, G, V, W.

²³⁵ Ñd Ce, UP, Mi Se: *Saṅghādisesuddeso tatiyo*. Dm: *Saṅghādiseso niṭṭhito*.

acc. sg. nt. Abbayibhāva cpds. = relative clause with the adverbs of time **yāva** & **tāva** + **-t-**: hiatus-filler + **iha** = *aha*: day; nt. Cf. NP 1: *dasāha*. *Yāvatiham* & *tāvatiham* are abbayibhāva adverbial cpds in acc. sg. nt. Other relative clause constructions: *yattha/tattha*, Sd concl; *yena/tena*, Aniy 1; *yaṃ/taṃ*, NP 10 & Pāc 73; *yāva/tāva*, Pāc 71; *yo/so*, NP 22; *ye/te*, Pāc 68; *yāni/tāni*, NP 29; *yato/tattha*, NP 10; *yassa/so*, Pāc 84; *tassa/yaṃ*, NP 22; see IP p.71 & 291f.

jānaṃ: knowingly; nom. sg. m. Pr.p. of *jānāti* used like an adverb, or agreeing with *bhikkhu* (“(though) knowing it”); see note on *jānaṃ* at Pār 4.

paṭicchādeti: he conceals; 3 sg. pres. ind. (*paṭi* + $\sqrt{\text{chad}}$ + *e*); cf. Pāc 64.

tena: by that; ins. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

bhikkhunā: by (that) *bhikkhu*; ins. sg. m.

akāmā: without choice, involuntarily, whether one likes it or not, against one’s will, unwillingly, Ñm: with no choice in the matter, H: even against his will; kammadhāraya used as ins. sg. m. adverb. (Probably not an ablative of cause as DP suggests). = instrumental of attendant circumstances, see Syntax § 75c and 65c, ending in *-ā* (see *sahatthā* at NP 16); = neg. pref. *a-* + *kāma*: desire, liking, will; m. An idiom that is difficult to translate. Sp: “*Akāmā parivattabbāna-ti na kāmena, na vāsena, atha kho akāmena avāsena parivāsaṃ samādāya vatthabbaṃ*.”: “With no choice/liking, with no control/authority. Then with no choice/liking, no control he has to dwell having undertaken the probation period.” Cf. Vin I 282–83/Mv VIII,4: “... *akāmā bhāgaṃ dātuṃ*.”: “to give a share with no choice.” Sp 1120: “... *anicchāya dātuṃ*.”: “... to give against their choice.”

D-a 263: “*attanā anicchāya*”: “not with his own choice.”

The commentaries explanations: *akāmena* & *anicchāya*, suggest it to be an instrumental in *-ā*. Some masculine instrumentals in *-ā* are instrumentals of means, e.g. *sahatthā* at Pāc 41; see Syntax § 6, 66a, 67, and 122.

parivattabbam: is to stay on probation; nom. sg. nt. of the f.p.p. of *parivasati* (*pari* + $\sqrt{\text{vas}}$ + *a*): stays, dwells, spends for a certain amount of time, agreeing with an unexpressed *taṃ*.

For the *parivāsa* and *mānatta* procedures, see BMC I, pp.154–156, TP xlix-li, Nolot 1996, and Vajirañāṇavarorasa, *The Entrance to the Vinaya*, 1983, Vol. III, pp.312–364.

parivutthaparivāse: lit.: by whom the staying in probation has been stayed, who has stayed the probation; adj. qualifying *bhikkhunā*; Inverted kammadhāraya used as Bb cpd that acts as passive subordinate clause; see IP p.137, 155, , and *ciṇṇamānato* below. The clause is passive and the traditional Pāli grammarians would explain it as: “*yena parivāso parivuttho so*”: “by whom the probation has been stayed..”

= **parivuttha**: stayed; p.p. of *parivasati* (pref. *pari-*: around, about + $\sqrt{\text{vas}}$: stays, dwells) + **parivāsa**: the staying in probation, probation-period; action-noun derived from *parivasati*.

uttariṃ: moreover, further; indecl., adv. to *paṭipajjitabbaṃ*; see Pāc 73, and NP 3.

chārattam: six-night; acc. sg. nt. adverbial expression = **cha(!)**: six; numeral of which the original final consonant *-ḷ* has been assimilated to the initial consonant of *rattam*. Because the consonant-combinations *-rr-* is not used in Pāli the final *-a* in *cha-* gets lengthened instead in accordance with the law of Morae to make a long syllable; see PG § 67. + **rattam**: night. In the Vinaya the passage of nights is counted since the lunar-calendar is used. A twenty-four hour period is therefore counted as a night not as a day; see BMC 154.

bhikkhumānattāya: state of deference to *bhikkhus*, Ñm: penance for *bhikkhus*, H: the monk’s *mānatta* discipline; dat. sg. nt. Dat. tapp. cpd. = **bhikkhu**: *bhikkhu* + **mānatta**: meaning not certain. The commentary (Kkh 87/Sp 629) states: “*Bhikkhumānattāya ti bhikkhūnaṃ mānanabhāvāya, ārāadhanattāya ti vuttaṃ hoti*” “State of deference to *bhikkhus*: the state of the deferring of *bhikkhus*, for the purpose of conciliating/winning approval, it is said.” See Nolot, 1996, III, n. 6: “Traditional etymology points to some kind of ‘conciliation’ or ‘conciliatory measure’.”

= *māna*: (here:) honor, deference, respect; fr. *māneti*: defers, honors (Used in the *aparihāniyā dhammā* at A IV 21.) + abstract suf. *-tta*: state, condition. The translations in Chinese (“respectful behavior”) and Tibetan (“making glad”) of other Buddhist schools are in accordance with the Pāli commentarial interpretation; see BHSGD II *mānatva* and also Dhirasekera 113f.

paṭipajjitabbam: is to enter upon, follow, undergo; f.p.p. of *paṭipajjati* (*paṭi* + $\sqrt{\text{pad}}$ + *ya*): undergoes, enters upon a path or course.

ciṇṇamānatto: by whom the *mānatta* has been performed, who has gone through the deference; adjective qualifying bhikkhu. Kammadhāraya used as bb cpd acting as a passive subordinate clause; see IP p.155, *parivutthaparivāso* above, and Pātimokkha concl: *suttāgataṃ*. Traditionally the cpd would be explained as “*yena mānatto ciṇṇo so*” = **ciṇṇa**: has been gone through, proceeded; p.p. of *carati* ($\sqrt{\text{car}}$ + *a*): goes, moves + **mānatta**: see above.

ciṇṇamānatto bhikkhu: a bhikkhu (is one by whom) the deference (to bhikkhus) has been performed, Ñm: “When the bhikkhu has completed the penance ...,” H: “if, when the monk has performed the mānatta discipline, ...” Possibly a nominative absolute, the nominative noun and participle being in agreement like the locative and genitive absolute in similar introductory clauses in NP 1–3 and Pāc 22; see Syntax § 26. Cf. “*yāni kho pana tāni ...*” at NP 22, and at NP 29 where it is preceded by another introductory clause: “*upavassaṃ kho pana kattikapuṇṇamaṃ*.” Since the verb *hoti* is implied in these constructions, it is usually not directly expressed; see Syntax § 20b-c.

yattha ... tattha ...: where ... there ..., when ... then ...; relative clause with **yattha**: where, wherever, when; adv. of place = rel. pron. *ya* + suf. of place *-ttha*. **tattha**: there, in that place, then; adv. of place. = dem. pron. *ta(d)* + *-ttha*, cf. Nid intro and Pār intro. Both the local and temporal sense of *yattha* are possible, however, it seems more likely that the local sense is the correct one as the bhikkhu is allowed to go to another monastery to do the *abbhāna*, while the temporal sense would imply that he might have to wait for long until twenty bhikkhus are found who are willing to come to the monastery and participate in the *abbhāna*. The Kkh supports the local sense: “*yattha siyā vīsati gaṇo ti ettha vīsati saṅgho gaṇo assā ti vīsati gaṇo*”; Kkh 87.

siyā: may be; 3 sg. opt. of *atthi*; see above Nid.

vīsati gaṇo bhikkhusaṅgho: a community of bhikkhus which is a group of twenty.

vīsati gaṇo: a group of twenty; adjective qualifying *bhikkhusaṅgho*. Digu cpd. = **vīsati**: 20, num. + **gaṇo**: group, chapter; cf. Pāc 32.

bhikkhusaṅgho: community of bhikkhus; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd.

tattha: herein, in this case; indecl. See Nid. concl.

so: that; 3 sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. **bhikkhu**: nom. sg. m.

abbhetabbo: should be reinstated, can be..., Ñm: must be reinstated, H: may be rehabilitated; f.p.p. of *abbheti* (*abhi* + *ā* + $\sqrt{\text{i}}$ + *e*): lit. makes come back to, DP: summons, recalls. = Skt *āhvayati* corresponding to Pāli *avheti/avhāyati* (*ā* + $\sqrt{\text{vhā}}$ + *aya/e*): summons, calls back. *Abbheti* presumably arose by way of **ābhayati/ābheti* from the Skt *āhvayati* in accordance with the Skt *-hv-* > Pāli *-vh-* alternation (e.g. *jihvā* > *jivhā*), see PG 49,1, and the *-v-* > *-b-* alternation, see PG 46,1 & 51,3, then, through the law of Morae *ābh-* becomes *abbh-* in Pāli, see PG § 5.

Sp 690: “*Abbhetabbo ti abhi etabbo sampañicchitabbo abbhānakammavasena osāretabbo ti vuttaṃ hoti. Avhātabbo ti vā attho*.”: “*Abbhetabbo*: ‘One is to come back (*eti*) towards (*abhi*), is to be accepted, by means of the legal act of reinstatement (*abbhāna*) one is to be made to re-enter (the Saṅgha)’ is said. Or: ‘one is to be summoned/called back’ is the meaning.”

There seems to be no obligation in the Vinaya that the bhikkhu *has* to be reinstated in any monastery where there are 20 bhikkhus or more. The bhikkhus in a monastery might not wish to do the procedure for some reason and can therefore send the bhikkhu to another monastery, thus it is preferable to translate the f.p.p. here with “should be” or “can be” as at NP 10, Pāc 47, etc.

ekena: by one; ins. sg. m. of *eka*.

pi: even; emph. particle; see Pār 1.

ce: if; conditional particle.

ūno: deficient, lacking; adjective agreeing with *bhikkhusaṅgho*, taking the instrumental *ekena*. Cf. Pāc 65.

taṃ bhikkhuṃ: that bhikkhu; acc. sg. of “so bhikkhu”; see above.

abbheyya: should reinstate; 3 sg. opt. of *abbheti*; see above.

ca: and; conn. particle.

anabbhito: not reinstated; neg. pref. *an-* + p.p. of *abbheti*; see above.

te bhikkhū: those bhikkhus; nom. pl. of “so bhikkhu”; see above.

gārayhā: are blameworthy, are to be blamed; f.p.p. of *garahati* ($\sqrt{\text{garah}} + \text{ya} > \text{garahya} > \text{garayha}$) used as an adjective to *bhikkhū*; cf. Pāc 65 and Pd 1.

ayaṃ: this; nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

sāmīci: the right course, proper procedure; nom. sg. f.

ayaṃ tattha sāmīci: this is the proper procedure here, Ñm: this is the proper course here.

tatth’āyasmante ... niṭṭhito: see Sd intro. + Nid concl.

saṅghādises’uddeso: the recitation concerning the community in the beginning and the rest [of the procedure]; nom. sg. m. Kammadhāraya cpd. Junction of *saṅghādisesa* + *uddeso* through the elision of *-a*. =

saṅghādisesa: see above. + **uddeso**: recitation; nom. sg. m.; see Pār intro.

This is the third of the four ways of reciting the Pātimokkha in brief; see the “Recitation of the Pātimokkha” section in the Introduction.

niṭṭhito: finished; see Nid concl.

[Aniyatuddeso²³⁶]

Ime kho panāyasmanto dve aniyatā dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti.

[The recitation of the uncertain [cases]]

Venerables, these two uncertain cases come up for recitation.

aniyat’uddeso: the recitation of the uncertain (cases); nom. sg. m. . Probably an appositive kammadhāraya, but here rendered as a genitive tappurisa; see *niddān’uddesa* in Nid intro. See below Aniy conclusion.

Ime kho panāyasmanto ... dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti: see Pār & Sd intro.

dve: two; nom. m. sg.

aniyatā: Ñm: indefinite, H: undetermined, unfixed, uncertain; adj., neg. pref. *a-* + *niyata*: fixed, certain, fr. *niyameti* (*ni* + $\sqrt{\text{yam}}$ + *e*): restrains, fixes, ties down.

[Aniy 1: Paṭhama-aniyatasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu mātuḡāmena saddhiṃ eko ekāya raho paṭicchanne āsane alaṅkammaniye²³⁷ nisajjaṃ kappeyya, tam-enaṃ saddheyyavacasā upāsikā disvā tiṇṇaṃ dhammānaṃ aññatarena vadeyya: pārājikena vā saṅghādisesena vā pācittiyena vā, nisajjaṃ bhikku paṭijānamāno tiṇṇaṃ dhammānaṃ aññatarena kāretabbo: pārājikena vā saṅghādisesena vā pācittiyena vā, yena vā sā saddheyyavacasā upāsikā vadeyya, tena so bhikkhu kāretabbo, ayaṃ dhammo aniyato.

[The first uncertain training precept]

If any bhikkhu should sit down together with a woman, one [man] with one [woman], privately, on a concealed seat [that is] sufficiently fit for doing [it], [and then if] a female lay-follower whose words can be trusted having seen that, should speak according to one of three cases: according to disqualification, according to what concerns the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure], or

²³⁶ = Be & Mi Se. D: *Aniyatā*; Um has this in brackets. Nothing in other texts.

²³⁷ C, Vibh Ee: *alaṅkammaniye*. Dm, Um, Mm Se, V, W: *alaṅkammaniye*. UP, G, BhPm 1 & 2, Ra: *alaṃ kammaniye*.

according to expiation, [then] the bhikkhu who is admitting the sitting down should be made to do [what is] according to one of three cases: according to disqualification, or according to what concerns the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure], or according to expiation, or according to whatever that female lay-follower whose words can be trusted should say, according to that the bhikkhu is to be made to do. This is an uncertain case.

paṭhama-aniyatasikkhāpadaṃ: the first uncertain training precept; nom. sg. nt. A kammadhāraya cpd containing another kammadhāraya: *aniyatasikkhāpada*. = **paṭhama**: first; adj. + **aniyata**: uncertain; see below + **sikkhāpada**: training precept; see Pār 1.

yo pana bhikkhu mātuḡāmena saddhiṃ: see Sd 2.

eko: one; nom. sg. m. **ekāya**: with one (female); ins. sg. f.

eko ekāya: one [man] with one [woman]. In order to retain the genders expressed in the Pāli this rendering has been chosen rather than the rendering given in DP 526 (col 1 top): “one with the other.”

raho: privately, in secret, in private; adv./ind.; from Vedic *rahas*.

paṭicchanne: concealed, hidden, covered, secluded, screened; adj., p.p. of *paṭicchādeti*, see Sd concl.

āsane: on a seat; loc. sg. nt.

alaṅkammaniye: sufficiently fit for doing (it), i.e., fit for having sex; adj. Bb cpd. = junction of *alaṃ* + *kammaniya* through gutturalisation of the final *-ṃ* of *alaṃ*. **alaṃ**: sufficient; indecl. cf. Pār 1. + **kammaniya**: fit for doing, workable; = **kamma**: action, work + abstract suffix *-ṇiya/-ṇya*. = Skt *karmaṇya*, BHS *karmaṇiya/karmaṇīya*; see DP.

nisajjaṃ: sitting down, seat, place for sitting; acc. sg. f., fr. *nisīdati* (*ni* + $\sqrt{\text{sad}}$ + *a*): sits down, cf. Pāc 42

kappeyya: should use, take; 3 sg. opt. of *kappeti* ($\sqrt{\text{kapp}}$ + *e*).

nisajjaṃ kappeyya: should sit down, sit, Ñm: should seat himself, H: should sit down; cf. Pāc 5, 30, 43–45. Vibh: “... *upanisinnō ... upanipanno ...*” There are two shades of meaning: using a seat, and sitting down. It is difficult to give a satisfactory rendering. The same applies for “*saha seyyaṃ kappeyya*” of Pāc 5, where there is also the difficulty of two shades of meaning. Probably *nisajjaṃ kappeti* is an idiomatic verbal compound having the simple meaning of “sits down”; see the note to *seyyaṃ kappeyya* at Pāc 5.

tam-enam: then that, then him; junction of *taṃ* + *enaṃ* in which *-ṃ* of *taṃ* is weakened to *m*; PG § 71,2b. In Vin I 127 *tam-enam* seems to act as one adverb, but normally *taṃ* functions as an adverb in acc. sg. nt. referring back to something or someone just mentioned, i.e., the bhikkhu sitting with the woman, as in Sn 981 and M I 31; see PED 292 and DP.

Cf. “*sa kho so*,” D I 69, and “*ete te*,” Vin IV 112 & S II 17, which also repeat the pronoun. One possibility is that it is a junction of *taṃ* + *eva* + *naṃ* rather than *taṃ* + *naṃ*.

= **taṃ**: that; acc. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)* + **enaṃ**: this, it, him; acc. sg. m. dem. pron., variant of *etaṃ*.

saddheyyavacasā: whose words can be trusted, PED: of credible speech, Ñm: whose word can be trusted, H: trustworthy; adj. F.p.p. of the verb *saddahati* (*saṃ* + $\sqrt{\text{dhā}}$ + *a*) (from which *saddha* is derived) + **vacasā**: having speech; adj. form of *vaco/vacas*: having speech, having words. Kkh 90: “...: *saddhātabba-vacanā ariyasāvikā ti attho*.”

upāsikā: female lay-follower, lay devotee; nom. sg. f. (*upāsaka* = m.) fr. *upāsati* (*upa* + $\sqrt{\text{ās}}$ + *e*): sits close, i.e., attends, honours.

disvā: having seen; abs. of *passati*; cf. *dissanti* at Sd 13.

tiṇṇaṃ: of three; gen. m. of numeral *tayo*.

dhammānaṃ: cases; gen. pl. m.

aññatarena: with regards to a certain, in accordance with a certain; adj. qualifying an unexpressed *dhammena*; cf. Pār & Sd concl. = Instrumental of relation/specification/accordance; see Syntax § 70,a i. *Aññatara*: one of two/several, a certain; is a comparative of *añña* “another.”

vadeyya: should say; 3 sg. opt. of *vadati*; cf. Sd 13. Since it is likely that she is not familiar with the bhikkhu's disciplinary rules she will not say exactly which type of offence she has seen. She just tells what she has seen and the bhikkhus define the type of offence.

pārājikena: (what is) in accordance with (a case) involving disqualification; adj. qualifying an unexpressed *dharmena*.

vā ... vā: either ... or; disj. parts.

saṅghādisesena: (what is) in accordance with (a case) involving the community in the beginning and in the rest; adj. qualifying *dharmena*.

pācittiya: (what is) in accordance with (a case) involving expiation, PED & *Vinaya Texts* 31: requiring expiation, H: involving expiation, Nm: entailing expiation, Than: to be confessed (Cf. Thān, BMC 163); adjective qualifying *dharmena*.

Prāyaścittika was the Vedic ritual expiation for transgressions; see Roth, 1968, p.346, and Hinüber, 1999 p.17, and 1985 p.63–66. “Expiation” in English means: “to atone for (sin or wrongdoing); make amends for,” while confession means: “to make an acknowledgement, esp. of one's faults or crimes.”; see Collins Concise English Dictionary. In the Buddhist tradition a Pācittiya offence is confessed to another bhikkhu and there is no atonement of any sort, therefore confession fits better for *pācittiya*.

The etymology of *pācittiya* is uncertain, see PED 450 and BD II 3 n. 4. Hinüber 1999 p.17 and 1985 p.63–66, following Mayrhofer, takes *pācittiya* to be related to the Vedic *prāyaścitta*. (The *-āya-* being contracted into *-ā-* in Pāli; see PG 20 n. 2) See BD II 3 n. 4: “Pācittiya as *prāyaścittika* means lit.: “in repentance, in compensation, in expiation.” MW 708: *prāyaścitta*: atonement, expiation, amends, penance; see also VINS II 50.

The Jains had ten categories of offences which required *pāyaccitta* (= Skt: *prāyaścitta*): expiation (through penance, *tapas*). The heaviest of which is the *pārāñcika*, corresponding to the Pāli *pārājika*, the lightest is the *dukkāḍa*, the Pāli *dukkāṭa*; see N. Taita & M.M. Kumar, 1980, p.14–17 + 52, Levi, 1912, p.505f., Roth, 1968, p.342, Dutt 72. The Mā-L school used *pācattika*, Mū: *pāyantika*, Sa: *pātayantika*.²³⁸

Vin V 148:

“Pācittiyā-ti yaṃ vuttaṃ, taṃ suṇohi yathātathāṃ.

Pātetī kusalaṃ dhammaṃ, ariyamaggaṃ aparajjhātī,

Cittasammohanaṃ²³⁹ ṭhānaṃ, ten'etaṃ iti vuccatī.”

“What is called a ‘pācittiya’, listen to it as it is:

One drops a wholesome state, one offends against the noble way,

(It is) an occasion for mental confusion, therefore this is called thus.”

nisajjaṃ: see above. **bhikkhu**: nom. sg. m.

paṭijānamāno: admitting, Nm: concurs, H: acknowledging; pr.p. of *paṭijānāti* (*paṭi* + $\sqrt{nā}$ + *ṇa*) agreeing with *bhikkhu*.

kāretabbo: is to be made to do, is to be done with, is to be dealt with; f.p.p. of *kāreti*, causative of *karoti*; cf. Pāc 73: *yathādhmmo kāretabbo* and Adhik: *paṭiññāya kāretabbo*. The bhikkhu is to be made to do by other bhikkhus the legal procedure that is in accordance with the offence he has committed.

yena ... tena ...: with what(ever) ... with that, or: by which; correlative pronouns, ins. of *ya(d)* + *ta(d)*, agreeing with unexpressed *dharmena*.

vā: or; disj. particle. When the bhikkhu has stated his side, then the judging bhikkhus may accept that or impute an offence on him according to what the *upāsikā* says. According to Thanissaro Bhikkhu, BMC I 158 f., this clause is a remnant of an early time, when the Vibhaṅga on it was not yet in existence. The Vibhaṅga, in line with the guidelines for handling accusations in the Khandhakas, states that he should be punished only

²³⁸ See Roth, 1968, p.342 & Hirakawa, 1982, pp.23–24. BMD p.14, and Hinüber 1985 pp.63–66 list some more versions of the word.

²³⁹ There appears to be a word-play here: *pā* (*teti*) + *citt* (*asamohanaṃ*) = *pācitt(iya)*.

in accordance with what he admits. Thus, this is an interesting case of a rule-clause superseded by its Vibhaṅga commentary and the guidelines in the Khandhakas.

sā: that; nom. sg. f. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. **so:** that; nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

ayaṃ: this; nom. sg. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

dhmmo aniyato: indefinite case; see above, here nom. sg. m. The sentence verb *hoti* is unexpressed here. The whole rule is one sentence as the optative requires the “*ayaṃ dhmmo aniyato hoti*” as completion; see Pār 2 *ādiyeyya*. The other sentences are in parenthesis in it.

[Aniy 2: Dutiya-aniyatasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na heva kho pana paṭicchannaṃ āsanaṃ hoti nālaṅkammaniyaṃ,²⁴⁰ alaṅ-ca kho hoti mātugāmaṃ duṭṭhullāhi vācāhi obhāsitaṃ. Yo pana bhikkhu tathārūpe āsane mātugāmena saddhiṃ eko ekāya raho nisajjaṃ kappeyya, tam-enam saddheyyavacasā²⁴¹ upāsikā disvā dvinnam dhammānaṃ aññatarena vadeyya saṅghādisesena vā pācittiyena vā, nisajjaṃ bhikkhu paṭijānamāno dvinnam dhammānaṃ aññatarena kāretabbo saṅghādisesena vā pācittiyena vā, yena vā sā saddheyyavacasā upāsikā vadeyya, tena so bhikkhu kāretabbo, ayam-pi dhmmo aniyato.

[The second uncertain training precept]

But even if the seat is neither concealed nor sufficiently fit for doing it, but is sufficient for speaking suggestively to a woman with depraved words: if any bhikkhu should sit down on such a seat together with a woman—one [man] with one [woman], privately—[and then if] a female lay-follower whose words can be trusted having seen that, should speak according to one of two cases: according to what concerns the community in the beginning and in the rest, or according to expiation, [then] the bhikkhu admitting the sitting down is to be made to do according to one of two cases: according to what concerns the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure], or according to expiation, or according to whatever that female lay-follower whose words can be trusted should say, according to that the bhikkhu is to be made to do, this too is an uncertain case.

dutiya-aniyatasikkhāpadaṃ: the second uncertain training precept; nom. sg. nt. A kammadhāraya cpd containing another kammadhāraya: *aniyatasikkhāpada*. = **dutiya:** second; ordinal + **sikkhāpada:** training precept.

na heva kho pana ... na ... ca ...: But even if ... neither ... nor” A “*na ... na ...*”: “neither ... nor” construction in combination with (disjunctive) particles; see DP s.v. *eva*: “*n’eva ... na ...*”

The “*na heva ... na ... ca ...*” construction is also found elsewhere, esp. with *api ca*; e.g. A IV 54: “*Idh’ekacco samaṇo vā brāhmaṇo vā sammā brahmacārī paṭijānamāno na heva kho mātugāmena saddhiṃ dvayaṃ-dvaya-samāpattiṃ samāpajjati, na pi mātugāmassa ucchādana-parimaddana-nhāpana-sambāhanaṃ sādīyati; api ca kho mātugāmena saddhiṃ saṅgagghati ...*” Cf. Vin II 243, Th 664.

It is not to be confused with *pan’eva* at Sd 12 & 13.

na: not; neg. particle.

heva: no need to translate; emphatic particles; maybe a junction of *hi* + *eva* in which the *-i* of *hi* has been elided, as in *hevaṃ* and *hetam*, or maybe it is a junction of *na* + *eva* in which the junction consonant *-h-* has been added to avoid hiatus. In this case we should read: “*na-h-eva*”; see PG § 73,7. According to Warder, IP p.214, it is a junction of the emphatic particle *ha* + *eva*.

Norman suggests that forms such as *heva* and *hevaṃ* are probably Eastern dialect forms, i.e., Māgadhisms, as they sometimes stand at the start of clauses and *hi*, being an enclitic, cannot do so; see CP V p.79 and PG § 73 n. 5.

²⁴⁰ Vibh Ee: *-kammaniyaṃ*. Mm Se, BhPm 1–2, C, D, G, V, W, Um, Ra, Vibh Ee: *nālaṃ kammaniyaṃ*. UP, BhPm 1 & 2, Ra: *nālaṃ kammaniyaṃ*.)

²⁴¹ In W a (later?) correction has been added before this: *sā*.

kho pana: no need to translate; see above Sd.

paṭicchannaṃ āsanaṃ: concealed seat; nom. sg. nt.; see Aniy 1.

hoti: it is; 3 sg. pres. ind. contracted form of *bhavati*: see above Nid. *Hoti* states attributes of a thing, rather than emphasising the existence of a thing as *atthi* does; see IP p.30.

nālaṅkammaṇiyaṃ: = junction of *na* + *alaṃ* through contraction and *alaṃ* + *kammaṇiyaṃ*; see Aniy 1.

alañ-ca: junction of *alaṃ* + *ca* through the palatalisation of *-ṃ*.

alaṃ: sufficient; indecl. + **ca:** but; disj. particle. The particle *ca* is normally connective but becomes disjunctive after a negation; see the notes on Th 41 in Norman 1969 and Dhp 5 in Norman, 2000..

mātugāmaṃ duṭṭhullāhi vācāhi: see Sd 3.

obhāsituṃ: to speak suggestively; inf. of *obhāsati*: see Sd 3.

yo pana bhikkhu: see above Nid.

tathārūpe: of such kind, such; adj. see Pār 2.

āsane: see Aniy 1.

The rest as Aniy 1 except:

dvinnam: of two; gen. pl. m. of num. *dve*.

ayam-pi: junction of *ayam* + *pi* through labialisation of *-ṃ*.

pi: too; emph. particle.

[Aniyata conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhā kho āyasmanto dve aniyatā dhammā.

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Dutiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Tatiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Parisuddh'etthāyasmanto, tasmā tuṇhī, evam-etam dhārayāmi.²⁴²

*Aniyat'uddeso niṭṭhito.*²⁴³

Venerables, the two uncertain cases have been recited.

Concerning that I ask the Venerables: [Are you] pure in this?

A second time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

A third time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

The venerables are pure in this, therefore there is silence, thus I bear this [in mind].

The recitation of the uncertain [cases] is finished.

uddiṭṭhā ... niṭṭhito: see Aniy intro. + Nid. concl.

aniyat'uddeso: indefinite-(cases)-recitation; nom. sg. m. Appositive kammadhāraya cpd. = junction of *aniyata* + *uddesa* through the elision of the final *-a* of *aniyata*; see Pār intro and concl.

This is the fourth of the four ways of reciting the Pātimokkha in brief; see "Recitation of the Pātimokkha." section in the Introduction.

²⁴² Dm, UP, Ra, Um: *dhārayāmi ti*.

²⁴³ Nd Ce, Um, UP, Mi Se: *Aniyatuddeso catuttho*. Dm: *Aniyato niṭṭhito*.

[Nissaggiya pācittiyā²⁴⁴]

Ime kho panāyasmanto tiṃsa nissaggiyā pācittiyā dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti.

[Cīvaravaggo²⁴⁵]

[The (cases) involving expiation with forfeiture]

Venerables, these thirty cases involving expiation with forfeiture come up for recitation.

[The Robe-chapter]

Ime kho panāyasmanto ... dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti: see Sd intro.

nissaggiya pācittiya: involving expiation with forfeiture, involving expiation and forfeiture, expiation involving forfeiture, to be forfeited and to be expiated, Than: to be forfeited and confessed, H: an offence of expiation involving forfeiture, Ñm: it entails expiation with forfeiture.

At Vin III 196–97 it is said in the Padabhājana on NP 1 that the bhikkhu first has to relinquish the object to the community, or to many bhikkhus, or to a single bhikkhu, and then has to confess/announce/declare (*desetabba*) the Pācittiya offence. "... *nissaggiyaṃ hoti, nissajjitabbaṃ saṅghassa ...: "Idaṃ me bhante cīvaraṃ dasāhātikkantaṃ nissaggiyaṃ, imāhaṃ saṅghassa nissajjāmī ti. Nissajjitvā āpatti desetabbaṃ."*: "... it is to be forfeited (*nissaggiyaṃ*), it is to be forfeited (i.e., f.p.p.) to the Community...: 'This robe (-cloth) that has gone beyond the ten-day (limit) is to be forfeited by me. (Because the clause is passive, it requires an instrumental agent that could be *me*: by me. Other translators take *me* as a genitive with *cīvaraṃ*.) This I forfeit to the Community.' Having forfeited (it) the offence is to be confessed."

This indicates that *nissaggiyaṃ* is a f.p.p. and *pācittiyaṃ* possibly too since it corresponds to "*āpatti desetabbaṃ*": "the offence is to be confessed." Cf. Vibh to Pāc 86: "*paṭilābhena bhinditvā pācittiyaṃ desetabbaṃ*." Cf. "*āpatti pācittiyassa*": "there is an offence involving expiation for him; Vin IV 2 etc. (An explanation of the -assa endings used with offence-terms in the Suttavibhaṅga is found in Sp 261).

Sp 639/Kkh 96: "... *nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ, tañ-ca cīvaraṃ nissaggiyaṃ hoti, pācittiyāpatti c'assa hotī ti attho. Atha vā nissajjanaṃ nissaggiyaṃ, pubbabhāge kattabbassa vinaya-kammas'etaṃ nāmaṃ. Nissaggiyam-assa atthī ti nissaggiyam-icc'eva. Kin-taṃ? pācittiyaṃ. Taṃ atikkāmayato saha nissaggiya-vinayakammaṃ pācittiyaṃ hotī ti ayam-ettha attho.*"

"... *nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ*, that robe (-cloth) is to be relinquished (f.p.p.), and there is an offence involving expiation for him, is the meaning. Or perhaps rather *nissaggiyaṃ* is *nissajjanaṃ*: relinquishing, (i.e., action-noun. = Ce. Be: *nissajjanaṃ*.) This is a designation for the preceding Disciplinary action. There is a NP for him, thus (it is) *nissaggiyaṃ*. What is it? A *pācittiya*. (Maybe: "*Kin-taṃ pācittiyaṃ?*" : "What *pācittiya* is it?" Se: "*icc'eva taṃ pācittiyaṃ*."") For one exceeding that there is a *pācittiya* together with the disciplinary act of relinquishing. This is here the meaning."

Cf. Pāc 86: "... *bhedanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ*." : "(a case) involving expiation with breaking up," Pāc 87, 89–92: "... *chedanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ*," Pāc 88: "... *uddālanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ*." In these rules there are no future passive participles and this could support the renderings of *nissaggiyaṃ* by Ñm, H, and Hinüber (1999, p.17). Hinüber (1999 p.18) points out that these rules could have been put into a different Pācittiya class, like the *nissaggiyas*, but were not due to their fewness.

Compare the similar formulation in the Bhikkhunī-Sd rules: *nissāraṇiyaṃ saṅghādisesaṃ*: "(a case) concerning the community in the beginning and the rest (of the procedure) with sending off" (Vin IV 223 ff.). H: "(an offence) entailing a formal meeting of the order involving being sent away," see BD IV xxxvi.

nissaggiyā: involving forfeiture, to be relinquished, given up; adjective qualifying *pācittiyā*. F.p.p. of *nissajeti*

²⁴⁴ = Dm. Um has it in brackets. D: *Nissaggiyā pācittiyā dhammā*. Mi Se: *Tiṃsa nissaggiyā pācittiyā dhammā*. Nothing in other eds.

²⁴⁵ Only in Mi Se.

(*nis* + √(*s*)*saj*(*j*) + *e*). Cf. *nissajitabbo* at NP 22. According to PED *nissaggiya* = Skt **niḥsārgya*, not *naisargika*. Mā-L: *nissargikapācattika*, Sa: *niḥsargikā pātayantikā*. Mū: *naisargikapāyantika*. See MW 564 *nisarga* (*ni* + √*srij*). **pācittiya**: involving expiation; adj. qualifying *dhammā*; see above Aniy 1.

[NP 1: Kaṭhinasikkhāpadam]

Niṭṭhitacīvarasmim²⁴⁶ bhikkhunā ubbhatasmim kaṭhine,²⁴⁷ dasāhaparamam atirekacīvaram dhāretabbam. Tam atikkāmayato, nissaggiyam pācittiyam.

[The training precept on the kaṭhina]

When the robe [-cloth] has been finished by a bhikkhu, when the kaṭhina [-frame-privileges] have been withdrawn, [then] extra robe [-cloth] is to be kept for ten days at the most. For one who lets it pass beyond [the ten days], [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

niṭṭhitacīvarasmim: the robe (-cloth) has been finished; loc. sg. nt. Locative absolute construction. A *kammadhāraya* cpd equivalent to a passive subordinate clause; see IP p.155 and Pātimokkha concl.: *suttāgata*. Since the verb *hoti* , “is” , is implied in these constructions, it is usually not directly expressed; see Syntax § 20b-c.

= **niṭṭhita**: finished, ended; = the p.p. of *niṭṭhāti* (*ni* + √*thā* + *a*), which here in this *kammadhāraya* cpd is uninflected, but stands for the locative singular *niṭṭhitasmim* + **cīvarasmim**: when robe (-cloth); loc. sg. nt. of *cīvaram*: robe (-cloth), robe-material, cloth for a robe.

A *cīvara* can be a made-up robe, but in the Vinaya, like in this rule and the coming ones (esp. NP 3, 24, and 27), it often means the unmade cloth intended for making a robe. I have tried to convey this meaning by rendering *cīvara* as “robe (-cloth),” which can mean both “a cloth for (making) a robe” and “a cloth which is a robe.” When *cīvara* clearly means a finished robe, like in NP 25–6, the rendering “robe” is used.

Padabhājana: “... *bhikkhuno cīvaram kataṃ vā hoti naṭṭham vā vinaṭṭham vā daḍḍham vā cīvarāsa vā upachinnam*.” “(When) a bhikkhu’s robe (-cloth) has been made or lost or perished or burnt or the expectation for the robe (-cloth) has been cut off.”

Cf. M I 438: “*Niṭṭhitacīvaro bhagavā temāsaccayena cārikam pakkamissatī ti*.”

bhikkhunā: by a bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

ubbhatasmim: has been withdrawn, lifted; loc. sg. nt. of *ubbhata*, the p.p. of *ubbahati* (*u* + √*vah* + *a*): withdraws, takes away, lifts; agreeing with *kaṭhine*.

kaṭhine: (the five allowables connected with) the *kaṭhina* (robe-cloth); loc. sg. nt.

The *kaṭhina* was a special wooden frame that was put flat or spread (*pattharati*) on the ground. Over this frame the robe-cloth was stretched to make a robe. The tradition of using this frame has died out and it maybe has not been used for centuries.

Bhikkhu Thanissaro suggests that it is similar to the frame used to make a quilt; see BMC 168; see also Vin II 116–17, BD II 5–6 & V 158–59. However, the robe made on this *kaṭhina*-frame is also called a *kaṭhina* and because of this double usage there is some confusion the discussion of this rule in BMC 163–168.

It is said that when cloth for the *kaṭhina* (-robe) (*kaṭhinadussa*) has accrued to the community it can formally give the cloth to an appointed bhikkhu for spreading the *kaṭhina* (“*kaṭhinam attharituṃ*”, here synonymous with the formal making of the *kaṭhina*-robe (Vin I 254–255); see BD II 5 n.1, 26 n. 3, IV 352 n. 5. In this context therefore *kaṭhina* is synonymous with the robe that has been made by spreading the cloth on the *kaṭhina*-frame and making it into a proper robe. It is said that it can be made out of rag-cloths, etc.

Five things will be allowable to the bhikkhus (*kappissanti*) when the *kaṭhina* has been spread, i.e., properly made in accordance with certain regulations, i.e., consisting of five panels or more and is finished before the

²⁴⁶ BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra, UP v.l.: *niṭṭhitacīvarasmim pana*.

²⁴⁷ Dm: *kathine*.

next dawn, etc.; Vin I 254ff, BD IV 352ff. These allowances are withdrawn or cancelled (*ubbhataṃ kaṭhinaṃ*) through one or more of eight reasons or grounds (*mātikā*) such as the bhikkhu leaving the residence without intending to return; Vin I 255, cf. BD IV 357 n.6. This withdrawing through these reasons is what “*ubbhataṃ kaṭhine*” refers to, and so it is explained in the Padabhājana on the present rule at Vin III 196; see BD II 5. Therefore, *kaṭhina* is also synonymous with the allowances connected with the spreading of the *kaṭhina*-robe.

Bhikkhu Thanissaro renders “*ubbhataṃ kaṭhine*” as “When ... the frame is destroyed (his privileges are in abeyance),” but the verb *ubbahati* does not mean “destroys,” but “withdraws”; see above. In the Cullavagga section dealing with the *kaṭhina*-frame, Vin II 116–117, there is no mention of the official ceremony at the end of the rains. The robe could have been made on a used frame since there no reference to making a new frame in the Mv section dealing with the *kaṭhina*-robe. In the Cv it is said that the *kaṭhina*-frame is to be kept hanging on a wall after the sewing is finished so that creatures can not eat it. Since the frame has to be handled with care it seems that it is not a one-usage-only frame, but one that can be used again and again for making robes. There is no regulation that bhikkhus make robes only at a certain time of the year and robes can be made all year long. Bhikkhus would use the frame whenever they would make a robe, however, at the end of the rainy-season it was more likely that robe-cloth would become available and it would be used more during this period.

niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ bhikkhunā ubbhataṃ kaṭhine: “When the robe (-cloth) has been finished by a bhikkhu, when the *kaṭhina* (-frame-privileges) have been withdrawn”; H: “When the robe-material is settled, when a bhikkhu’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) have been removed, ...”; *Vinaya Texts*: “When the robes have been settled, when the *kaṭhina* has been taken up by the bhikkhu...”; Ām: “(During a time) when (stored-up) robe (material) is finished up (by its being either all made up into robes or destroyed etc.) and when the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are in abeyance ...”; Than: “When a bhikkhu has finished his robe-making and the frame is destroyed (his *kaṭhina* privileges are in abeyance)”; Norman: “The robe-material having been used up, the *kaṭhina* frame having been removed by a bhikkhu, ...”; loc. absolute construction.

This is a difficult line for translators, as it is uncertain what *bhikkhunā* refers to. Does it refer to *niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ* or to *ubbhataṃ kaṭhine*? Most translators make it refer to the latter. Ām simply did not translate it.

It is possible that *bhikkhunā* applies to the next clause, which has no agent: “*dasāhaparamaṃ atirekacīvaraṃ dhāretabbaṃ*” and has been placed in this locative absolutive clause for the sake of separating *niṭṭhitasmiṃ* and *ubbhataṃ kaṭhine*, i.e., extra robe (-cloth) can be kept by a bhikkhu ten days at the most. The usage of an f.p.p. with an instrumental agent is common, e.g. Pāc 49: “... *bhikkhunā senāya vasitabbaṃ* ...”; see IP p.107. In the next two rules, where this interpretation would not fit, the use of this clause might be a mechanical extension.

Horner in BD suggests that *bhikkhunā* is an instrumental used for a genitive, but this usage would be unique. It is not mentioned in the *Syntax of the Cases in the Pāli Nikāyas* by Wijesekera. Further, the explanation *bhikkhuno* in the Padabhājana suggests a dative of advantage; see Syntax § 101.

It seems that the Padabhājana also takes *bhikkhunā* to be a genitive with an instrumental meaning: “*Niṭṭhitacīvarasmin-ti: bhikkhuno cīvaraṃ kataṃ va hoti*” (For a translation see *niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ* above.)

The Kkh does not comment on *bhikkhunā* in NP 1 but in the comments on *niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ* it implies a dative of advantage: “*Atthatakaṭhinassa hi bhikkhuno yāva imeh’ākārehi cīvarapālībodho na chijjati tāva kaṭhinānisaṃsaṃ labhati.*”: “The *kaṭhina*-privilege is obtained for a bhikkhu who has spread the *kaṭhina* for as long as the robe-obstacle is not severed through these reasons.” Cf.: “*tassa bhikkhuno ... kaṭhinuddharo.*” H: “That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of ... (eight grounds)...”; Vin I 255f.

In the Padabhājana it is said that the *kaṭhina* (-frame-privileges) are withdrawn due to eight grounds, or by a *saṅghakamma*. It does not say that they are withdrawn by a bhikkhu. After the four months of the cold season, the privileges automatically lapse. “*Ubbhataṃ kaṭhine ti: aṭṭhannaṃ mātikānaṃ aññatarāya mātikāya ubbhataṃ hoti saṅghena vā antarā vā ubbhataṃ hoti.*”

If it is a genitive ins. then it would be better to make it qualify both *niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ* and *ubbhataṃ kaṭhine*

and this is what the Kkh suggests in its comments on “*niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ bhikkhunā*” at NP 2 & 3.

Kkh 100: “*Niṭṭhite cīvarasmiṃ bhikkhuno ti evaṃ sāmivasena karaṇavacanassa attho veditabbo. Karaṇavasena hi bhikkhunā idaṃ nāma kammaṃ kātabbaṃ, taṃ n’atthi, sāmivasena pana bhikkhuno cīvarasmiṃ niṭṭhite kaṭhine ca ubbhate ...*”: “When the robe (-cloth) of a bhikkhu has been finished: thus the meaning of an instrumental [case] word has to be understood as the genitive case. For in the instrumental [case] this so called [legal] act is to be done by a bhikkhu. That is not so. However, by the genitive case the robe (-cloth) is finished for a bhikkhu and the *kaṭhina* is withdrawn.”

This indicates that according to the commentary the line is to be translated as: “When a bhikkhu’s robe (-cloth) is finished, when (a bhikkhu’s) *kaṭhina* (-frame-privileges) have been withdrawn,” One can not be sure whether this was the original meaning for if a genitive is implied, why is the Pāli not “*Niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ bhikkhuno ...*”? If *bhikkhunā* is instrumental subject of *cīvaraṃ* in *niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ* a suitable translation for this line would be: “When the robe (-cloth) has been finished by a bhikkhu, when the *kaṭhina* (-frame-privileges) have been withdrawn ...”

The Sarvāstivādin and Mū Prātimokṣasūtra version is: “*Niṭṭhitacīvareṇa bhikṣunā uddhṛte kaṭhine ...*”: “When the *kaṭhina* has been withdrawn by a bhikṣu by whom the robe (-cloth) has been finished”; PrMoSa p.184 & PrMoMū p.25. In this version of the rule *bhikṣunā* is qualified by the passive subordinate clause expressed by the compound *niṭṭhitacīvareṇa*.

In the Mahāsaṅghika version a plural *kṛtacīvarehi* (see above Padabhājana: ... *cīvaraṃ kataṃ* ...) and a plural instrumental *bhikṣūhi* are used instead of the instrumental *bhikṣunā*. Mā-L: “*Kṛtacīvarehi bhikṣūhi uddhṛtasmiṃ kaṭhine dasāhaparamaṃ bhikṣunā atirekacīvaran dhārayitavyaṃ tad-uttarin dhāreya nissargika-pācattikaṃ*.”: “When the *kaṭhina* has been withdrawn by the bhikkhus whose robes have been made ...”; BV 165, PrMoMā-L p.13. See BMD p.126 n. 48 for this line and references to it.

dasāhaparamaṃ: for ten days at the most; adv. A kammadhāraya containing a digu cpd: *dasāha*, used as an adverb in acc. sg. nt. = **dasāha**: ten days; digu cpd (IP p.274) A junction of *dasa* + *aha* through contraction. = **dasa**: ten; num. + **aha**: day; only in cpds.; cf. *yāvatiha*: Sd concl. + **paramaṃ**: highest, most; adv. The use of *paramaṃ* at the end of a compound indicates it is used as an adverb; cf. A I 233: “*sattakkhattuparamaṃ ... sandhāvitvā*,” NP 3: *māsaparamaṃ*, NP 7: *santar’uttaraparamaṃ*, NP 10: *chakkhattuparamaṃ*, NP 21: *dasāhaparamaṃ atirekapatto dhāretabbo*, NP 23: *sattāhaparamaṃ ... paribhuñjitabbāni*, NP 29: *chārattaparamaṃ*.

Sp 638/Kkh 93: “*Dasāhaparaman-ti dasa ahāni paramo paricchedo assā ti dasāhaparamo. Taṃ dasāhaparamaṃ kālaṃ dhāretabban-ti attho*.”: “For ten days at the most: ‘ten days are the utmost limit for it’ is ‘ten days at the most. Then, ‘it is to be kept for a ten-days-at-most time’ is the meaning.”

The commentary thus explains *dasāhaparamaṃ* as a kammadhāraya cpd used as a bahubhihi cpd qualifying an unexpressed *kālaṃ*: “time” as an adjective.

atirekacīvaraṃ: extra robe (-cloth); acc. sg. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd. = **atireka**: extra, left over; adj. = pref. *ati-* + *√ric*: leaves + poss. suf. *-ika*. Cf. *anatiritta* at Pāc 35. Cf. Pāc 92. + **cīvaraṃ**: robe (-cloth).

Smp 638/Kkh 93: “*Adhiṭṭhitavikappitesu apariyāpannattā atirekaṃ cīvaran-ti atirekacīvaraṃ*.”: “Because of the state of not being fulfilled with regards the determinations and assignments (it is) an extra robe (-cloth).

dhāretabbaṃ: is to be kept, can be kept, ... held, ... worn; f.p.p. of *dhāreti* (*√dhar* + *e*), the causative of *dharati*; see above Nid concl.

The ten days are an option and the robe can be kept less than ten days too, however, to retain the emphatic sense with “at the most”, the f.p.p. *dhāretabbaṃ* is here rendered as “is to be kept”; cf. NP 10: *niddisitabbo* and Pāc 34: *paṭiggahetabbāni*.

taṃ: that; acc. sg. nt. of *ta(d)*. Refers to the 10 days time.

atikkāmayato: for one who let pass, makes pass over, lets elapse; dat. [of (dis-) advantage] sg. of *atikkāmayant*, the pr.p. of *atikkāmayati* in which the 7th conjugation sign *-aya* is not contracted to *-e*, as in *atikkāmeti*, as is normal in Pāli; see PG § 26,1 & 178,2 (*ati* + (*k*)*kam* + *e/aya*) and see Sd 6: *kārayamāno*. *Atikkāmeti* is the causative of *atikkamati* and is a transitive verb.

taṃ atikkāmayato: for him who lets it pass beyond, *Vinaya Texts*: to him who goes beyond that, Ñm: when he exceeds that, H: for him who exceeds that²⁴⁸, Norman: for one exceeding that, Than: beyond that.

Sp 639/Kkh 96: “*Taṃ atikkāmayato nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ-ti taṃ yathāvuttajātippamāṇaṃ cīvaraṃ dasāhaparamaṃ kālaṃ atikkāmayato, etthantare yathā atirekacīvaraṃ na hoti, tathā akubbato nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ*”: “For one who lets it (*taṃ*) pass (the limit) (there is) a *nissaggiya pācittiya*. For one who lets that robe, which is of the kind and measure as said (above, i.e., Kkh 94 § 1), pass the ten-day period, as it is not an extra robe (-cloth) within this period, for one not doing so, there is (a case of) expiation involving forfeiture.”

Thus Sp seem to take *taṃ* to refer to the robe rather than ten day period. As said above, *atikkāmeti* is a transitive verb and can take an object e.g. in Vin III 62 it is used in the context of monk (secretly) taking a gem over (or making a gem pass beyond) a toll-gate. Bhī NP 13 has: “*taṃ atikkāmentiyā*.”

nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ: (a case of) expiation involving forfeiture, (a case of) expiation involving the forfeiture (of the object), (it) to be relinquished (and a case) involving expiation, (it is) to be forfeited (and) to be expiated, Ñm: this entails expiation with forfeiture, H: there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture, Than: it is to be forfeited and confessed; adj. qualifying an unexpressed *dhammaṃ*.

According to the Suttavibhaṅga the robe (-cloth) is to be relinquished and then the offence has to be confessed, see rule-section introduction above, *nissaggiyaṃ* could therefore refer to the object to be relinquished. However, the rule-section introduction has “*nissaggiyā pācittiyā dhammā*’ and *pācittiyaṃ* thus qualifies an unexpressed *dhammaṃ*, i.e., “*nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ dhammaṃ*,” cf. Sd 1, Aniy 1, and Pāc 1. But this does not yet explain why the accusative is used instead of the nominative as in the Pār, Sd, and Aniyata rules. In the Suttavibhaṅga one finds “*nissajjitvā āpatti desetabbaṃ*” and “*paṭilābhena bhinditvā pācittiyaṃ desetabbaṃ*,” see above rule-section-introduction, and this suggests that the future passive participle *desetabbaṃ* is unexpressed but implied in the NP rules: “(*tena bhikkhunā*) *nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ (dhammaṃ desetabbaṃ)*”: “by that bhikkhu a case involving expiation with forfeiture (is to be confessed). The same applies for the Pācittiya rules: “(*tena bhikkhunā*) *pācittiyaṃ (dhammaṃ desetabbaṃ)*.”

It could also be that *pācittiya* was originally used and understood as a f.p.p. like *pāṭidesanīyaṃ* in the Pd rules. This would also explain the accusative: “(*tena bhikkhunā taṃ dhammaṃ*) *pācittiyaṃ*.”

This rule is relaxed in Cv VII 1,3 and referred to there as “*yāvadaṭṭhacīvaraṃ*”: “as much robe (-cloth) as needed” and is one of the five allowances (*pañca kappissanti*) when the *kaṭhina*-privileges are in effect. Other Pātimokkha rules that are relaxed during this period are NP 2, Pāc 32, and Pāc 46.

[NP 2: Uddositasikkhāpadaṃ]

Niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ²⁴⁹ bhikkhunā ubbhatasmiṃ kaṭhine,²⁵⁰ ekarattam-pi²⁵¹ ce bhikkhu ticīvarena vippavaseyya, aññatra bhikkhusammutiyā,²⁵² nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the storehouse]

When the robe [-cloth] has been finished by a bhikkhu, when the kaṭhina [-frame-privileges] have been withdrawn, if even for a single night a bhikkhu should stay apart from the three robes, except with the authorization of bhikkhus, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

uddositasikkhāpadaṃ: the training precept on the store-room; nom. sg. m. Loc. tapp. cpd. or Appositive Kammadhāraya; see title at Pār 1. **uddosita**: storehouse; m. noun; see DP.

niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ bhikkhunā ubbhatasmiṃ kaṭhine: see above NP 1.

ekarattam-pi: even for one night, a single night; junction of *ekarattaṃ* + *pi* through labialisation of the final -*m* of *rattaṃ*. = **ekarattaṃ**: one night; acc. sg. nt. or m. = Acc. of Extent in Time or adv. in acc. sg. nt.; see Syntax §

²⁴⁸ At Pāc 87–92 Horner translates: “in exceeding this (measure).”

²⁴⁹ BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra, UP v.l.: *niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ pana*.

²⁵⁰ Dm: *kathine*.

²⁵¹ D, G, P: -*rattim-pi*.

²⁵² Mi & Mm Se, BhPm 1 v.l.: *sammutiyā*. (BhPm 2 has -*sammutiyā* at NP 14) (Pg: -*sammutiyā*.)

44b. Digu cpd. = **eka**: one; num. + **rattam**: night; see Sd conclusion. + **pi**: even; emph. particle; see Pār 1.

The variant reading *ekaratti*, instead of *ekaratta*, is a characteristic reading of Burmese Pāli manuscripts. Both are legitimate forms which have the same meaning; see CPD s.v. *ekaratta* and *ekaratti*. The Mā-L and Sa versions of this rule read *ekarātra* (BV 165, Rosen 78) which corresponds to the Pāli *ekaratta*.

ce: if; hyp. particle.

bhikkhu: a bhikkhu; nom. sg. m.

ticivarena: from the three robes; ins. sg. nt. Digu cpd. Instrumental in dissociative/ablative sense; see IP p.46 & 92. Syntax § 73c states that “Here the ablative is the more logical construction but the use of the instrumental is due to the psychological fact that underlying both *union* and *separation* there is the motion of mutuality.” = **ti**:- three; num. cpd- form of *tayo* + **civarena**: ins. sg. nt.

vippavaseyya: should dwell apart, stay apart from; 3 sg. opt. of *vippavasati* (*vi* + (*p*)*pa* + √*vas* + *a*), which normally takes an ablative, but here an instrumental in ablatival sense.

aññatra: except, unless, apart from; indecl. preposition that takes ins. or abl.; see Pār 4.

bhikkhusammutiyā: with the authorization of bhikkhus; ins. sg. f. = Ins. of accompaniment; see Syntax § 66. Gen. tapp. cpd = **bhikkhu** + **sammutiyā**: ins. sg. f. of *sammuti*: agreement, permission, consent; the feminine action-noun derived from *sammannati* (*saṃ* + √*man* + *ya*).

V.l. *sammutiyā*. *Sammata* is the p.p. of *sammannati* and not given as a noun in PED. The Se editors might have been confused by the p.p. *sammata* in other rules, i.e., *sammato*: Pāc 21–22, *sammātāni*: NP 29, Pd 4.

Mā-L: *saṃghasaṃmutiye*; PrMoMā-L p.13. BV 165 reads *samaya-saṃmutiye*. Sa: *saṃghasaṃmatyā*; PrMoSa p.184. Mū: *saṃghasaṃvṛtyā*; PrMoMū p.25. (BHSGD II 541 notes that the Sanskrit *saṃvṛti* is the Pāli *sammuti*.)

This rule is relaxed in Cv VII 1,3 and referred to there as “*asamādānacāra*”: “going without taking along” and is one of the five will-be-allowables (*pañca kappissanti*) when the *kaṭhina*-privileges are in effect. Other Pātimokkha rules that are relaxed during this period are NP 1, 3, Pāc 32, 33 and Pāc 46.

[NP 3: Akālacīvarasikkhāpadaṃ]

Niṭṭhitacīvarasmim²⁵³ bhikkhunā ubbhatasmim kaṭhine,²⁵⁴ bhikkhuno pan’eva akālacīvaraṃ uppajjeyya, ākaṅkhamānena bhikkhunā paṭiggahetabbaṃ, paṭiggahetvā khippam-eva kāretabbaṃ. No c’assa pāripūri, māsaparamaṃ tena²⁵⁵ bhikkhunā taṃ cīvaraṃ nikkhipitabbaṃ ūnassa²⁵⁶ pāripūriyā, satiyā paccāsāya; tato ce uttarim²⁵⁷ nikkhipeyya, satiyā pi paccāsāya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the out-of-season (robe)-cloth]

When the robe [-cloth] has been finished by a bhikkhu, when the *kaṭhina* [-frame-privileges] have been withdrawn, if out-of-season robe [-cloth] should become available to a bhikkhu, by a bhikkhu who is wishing [so, it] can be accepted; having accepted [it, it] is to be made very quickly. If [the robe-cloth] should not be [enough for] the completion [of the robe], [then] for a month at the most that robe [-cloth] can be put aside by that bhikkhu for the completion of the deficiency [of robe-cloth], when there is an expectation [that he will get more robe-cloth]; if he should put [it] aside more than that, even when there is an expectation [that he will get more robe-cloth], [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

niṭṭhitacīvarasmim bhikkhunā ubbhatasmim kaṭhine: see above NP 1.

bhikkhuno: to a bhikkhu; gen./dat. sg. m.

pan’eva: now if; cf. Sd 12.

²⁵³ See NP 1.

²⁵⁴ Dm: *kathine*.

²⁵⁵ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, G, V, W, Vibh Ee, Mi & Mm Se: *paraman-tena*.

²⁵⁶ G: *ūnassa*. V: *onassa*.

²⁵⁷ Dm, Um, UP: *uttari*. (Be reads *uttarim* in the Sp to Pāc 19, see Pāc 19. Pg: *uttarim*.)

akālacīvaram: out of season robe (-cloth); acc. sg. nt. Bb cpd. = **akāla**: out of season, outside the (proper) time, inopportune; adj. = neg. pref. *a-* + *kāla*: time + **cīvaram**.

uppajjeyya: should arise, become available, accrue; 3 sg. opt. of *uppajjati* (*ud* + $\sqrt{\text{pad}}$ + *ya*).

ākaṅkhamānena: who is wishing (so), wishing; pr.p. of *ākaṅkhati* (*ā* + $\sqrt{\text{kaṅkh}}$ + *ṇa*), wishes, longs for, desires, waits for, expects used as adjective qualifying *bhikkhunā*.

bhikkhunā: by a bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

paṭiggahetabbam: to be received, accepted; f.p.p. of *paṭiggaṇhāti* (*paṭi* + $\sqrt{\text{(g)gah}}$ + *ṇha*). The forms *paṭiggahetabbam* and *paṭiggahetvā* are from a different base of *gaṇhāti*: *gahe-* (= Skt *grhī-*); see PED.

paṭiggahetvā: having accepted, received; abs. of the above.

khippam-eva: very quickly; = junction of *khippam* + *eva* through weakening of *-ṇ* into *-m*; see PG § 71,2 b.

khippam: quickly; nt. adv. adverbial accusative (= acc. sg. nt. of adj. or noun used as adv. or indecl.; IP p.116.) + **eva**: just, very; emph. particle.

kāretabbam: to be made; f.p.p. of *kāreti*; see above Sd 6.

no: not; adversative or neg. particle, more emphatic sense than *na*.

c'assa: if it should be; junction of *ce* + *assa* in which the *-e-* of *ce* has been elided. = **ce**: if; cond. particle. It could also be the *ca* used as a disjunctive particle, i.e., "but." + **assa**: it should be; 3 sg. opt. of *atthi*. Maybe: of it, gen. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*. Verbs denoting fullness, and verbal nouns from these, take a genitive; see Syntax § 149 & IP p.58.

pāripūri: completion, enough, fulfilment; nom. sg. f. Feminine action-noun derived from *paripūreti* (*pari* + $\sqrt{\text{pūr}}$ + *e*).

no c'assa pāripūri: if (the robe-cloth) should not be enough (for making a complete robe), H: if it is not sufficient for him, Ñm: if it is (not enough) for a complete (set of robes), Norman: should it not be sufficient for him. Vibh/Vin III 204: "...: *kayiramānaṃ nappahoti*": "not sufficient for being made.." Sp 658: "...: *no ce pāripūri bhavēyya, yattakena kayiramānaṃ adhiṭṭhānacīvaraṃ pahoti tañ-ce cīvaraṃ tattakaṃ na bhavēyya, ūnakaṃ bhavēyyā ti attho*." "If there would be no completion, if the robe (-cloth) would not be that much by which much it becomes sufficient for being made (into) a determined robe (-cloth)."

māsaparamaṃ: for a month at most; adv. A kammadhāraya used used as an adverb in acc. sg. nt = **māsa**: month + **paramaṃ**: at the most, the highest; adv.

tena: by that; ins. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

taṃ: that; acc. sg. m. of *ta(d)*. **cīvaram**: acc. sg. nt.

nikkhipitabbam: to be put down, laid aside; f.p.p. of *nikkhipati* (*ni(r)* + $\sqrt{\text{(k)kip}}$ + *a*).

ūnassa: of the deficiency, lack; gen. sg. nt. The word *ūna* is normally an adjective (e.g. Sd concl.), but here it is used as a neuter noun; see IP p.62.

pāripūriyā: for the completion; dat. sg. f. of *pāripūri*. A dative of purpose; see Syntax § 107 a. Padabhājana: "*pāripūratthāya*": "for the purpose of completion."

satiyā: there is, existing; loc. sg. f. of the pr.p. *sant*: being, existing; adjective qualifying *paccāsāya*. Cf. Nid *santiyā* & NP 16. As the present participle sense can not be rendered properly in English the translation "there is" has been used here.

paccāsāya: expectation, hope; loc. sg. f. abs. of *paccāsa*, fr. *paccāsimṣati* (*pati* + *ā* + $\sqrt{\text{simṣ}}$ + *a*): expects; or a sandhi of *paṭi* + *āsā*: hope/expectation by way of *paṭyāsā* (Skt. *pratyāśā*); see Sd 10: *iccetaṃ*. Mā-L: *pratyāśāye*; BV 165.

satiyā paccāsāya: when there is expectation; locative absolute construction. Cf. Nid: *asantiyā āpattiya*.

tato: than that; dem. pron. *ta(d)* + ablative suffix *-to*; see Syntax § 132a-b.

ce: if; hyp. particle.

uttariṃ: further, more; adv. (often) taking abl. of comparison, i.e., *tato*; see Syntax 132b and Pār 4:

uttarimanussadhamma. Cf. Pāc 5, 7, and 73.

Mā-L: *tad uttarin*; BV 165, PrMoMā-L p.13. Mū: *tataḥ uttari*; PrMoMū p.25.

Uttari- appears to be a cpd form as found in *uttarimanussadhamma*, Pār 4, and does not fit here; see PED & DP. *Uttari* is also found in verse for the sake of metre. The form *uttari*, when used outside of compounds in prose, appears to be a so-called “sanskritisation” that happened during the transmission in Burma; see the footnote to *addhānamagga(p)paṭipannassa* in NP 16.

CDP s.v. *uttari* states: “**uttari**, *mfn.*, **uttari(m)**, *adv.* (... PED and BHS GD II s.v. *uttari* recognise only *adv.*; *adj.* ~i indubitable ..., but in some cases decision between *adj.* and *adv.* uncertain, as also between ~i as first member of cpd. and separate *adv.*)”

nikkhiṭṭeyya: should put aside; 3 sg. opt. see above.

pi: even; emph. particle.

[NP 4: Purāṇacīvarasikkhāpadam]

Yo pana bhikkhu aññātikāya²⁵⁸ bhikkhuniyā purāṇacīvaram dhovāpeyya vā rajāpeyya vā ākoṭāpeyya vā, nissaggiyam pācittiyam.

[The training precept on the used (robe)-cloth]

If any bhikkhu should have a used robe [-cloth] washed, dyed, or beaten by an unrelated bhikkhunī, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.]

yo pana bhikkhu: see Nid etc.

aññātikāya: unrelated; *adj. ins. f. sg. of aññātika*. = *a-*: neg. pref. + *ñāti*: relative; fr. $\sqrt{(\tilde{n})\tilde{n}ā}$ (= Skt $\sqrt{jñā}$) + *-ka*: conn. suffix.

bhikkhuniyā: by a bhikkhunī; *ins. sg. f.* In English it is not possible to literally translate this rule according to the Pāli syntax. The Pāli literally states that “the bhikkhu should cause to wash a cloth by the bhikkhunī.” Usually the person through which the action (of the causative verb) is performed is in the accusative but sometimes the instrumental is used instead, like here, to convey the sense of instrument; see IP p.79, and cf. NP 17 and Pāc 29. An alternative rendering of the rule would be: “If any bhikkhu should have an unrelated bhikkhunī wash, or dye, or beat a used robe [-cloth], ...”

purāṇacīvaram: used, old robe; *acc. sg. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd.* = **purāṇa**: old, ancient, not new; *adj.* + **cīvaram**.

dhovāpeyya: should make (someone else) wash; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *dhovati* (\sqrt{dhov} + *a*).

vā ... vā: or... or...; disjunctive parts.

rajāpeyya: should make (someone else) dye; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *rajati* (\sqrt{raj} + *a*).

ākoṭāpeyya: should make (someone else) beat; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *ākoṭati* ($\tilde{ā}$ + $\sqrt{kuṭ}$ + *e*).

Cf. S II 281: “*ākoṭitapaccākoṭitāni cīvarāni pārupitvā*”: “having put on beaten and beaten-again robes.” SA: “*Ākoṭitapaccākoṭitāni ti ekasmiṃ passe pāṇinā vā muggarena vā ākoṭanena ākoṭitāni, parivattetvā ākoṭanena paccākoṭitāni*.”: “Beaten and beaten again: beaten by beating with a hand or a club on one side, (then) having turned around again-beaten by beating.”

M I 385: “*imaṃ navam dussayugam pītāvalepanam nāma raṅgajātam rajitam ākoṭitapaccākoṭitam ubhatobhāgavimattān-ti*.” M-a “*Ākoṭitapaccākoṭitan-ti ākoṭitañ-c’eva parivattetvā punappunam ākoṭitañ-ca*.”

The beating is the beating a wetted robe folded into a bundle against a big stone at the edge of the bathing pond or river to get the dirt out, as is still done with clothes in India. It perhaps could also be the beating of a dry robe to get the dust out and to make it look tidy. It is likely that the robes would be dusty and dirty in the

²⁵⁸ BhPm 2 (*Syāma*) v.l.: *aññātikāya*.

conditions the bhikkhus lived in the middle country and there would sometimes have been shortages of water so the robes would be beaten in the same way carpets are beaten nowadays with a carpet-beating stick.

[NP 5: Cīvarappaṭiggaṇasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu aññātikāya²⁵⁹ bhikkhuniyā hatthato cīvaraṃ paṭiggaṇheyya,²⁶⁰ aññatra pārivattakā,²⁶¹ nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the acceptance of robe (-cloth)]

If any bhikkhu should accept a robe [-cloth] from the hand of an unrelated bhikkhunī, except in an exchange [of robes], [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā: of an unrelated bhikkhunī; gen. sg. f. See previous rule.

hatthato: from the hand; abl. sg. m. of *hattha*. **cīvaraṃ:** acc. sg. nt.

paṭiggaṇheyya: should receive, accept; 3 sg. opt. of *paṭiggaṇhāti*; see above NP 3.

aññatra: except; indecl. taking an instrumental, i.e., *pārivattakā*; see Pār 4.

pārivattakā: in an exchange (of robes), Nm & H: in exchange, lit. “turning around”; ins. sg. m. in -ā. In English it is not possible to render this with an instrumental (“by way of exchange”) and the locative “in” has to be used instead. It is derived from *parivattati* (*pari* + *√vatt* + *a*): changes around. It is also found at Pāc 25.

PED states that this word is an adjective, but because it is also used independently (Vin III 209, IV 60) it rather appears to be a noun that can be used in juxtaposition with another noun; see IP p.9 & 61. The exchange is a robe (-cloth); see *pārivattakacīvara* in the origin-story, Vin III 209 § 2, *pārivattakaṃ cīvaraṃ* in the origin-story of Pāc 25, Vin IV 59–60, and cf. Bhī NP 3: “... *cīvaraṃ parivatteto* ...”

Mā-L rule 5: *anyatra pallaṭṭhakena*; PrMoMā-L p.13. Mū: *parivartakā*; PrMoMū p.25.

[NP 6: Aññātakaviññattisikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu aññātakam²⁶² gahapatiṃ vā gahapatāniṃ vā cīvaraṃ viññāpeyya, aññatra samayā, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ. Tatthāyaṃ samayo: acchinnacīvaro vā hoti bhikkhu natṭhacīvaro vā; ayaṃ tattha samayo.

[The training precept on making a suggestion to someone who is not related]

If any bhikkhu should request a robe [-cloth] to an unrelated male householder or female householder, except at the [right] occasion, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture. Here the occasion is this: he is a bhikkhu whose robe has been robbed or whose robe has been lost; this is the occasion here.

aññātakam: unrelated; adjective qualifying *gahapatiṃ*, see NP 4 where it has the feminine suffix -ika, here the masc. form -aka is used.

gahapatiṃ: householder; acc. sg. m. Genitive tappurisa cpd. = **gaha:** house (usually spelled as *geha*) + **pati:** master, lord.

vā: or; disj. particle.

gahapatāniṃ: female householder; acc. sg. f.

cīvaraṃ: robe (-cloth); acc. sg. nt.

viññāpeyya: should request, ... suggest, ... inform, Nm & H: ask; 3 sg. opt. of *viññāpeti* (*vi* + *√ñā* + *āpe*): inform, intimate, beg, request; causative of *viññāti*, see Pāc 39. There is no exact equivalent in English. The

²⁵⁹ BhPm 2 (syāma) v.l.: *aññātikāya*.

²⁶⁰ BhPm 1: *paṭiggaṇheyya*. BhPm 2, C, D, W, Ra: *paṭiggaṇheyya*. (Cf NP 10, Pāc 34.)

²⁶¹ Mi & Mm Se, Vibh Ce, UP, Ra, BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, G, V, W, Um, Pg: *-vaṭṭakā*.

²⁶² G: *aññātikam*.

word has the meaning of informing/making known as well as suggesting/inmating/requesting, e.g., in the origin story to NP 22 (Vin III 244) an *upāsaka* invites to provide bowls to monks who need them, and the monks request too many of them. Cf. Vin III 225; IV 71, 248.

aññātra: except; indecl. see NP 2.

samayā: at the (right) occasion; abl. sg. m. From pref. *saṃ* + *√i*. Cf. *saṃeti*: comes together, assembles. Cf. NP 28, Pāc 31.

tatthāyaṃ: here ... this; = **tattha**: here; adv. of place; see above Nid. concl. + **ayaṃ**: this; nom. sg. m. dem. pron. **samayo**: nom. sg. m.

acchinnacīvaro: whose (robe)-cloth has been robbed; adjective qualifying *bhikkhu*. A kammadhāraya cpd used as a Bb cpd. The cpd serves as a subordinate clause; see IP p.155. = **acchinna**: p.p. of *acchindati* (*ā* + *√chid* + *ṇa*): snatches, robs; cf. NP 25 + *cīvaro*; nom. sg. m.

hoti: is; 3 sg. ind.; see above Nid. **bhikkhu**: nom. sg. m.

naṭṭhacīvaro: whose robe has been lost; adj. Bb cpd. qualifying *bhikkhu*.

naṭṭha: lost, p.p. of *nassati* (*√nas* + *ya*): to be lost, to perish.

ayaṃ tattha samayo: this is the occasion here, Ñm: herein the proper occasion is this, H: this is the right time in this case; see above.

[NP 7: Tat'uttarisikkhāpadaṃ]

Tañ-ce aññātaḥ gahapati vā gahapatānī vā bahūhi cīvarehi abhihaṭṭhum pavāreyya,²⁶³ santar'uttaraparamaṃ²⁶⁴ tena bhikkhunā tato cīvaraṃ sādītābbaṃ; tato ce uttarim²⁶⁵ sādīyeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on (accepting) more than that]

If the unrelated male householder or female householder should invite him to take [as many] robe [-cloth]s [as he likes], [then] robe [-cloths for] an upper [robe] together with an inner [robe] can be accepted at the most from that robe [-cloth] by that bhikkhu; if he should accept more from that [robe-cloth], [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

tañ-ce: if to him; = **taṃ**: to him; acc. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)* used a pronoun of absence connecting this rule to the previous one, see IP p.29, and referring to the *bhikkhu* of the previous rule. It could also be an adverbial usage of *taṃ*: then, like in Pāc 14 "*taṃ pakkamanto*," or a neuter usage of the dem. pron. *ta(d)* qualifying both the male and female householder (as "*so ce*" would only apply to the male); see IP p.62.

Vibh Padabhāṇa: "*Tañ-ce ti: acchinnacīvarakaṃ bhikkhum.*": "If to him: to the *bhikkhu* whose robe (-cloth) has been robbed." + **ce**: if; hyp. particle. The *Sannē* has "*tañce bhikkhum...*" here. Pg includes *taṃ bhikkhum* in its gloss of *ce* and in its word order rearrangement.

aññātaḥ gahapati vā gahapatānī vā: as NP 6, but here nom.

bahūhi: many; ins. pl. of adj. *bahu*; qualifying: **cīvarehi**: with robe (-cloth)s; ins. pl. nt.

abhihaṭṭhum: to take; inf. of *abhiharati* (*abhi* + *√har* + *a*), which can have two opposing meanings: brings forward, brings near, offers; or: receives, takes away, removes. Either a simple infinitive or a rare case of the infinitive ending *-tum* either being used as an absolutive similar to *daṭṭhu(m)* (from *dassati*) at Sn 424; see BD II 51 n. 1 and PG § 210 b & 211. This is the traditional explanation; see Sp 668: "... *abhiharitvā pavāreyya ...* ": "having brought forward should invite." *Abhihaṭṭhum* only occurs together with forms of the verb *pavāreti* in Pāli.

pavāreyya: should invite, present; 3 sg. opt. of *pavāreti* (*pa* + *√var* + *e*) taking the instrumental case here:

²⁶³ Mi Se, G: *abhihaṭṭhum-pavāreyya*; so at Pāc 34. V: *abhihaṭṭham-pavāreyya*. Mi Se v.l.: *abhihaṭṭum*.

²⁶⁴ BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, G, Vibh Ee, Ra, Mi & Mm Se, V: *-paraman-tena*.

²⁶⁵ See NP 3.

cīvarehi.

abhihaṭṭhum pavāreyya: should invite to take [as much as he likes], having brought (them all) forward should invite, Ñm: should ... invite him to take as many robes as he likes, H: asking (a monk) should invite him to take (material for) many robes. An idiom. the Padabhājana explains: "... yāvatakaṃ icchasi tāvatakaṃ gaṇhāhi ti." "Take as much as you wish." The Padabhājana suggests that the meaning is that the monk is invited to take from the robe. The use of the instrumental *cīvarehi* is because *pavāreyya* is always constructed with the instrumental of the thing that one is invited to take; the monk is invited with/for a meal or robes (instr.) to take. For more on this Pāli idiom, see *Vinaya Texts* II 440 and BD II 51 n.1.

MW: "Abhihara: carrying off, removing..." "Abhiharaṇa: bringing or conveying near..."

Cf. M I 122: *Idha, bhikkhave, bhikkhum saddhā gahapatikā abhihaṭṭhum pavārenti cīvarapiṇḍapātasenāsana-gilānapaccayabhesajjaparikkhārehi, tatra bhikkhu mattaṃ na jānāti paṭiggahaṇāya*. Vin IV 82: "*Pavārito nāma āsanaṃ paññāyati, bhojanaṃ paññāyati, hatthapāse ṭhito abhiharati, paṭikkhepo paññāyati*." "Invited: a seat is evident; food is evident; standing within arms-length he (the monk) takes; the refusal is evident." (Although the commentary seems to understand that *abhiharati* refers to the *upāsaka*, it seems unlikely that there is a change of agent and it seems better to take *hatthapāse ṭhito* to qualify the same bhikkhu who is invited, *pavārito*.)

Cf. S IV 190: "*Taṇ-ce ... bhikkhum ... rājāno ... bhogehi abhihaṭṭhum pavāreyyum*." "*Ehi, bho purisa, ... bhoge ca bhuñjassu... ti*." S-a III 53: "... *kāyena vā satta ratanāni abhiharitvā vācāya vā: amhākaṃ dhanato yattakaṃ icchasi, tattakaṃ gaṇhā ti vadantā pavāreyyum*."

Mā-L NP rule 7: "*Ācchinnacīvareṇa bhikṣuṇā kṣamati anyātakaṃ gṛhapatim vā gṛhapati-putrām vā cīvaraṃ yācitum, tam enam abhibhāṣto samāno sambahulehi cīvarehi pravāreyya tathā pravāritena bhikṣuṇā santarottara-paramaṃ cīvaraṃ sadayitavyaṃ tad uttarim sādīyeya nissargika-pācattikaṃ*."; BV 166 ("*Abhibhāṣto samāno*" means "being addressed.")

santar'uttaraparamaṃ: (robe-cloth for) an inner (robe) and an upper (robe) at the most; acc. sg. nt. Adjective qualifying *cīvaraṃ*. A bb cpd used as an adverb, see NP 1 *dasāhaparamaṃ*, containing a dvanda cpd: *antara ca uttara ca*, and a bahubbhi cpd: *santar'uttara*. = *sa* + *antara* + *uttara* + *paramaṃ*. = **sa-**: together, with; prefix taking the instrumental. An abbreviated form of *saha*; see Pāc 5. + **antara**: inside; adj. An abbreviation or synonym of *antaravāsaka*: "under-robe" + **uttara**: upper, outer; adj. An abbreviation or synonym for the *uttarasāṅga*: "upper-robe" + **paramaṃ**: at the most; adv.

= **santar'uttara**: an upper together with an inner; Bb cpd. *Santar(a)* is a junction of *sa* + *antar(a)* through contraction, while *santar'uttara* is a junction of *santara* + *uttara* through elision of the final -a of *santara*. = *sa-*: with; prefix; abbreviated form of preposition *saddhiṃ* taking ins.; see Pār concl. Sp 667–68/Kkh 111: "... *sa antaraṃ uttaraṃ paramaṃ assa cīvarassā ti santar'uttaraparamaṃ; nivāsena saddhiṃ pārupanaṃ ukkaṭṭhaparicchedo assā ti vuttaṃ hoti*." "...: an upper together with an inner at the most of that robe (-cloth): an inner (robe) and an upper (robe); a special designation of an outer robe together with an undergarment is said." See also BD II 12 note 1: "...: the inner one with the upper." to Vin I 198: "... *santar'uttareṇa janapadacārikaṃ pakkamanti*." "... they departed together with an inner (robe) and an upper (robe)."

tena: by that; ins. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. **bhikkhunā**: by that bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

tato: from that, Ñm: therefrom; abl. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

I take *tato* to mean "from that place", not "from that robe (-cloth)" as Sp suggests: "...: *tato abhihaṭṭa-cīvarato ettakaṃ cīvaraṃ gahetabbaṃ, na ito paran-ti*." "... from that robe which has been brought forward this much robe can be accepted, not more than this." If it would be "from that robe (-cloth)" then an ablative *cīvarato* would be expected in the rule and not an accusative *cīvaraṃ*; cf. Pāc 34 "*tato nīharitvā*."

cīvaraṃ: robe; nom. sg. nt.

sāditabbaṃ: Ñm & H: accepted, enjoyed; f.p.p. of *sādīyati* (√*sad* + *i* + *ya*). Cf. NP 18.

tato ce uttarim: if more than that; see NP 3.

sādīyeyya: should accept, agree to; 3 sg. opt.

[NP 8: Paṭhama-upakkhaṭasikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhikkhuṃ pan'eva uddissa aññātakassa²⁶⁶ gahapatissa vā gahapatāniyā vā cīvaracetāpanaṃ²⁶⁷ upakkhaṭaṃ hoti: "Iminā cīvaracetāpanena²⁶⁸ cīvaraṃ cetāpetvā itthan-nāmaṃ²⁶⁹ bhikkhuṃ cīvarena acchādessāmī ti." Tatra ce so bhikkhu pubbe appavārito upasaṅkamitvā cīvare vikappaṃ āpajjeyya: "Sādhū vata maṃ āyasmā iminā cīvaracetāpanena²⁷⁰ evarūpaṃ vā evarūpaṃ vā cīvaraṃ cetāpetvā acchādehī ti," kalyāṇakamyataṃ²⁷¹ upādāya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The first training precept on setting up (a robe-fund)]

Now, if an robe-fund has been set up for a bhikkhu by an unrelated male householder or female householder [thinking]: "Having traded this robe-fund for a robe, I shall clothe the bhikkhu named so and so with a robe," and then if that bhikkhu, previously uninvited, having approached [the householder], should make a suggestion about the robe [-cloth] [saying]: "It would be good indeed, Sir, [if you] having traded this robe-fund for a such and such a robe, were to clothe me [with a robe]," [if the suggestion is made] out of a liking for what is fine, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

paṭhama-upakkhaṭasikkhāpadaṃ: see title at Aniyata 1.

bhikkhuṃ: acc. sg. m. **pan'eva**: now if; see Sd 12.

uddissa: for, with reference to, concerning, for the sake of, having pointed out, having dedicated, in the name of, Ñm: specifically for a bhikkhu, H: for a monk, Than: for the sake of; indecl., originally the absolutive of *uddisati*: points out. The word *uddissa* is here used as a postposition following an accusative noun; see Syntax § 55. Horner's rendering has been followed here since it fits all the contexts in NP 10. Padabhājana: "... bhikkhuss'atthāya bhikkhuṃ ārammaṇaṃ karitvā.": "For the need of the bhikkhu, having made the bhikkhu the object."; cf. NP 10.

aññātakassa gahapatissa vā gahapatāniyā vā: see NP 6. Here a subjective genitive in an instrumental sense. The genitive case expresses a relation between nouns. The p.p. is also a noun. When a p.p. functioning as a passive sentence verb (*upakkhaṭa*) is preceded by a noun (*gahapati*) it can happen in Pāli that the noun is in the genitive case (*gahapatissa*) and expressing the agent/instrument of the action. This is called a subjective genitive or instrumental-like genitive; see Warder 57 and Syntax § 142 & 154–55. Cf. Pāc 73: "tassa te," Pd 4: "ekassa ... bhikkhuno" and Pātimokkha concl.: "tassa bhagavato."

Sp 670: "... gahapatinā ...": "by a householder." The Sa Prātimokṣasūtra has an instrumental: *grhapatinā*; PrMoSa p.186.

cīvaracetāpanaṃ: robe-fund, fund for trading for robe(s), Ñm: purchase price, H: robe-fund; nom. sg. nt. Dative tapp. cpd. = **cīvara(m)** + **cetāpana**: , trade-fund, exchange-fund; from *cetāpeti* (√cit + āpe): trades, exchanges, barterers.

Mā-L: -*cetāpana*; BV 166, PrMoMā-L p.11.

upakkhaṭaṃ: has been set up, provided, prepared, arranged, Ñm: collected, H: comes to be laid by; p.p. of *upakaroti* (*upa* + √kar + o). PED and DP: helps, serves, provides. Sp: "Upakkhaṭaṃ hoti: sajjitaṃ hoti, saṃharitvā ṭhapitaṃ.": "has been set up: is prepared/issued, having collected, it has been set aside/saved." Not commented upon in the Padabhājana. The -kh- in -*khaṭa* is probably an unetymological aspiration; see PG § 40.1a.

hoti: is; 3 sg. pres. ind.; see above Nid. = Auxiliary verb; see IP p.235f.

iminā: with this; ins. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

²⁶⁶ G: *aññātikassa*. C, W: *aññātakagahapatissa*. (In C corrected to *aññātakassa*.)

²⁶⁷ BhPm 1 & 2, D, C, G, V, W, Dm, Um, UP, Ra, Vibh Ce: -*cetāpann*-. (Pg: -*cetāpan*- but has -*cetāpann*- in the next two rules...)

²⁶⁸ See previous note.

²⁶⁹ W, Um, Pg: *itthaṃ nāmaṃ*.

²⁷⁰ See n. 135.

²⁷¹ G: *kammyataṃ*. The -y- seems to be a correction as it is cramped in between the -m- and -t-.

cīvaracetāpanena: lit.: with robe-fund; ins. sg. nt.

cīvaraṃ: for a robe; acc. sg. nt.

cetāpetvā: having exchanged, Ñm: purchased, H: having got in exchange; abs. of *cetāpeti*; see above. Vibh: “*Cetāpetvā ti parivattetvā.*”; see NP 5.

itthan-nāmaṃ: Ñm: named so and so, lit: who is having such a name, such-named;; adj. Kammadhāraya used as bb cpd. A junction of *itthaṃ* + *nāmaṃ* through dentalisation of the final -ṇi of *itthaṃ*. = **itthaṃ**: such, thus; indecl. + **nāma**: name.

bhikkhuṃ: acc. sg. m. **cīvarena**: ins. sg. nt.

acchādessāmī ti = **acchādessāmi**: I shall clothe, lit. cover; 1 sg. fut. of *acchādeti* (*ā* + *√chad* + *e*). Bitransitive verb taking two patients: *bhikkhuṃ* and *cīvaraṃ*. + **ti**: “...,” quotation mark; see above Nid.

tatra: then, there, now; adv. of place/mode/time. Cf. Pār concl, NP 27 and Pd 2.

ce: and if; here a conn. particle. Kkh 113: “*Ce ti: ayam-ettha padasambandho.*”: “*Ce*: this is here a sentence-connector,” i.e., a conjunctive particle. (*Ceso* could also be *ca*: and, and if; conn. particle. + *eso*: this; dem. pron., but Vibh etc. takes it as *so*.)

so: that; nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

bhikkhu: nom. sg. m.

pubbe: previously, before; adv. (Loc. sg. of *pubba*.)

appavārito: uninvited; neg. pref. *a-* + p.p. of *pavāreti*; see above NP 7.

upasaṅkamitvā: having approached; abs. of *upasaṅkamati* (*upa* + *saṃ* + *√kam* + *a*).

cīvare: about the robe (-cloth); loc. sg. nt. Loc. of reason and motive; see Syntax § 176.

vikappaṃ: a suggestion, proposal, description; acc. sg. nt. Accusative of internal object; see Syntax § 34a. Action-noun; = *vi* + *kappa* (Skt *kalpa*).

āpajjeyya: should make, engage in; 3 sg. opt. of *āpajjati*; see above Nid.

cīvare vikappaṃ āpajjeyya: should make a suggestion about the robe (-cloth), Ñm: should give instructions about the robe, H: should put forward a consideration regarding the robe, Norman: should suggest an alternative in respect of the robe.

sādhū: good, please; indecl.

vata: indeed!, really!; exclamative particle.

maṃ: to me; acc. sg. of pers. pron. *ma(d)*; = stem-form; see IP p.28 n. 1. *Maṃ* is the object of *acchādehi* at the end of the line; cf. above: “*itthan-nāmaṃ bhikkhuṃ ... cīvaraṃ acchādessāmī ti.*”

āyasmā: Sir; voc. sg. m. Polite address, see Nid. In this context, i.e. a monk addressing a layperson, perhaps used to flatter the householder.

iminā cīvaracetāpanena: see above.

evarūpaṃ: such-like; adj. see above Nid. **evarūpaṃ ... evarūpaṃ**: such or so, like this or that.

vā: or; disj. particle.

cīvaraṃ: acc. sg. m.

cetāpetvā: see above.

acchādehī ti = **acchādehi**: clothe; 2 sg. imp. of *acchādeti*; see above. + **ti**: end quote.

kalyāṇakamyataṃ upadāya: out of liking for what is fine, Ñm: (doing so) out of desire for a fine-quality (robe); Cf. Sekh 36 where this construction is connected to another verb of the same root *√chad* in one clause: “... *paṭicchādessāmi bhiyyokamyataṃ upadāyā ti.*”

kalyāṇakamyataṃ: liking for what is fine; acc. sg. f. Dative tapp. cpd. = **kalyāṇa**: fine, good; see Sd 12. + **kamyatā**: liking, love; f. Der. fr. *kāma*; see above Sd 4. Cf. Sekh 36: *bhiyyokamyataṃ upadāya*.

upadāya: out of; abs. of *upādiyati* used as a postposition; see Sd 9.

[NP 9: Dutiya-upakkhaṭasikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhikkhuṃ pan'eva uddissa ubhinnaṃ aññātakānaṃ²⁷² gahapatīnaṃ²⁷³ vā gahapatānīnaṃ vā paccekacīvaracetāpanā upakkhaṭā²⁷⁴ honti: "Imehi mayaṃ paccekacīvaracetāpanehi²⁷⁵ paccekacīvarāni cetāpetvā itthan-nāmaṃ²⁷⁶ bhikkhuṃ cīvarehi acchādessāmā ti." Tatra ce so bhikkhu pubbe appavārito upasaṅkamitvā cīvare vikappaṃ āpajjeyya: "Sādhu vata maṃ āyasmanto imehi paccekacīvaracetāpanehi²⁷⁷ evarūpaṃ vā evarūpaṃ vā cīvaraṃ cetāpetvā acchādetha ubho va santā ekenā ti," kalyāṇakamyataṃ²⁷⁸ upādāya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The second training precept on setting up (a robe-fund)]

Now, if separate robe-funds have been set up for a bhikkhu by both unrelated male householders or female householders [thinking]: "Having traded these separate robe-funds for separate robes, we shall clothe the bhikkhu named so and so with robes," and then if that bhikkhu, previously uninvited, having approached [the householders], should make a suggestion about the robe [saying]: "It would be good indeed, Sirs, [if you] having traded these separate robe-funds for a such and such a robe, were to clothe me [with a robe], [you] both being one [donor]," [if the suggestion is made] out of a liking for what is fine, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

As NP 8, but here pl. instead of sg., except:

dutiya-upakkhaṭasikkhāpadaṃ: see title at Aniyata 2.

ubhinnaṃ: both; adj. qualifying *gahapatīnaṃ* & *gahapatānīnaṃ*, gen. pl. of *ubho*.

paccekacīvaracetāpanā: separate robe-funds; nom. pl. nt. A kammadhāraya cpd. containing a dat. tapp. cpd.: *cīvaracetāpana*. = **pacceka**: separate, individual; adj. pref. *paṭi*: towards + **eka**: one; num. + **cīvara** + **cetāpanā**: see NP 8.

Mā-L: "pratyeka-cīvara-cetāpanāni abhisamṣkṛtāni bhavanti abhisamcetayitāni"; BV 166. Sa: *pratyekacīvaracetanakāny upaskṛtāni syur*"; PrMoSa p.187. Mū: "pratyekapratyekanāni cīvaracetanakāni pratyupasthāpitāni syuḥ"; PrMoMū p.26.

mayam: we; nom. pl. of pron. *ma(d)*.

ubho: both; nom. sg. m.

va: just; emph. particle. A shortened side-form of *eva*; see PG § 66,1; or a side-form of *iva*: as, like; a comparative particle. Cf. *sabbe va* in the Nidāna.

ubho va santā ekenā ti: both (of you) with one, Ñm: both doing so with one, H: the two together with one.

Padabhājana: ..": *dve pi janā ekena*." "two people with one."

Both funds are used for presenting one fine robe (-cloth) instead of two coarse robe (-cloth)s. *Ubho* refers back to the householders, while *ekena* refers to the one robe. However, it could maybe also refer to both the funds combined into one fund.

Mā-L: *ubhau pi sahita ekena*: "both friends with one [cloth]."; BV 166, PrMoMā-L p.14. Mū: *ubhāvapi bhūtvā ekaikena cīvareṇa*: both having become one with one robe; PrMoMū p.27. Sa: *ubhau bhūtvaikeneti*; PrMoSa p.188.

santā: being, existing; nom. pl. of *sant*; see above Nid: "*sabb'eva santā*."

ekenā ti: as one, by one; = **ekena**: ins. of numeral *eka* + **ti**: quotation mark.

²⁷² G: *aññātikānaṃ*.

²⁷³ W: *aññātakagahapatīnaṃ*.

²⁷⁴ Dm, Um, UP, Ra: *-cetāpannāni upakkhaṭāni*. C, D, V, W, Vibh Ce, BhPm 1 & 2, Pg: *-cetāpannā upakkhaṭā*.

²⁷⁵ BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Dm, UP, Ra, Vibh Ce, Pg: *-cetāpannehi*.

²⁷⁶ W, Um: *itthaṃ nāmaṃ*.

²⁷⁷ BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, V, W, Dm, UP, Ra, Vibh Ce, Pg: *-cetāpannehi*.

²⁷⁸ G: *kammyataṃ*. The *-y-* seems to be a correction as it is cramped in between the *-m-* and *-t-*.

[NP 10: Rājasikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhikkhuṃ pan'eva uddissa rājā vā rājabhoggo²⁷⁹ vā brāhmaṇo vā gahapatiko vā dūtena cīvaracetāpanaṃ²⁸⁰ paṇḍeyya: "Iminā cīvaracetāpanena²⁸¹ cīvaraṃ cetāpetvā itthan-nāmaṃ²⁸² bhikkhuṃ cīvarena acchādehi ti." So ce dūto taṃ bhikkhuṃ upasaṅkamitvā evaṃ vadeyya: "Idaṃ kho bhante āyasmantaṃ uddissa cīvaracetāpanaṃ ābhaṭaṃ, paṭiggaṇhātu²⁸³ āyasmā cīvaracetāpanaṃ"-ti,²⁸⁴ tena bhikkhunā so dūto evaṃ-assa vacanīyo: "Na kho mayaṃ āvuso cīvaracetāpanaṃ²⁸⁵ paṭiggaṇhāma,²⁸⁶ cīvaraṇ-ca kho mayaṃ paṭiggaṇhāma²⁸⁷ kālena kappiyaṇ-ti." So ce dūto taṃ bhikkhuṃ evaṃ vadeyya: "Atthi pan'āyasmato koci veyyāvaccakaro ti," cīvaratthikena, bhikkhave, bhikkhunā veyyāvaccakaro niddisitaṃ ārāmiko vā upāsako vā: "Eso kho āvuso bhikkhūnaṃ veyyāvaccakaro ti." So ce dūto taṃ veyyāvaccakaraṃ saññāpetvā taṃ bhikkhuṃ upasaṅkamitvā evaṃ vadeyya: "Yaṃ kho bhante āyasmā veyyāvaccakaraṃ niddisi, saññatto so mayā. Upasaṅkamatū²⁸⁸ āyasmā kālena, cīvarena taṃ acchādessati" ti, cīvaratthikena bhikkhave bhikkhunā veyyāvaccakaro upasaṅkamitvā dvattikkhattuṃ²⁸⁹ codetaṃ sāretaṃ: "Attho me āvuso cīvarena ti." Dvattikkhattuṃ²⁹⁰ codayaṃāno sārāyaṃāno²⁹¹ taṃ cīvaraṃ abhinipphādeyya, iccetaṃ kusalaṃ.

No ce abhinipphādeyya, catukkhattuṃ pañcakkhattuṃ chakkhattuparamaṃ²⁹² tuṇhībhūtena²⁹³ uddissa ṭhātabbaṃ²⁹⁴. Catukkhattuṃ pañcakkhattuṃ chakkhattuparamaṃ²⁹⁵ tuṇhībhūto²⁹⁶ uddissa tiṭṭhamāno taṃ cīvaraṃ abhinipphādeyya, iccetaṃ kusalaṃ,²⁹⁷ tato ce uttariṃ²⁹⁸ vāyaṃāno²⁹⁹ taṃ cīvaraṃ abhinipphādeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

No ce abhinipphādeyya, ya'tassa³⁰⁰ cīvaracetāpanaṃ³⁰¹ ābhaṭaṃ, tattha sāmaṃ vā gantabbaṃ dūto vā pāhetabbo: "Yaṃ kho tumhe āyasmanto bhikkhuṃ uddissa cīvaracetāpanaṃ paṇiṭṭha³⁰², na taṃ tassa³⁰³ bhikkhuno kiñ-ci atthaṃ anubhoti, yuñjant'āyasmanto sakaṃ, mā vo sakaṃ vinassā³⁰⁴ ti." Ayaṃ tattha sāmīci.

Cīvaravaggo³⁰⁵ paṭhamo³⁰⁶.

[The training precept on the king]

²⁷⁹ V: -bhogo.

²⁸⁰ BhPm 1 & 2, D, C, G, V, W, Dm, Um, UP, Ra, Vibh Ce: -cetāpann-.

²⁸¹ As in previous note.

²⁸² W, Um: itthaṃ nāmaṃ.

²⁸³ BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Dm, UP, Ra: paṭiggaṇh-.

²⁸⁴ BhPm 1 & 2, D, C, G, V, W, Dm, Um, UP, Ra, Vibh Ce: -cetāpann-.

²⁸⁵ As in previous note.

²⁸⁶ Vibh Ce: paṭiggaṇh-. BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Dm, UP, Ra: paṭiggaṇh-.

²⁸⁷ As in previous note.

²⁸⁸ Dm, Um: upasaṅkamatāyasmā.

²⁸⁹ Vibh Ee, Mi & Mm Se, Pg: dvi-. (Cf Pāc 19 & 34: dvitti-/dvatti-.)

²⁹⁰ As in previous note.

²⁹¹ D, G, Vibh Ee, Um, V: codiyamāno sārāyamāno. C, W: codiyamāno sārāyamāno.

²⁹² BhPm 2, C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ce: chakkhattuṃ paramaṃ.

²⁹³ Vibh Ee, Ra: tuṇhi-. (Um illegible.)

²⁹⁴ V: ṭhātabbaṃ.

²⁹⁵ BhPm 2, C, D, G, W, Vibh Ce: chakkhattuṃ paramaṃ. (Not V.)

²⁹⁶ Vibh Ee, Ra: tuṇhi-.

²⁹⁷ Mm, Mi Se, D, G, Ra, V: "..." kusalaṃ. No ce abhinipphādeyya. Tato ce uttariṃ...." Other eds.: "..." kusalaṃ. Tato ce uttariṃ...." (Um: tato ca uttari ...) (Pg: "...". kusalaṃ. Tato ... uttariṃ vāyaṃāno ...) The Sannē also leaves out no ce abhinipphādeyya.)

²⁹⁸ Dm, Um, UP: uttari. See NP 3.

²⁹⁹ C, D, G, V: vāyaṃāno.

³⁰⁰ G: yaṃ tassa.

³⁰¹ BhPm 1 & 2, D, C, G, V, W, Dm, Um, UP, Ra, Vibh Ce: -cetāpann-.

³⁰² G: paṇiṭṭha.

³⁰³ Mi & Mm Se, G, P: tan-tassa.

³⁰⁴ Mm & Mi Se: vinassā. (Pg: vinassā.)

³⁰⁵ Vibh Ee: kaṭṭhinavaggo. Dm: kathinavaggo.

³⁰⁶ V: pathamo.

Now, if a king or a king's official or a brahmin or a male householder should convey by messenger a robe-fund for a bhikkhu [saying]: "Having traded this robe-fund for a robe, clothe the bhikkhu named so and so with a robe," and if that messenger, having approached that bhikkhu, should say so: "Venerable Sir, this robe-fund has been brought for the venerable one. Let the venerable one accept the robe-fund!" [then] that messenger should be spoken to thus by that bhikkhu: "Sir, we do not accept a robe-fund, but we do accept a robe at the right time [when it is] allowable." If that messenger should say thus to that bhikkhu: "Is there, perhaps, someone who is the steward of the venerable one?" [then,] bhikkhus, by a bhikkhu who is in need of a robe, a steward can be appointed: a monastery attendant or a male lay-follower [saying]: "Sir, this is the bhikkhus' steward." If that messenger having instructed that steward, having approached that bhikkhu, should say so: "Venerable Sir, the steward whom the venerable one has appointed has been instructed by me. Let the venerable one approach [him] at the right time [and] he will clothe you with a robe," [then] bhikkhus, having approached the steward, [the steward] can be prompted [and] can be reminded two or three times by the bhikkhu who is in need of a robe [saying]: "Sir, I am in need of a robe." [If through] prompting [and] reminding [him] two or three times, he should have [him] bring forth that robe, it is good. If he should not have [him] bring [it] forth, [then] four times, five times, six times at the most, [it] can be stood [for] by [a bhikkhu] who has become silent. [If through] standing silently for [it] four times, five times, six times at the most, he should have [him] bring forth that robe, it is good; if [through] making effort more than that, he should have [him] produce that robe, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

If he should not have [him] produce [it], [then] from wherever [that] the robe-fund may have been brought, there [he] himself can go, or a messenger can be sent [saying]: "Sirs, that robe-fund which you conveyed for the bhikkhu does not fulfil any need of that bhikkhu. Let the sirs endeavour for [what is their] own. Let not [what is their] own get lost." This is the proper procedure here.

The section [starting with the rule] on robes is first.

This rule is the longest in the Pātimokkha and there are a lot of repetitions that have not been listed. The words and variant readings not listed below either occurred earlier in the rule, or in NP 8.

rājā: king; nom. sg. m. see Pār 2.

rājabhoggo: one in the king's service, king's official; nom. sg. m. = **rājā**: king + **bhogga**: property, possession; f.p.p. of *bhuñjati* used as a noun. Vibh states that it is one living on a salary and food from the king. H in BD II 65 n. 1 thinks that it refers to the chief minister in the origin story. Cf. PED 510 & 570.

brāhmaṇo: a brahmin, a member of the brahmin caste; nom. sg. m.; fr. *brahma*.

gahapatiko: a (male) householder; nom. sg. m. = *gahapati*: see NP 6 + conn. suf. *-ka*.

dūtena: by a messenger; ins. sg. m. Ins. of means; see Syntax § 66.

pahiṇeyya: should convey, should send; 3 sg. opt. of *pahiṇati* (*pa* + \sqrt{hi} + *ṇa*).

acchādehī ti: clothe; junction of *acchādehī* + *ti* in which the final *-i* of *acchādehī* has been lengthened before the *ti*; see Nid: "*vedissāmī ti*." **acchādehi**: 3 sg. imp. of *acchādeti*; see NP 8. + **ti**: quotation-mark.

so: that; nom. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)* connected with *dūto*.

ce: if, and if; connective or hypothetical particle.

dūto: a messenger; nom. sg. m.

taṃ: that; acc. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)* connected with *bhikkhum*.

bhikkhum: acc. sg. m.

evaṃ: thus; indecl.

vadeyya: should say; 3 sg. opt. of *vadati*; see above Sd 13.

idaṃ: this; acc. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*. **kho**: indeed; emph. particle; no need to translate.

bhante: Venerable Sir; voc. sg. m. see above Nid.

āyasmantaṃ: for the venerable one; acc. sg. m. of *āyasmā*: see above Nid.

uddissa: for; indecl; see NP 8.

ābhaṭaṃ: has been brought; p.p. of *ābharati* (*ā* + *√bhar* + *a*): lit. carries to.

paṭiggaṇhātu: let receive; 3 sg. imp. of *paṭiggaṇhāti* (*paṭi* + *√(g)gah* + *ṇha*), see NP 3.

āyasmā: the Venerable; nom. sg. m. Not vocative; see Sd 10.

cīvaracetāpanan-ti = **cīvaracetāpanaṃ**: acc. sg. nt. + **ti**.

tena bhikkhunā: ins. sg. m.; see above NP 3.

evam-assa vacanīyo: is to be spoken to thus; see Sd 10.

na: not; neg. particle. **kho**: indeed; emph. particle.

mayam: we; 1 pl. nom. of pers. pron. *ma(d)*.

āvuso: friend; voc. sg. m. Informal address; see above Nid.

paṭiggaṇhāma: 1 pl. pres. ind.

cīvaraṇ-ca: junction of *cīvaraṃ* + *ca* through palatalisation of the final *ṃ* of *cīvaraṃ*. **cīvaraṃ**: acc. sg. nt. + **ca**: but; it is here a disj. part as it follows a negation; see the note on *ca* in *alaṇca* in Anīya 2.

kālena: at the right time; adv. to *paṭiggaṇhāma*, ins. sg. of *kāla*: time. ins. of time employed adverbially; see Syntax 75 e,ii.

kappiyan-ti: allowable, suitable; junction of *kappiyaṃ* + *ti* through dentalisation of the final *niggaḥita* in *kappiyaṃ*. = **kappiyaṃ**: adj. from *kappeti*: to make allowable. Sp: “*kālena kappiyan-ti yuttapattakālena, yadā no attho hoti, tadā kappiyaṃ cīvaraṃ gaṇhāma*.”: “At the right time (when it is) allowable: at the proper and fit time. When there is a need for us then we accept an allowable robe (-cloth).” + **ti**: quotation mark; see above Nid.

atthi: there is, has; 3 sg. pres. ind., (*√as* + *a*), In Pāli there is no verb corresponding to the English verb “to have” and a dat./gen. (of possession) with a substantive (= a verb expressing being.) is used instead. Unlike other verbs *atthi* can be found at the beginning of the statement for extra emphasis; see IP p.31 and DP 78.

pan’āyasmato: = junction of *pana* + *āyasmato* through the elision of the final *-a* in *pana*. = **pana**: perhaps, but; inter. particle. + **āyasmato**: dat./gen. sg. m. A Dat/gen. of possession that is used with a substantive verb to denote the possessor. It is difficult to distinguish whether the case is genitive or dative here, but the genitive seems more likely; see Syntax § 95 & 141,6.

ko-ci: someone who is, anyone; = indefinite pron.; see PG § 111,1. = rel. pron. *ko*: who + indefinite particle. *-ci*.

veyyāvaccakaro: steward, servant, helper, lit.: one who is doing services; nom. sg. m. Acc. (or gen.) tapp. cpd.; see IP p.92. = **veyyāvacca**: service (= *viyāvacca*, *vi* + *y* + *āvacca*, the *svarabhakti* vowel *-i-* is strengthened to *-e-* and the *-y-* doubled as is normal in Pāli.) + **karo**: doing, making; = dependent word from *√kar*: “does” functioning as action-noun; see *hatthagāha* at Sd 2 and IP p.92.

ti: quotation-mark; see above.

cīvaratthikena: who is in need of a robe (-cloth); adjective qualifying *bhikkhunā*. = **cīvara** + **atthika**: in need of; adj. = *attha*: need; + poss. suf. *-ika*.

bhikkhave: bhikkhus!; 3 pl. voc. of bhikkhu. Māgadhism of the usual form *bhikkhū* or *bhikkhavo*; see PG § 82,5. According to Geiger it is a colloquial form from popular speech.

The use of *bhikkhave* here and in Pāc 71, which is elsewhere used by the Buddha to address the bhikkhus, seems out of place. Dutt (p. 68, cf. Hinüber 1999 p.70 and Olivelle, 1974, p.51) suggests that this is evidence that some rules were incorporated verbatim into the Pātimokkha from other sources or oral tradition. In the Khandhakas (= the chapters that make up Mv & Cv), in which the Buddha himself addresses the bhikkhus, *bhikkhave* is found in all the rule-formulations. The familiar word in these two rules would have escaped the scrutiny of the redactor. There are no parallel formulations of NP 10 and Pāc 71 in the Khandhakas, but for other Pātimokkha rules there are; see *yathādhammo*: Pāc 73.

In the Prātimokṣasūtras of other Buddhist schools there is no word corresponding to *bhikkhave* in this rule or

in Pāc 71.

niddisitabbo: can be appointed; f.p.p. of *niddisati* (*ni* + \sqrt{dis} + *a*) agreeing with the patients *ārāmiko* & *upāsako*; see IP p.107.

ārāmiko: monastery-attendant, lit. one living in the monastery; nom. sg. m. Here the patient in the clause is in the nominative since it is a passive clause; see IP p.42 & 107. = *ārāma*: park + poss. suf. *-ika*.

upāsako: male lay follower; nom. sg. m. see Aniy 1.

eso: this one, he; nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *eta(d)* put at the start of the line for emphasis.

bhikkhūnaṃ: gen. pl. m. **veyyāvaccakaro**: nom. sg. m. **veyyāvaccakaraṃ**: acc. sg. m.

saññāpetvā: having instructed; abs. of *saññāpeti* (*saṃ* + $\sqrt{nā}$ + *āpe*).

yaṃ: that; acc. sg. nt. of rel. pron. *ya(d)*; adverbial accusative functioning as connective particle connecting the main clause with the subordinate; see Syntax § 50c, cf. Pāc 70: “*yam-pi*” and Pāc 73: “*yaṃ tvaṃ*.”

niddisi: was appointed; 3 sg. aor. of *niddisati*; see above.

saññatto: has been instructed; p.p. of *saññāpeti*; see above. **so**: he; nom. sg. m.

mayā: by me; ins. sg. of 1st. person pron. *ma(d)*.

upasaṅkamatu: let approach; 3 sg. imp. of *upasaṅkamati*; see NP 8.

āyasmā: the Venerable; nom. sg. m.

kālena: at the right time; *Kālena* is an adverb to *upasaṅkamatu*, not an adjective agreeing with *cīvarena* as Ñāṇamoli’s “approach him for a robe” suggests.

cīvarena: with a robe; ins. sg. m.

taṃ: you; acc. sg. m., contracted form of pers. pron. *tvaṃ*.

acchādessatī ti: he will clothe; 3 sg. fut. of *acchādeti*; see above. = future without *-i-*; see IP p.232. The final *-i* of *acchādessati* gets lengthened before the quotation particle *ti*; see Nid. The proper sentence construction is: “*Upasaṅkamatu āyasmā kālena, cīvarena taṃ acchādessatī ti*” not: “... *kālena cīvarena* ...” as in Ñm, without a comma.

dvattikkhattuṃ: two or three times; adverbial *abbayībhāva* cpd in acc. sg. nt.; see IP p.212 and Syntax § 51,e.

= **dvatti**: two or three; disjunctive *dvanda* cpd (IP p.212). = **dva**: two; numeral compound form+ **(t)ti**: three; num. cpd form.

It is not clear whether *dvi-* or *dva-* is the more authentic reading. Maybe it should rather be *di-* like in *diratta* in Pāc 5. This is the Prakritic form, while *dv-* is Sanskrit. The long *-ā-* of the numeral base *dvā* (as in *dvādasa*: 12) is weakened because the initial consonant of *ti* is doubled (cf. *dvattiṃsa*: 32) under the influence of the Sanskrit *tri*. This is in accordance with the Pāli law of Morae (see PG § 5–6) in which there is only a short vowel before a double consonant (*dvatti*) or a long vowel before a single consonant (*dvāti*). In NP 29 an opposite change has been done *charratta* > *chāratatta*. + **(k)khattuṃ**: times; adverbial numeral suffix, = Skt *kṛtvās*; see PG § 22 & 119,3. The initial consonant of *khattuṃ* is always doubled, although there seems to be no reason for it with *ti-* and *pañca*, perhaps it is here a generalisation; see PG § 33,1 n.2. The last consonants of *catu(r)* and *cha(l)* are assimilated to the initial consonants of the words they are compounded with (cf. NP 14) and thus the doubling makes sense here.

codetabbo: can be prompted, ... incited, ... reproved; f.p.p. of *codeti* (\sqrt{cud} + *e*) agreeing with the patient in the sentence: *veyyāvaccakaro*.

sāretabbo: can be reminded, can be caused to remember; f.p.p. of *sāreti*, the causative of *sarati* (\sqrt{sar} + *a*); see above Nid.

attho me āvuso cīvarena: lit.: “Friend, there is a need of a robe for me”, Horner: “Sir, I am in need of a robe”, Ñm: “Friend, I have a need of a robe”. The nom. sg. m. *attho* takes the ins. *cīvarena*. See Syntax § 83: “*Attho* with the ins. ... means “to be in need of” where normally *hoti* is to be understood.” The person for whom there is a need for something is put in the dative of interest and that thing needed is put in the instrumental;

see Syntax § 110b.

attho: need; nom. sg. m.

me: for me; dat. sg. of pers. pron. *ma(d)*. = Dative of interest.

āvuso: voc. sg. m.

cīvarena: a robe; ins. sg. nt.

codayamāno sārayamāno: prompting, reminding; pr.p. of *codeti* & *sāreti*; see above. The 7th conjugational sign *-aya-*, a non-contracted form of the usual stem-vowel, is retained in the pr.p.; see Sd 6: *kārayamānena*.

Mā-L: *codayanto vijñāpayanto*; BV 167.

taṃ cīvaraṃ: acc. sg. nt.

abhinipphādeyya: he should make (him) bring forth, produce; 3 sg. opt. of *abhinipphādeti* (*abhi* + *nis* + $\sqrt{\text{pad}}$ + *e*); has bring forth, produces, effects; the causative of *abhinipphajjati*.

taṃ cīvaraṃ abhinipphādeyya: he should have (him) bring forth/produce that robe, (the prompting and reminding) should make that robe to be brought forth, Ñm: ... if ... the robe is forthcoming, H: if he succeeds in obtaining that robe, Than: should (the steward) produce the robe.

Sp III 673: "... *evaṃ yāvatatiyaṃ codento taṃ cīvaraṃ yadi nipphādeti sakkoti attano paṭilābhavasena nipphādetuṃ* ...": "... thus prompting up to the third time, if he brings forth that robe (-cloth), he is able by his own obtaining-power to bring forth."

There is confusion here among the translators about whether it is the messenger who brings forth the robe (-cloth) when prompted, or whether it is the bhikkhu who causes the robe (-cloth) to be brought forth by the messenger. The causative sense in this context of urging is the correct one as in this way the same agent, *bhikkhu*, is maintained for *abhinipphādeyya* as well as for the causative present participles *codayamāno* and *sārayamāno* above. If the steward would be the agent here then these present participles should have been passive.

It is also possible that the robe is made brought forth by the action of prompting and reminding; see Vin I 223/NP X 2,2: "*Idaṃ me cīvaraṃ atirekatikkhattuṃ codanāya atirekacchakkhattuṃ thānena abhinipphāditāṃ nissaggiyaṃ*": "This robe (-cloth) which has been made to be brought forth by prompting and by standing more than six times is to be forfeited by me (see NP intro note)."

Cf. S V 156: "*so me attho abhinipphanho*"; Vin II 183: "*Devadatto pothuñjanikaṃ iddhiṃ abhinipphādesi*": "Devadatta produced a mundane psychic power (display)"; D I 78: "... *yaṃ yad-eva ākañkheyya taṃ tad-eva kareyya abhinipphādeyya*."; cf. S V 255.

iccetam kusalam, no ce: ... , it is good, if not, ...; see Sd 10.

catukkhattuṃ pañcakkhattuṃ: four times or five times; *abbayībhāva* cpd.

catu: four; num. **pañca**: five; num. **cha**: six; num.

(k)khattuṃ: times; adverbial numeral suffix; see above.

chakkhattuparamaṃ: six times at the most; adv. *abbayībhāva* cpd. = **chakkhattu(m)** + **paramaṃ**: at the most; adv. see NP 3.

tuṇhībhūtena: by one who is silent, by him in silence, lit.: by one who has become silent; ins. sg. m. Adj. to an unexpressed *bhikkhunā*. = **tuṇhī**: silent; cf. Nid. + **bhūta**: has become; p.p. of *bhavati*. An indeclinable compounded with a verb; see IP p.156. *Bhāva* is not used here as in the Nid because in this impersonal passive construction the instrumental (= ins. of agent; see Syntax § 87,c) *-bhūtena* indicates the agent for the future passive participle *thātabbam*. In the Nidāna *-bhāvena* indicates the *state* of silence whereas with *-bhūtena* here it is the *person* who is silent that is referred to. In the following *tuṇhībhūto* the clause changes to active voice (*tiṭṭhamāno*).

uddissa: for; indecl.; see above Np 8.

thātabbam: (it) can be stood (for), (it) is to be stood (for); f.p.p. of *tiṭṭhati* ($\sqrt{\text{thā}}$ + *a*), agreeing with unexpressed *cīvaraṃ*.

tuṇhībhūto: has become silent, silently; nom. sg. m. = a predicative nominative, see Syntax § 20, *-bhūto* being a complement to an unexpressed *bhikkhu* and *tiṭṭhamāno* acting as an auxiliary verb; see IP p.238. *Tuṇhībhūto* in effect acts as an adverb of manner and can be translated as “silently”; see Syntax § 20,c.

tiṭṭhamāno: standing; pr.p. of *tiṭṭhati* agreeing with unexpressed *bhikkhu*.

tato ce uttarim vāyamamāno: if [through] making effort more than that, Ñm: and if on making further efforts, H: if he exerting himself further than that.

The Prātimokṣasūtras support the Se reading: Mā-L: “... ity etat kuśalaṃ, no ced abhiniṣpādeya tad uttayanto vā vyāyamanto vā taṃ cīvaram abhiniṣpādeya, abhiniṣpanne cīvare nissargika-pācattikaṃ | no ced abhiniṣpādeya ...” (BV 167, PrMoMā-L p.12). Mū: “... ityevaṃ kuśalaṃ, no ced abhiniṣpadyena na uttari dhyāyaccheccīvarasyābhiniṣpādeya, abhiniṣpanne cīvare naisargikapāyantikā, no ced abhiniṣpadyena ...” (PrMoMū p.28). Sa: “... kuśalaṃ, no ced abhiniṣpadyeta tata uttaraṃ vyāyameta cīvarasyābhiniṣpādeya abhiniṣpanne cīvare niṣargika pātayantika no ce...” (PrMoSa p.191. Cf. Finot 35.)

The problem with the Thai reading is the fact that the word *ce* appears twice in one sentence, which seems to be incorrect in Pāli. Further, it is not needed as the meaning is clear without it. In the preceding sentences “*no ce abhinipphādeyya*” is necessary because it introduces the instructions.

tato ce uttarim: if more than that; see NP 3

vāyamamāno: exerting, making effort; pr.p. of *vāyamati* (*vi + ā + √yam + a*). Cf. *sammāvāyāma*, the 6th step of the eight-fold path.

yat’assa: from wherever it should be; = junction of *yato + assa* through elision of the final *-o* of *yato*. **yato**: from where; abl. sg. of rel. pron. *ya* + **assa**: should be; 3 sg. opt. of *atthi*.

ābhaṭaṃ: has been brought; see above.

tattha: there; adv. of place, cf. Sd concl.

sāmaṃ: himself; adv.

gantabbam: can go, lit.: (it) can be gone, is to be gone; f.p.p. of *gacchati* (*√gam + a*), agreeing with unexpressed *taṃ*.

pāhetabbo: can be sent, is to be sent; f.p.p. of *pahīnati*, agreeing with *dūto*; see above.

yaṃ: that, which; acc. sg. nt. of rel. pron. *ya(d)* agreeing with *-cetāpanaṃ*. A general or “empty” relative (= correlative with *taṃ*) that simply marks the relative clause and may be translated as “that”; see IP p.291f. Cf. Pāc 73.

tumhe: you; voc. pl. of 2nd pers. pron. *ta(d)*.

āyasmanto: voc. pl. of *āyasmā*.

pahīnittha: you conveyed, sent; 2 pl. aor. of *pahīnati*; see above.

taṃ: that; nom. sg. nt. dem. pron. referring back to the *cīvaracetāpanaṃ*.

tassa: of that; dat. sg. m.

bhikkhuno: of the *bhikkhu*; dat. sg. m. = Possessive genitive; see Syntax § 141,c.

kiñ-ci: any; indef. pron.; see Sd 9.

atthaṃ: need, interest, advantage, benefit, purpose, use; acc. sg. m.

anubhoti: fulfils (purpose), serves, benefits; 3 sg. pres. ind. = contracted form of *anubhavati* (*anu + √bhū + a*). A bi-transitive verb (see IP p.18f.) taking two patients: *taṃ* & *atthaṃ*.

na taṃ tassa bhikkhuno kiñ-ci atthaṃ anubhoti: it does not fulfil any need of that *bhikkhu*. *Atthaṃ anubhoti* is an idiomatic expression. *Bhikkhuno* is the possessor of *atthaṃ*, which is the patient of *anubhoti*. Cf. M III 243: “*taṃ c’assa atthaṃ anubhoti*”: “and it serves his purpose.”

The agent in this main clause is *taṃ* (nom. sg. nt.), which is relative to *yaṃ* (acc. sg. nt.) in the preceding relative clause. The relative pronoun and the dem. pron. do not have to be in the same case; see IP p.71.

yuñjant’ āyasmanto: = junction of *yuñjantu* & *āyasmanto* through elision of the final *-u* of *yuñjantu*.

yuñjantu: let endeavour, exert oneself; 3 pl. imp. of *yuñjati* ($\sqrt{yuj} + \text{ṇa}$).

yuñjant' āyasmanto sakam: Let the venerables endeavour for (what is their) own. Ñm: let those concerned send for what is theirs, H: let the Gentlemen make use of their own, BD II 66 n. 7: "... or: 'let the gentlemen have the benefit of their own things.'"

āyasmanto: voc. pl. m.

sakam: for what is own; acc. sg. nt. (= acc. of aim; Syntax § 38) Adjective agreeing with unexpressed *yam* or *-cetāpanam*. = **sa-** the contracted form of **sayam**: own + possessive suf. **-(a)ka**.

mā: let not; prohibitive article constructed with an aorist (sometimes also with imperative or optative).

vo: of you, yours; enclitic form of the gen. plural of the pers. pron. *ta(d)*. = possessive genitive; Syntax § 141,c.

sakam: what is own; nom. sg. nt.

vinassā ti: get lost, perish; = **vinassā**: 3 sg. (a-) aor. of *vinassati* (*vi* + \sqrt{nas} + *ya*) cf. Pāc 70 + **ti**: quotation mark. Not to be confused with Pāc 70 *vinassa*, which is 2 sg. imp. Cf. Sd 10 *parakkami*.

Vinassā/vinassī. (*vinassi* is 3 sg. i-aorist) Both forms are aorist, both are grammatically correct to be used, and both are found elsewhere; i.e., A III 122: "*Mā me yoggapatho nassā ti*," A III 54, 57, and 122: "*nassanadhammaṃ mā nassā/nassī ti*," Vin III 57: "*Mā-y-idaṃ cīvaraṃ nassī ti*." Ap I 43: "*Mā me bhaṇḍaṃ vinassī ti*."

ayaṃ tattha sāmīci: see Sd concl.

cīvaravaggo: the section on robes, the section (starting with the rule) on robes, robe (-cloth) section; nom. sg. m. The titles of chapters, books, and so on, are in the nominative (the so-called "label use") in Pāli; see Syntax § 23 and Perniola, *Pali Grammar*, § 245. The compound is a so-called "appositive kammadhāraya" in which two nouns are in apposition and the first member modifies the second in so far that it restricts the meaning of the second (Cf: *tejo-dhātu*: "heat-element" etc.). When not compounded both members would be in the same case; see Perniola, *Pali Grammar*, § 130 and IP p.108. As a literal translation does not sound nice in English, the compound has been rendered as a locative *tappurisa* instead.

= **cīvara**: robe (-cloth) + **vaggo**: section, chapter; see Sd 11.

paṭhamo: first; ordinal. For ordinals see *pañṇarasa* in the Nid.

[NP 11: Kosiyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu kosiyaṃsakam santhataṃ kārāpeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on silk]

If any bhikkhu should have a rug mixed with silk made, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

kosiyaṃsakam: silk-mixed, mixed with silk; adjective qualifying *santhataṃ*. Bb. cpd.= **kosiya**: silk; nt. + **missaka**; adj. from *misseti* ($\sqrt{mis} + e$): mixes.

santhataṃ: rug, mat, felt blanket; acc. sg. nt. = p.p. of *santharati* (*saṃ* + \sqrt{thar} + *a*): spreads. See BD II xxii–xxiv.

kārāpeyya: should have made, should cause to make; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *kāreti*; cf. Sd 6.

[NP 12: Suddhakāḷakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu suddhakāḷakānaṃ eḷakalomānaṃ santhataṃ³⁰⁷ kārāpeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on pure black wool]

If any bhikkhu should have a rug made of pure black sheep's wool; [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

³⁰⁷ V: *saṇṭhataṃ*.

suddhakālakānaṃ: of pure black; adj. Bb. cpd. = **suddha**: pure, mere; adj. + **kāḷaka**: black; adj. from *kāla*.

eḷakalomānaṃ: of sheep wool; gen. pl. nt. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **eḷaka**: sheep, Ñm & H: goat; In D I 5 and elsewhere the compound *ajeḷaka*: “goats (*ajā*) and *eḷakas*” is found and in Vin I 198 the Buddha allows the use of hide (*camma*) made of *eḷaka*, *āja*: goat, and *miga*: deer. This shows that an *eḷaka* is not a goat. There are domesticated as well as wild sheep in India (the latter in the Himalaya) and the *eḷaka* is most likely a kind of sheep. From M I 228 it appears it could be a long-haired animal; from Sn 309 that it could be meek (*sorata*), and from Vin I 159 that it is a quiet group animal (*eḷakasamvāsa*); these are all typical characteristics of a sheep. MW 231: “*Eḷaka*: a kind of sheep, ram, wild goat.” + **loma**: body-hair, wool.

[NP 13: Dvebhāgasikkhāpadaṃ]

Navam pana³⁰⁸ bhikkhunā santhatam³⁰⁹ kārayamānena dve bhāgā suddhakālakānaṃ eḷakalomānaṃ ādātābbā, tatiyam odātānaṃ catuttham gacariyānaṃ. Anādā ce bhikkhu dve bhāge suddhakālakānaṃ eḷakalomānaṃ tatiyam odātānaṃ catuttham gacariyānaṃ navam santhatam³¹⁰ kārāpeyya, nissaggiyam pācittiyam.

[The training precept on [using] two parts]

By a bhikkhu who is having a new rug made, two parts of pure black sheep-wool are to be taken, [and] a third [part] of white, a fourth [part] of ruddy brown. If a bhikkhu should have a rug made, without having taken two parts of pure black sheep’s hair, [and] a third [part] of white, a fourth [part] of ruddy brown, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

navam: new; adjective qualifying *santhatam*.

pana: no need to translate; conn. particle. See Pār intro.

bhikkhunā: by a bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

santhatam spread; acc. sg. nt.

kārayamānena: having (someone else) making, causing to be made; pr.p. of *kāreti*, caus. of *karoti*; see Sd 6.

dve: two; num.

bhāgā: parts, shares; nom. pl. m., from *bhajati* (√*bhaj* + *a*).

ādātābbā: to be taken, included, Ñm: must be incorporated, H: may be taken; f.p.p. of *ādāti* (*ā* + √*dā* + *a*): applies, puts on, takes. Cf. Pāc 58. Sp III 684: *ādātābbāti gahetābbā*.

tatiyam: a third (part); ordinal.

odātānaṃ: of white; adj.

catuttham: a fourth (part); ordinal.

gacariyānaṃ: of ruddy brown; adj.

anādā: without having taken, not having taken; a kammadhāraya cpd. A “*na-nipāta-pubba-kammadhāraya*”: “a kammadhāraya in which the preceding word is the particle *na*.”; see *appaccakkhāya* in Pār 1. = neg. pref. *an-* + shortened form of *ādāya*, the absolutive of *ādāti*; see above. The Padabhājana explains it as *anādiyivā*, the abs. of *ādiyati*, but see PED *ādā* and *ādāti*. Contraction from *–āya* to *–ā* is fairly common.

ce: if; hyp. particle.

bhāge: parts; acc. pl. m.

³⁰⁸ Mi Se, C, G, V, W: *navam-pana*.

³⁰⁹ V: *saṇṭhatam*.

³¹⁰ V: *saṇṭhatam*.

[NP 14: Chabbassasikkhāpadaṃ]

Navam pana³¹¹ bhikkhunā santhataṃ³¹² kārapetvā chabbassāni dhāretabbam. Orena ce³¹³ channam vassanam tam santhataṃ³¹⁴ visajjetvā³¹⁵ vā avisajjetvā³¹⁶ vā aññam navam santhataṃ³¹⁷ kārapeyya, aññatra bhikkhusammutiyā,³¹⁸ nissaggiyam pācittiyam.

[The training precept on (keeping a rug for) six years]

By a bhikkhu who has had a new rug made, it is to be kept for six years [at least]. If within less than six years, having given up or not having given up that rug, he should have another new rug made, except with the authorisation of bhikkhus, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

navam pana: see NP 13.

kārapetvā: having had (someone else) make; abs. of *kārapeti*; see NP 11.

chabbassāni: six years; nom. pl. nt. = **cha(!)**: six; num. *cha* in compounds causes the following consonant to double due to assimilation since the cpd form *chaḷ* is used; see IP p.269. Here *-ḷv-* is assimilated to *-vv-* for which *-bb-* is substituted since *-vv-* is never used in the Pāli as transmitted by the Mahāvihāra tradition. (In Pāli inscriptions discovered in Burma and Thailand, and in the four folios of the oldest known Pāli manuscript of the Mahāvagga in Kathmandu the combination *-vv-* is found though in the f.p.p. ending *-tavva* instead of *-tabba*; see Skilling p.128–29). *chaḷ-vassāni* > *chavvassāni* > *chabbassāni*; see IP p.218 & PG § 51,3 & 53.3. Cf. NP 16: *dubbaṇṇa*, Pāc 56: *visibbana*. + **vassa**: year, rainy season. In the Vinaya years are counted by rains-retreats. **dhāretabbam**: to be kept; f.p.p. of *dhāreti*; see NP 1.

orena: within less than, earlier than; ins. sg. nt. of *oraṃ*: below, used as adverb. *Oraṃ* takes a genitive. = Ins. of time used as an adverb of time; see Syntax § 75,e,ii & 77,b,ii. This instrumental of time denotes the time by which or before which an action is terminated or upto which point continuity is implied. **ce**: if; hyp. particle.

channam vassanam: gen. pl. nt.

tam: that; acc. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

visajjetvā: having given up, Ñm & H: got rid of; abs. of *visajjeti* (*vi* + *√saj* + *e*), cf. Sd 1. The original reading was probably *visajetvā*, but this reading is not found in any of the editions; see note to *paṭinissajeyya* at Sd 10. Cf. Sd 1: *vissatṭhi*. **vā**: or; disj. particle.

avisajjetvā: not having given up; = neg. pref. *a-* + *vissajjetvā*.

aññam: another; pron. adj. in acc. sg. (PG § 113, 3)

aññatra bhikkhusammutiyā: with the authorisation of bhikkhus; see NP 2.

[NP 15: Nisīdanasanthasikkhāpadaṃ]

Nisīdanasanthataṃ³¹⁹ pana³²⁰ bhikkhunā kārayamānena purāṇasanthatassa³²¹ sāmantā sugatavidatthi³²² ādātabbā dubbaṇṇakaraṇāya. Anādā ce bhikkhu purāṇasanthatassa sāmantā sugatavidatthiṃ navam nisīdanasanthataṃ³²³ kārapeyya, nissaggiyam pācittiyam.

³¹¹ Mi Se, C, G, V, W: *navam-pana*.

³¹² V: *saṇṭhatam*.

³¹³ BhPm 1 & 2, C, W, Ra, UP v.l., Vibh Ce v.l. (& correction in G): *orena ce bhikkhu*. D: *orena ca channam*.

³¹⁴ V: *saṇṭhatam*.

³¹⁵ V: *visajjetvā*. Other eds.: *vissajjetvā*.

³¹⁶ V: *avisajjetvā*.

³¹⁷ V: *saṇṭhatam*.

³¹⁸ Mi & Mm Se, BhPm 1 & 2: *sammutiyā*. See NP 3. (Pg: *-sammutiyā*.)

³¹⁹ V: *-saṇṭhatam*.

³²⁰ Mi Se, G: *nisīdanasanthataṃ-pana*. V: *nisīdanasaṇṭhatam-pana*.

³²¹ V: *-saṇṭhata*.

³²² Vibh Ce: *-vidatthi*.

³²³ V: *-saṇṭhatam*.

[The training precept on the sitting cloth]

By a bhikkhu who is having a sitting-rug made, a sugata-span from the border of an old rug is to be taken for making [it] stained. If a bhikkhu, without having taken a sugata-span from the border of an old rug, should have a new sitting cloth made, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

For unlisted words see NP 13.

nisīdanasanthatam: sitting-rug; acc. sg. nt. Dat. tapp. cpd. = **nisīdana**: sitting, sitting-cloth, action-noun from *nisīdati* (*ni* + *√sad* + *a*): to sit down, + **santhata**: see NP 11. See BD II 87 n. 2.

purāṇasanthatassa: of an old rug; gen. sg. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd. = **purāṇa**: old, used; adj.; cf. NP 4. + **santhata**.

sāmantā: all around, surrounding; an adverbial ablatival preposition; see Syntax § 134b. It can not be an adj. qualifying *sugatavidatthi* because in the second occurrence of the word the case ending of the word it would qualify is different: *sugatavidatthim*.

sugatavidatthi: sugata's (-standard-) span; nom. sg. f.; see Sd 6.

purāṇasanthatassa sāmantā sugatavidatthi: a sugata-span from the border of an old rug, Ñm: a (round or square piece) of a used rug one *sugata*-span round, H: from all round an old rug, Norman: a piece of rug a *sugata-span* all round.

dubbaṇṇakaraṇāya: for making (it) stained, unattractive, bad looking, Ñm: unsightly, H: for disfiguring; dat. sg. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd. = **dubbaṇṇa** (= *duvvaṇṇa* < *dur-vaṇṇa*; see NP 14 *chabbassāni*): bad looking; adj. Bb. cpd. = pref. *du(r)*: bad + *vaṇṇa*: good-appearance, beauty; see Pār 3 + **karaṇa**: making; action-noun der. fr. *karoti*.

sugatavidatthim: acc. sg. f.

[NP 16: Eḷakalomasikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhikkhuno pan'eva addhānamaggappaṭipannassa³²⁴ eḷakalomāni uppajjeyyūṃ, ākaṅkhamānena bhikkhunā paṭiggahetabbāni, paṭiggahetvā tiyojanaparamaṃ sahatthā haritabbāni,³²⁵ asante hārake; tato ce uttariṃ³²⁶ hareyya asante pi hārake, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on sheep wool]

Now, if sheep-wool should become available to a bhikkhu who is travelling on a main road, by a bhikkhu who is wishing [so, it] can be accepted, having accepted [it, it] can be carried with his own hand for three yojanas at the most when there is no one present who can carry it; if he should carry it more than that, even when there is no one present who can carry it, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

bhikkhuno: to a bhikkhu; dat. sg. m. Dative of advantage; see Syntax § 97a.

pan'eva: now; see Sd 12.

addhānamaggappaṭipannassa: who is travelling on a main road, who is going on a road-journey/travelling-road/highway, Ñm: while he is travelling on a journey, H: as he is going along a road, Norman: when he has set out on a journey; adj. qualifying *bhikkhuno*. The exact meaning is not completely clear. Acc. tapp. cpd. used as a *bāhubbihi* cpd. Padabhājana: "...: *panthaṃ gacchantassa*": "to one going on a travelling-road/while going on a travelling-road."

= **addhānamagga**: main road, road for travelling (as dat. tapp. cpd.), intercity-highway, journey-road, long road (kammadhāraya cpd.) = **addhāna**: road, (long) journey; originally acc. sg. nt. of the noun *addhan*: a

³²⁴ Mi & Mm Se, BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, V, W, Um, UP, Ra, Vibh Ee: *maggapaṭi*-. Vibh Ce, Dm: *-maggappaṭi*-. G: *addhānamaggaṃ paṭipannassa*.

³²⁵ BhPm 1, C, D, G, V, W, Um, Vibh Ee, Mi & Mm Se: *hāretabbāni*. Pg has *hāritabbāni* in its explanation, but states that *hāretabbāni* is a v.l.

³²⁶ Dm, Um, UP: *uttari*. See NP 3.

stretch, i.e., a journey, way + **magga**: road; the commentaries explain as *dīghamagga*, long road, e.g. Sp 665 (on the NP 7 origin-story): “*Addhānamaggaṇ-ti addhānasāṅkhātāṇi dīghamaggaṇ na nagaravāṭṭhimaggaṇ-ti*.”: “a long road reckoned to be a long stretch, not a street-road in town.” + **paṭipanna**: going along, has set out on; p.p. of *paṭipajjati* (*paṭi* + *√pad* + *ya*).

It is often found in phrases mentioning bhikkhus travelling from one distant place to the other e.g. Vin III 212–13: “... *bhikkhū Saketā Sāvattthiṇi addhānamaggapaṭipannā honti*.”: “... bhikkhus were going on the main road from Saketa to Sāvattthi.” It is also found in the compound “*addhānakkhama*” at A III 30 where it means “enduring a long journey.” Cf. Pāc 32 & 57: “*addhānagamanasamayo*”: “occasion of going on a journey”; D I 73: “*yathā kantāraddhānamaggaṇi*”: “like a travelling-road in the desert.”

Addhānamagga might mean a road-journey in contrast to a boat-journey; see Pāc 27 & 28.

The initial *p-* in the prefix *paṭi-* is liable to doubling since it corresponds to the Sanskrit form *prati-*; see IP p.11 n. 1 & 2 and PG § 33,1. In mixed junction of vowel and consonant often original initial consonant groups reappear at the beginning of the second word; see PG § 74,1.³²⁷

bhikkhuno ... addhānamaggapaṭipannassa: this is probably not an genitive absolute construction as other translators make it appear. *Bhikkhuno* is a dative of advantage, not a genitive, and *addhānamaggapaṭipannassa* is simply an adjective qualifying *bhikkhuno*. The genitive absolute normally occurs with a present participle, although *-paṭipanna* appears to have the sense of a pr.p. here; see Syntax § 158–159.

eḷakalomāni: acc. pl. nt

uppajjeyyūṃ ... paṭiggahetvā: as NP 3, but verbs are pl. here.

tiyojanaparamaṃ: for three *yojanas* at the most; adv. A kammadhāraya containing a digu cpd: *tiyojana*, used as an adverb in acc. sg. nt. = **ti**: three; numeral; compound form of *tayo* + **yojana**: a unit of linear measure equal to about 11 kilometers + **paramaṃ**: at the most; see NP 3.

sahatthā: Ñm & H: with his own hand; ins. sg. m. instrumental (of means) in *-ā*; see Syntax § 6 & 66a, and Norman’s note on *theyyā* in Sn 119 in GD. Cf. *sahatthā* at Pāc 41, and *akāmā* at Sd concl. = **sa-**: own; reflexive pron., a shortened form of *sayam*, = Skt: *sva-*. Mā-L (Pāc 41): *svahastaṃ*; PrMoMā-L p.22. + **hattha**: hand.

haritabbāni: to be carried; f.p.p. of *harati* (*har* + *a*).

The reading *hāretabbāni* is probably a corruption due to *hārake* and *hareyya* in the same rule. No causative sense is intended here. Cf. origin-story: *āharissati*, and Vin II 137: *haritabbāṇi* and *hareyya*.

Mā-L: “... *triyojanaparamaṇi hartivyaṃ-asante anyasmin hārake taduttariṇi hāreya* ...”; PrMoMā-L p.16. Sa: “... *yāvāt triyojanaparamaṇi svayaṇi hartavyāṇi asati hārake*”; PrMoSa p.195, Finot 37.

asante: when not present; adj. qualifying *hārake*. = neg. pref. *a-* + pr.p. of *atthi* (*√as* + *a*): is.

hārake: one who can carry, Ñm: one to carry, carrier, bearer; loc. sg. m., loc. absolute construction with *asante*; cf. *satthahāraka* at Pār 3.

tato ce uttariṇi: if more than that; see NP 3.

³²⁷ Cf. Pāc 47: *-māsappaccaya-*, Pāc 48: *tatharūpappaccayā*, Pāc 90: *kaṇḍuppaṭicchādiṇi*, Pāc 92: *cīvarappamāṇaṇi*, Pd 2: *nappaṭibhāseyya*, Sekh 3–4: *suppaṭicchanno*.

In all these examples it is the Burmese edition which consistently shows the doubling.

Geiger notes in PG § 67 that Pāli is not always consistent in the reintroduction of the initial double consonant of the second component and that it is often omitted. The double consonant might therefore have been a “correction” by the Burmese editors. See also PG xxv & xxix on the (Sanskrit) influence of Burmese grammarians on how Pāli was written from the 12th century onwards.

Hinüber 1983 p.68 writes: “... it may be said that ever since king Kyanzittha (1068–1112) took the pains to “collect and purify the Tipiṭaka, which had become obscured and corrupt” a highly sophisticated Pāli philology developed in Burma during the following centuries, which has left traces in almost every text. This vigorous, rigorous and bold scholarship never shrank back from introducing sometimes considerable alterations in the wording even of the Tipiṭaka. Therefore anybody studying Pāli, whether working on manuscripts, grammar or literary history, has to acquaint himself with the ways and means by which Pāli was moulded in Burma. These can be neither understood nor evaluated without a thorough knowledge of the *Saddanīti*, their very foundation and in many respects their culmination too.”

(Cf. Roger Bischoff: *Buddhism in Myanmar* p.25–27; B.P.S. Wheel Publication 399–401, Kandy, S.L.)

For the Burmese influence on Pāli texts, see also Nid: *āvīkareyya*, Pār 1: *dubbalya*, NP 3: *uttari*.

hareyya: should carry; 3 sg. opt. of *harati*; see above.

pi: even; emphatic particle; see Pār 1.

[NP 17: Eḷakalomadhovāpanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā eḷakalomāni dhovāpeyya vā rajāpeyya vā vijaṭapeyya vā, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on having sheep-wool washed]

If any bhikkhu should have sheep-wool washed, dyed, or carded by an unrelated bhikkhunī, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

eḷakalomadhovāpanasikkhāpadaṃ: see title at Pār 1. *Dhovāpana*, lit. making wash, is an action-noun derived from *dhovāpeti*, the causative of the verb *dhovati*: “one causes to wash”; see NP 4. *Eḷakalomadhovāpana* is an accusative tappurisa but can’t be rendered as such in English without losing the causative sense.

aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā: by an unrelated bhikkhunī; ins. sg. f.; see NP 4.

eḷakalomāni: sheep-wool, lit.: “sheep-wools”; acc. pl. nt.

dhovāpeyya vā rajāpeyya vā: see NP 4.

vijaṭapeyya: should have (the bhikkhunī) card, unravel; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *vijaṭeti* (*vi* + *ṭjaṭ* + *e*).

[NP 18: Rūpiyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu jātārūparajataṃ uggaṇheyya vā uggaṇhāpeyya vā upanikkhittaṃ vā sādiyeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on silver]

If any bhikkhu should take gold and silver, or should have [it] taken, or should consent to [it] being deposited [for him], [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

jātārūparajataṃ: gold and silver; acc. sg. nt. dvanda cpd = **jātārūpa**: (unworked) gold; = **jāta**: genuine; here an adj. noun + **rūpa**: form + **rajata**: silver. See BD II 100 n. 2.

uggaṇheyya: should take, accept; 3 sg. opt. of the *uggaṇhāti* (*ud* + *ṭgah* + *ṇha*).

uggaṇhāpeyya: should make (someone else) take; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *uggaṇhāti*.

upanikkhittaṃ: deposited, deposit, placed near; p.p. of *upanikkhipati* (*upa* + *ni* + *ṭ(k)hip* (= Skt *ṭkṣip* + *a*) used as adjective qualifying *-rajataṃ* or as an accusative neuter noun.

sādiyeyya: should consent to, ... accept; 3 sg. opt. of *sādiyati*; cf. NP 7. In NP 7 “accept” is used for *sādiyeyya*, but here in this context “consent to” is used as *uggaṇhāti* already implies accepting.

upanikkhittaṃ sādiyeyya: should consent to (it) being deposited, Ñm: consent to the deposit of, H: should consent to its being kept in deposit, Vin texts: allow it to be kept in deposit for him, Norman: accept it when deposited (for him), Than: consent to its being deposited (near him); see BMC I 217.

Norman translates this as an accusative absolute, but these are rare in Pāli. The present usage does not seem to be one; see Syntax § 56.

Mā-L rule 18: “Yo puna bhikkhū svahasraṃ (-hastam) jātārūpa-rajataṃ udgrhṇeṇya vā udgrhṇāpeyya vā antamasato iha nikṣepēhī ti vā vadeya upanikkhittaṃ vā sādiyeyya nihsargika-pācattikaṃ.”; BV 166.

[NP 19: Rūpiyaṣaṃvohārasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu nānappakāraṃ rūpiyaṣaṃvohāraṃ samāpajjeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on trading in money]

If any bhikkhu should engage in the various kinds of trading in money, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

nānappakāraṇaṃ: of various kinds, manifold; adj. Bb. cpd. = pref. **nānā**: various, diverse + **pakāra**: of this kind; adj. from *pakāra*: kind + poss. suf. *-ika*. The Padabhāṇa defines this as made (into jewelry etc.) or unmade (i.e., made crude/solid, *ghanakata*.).

rūpiyaṣaṃvohāraṃ: trading in money, trafficking, business; acc. sg. m. Gen. or ins. tapp. cpd. = **rūpiya**: money, silver (cp. the modern *rupee* of India); fr. *rūpa*: form + suf. *-iya*. The Vibh word-commentary and Sp include both gold and silver under *rūpiya*, for more on this see B.D. II 100 n. 2. & 106 n. 2 + **saṃvohāra**: trading, trafficking, business; action-noun.

This rule deals specifically with the trade or exchange of (precious) metals and/or money (including jewelry and crude gold etc.) for (precious) metals and/or money; see the discussion of this rule in BMC I and see the next rule.

samāpajjeyya: engage in; 3 sg. opt.; see Sd 2.

Mā-L rule 20: “Yo puna bhikkṣur aneka-vidhaṃ jāta-rūpa-rajata-vikṛti-vyavahāraṃ samāpadyeya niḥsargika-pācattikaṃ.”; BV 183.

[NP 20: Kayavikkayasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu nānappakāraṇaṃ kayavikkayaṃ samāpajjeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

*Ēḷakalomavaggo*³²⁸ *dutiyo*.

[Pattavaggo³²⁹]

[The training precept on bartering]

If any bhikkhu should engage in the various kinds of bartering, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

The section on sheepwool is second.

kayavikkayaṃ: bartering, trading; acc. sg. m. Dvanda cpd = **kaya**: buying (goods by means of goods); from *kayati* ($\sqrt{k}i + \eta a$) + **vikkaya**: selling (goods for goods); from *vikkiṇati* ($vi + \sqrt{(k)ki} + \eta a$). The difference between this rule and the previous one is that here apparently only goods are exchanged for goods while in the previous rule only money for money; see Vibh and BMC I. Buying and selling imply the use of money in English, but no money appears to be involved here.

ēḷakalomavagga: the section (starting with the rule) on sheep-wool. = **ēḷakaloma**: sheep-wool; see NP 12 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

kosiyavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on silk, silk-section; nom. sg. m. = **kosiya**: silk; see NP 11 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

dutiyo: second; ordinal.

Mā-L rule 19: “Yo puna bhikkṣur aneka-vidhaṃ kraya-vikrayaṃ(ya)-vyavahāraṃ samāpadyeya saṃyathidaṃ gi (i) maṃ kṛṇa ito kṛṇa ettakaṃ ettake kṛṇāhī ti vā vadeya niḥsargika-pācattikaṃ.”; BV 166, PrMoMā-L p.16.

³²⁸ D, Dm, G, Mi & Mm Se, V, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee: *kosiyavaggo*.

UP, BhPm 1 & 2, C, W, Um, Ra, Mi Se v.l. & UP sihala v.l., Burmese v.l. in TP (from a 1904 Burmese printed edition): *ēḷakalomavaggo*. (This reading is also found in the Kkh [Be, Ce, Ee] and the *Sanna*.) Pg: *santhatavaggo*. (The editor of the Sinhalese Pg edition says in a footnote that *ēḷakalomavagga* is in the Pāḷi, i.e., the Pātimokkha.) See the note on the chapter titles in the Analysis.

³²⁹ Only in Mi Se.

[Pattavaggo³³⁰]

[NP 21: Pattasikkhāpadaṃ]

Dasāhaparamaṃ atirekapatto dhāretabbo. Taṃ atikkāmayato, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on bowls]

An extra bowl can be kept for ten days at the most. For one who lets it pass beyond [the ten days]; [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

dasāhaparamaṃ: ten days at the most; adv. See NP 1.

atirekapatto: extra bowl; nom. sg. m. = **atireka**: extra; see NP 1. + **patta**: bowl.

dhāretabbo: to be kept; f.p.p. of *dhāreti*; see NP 1, agrees with *patto*, with an unexpressed *bhikkhunā* as instrumental agent.

taṃ atikkāmayato: for one who lets it pass beyond; see NP 1.

[NP 22: Ūnapañcabandhanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu ūnapañcabandhanena³³¹ pattena aññaṃ navaṃ pattaṃ cetāpeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

Tena bhikkhunā so patto bhikkhuparisāya nissajitabbo,³³² yo ca tassā bhikkhuparisāya pattapariyanto, so³³³ tassa bhikkhuno padātabbo: "Ayaṃ te³³⁴ bhikkhu patto, yāva bhedanāya dhāretabbo" ti. Ayaṃ tattha sāmīci.

[The training precept on [a bowl with] less than five mends]

If any bhikkhu should exchange a bowl with less than five mends for another new bowl, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

That bowl is to be relinquished by that bhikkhu to the assembly of bhikkhus, and whichever [bowl] is the last bowl of that assembly of bhikkhus, that [bowl] is to be bestowed on that bhikkhu [thus]: "Bhikkhu, this bowl is for you, it is to be kept until breaking." This is the proper procedure here.

ūnapañcabandhanena: with less than five mends; adjective qualifying *pattena*. Bb cpd containing a digu cpd: = **ūna**: lacking, less than; adj. see Sd concl., NP 3 + **pañcabandhana**: five mends; digu cpd + **pañca**: five; num. + **bandhana**: mend, lit. binding; action-noun from *bandhati* ($\sqrt{\text{bandh}}$ + a).

pattena: with a bowl; ins. sg. m.

aññaṃ: another; pronominal adjective qualifying *pattaṃ*; see NP 14.

navaṃ: new; adj. qualifying *pattaṃ*; see NP 13.

pattaṃ: bowl; acc. sg. m.

cetāpeyya: should exchange; 3 sg. opt. of *cetāpeti*; see NP 8.

tena bhikkhunā: by that bhikkhu; ins. see NP 3.

so: that; nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

patto: nom. sg. m.

bhikkhuparisāya: to the assembly of bhikkhus; dat. sg. f. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **bhikkhu** + **parisā**: assembly; see above Nid.

³³⁰ Only in Mi Se.

³³¹ G: *ūṇa-*. V: *ona-*.

³³² BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra, Vibh Ce, UP sīhala v.l.: *nissajitabbo*. Other eds.: *nissajjitabbo*.

³³³ Mi & Mm Se, G, V, D: "... so ca tassa ..."

³³⁴ Mi & Mm Se, C, G, V, W: *ayan-te*.

nissajitabbo: to be relinquished; f.p.p. of *nissajati* (*nis* + $\sqrt{(s)saj(j)}$ + *a*), not *nissajeti* of which the f.p.p. is *nissaggiya*; see NP intro. Agreeing with *patto*.

Nissajitabbo/nissajjtabbo = Skt *niḥ* + $\sqrt{(s)sṛj}$; MW 564. See note on *paṭinissajeyya* at Sd 10.

Mā-L: *niḥsaritavyaṃ*; BV 183, PrMoMā-L p.27. Sa: *niḥsṛṣṭavyaṃ*; PrMoSa p.197.

yo: whichever (bowl); nom. sg. m. of rel. pron. *ya*; see IP p.291. Marker of relative clause., in correlation with *so* introducing a relative clause that precedes the main clause (IP p.71).

ca: and; conn. particle.

tassā: of that; gen. sg. f. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. **bhikkhuparisāya**: gen. sg. f.

pattapariyanto: the last bowl, final, Ñm: the bowl last rejected by the gathering of bhikkhus, H: the last bowl belonging to the company of monks; adj. Bb cpd. = **patta** + **pariyanta**: last, final, end; adj. cf. BMC 234–235, BD II 120 n. 5. The meaning of this is idiom is this: The relinquished bowl is first given to the most senior bhikkhu, who if he wishes, can exchange his bowl for it. If he likes it, he passes down his bowl to the next bhikkhu down the line; or, if he doesn't like it, the relinquished one. The next bhikkhu can do the same with his bowl. This procedure is repeated up to the most junior bhikkhu at the end of the line of bhikkhus. In this way the least desirable and most inferior bowl ends up standing at the end of the line of bhikkhus.

Sp: "...: *evaṃ parivattetvā pariyanṭe ṭhitapatto*." "... thus having passed (it) around, (it is) the bowl standing at the end (of the line of bhikkhus)." Cf. Cv II 1,2/Vin II 32: "*Yo hoti saṅghassa āsanapariyanto seyyāpariyanto vihārapariyanto so tassa dātabbo*." "Whichever is the last seat, the last bed, the last dwelling: that is to be given to him."

so: that (bowl); see above V.1.: "... *so ca tassa*" The Prātimokṣasūtras have no *ca* at all.

tassa bhikkhuno: dat. sg. m.

padātabbo: to be given, bestowed; f.p.p. of *padāti* (*pa* + $\sqrt{dā}$ + *a*) agreeing with *patto*.

ayaṃ: this; nom. sg. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

te: for you, Ñm: your; dat. sg. of pers. pron. *tvaṃ*. Dat. of advantage; see Syntax § 102. In this context of giving the dative sense "for you" seems more appropriate than the genitive sense "of you" or "your"

yāva: until; relative indeclinable, usually takes an abl. but here a dat.; cf. Pāc 19. *Yāva* is either co-relative to *ayaṃ* and introduces a relative clause that here follows the main clause (IP p.298), or it is co-relative to an implicit *tāva*, i.e., "*yāva bhedanāya tāva dhāretabbo ti*."

bhedanāya: breaking; dat. sg. nt. action-noun der. fr. *bhindati* (\sqrt{bhid} + *ṇa*).

dhāretabbo: it is to be kept; see NP 1 & 21.

ti: "..."; quotation-mark.

ayaṃ tattha sāmīci: this is here the proper procedure; see Sd concl.

[NP 23: Bhesajjasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yāni kho pana tāni gilānānaṃ³³⁵ bhikkhūnaṃ paṭisāyanīyāni bhesajjāni, seyyathidaṃ³³⁶ sappi, navanītaṃ,³³⁷ telaṃ, madhuphāṇitaṃ,³³⁸ tāni paṭiggahetvā sattāhaparamaṃ sannidhikāraṃ paribhuñjitabbāni. Taṃ atikkāmayato, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on medicine]

Now, [there are] those medicines which are permissible for sick bhikkhus, namely: ghee, butter, oil, [and] honey and molasses—having been accepted, they can be partaken of [while] being kept in store for seven days at the most. For one who lets it pass beyond [the seven days], [this is a case] involving expiation with

³³⁵ V: *gilānānaṃ*.

³³⁶ Dm, UP: *seyyathidaṃ*. Cf Pāc 39.

³³⁷ V: *navanītaṃ*.

³³⁸ C: *madhupphāṇitaṃ*. G: *madhuphāṇitaṃ*; later (i.e., uninked) corrected to *madhupphāṇitaṃ*. Cf Pāc 39.

forfeiture.

yāni ... tāni: those ... which; relative clause in which the antecedent *tāni* has been included for emphasis; see note on Dhṛp 42 in Norman, 2000.

yāni: which; nom. pl. nt. of rel. pron. *ya(d)*. **tāni**: those; nom. pl. nt. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

kho pana: now; emphatic particles. No literal translation possible.

yāni kho pana tāni ... bhesajjāni: Now, [there are] those ... which ...,” Ñm: there are ..., H: those which ...; emphatic clause, introducing a definition, with the sentence verb (*honti*) unexpressed. Since the verb *hoti* is implied in these constructions, it is usually not directly expressed; see Syntax § 20b-c. See *ye’me* at Pāc 68. “*Yāni kho pana tāni*” is also found in NP 29, Pāc 38, and Pd 3 & 4. Cf. “*ciṇṇamānatto bhikkhu*” in the Sd concl.

gilānānaṃ: ill, sick; adj. cf. Pāc 31 & 39.

bhikkhūnaṃ: for bhikkhus; dat. (or gen.) sg. m.

paṭisāyaniyāni: permissible, edible, allowable; f.p.p. of *paṭisāyati* (*paṭi* + *√sad* + *i* + *ya*), only found in this context. The verb *sāyati* means “savours,” but *paṭisāyati* seems to be closer in meaning to *sādiyati*; see NP 7. In this case it seems to be a case of haplology, causing the loss of the syllable *di*.

Sp: *paribhuñjītabbāni* (see below). Sa PrMo: *anujñātāni*: “allowed”; PrMoSa p.202.

bhesajjāni: medicines, remedies; nom. pl. nt.

seyyathīdaṃ: namely, as follows, like this; indecl. Indecidable emphatic demonstrative introducing an example; IP p.73 & 293. An idiom. A junction of *se-* + *yathā* in which the *-e* of *se-* is shortened and the *y-* of *yathā* doubled in accordance with the Law of Morae, see PG § 5, and a junction of *yathā* + *idaṃ* through elision of the final *-ā* of *yathā* and lengthening of the initial *i-* of *idaṃ*. = **se**: the Māgadhi form of *taṃ* the 3 sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*; see PG § 105,2. + **yathā**: as; adv. + **idaṃ**: this; nom. sg. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

sappi: ghee, clarified butter; nom. sg. nt. MW: “*sarpis*: clarified butter (i.e., melted butter with the scum cleared off, commonly called ghee, either fluid or solidified)....” See also VINS II 438.

navanītaṃ: fresh butter; nom. sg. nt. = **nava**: new, fresh; adj. + **nīta**: drawn, brought, led; p.p. of *neti* (*√ni* + *a*). A substance similar to European butter in colour. See D III 85f.: *navanītavaṇṇa*, *sappivaṇṇa*, i.e., butter-yellow; MW 530: *navanītaprisni*: spots as yellow as butter), and texture (see MW 530: *navanītasama*: butterlike (-voice). However, it is not made from milk-cream but from curd/curdled milk, *dadhi*. See M III 143, D I 201, A II 95.

In India ghee is still made by melting *navanīta*-butter, which is made by churning curd, and taking the scum off. The words *sappi* and *navanīta* are still in use in Indian languages such as Hindi.

Indian butter can be whitish. Likewise, fresh European butter also often does not have enough beta-carotene (The chemical that gives a carrot its orange colour.) to give it its usual yellow colour (due to the cow not getting enough of it in its food), but manufacturers then make the butter yellow by adding a food-colour called *annatto*, which is made from the hull of the seeds of the tropical lipstick-tree (*Bixa orellana*); see the *Encyclopedia Britannica* articles on ghee, butter, and cheese.

There is no word for cheese in Pāli or Sanskrit, but in the mediaeval Apabhraṃśa Prākṛit dialect of North-West India there is a word for cheese: *chāsi*; see CP III 118. Cheese probably was introduced there by Greek or Persian invaders or traders. A type of cottage cheese called *paneer* is nowadays made in North-West India. *Paneer* is the word for this white cheese all through the Middle East from Turkey to India and this also shows the foreign origin of Indian cheese. It is made through the process of coagulating boiled milk by adding lemon-juice and then straining off the whey by putting the curd through a cotton cloth.

So, *navanīta* is the fat extracted from curd and this fat comes from the cream of milk. Cheese, however, is processed curd and can’t be included in the term *navanītaṃ*.

telaṃ: oil; nom. sg. m.

madhuphāṇitaṃ: honey and molasses; nom. sg. nt. Probably a dvandva compound, because the rest of the five medicines end in *-ṃ*. However, *madhu* and *phāṇitaṃ* can also be separate words: “honey, molasses,” because both *madhum* and *madhu* can be nom. sg. nt. The reading *madhuphāṇitaṃ* in some manuscripts suggests a

junction of the final *-ṃ* of *madhuṃ* with the initial *p-* of *phāṇitaṃ* through assimilation.

madhu: honey; nom. sg. nt.

phāṇitaṃ: molasses; nom. sg. nt.

tāni: them; acc. pl. nt.

paṭiggahetvā: (after) having accepted; see NP 3.

sattāhaparamaṃ: for seven days at the most; adv. A kammadhāraya containing a digu cpd: *sattāha*, used as an adverb in acc. sg. nt.; see NP 1: *dasāhaparamaṃ*. **sattāha:** 7 days; digu cpd. Junction of *satta* + *aha* through contraction. = **satta:** seven; numeral + **aha** + **paramaṃ:** see NP 1.

sannidhikāraṃ: being kept in store, keeping in store, Ñm: can be kept in store, H: as a store, Norman: storing; adv. of manner. A gen. tapp. cpd. used as adv. A *ṇamul* absolutive in *-akaṃ*. = strengthened *√kar* + *ṇamul* suffix *-akaṃ*. Kkh 132: "...: *sannidhiṃ katvā nidahitvā ...*"

ṇamul absolutives are in origin action-nouns used in the acc. sg. nt. as adverbs and differ from other absolutives in that they, unlike other absolutives, don't necessarily refer to an action that is already completed, but rather act as a adverbial modifier (i.e., adverb of manner) of the main verb, referring to an action contemporary to the main action. They are often used at the end of compounds. The normal form is *-aṃ*, but often the *ṇamul* absolutives take the suffix *-ka* appearing as *-akaṃ*. See PG § 215, BHSGD I § 35,3–5, and Norman, 1992, p 299f. Cf. NP 29: *upavassaṃ*, Pāc 13: *anāpucchāṃ*, Pāc 59: *apaccuddhāraṃ*, Sekh 15: *-pacālaṃ*, Sekh 18: *-ukkehpaṃ*, Sekh 19: *-avacchedaṃ*, Sekh 20: *-kāraṃ*, Sekh 23: *-nicchāraṃ*, and Sekh 26: *-nillehakaṃ*.

= **sannidhi:** storing up; from *nidahati* (*ni* + *√dah* + *a*): one stores, deposits + **kāraṃ:** doing, having done; *ṇamul* absolutive. *Sannidhikāraṃ* is also found in Pāc 38.

paribhuñjitabbāni: to be used, partaken of; f.p.p. of *paribhuñjati* (*pari* + *√bhuj* + *ṇa*); see Pāc 58.

taṃ atikkāmayato: for one who lets it pass beyond; see NP 1.

[NP 24: Vassikasāṭikasikkhāpadaṃ]

"Māso seso gimhānan"-ti, bhikkhunā vassikasāṭikacivaraṃ pariyesitabbam. "Aḍḍhamāso³³⁹ seso gimhānan"-ti, katvā nivāsetabbam. "Orena ce māso seso gimhānan"-ti, vassikasāṭikacivaraṃ pariyeseyya, "Orenaḍḍhamāso³⁴⁰ seso gimhānan"-ti, katvā nivāseyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the rain's bathing-cloth]

[Thinking:] "One month is what remains of the hot season," [then] the robe-cloth for the rain's bathing-cloth can be sought by a bhikkhu. [Thinking:] "A half month is what remains of the hot season," [after] having made [it, it] can be worn. If earlier than [what is reckoned as] "One month is what remains of the hot season," he should seek robe-cloth for the rain's bathing-cloth, [and] [if] earlier than [what is reckoned as] "A half month is what remains of the hot season," he should wear [it], [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

māso: one month, a month; nom. sg. m. One month in contrast to a half month is intended.

seso: what remains, what is remaining, remainder, leftover; nom. sg. nt. agreeing with *māso*; see Sd intro. When there are two nouns in the same case in a clause in Pāli and there is no verb then this denotes nexus, i.e., that one thing is the other. The subject usually stands first and the other thing; see IP p.9 & 61.

gimhānan-ti: hot season; junction of *gimhānaṃ* and *ti* through dentalisation of the final *-ṃ* of *gimhānaṃ*. = **gimhānaṃ:** gen. pl. m. of *gimha* + **ti:** (thinking:) "..."; quotation mark.

"**māso seso gimhānan-ti**": (Thinking:) "One month is what remains of the hot season," Ñm: ... by a bhikkhu

³³⁹ C, D, W, Dm, Vibh Ce, BhPm 1 & 2, Um, UP, Vibh Ee: *addha-*. In Pāc 57 the same editions have the same readings as in this rule. (Pg: *aḍḍha-*.) V: *aḍḍha-* as in Pāc 57.

³⁴⁰ C, D, W, Dm, Vibh Ce, BhPm 1 & 2, Um, UP, Vibh Ee: *addha-*.

reckoning that the Remainder or the Hot Season is the (whole last) month (of that season)..., H: If he thinks, “A month of the hot season remains”... The quotation-mark *-ti* is used as a way to indicate mark direct speech or, like here, a thought; see Syntax § 21 & IP p.35–36. It is here an abbreviated way of saying “When he reckons that”

The Mā-L version also includes the *ti* here (PrMoMā-L p.17.)

bhikkhunā: ins. sg. m.

vassikasāṭṭhikācīvaram: robe-cloth for the rain’s (bathing-) cloth, Ñm: rains-cloth robe (material), H: robe-material as a cloth for the rains, Than: rains-bathing cloth; acc. sg. nt. dative tapp. cpd. containing a kammadhāraya cpd.: *vassikasāṭṭhika*.

vassikasāṭṭhika: rain’s (bathing-) cloth; kammadhāraya cpd. = **vassika**: rain’s, rainy season’s; adj. = *vassa*: rain, rainy season + poss. suf. *-ika* + **sāṭṭhikā**: clothing, attire, wear, outer garment, clothing, cloak; cf. Pāc 91 + **cīvaram**: robe (-cloth); see NP 1. In BD II 134 n. 1. Horner has misunderstood it as a cloth to be worn during the rains instead of the ordinary robes, to prevent those robes from getting wet and heavy. However, the passage she quotes in support, Vin I 253, has to do with the *kathina*-privileges, not with the *vassikasāṭṭhikā*. The *vassikasāṭṭhikā* (6 by 1 spans, see Pāc 91) is the cloth specifically worn to prevent nakedness when a bhikkhu bathes by letting rain fall on his body. This is a way of bathing that is possible in the tropics where it can rain very heavy; see Vin I 290. The *udakasāṭṭhikā*, Vin IV 279 (4 by 2 spans), is the cloth to be worn by bhikkhunīs bathing in ponds and rivers, also for preventing nakedness. The *vassikasāṭṭhikā* is only allowed to bhikkhus for the rainy season and it seems that the bhikkhus would bathe naked again in the other seasons. Maybe there was not so much of a problem with bhikkhu’s bathing naked in rivers since there is no mention of an *udakasāṭṭhikā* for bhikkhus. Cf. BMC I 242 ff.

pariyesitabbam: (it) can be sought; f.p.p. of *pariyesati* (*pari* + *ves* + *a*).

aḍḍhamāso: a half month, fortnight; nom. sg. m. Digu cpd. = **aḍḍha**: half; numeral. adj. called a fractional number; see PG § 119,2 and IP p.270. + **māsa**: month.

See PED and DP: *aḍḍha*, which probably is the proper form. The reading *addha* might have arisen under influence of Skt *ardha*. Both forms are given in PG § 119,2 and both the forms *addha* and *aḍḍha* do exist in Prākṛit.

katvā: having made; abs. of *karoti* (*√kar* + *o*).

nivāsetabbam: (it) can be worn; f.p.p. of the causative of *nivasati* (*ni* + *√vas* + *a*).

orena ce: earlier than, if within less than; adverb; see NP 14. Padabhājana: “*atirekamāse sese gimhāne*.”: “when more than one month is what remains of the summer.”

The syntax in this rule is somewhat strange and, although *orena ce* appears to be included in the quotation, I have left it outside it as there is no way *ce* would fit in it.

pariyeseyya: should seek; 3 sg. opt.

oren’aḍḍhamāso: = a junction of **orena** + **aḍḍhamāso** through the elision of the final *-a* of *orena* before a closed syllable; see PG § 69,1.

nivāseyya: should wear; 3 sg. opt.

[NP 25: Cīvara-acchindanasikkhāpadam]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhussa sāmaṃ cīvaraṃ datvā kupito³⁴¹ anattamano accindeyya vā acchindāpeyya vā, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on snatching robes]

If any bhikkhu, having himself given a robe to a bhikkhu, should, being resentful [and] displeased,

³⁴¹ V: *kuppito*. (Cf NP Pāc 17 & 74.)

Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra, UP sīhala v.l.: *pacchā kupito*.

snatch [it] away or should have it snatched away [from the bhikkhu], [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

cīvara-acchindanasikkhāpadaṃ: see title at Pār 1. *Acchindana* is an action-noun derived from the verb *acchindati*; see below. *Cīvara-acchindana*: “snatching robes” is an accusative tappurisa cpd.

bhikkhussa: to a bhikkhu; dat. sg. m.

sāmaṃ: himself; adv. **cīvaraṃ**: robe; acc. sg. nt.

datvā: having given; abs. of *dadāti* (doubled $\sqrt{dā} + a$).

kupito: being resentful, indignant, irritated, wrathful, Ñm & H: angry; adjective qualifying *bhikkhu*. = p.p. of *kuppati* ($\sqrt{kup} + ya$): be shaken, disturbed.

V.l. **pacchā**: after, later; adv, see Pār concl. Sa & Mū: “... *datvā tataḥ paścād abhiṣaktaḥ kupitaś...*”; PrMoSa p.199, PrMoMū p.30.

anattamano: Ñm & H: displeased; adjective qualifying *bhikkhu*. neg. pref. **an-** + **atta**: raised, lifted; p.p. of *ādāti*, cf. NP 13 + **mano**: mind.

acchindeyya: should rob, snatch away; 3 sg. opt. of *acchindati*, cf. NP 6.

vā: or; disj. particle.

acchindāpeyya: should have (it) snatched away; causative of *acchindati*.

[NP 26: Suttaviññattisikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu sāmaṃ suttaṃ viññāpetvā tantavāyehi cīvaraṃ vāyāpeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on requesting thread]

If any bhikkhu, having himself requested the thread [to be used], should have a robe-cloth woven by cloth-weavers, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

suttaviññattisikkhāpadaṃ: see title at Pār 1. *Viññatti*: requesting, intimating, suggesting; an action-noun derived from *viññāpeti*. *Suttaviññatti* is an accusative tappurisa.

sāmaṃ: himself; adv.

suttaṃ: thread, yarn; acc. sg. nt.

viññāpetvā: having requested, suggested; abs. of *viññāpeti*; see NP 6.

tantavāyehi: by cloth-weavers, lit. “those who are weaving threads”; ins. pl. m. Acc. (or gen.) tapp. cpd. = **tanta**: string, thread, loom + **vāya**: weaving; = dependent word der. fr. *vāyati*; see -*gāha* at Sd 2, and also IP p.92.

cīvaraṃ: robe-cloth; acc. sg. nt. In this rule and the next one, the robe-cloth/robe-material for making a robe is intended as the weavers apparently just make the cloth, but don’t sew it into a robe.³⁴²

vāyāpeyya: should make (someone else) weave; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *vāyati* ($\sqrt{vā} + a$).

[NP 27: Mahāpesakārasikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhikkhuṃ pan’eva uddissa aññātako gahapati vā gahapatānī vā tantavāyehi cīvaraṃ vāyāpeyya, tatra ce so bhikkhu pubbe appavārito tantavāye upasaṅkamtivā cīvare vikappaṃ āpajjeyya: “Idaṃ kho āvuso

³⁴² Horner, BD II 144, misunderstood the *anāpatti*-clause in the Vibhaṅga. She renders: “*anāpatti cīvaraṃ sibbetuṃ, ayoge, ... parissāvane, ...*” as “there is no offence to sew a robe to a belt, ... a strainer, ...”, but it actually means “there is no offence to sew a robe (with thread), (or, having suggested thread) for a belt, ... a strainer, ...” Probably there is no offence if one suggests the thread to sew a robe because strong thread or a suitable colour thread might be needed. For belts and strainers, etc., also special kinds of strong or fine thread are needed and there is no offence if a bhikkhu would suggest the right kind.

cīvaraṃ maṃ uddissa viyyati³⁴³ āyatañ-ca karoṭha, vitthatañ-ca appitañ-ca³⁴⁴ suvītañ-ca³⁴⁵ suppavāyitañ-ca³⁴⁶ suvilekhitañ-ca³⁴⁷ suvitacchitañ-ca karoṭha; appeva nāma mayam-pi³⁴⁸ āyasmantānaṃ kiñ-ci-mattaṃ anupadajjeyyā” ti, evañ-ca so bhikkhu vatvā kiñ-ci-mattaṃ anupadajjeyya, antamaso piṇḍapātāmatam-pi, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The greater training precept about weavers]

Now, if an unrelated male householder or female householder should have a robe-cloth woven for a bhikkhu by cloth-weavers, and then if that bhikkhu, uninvited beforehand, having approached the cloth-weavers, should make a suggestion about the robe-cloth [saying]: “Friends, this robe-cloth which is being woven for me: make [it] long, wide, thick, well woven, well diffused, well scraped, and well plucked! Certainly we will also [then] present a little something to the sirs,” and if that bhikkhu, having said so, should present a little something, even just a little alms-food, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

mahāpesakārasikkhāpadaṃ: the greater training precept about weavers, or: the great weaver training precept; nom. sg. nt. Loc. tapp. cpd. See title at Pār 1. = **mahā**: greater; adj. + **pesakāra**: weaver, one who makes embroidered or embellished garments. = **pesa**: embroidery, ornament, embroidered garment; der. from the verb *piṃsati* ($\sqrt{piś} + a$): adorns, embellishes + **kāra**: maker, making. This is the synonym given for *tantavāya* in the Padabhāṣa on the rule. For more on this rule, see the section “Titles of rule sections” in the Introduction.

bhikkhuṃ pan’eva uddissa: Now if ... for a bhikkhu.; see NP 8.

aññātaḥ gahapati vā gahapatānī vā: an unrelated male householder or female householder; see NP 7.

tantavāyehi cīvaraṃ vāyāpeyya: gets a robe-cloth woven by weavers; see NP 26.

tatra ce so ... āpajjeyya: and then if that bhikkhu, uninvited beforehand, having approached; see NP 8.

tantavāye: the weavers; acc. pl. m. see NP 26.

idaṃ: this; nom. sg. nt. dem. pron.

kho: indecl. no need to translate.

āvuso: friends; nom. pl. m. see above Nid.

cīvaraṃ acc. sg. nt.

maṃ: me; acc. sg. of 1st. pers. pron. *ma(d)*.

uddissa: for; postposition see NP 8.

viyyati: is woven; passive of *vāyati*: see NP 26.

āyatañ-ca: junction of *āyataṃ* and *ca* through palatalisation of *-ṃ* = **āyataṃ**: Ñm & H: long, extended, outstretched; adj., p.p. of *āyamati* ($\tilde{a} + \sqrt{yam} + a$): stretches, extends + **ca**: and; conn. particle.

karoṭha: make; 2 pl. imp. of *karoti* ($\sqrt{kar} + o$).

vitthatañ-ca: **vitthataṃ**: Ñm & H: wide, broad; adj., p.p. of *vittharati* (*vi* + $\sqrt{thar} + a$): spreads out, expands. The noun forms *āyāma*: length and *vitthāra*: breadth/width are also contrasted elsewhere in Pāli, e.g. in D II 147.

appitañ-ca: **appitaṃ**: Ñm: stout, H: rough, firm, thick; adj., p.p. of *appeti* (*ap* + \sqrt{e}): one fixes, applies. Sp: *ghanaṃ*: solid, dense, thick.

suvītañ-ca: **suvītaṃ**: well-woven, Ñm: the woof well set, H: evenly woven; adj., pref. **su-** + **vīta**: p.p. of *vāyati* or *vināti*. Sp: “... *suṭṭhu vītaṃ, sabbatṭhānesu samaṃ katvā vītaṃ*.”: “... well woven, woven having made even in

³⁴³ Mi & Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra, UP v.1.: *vīyati*. Um: *vīyyati*.

³⁴⁴ Bh Pm 2, Um: *appita-*.

³⁴⁵ Mi & Mm Se, G, V: *suvita-*.

³⁴⁶ Mi & Mm Se, V: *supavāyita-*.

³⁴⁷ Mi & Mm Se, G, V: *suvilekkhita-*.

³⁴⁸ D, Vibh Ee: *mayam pi*.

all places.”

suppavāyitañ-ca: suppvāyita: well diffused, well woven forth, H: well permeated, Ñm: the warp well stretched; adj., pref. *su-* + *pavāyita*, Possibly the p.p. of *pavāyati* (*pa* + $\sqrt{vā}$ + *ya*): diffuses, blows forth, or maybe the: pref. *pa-*: forth + *vāyita*: woven; p.p. of *vāyati*; see above Sp: “... *suṭṭhu pavāyitaṃ, sabbatṭhānesu samaṃ katoṃ tante pasāritaṃ*.”: “... well diffused, the threads stretched out having made even in all places.”

suvillekhitañ-ca: suvillekhitaṃ: H: well scraped, Ñm: well pulled, scratched; adj., pref. *su-* + *vilekhita*, the p.p. of *vilikhati* (*vi* + \sqrt{likh} + *a*): scrapes. Cf. *vilekha* at Pāc 72. Sp: “... *lekhanīyā suṭṭhu vilikhitaṃ*.”: “... well scraped with a scraper.”

suvitacchitañ-ca: junction of *suvitacchitaṃ* + *ca* through the palatalisation of *-ṃ*: **suvitacchitaṃ:** Ñm: well brushed, H: well woven, carded, peeled, combed, smoothed; pref. *su-* + *tacchita*: p.p. of *vitaccheti* (*vi* + \sqrt{tacch} + *e*): peels, plucks. Sp 727: “... *kocchena suṭṭhu vitacchitaṃ, suviniddhotan-ti attho*.”: “... well carded with a brush (CPED)/comb (PED), well cleaned out (*viniddhota*, Be *niddhota*) is the meaning.” Maybe it means that the odd threads have been plucked out.

appeva nāma: certainly, perhaps, hopefully; see Sd 8.

mayam-pi: we too; junction of *mayam* + *pi* through labalisation of *-ṃ*.

mayam: we; nom. pl. of 1 pers. pron. *ma(d)*

pi: also; emph. particle.

āyasmantānaṃ: sirs; dat. sg. pl. In this context, i.e. a monk speaking to laypeople, it appears to be an over polite form. Perhaps it was used in order to flatter; see above NP 10 and Nid.

kiñ-ci-mattaṃ: a little something; acc. sg. m. bahubbīhi cpd used as a neuter abstract noun; see IP p.62. = **kiñ-ci:** anything; cf. Sd 9 + **mattaṃ:** a mere, a little; adj. cf. Sd 9: *lesamatta*.

anupadajjeyyāma ti: we shall present; 1 pl. opt. of *anupadeti* (*anu* + *pa* + $\sqrt{dā}$ + *e*) + **ti:** “...,” end quote; see above Nid.

evañ-ca so bhikkhu: and if that bhikkhu (having spoken) thus; see Sd 10.

vatvā: having said; abs. of *vadati*; see Pār 4 .

anupadajjeyya: he should present; 3 sg. opt. of *anupadeti*; see above.

antamaso: even so much as, just; indecl. Cf. Pār 1, Sd 5.

piṇḍapātāmatam-pi: even a little alms-food; junction of *-mattaṃ* + *pi* through labalisation of *ṃ* = **piṇḍapātāmatam:** a little alms-food; acc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. (see IP p.92).

piṇḍapāta: alms-food, lit. “dropping of alms”= **piṇḍa:** alms, lit. “a lump of food,” esp. rice; cf. Pāc 31 *āvasathapiṇḍa:* rest-house-alms + **pāta:** a dropping; dependent word der. fr. from *pātetī* ($\sqrt{pāt}$ + *e*); see *-gāha* at Sd 2 and IP p.92. + **-mattaṃ:** a little; adj. used as a noun, see above + **pi:** just; indecl. see Pār 1, NP 16.

[NP 28: Accekacīvarasikkhāpadaṃ]

Dasāhānāgataṃ kattikatamāsikapuṇṇamaṃ,³⁴⁹ bhikkhuno pan’eva accekacīvaraṃ uppajjeyya, accekaṃ maññamānena bhikkhunā paṭiggahetabbaṃ, paṭiggahetvā yāva cīvarakālasamayaṃ nikkhipitabbaṃ; tato ce uttariṃ³⁵⁰ nikkhipeyya, nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on extra-ordinary robes]

For the ten days coming up to the three-month Kattikā full moon: if extraordinary robe [-cloth] should become available to a bhikkhu, [then] after considering [it as] extraordinary [robe-cloth, it] can be accepted by a bhikkhu, having been accepted, [it] is to be put aside until the occasion of the robe-season; if he should put [it] aside for more than that, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

³⁴⁹ Mi & Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, D, G, V, W, Ra, Vibh Ee, Pg: *-māsi-*. C, P, Dm & Vibh Ce: *-māsika-*. (In the Be Vimativinodanī-tika (Be I 356, 360) on NP 24 and 28 there is also the reading *-māsi-*).

³⁵⁰ Dm, Um, UP: *uttari*. See NP 3.

dasāhānāgataṃ kattikatemāsikapuṇṇamaṃ: for the ten-days coming up to the three-month Kattika full moon day, Ñm: during the last ten days before the Kattika full moon (at the end) of the (first) three months (of the First Rains), H: ten days before the full moon of the (first) *Kattika*, three months (of the rains having passed.).

Mā-L rule 28: “*Dasāhanāgataṃ kho puna tremāsaṃ kārtikī-paurṇamāsī utpadyeya bhikkhusya ātyāyikaṃ cīvaram atyāyikaṃ manyamāno na bhikkhunā pratigṛhṇitavyaṃ pratigṛhṇitvā yāvac cīvaradāna-kāla-samayaṃ nikṣipitavyaṃ tad-uttariṃ nikṣipeya nissargika-pācattikaṃ*”; BV 184, PrMoMā-L p.18.

dasāhānāgataṃ: to which ten days have not come, i.e.: for the ten days coming up to; adj. qualifying -*puṇṇamaṃ*. Kammadhāraya, used as a bb cpd, containing a digu cpd: *dasāha* and a kammadhāraya cpd: *anāgataṃ*.

The compound functions as a passive subordinate clause; see the notes to *ciṇṇamānatto* in the Sd conclusion and to *suttāgataṃ* in the Pātimokkha conclusion. Since the verb *hoti* is implied in these constructions, it is usually not directly expressed; see Syntax § 20b-c.

In traditional Pāli grammar the cpd would be explained as an accusative (*dutiya*) bahubbhihi cpd: “*yaṃ dasāhaṃ na āgataṃ*” = **dasāha**: ten days; digu cpd; see NP 1 + **anāgataṃ**: not come, future, coming up to. Kammadhāraya cpd called a “*na-nipāta-pubba-kammadhāraya*”: “a kammadhāraya in which the preceding word is the particle *na*.”; see Duroiselle, 1906, p.166. = Neg. pref. *an-* + *āgata*: p.p. of *āgacchati* (*ā* + $\sqrt{\text{gam}}$ + *a*). Padabhājana: “... *dasāhānāgatāya pavāraṇāya*”: “... during the ten days coming up to the *pavāraṇa*-invitation.”

kattikatemāsikapuṇṇamaṃ: for ... the three-month Kattikā full moon; acc. sg. f. An accusative expressing the extent of time: “for” or “during”; see Syntax § 44b and IP p.18. It expresses the period during which an action is carried on, which is here the becoming available of urgent robe-cloth.

Gen. tapp. cpd. containing three other cpds: **kattikā** (*kattika* in cpds.): name of the month from about mid October to mid November; m. + **temāsikapuṇṇamā**: three month full moon; kammadhāraya cpd. containing a digu cpd. = **temāsika**: three-month, of the three month; bahubbhihi cpd, or **temāsi**: three month; digu cpd. = **te**: three; num., cpd form + **māsika**: of the month(s), consisting of the months. The reading *māsi* means: of the month; = *māsa* + conn. suf. *-ika*. There are two readings:

Probably *māsi* is a shortened form of *māsinī*. See *kattika-cātumāsini* in the Padabhājana on *kattikapuṇṇama*, NP 29, i.e., what is meant here is *temāsi(nī)* like *cātumāsini*.

Padabhājana: “...: *pavāraṇā kattikā vuccati*.”: “... the Invitation is the Kattikā is said.”

Sp 728: “...: *paṭhamakattikatemāsikapuṇṇamaṃ*. ... *Idaṃ vuttaṃ hoti*: “*Yato paṭṭhāya paṭhamamahāpavāraṇāya dasāhanāgatā ti vuccati*. *Sace pi tāni divasāni accantaṃ eva bhikkhuno accekacīvaraṃ uppajjeyya, accekaṃ idan-ti jānamānena bhikkhunā sabbam pi paṭiggahetabban*”-ti. *Tena pavāraṇamāsassa juṇhapakkhapañcamito paṭṭhāya uppannassa cīvarassa nidhānakālo dassito hoti*. *Kāmañ-c’esa*: *dasāhaparamaṃ atirekacīvaraṃ dhāretabban-ti iminā siddho*.”:

“...: the first three-month Kattikā full-moon. ... This has been said: ‘From the time there are ten days to come to the first great invitation.’ is said. If beyond/exceeding those days an extraordinary robe should become available/accrue to the bhikkhu, by a bhikkhu knowing ‘this is urgent robe (-cloth),’ it can all be accepted.’ By him, starting from the fifth day of the new moon-phase (i.e., the waxing moon fortnight) of the invitation-month there is a time of deposit shown for an accrued robe. If this is the wish: ‘An extra robe can be kept for ten days at the most’ by this (rule) establishment.”

The *Kattika-temāsi(nī)*, the three-month Kattikā, i.e., the mid-October full moon called *Assayuja*, called *paṭhama-Kattika* in the commentaries, marks the end of the earlier three month rains retreat-period (Vin I. 137: *purimikā vassūpanāyikā*) that bhikkhus enter at the *Āsaḷha* full moon. On this three-month Kattikā full-moon the bhikkhus perform the first Invitation, *pavāraṇa*. The *kattika-cātumāsini*, the four-month Kattikā, mentioned in the Padabhājana on *kattikapuṇṇama* of NP 29, is the mid-November full moon called *Kattikā* or *Komuda* and is called *pacchima-Kattikā*, the latter *Kattikā*, in the commentaries. It is the end of the latter rains retreat (*pacchimikā*) entered at the *Sāvaṇa* full-moon; cf. BD II 153 n 2.³⁵¹

³⁵¹ In the entry *kattika* in PED the term *kattika-dvemāsikā*: comprising both *kattikas*, is given. This term is found nowhere in the

The Kattikā intended in this rule is the three-month Kattikā in contrast to the four-month Kattikā.

+ **puṇṇamā**: the full moon; f. = **puṇṇa**: full, lit. filled; p.p. of *pūreti* ($\sqrt{pūr} + e$) + **maṃ**: moon, month; = *mā*: a shortened form of *māsa*, m., or *māsī*, f.

bhikkhuno pan'eva ... uppajjeyya: if ... should become available to a bhikkhu; see NP 3.

acceka: extraordinary robe (-cloth), Ñm & H: special robe; acc. sg. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd. = **acceka**: extraordinary, exceptional, unexpected, irregular, urgent, special; adj., only found in this context. = *ati* + *ā* + \sqrt{i} + *ika*. A contracted form of *accāyika*; see PG § 27.6. = *accāya*: beyond time, urgent. Cf MW: *atyāyika*: “‘having a rapid course’, not suffering delay, urgent...”

See Sd 10: *iccetam* for the type of assimilation. Cf. Pāc 85: *accāyika karaṇīya*: urgent duty.

See BD II 151 n. 6 for the difficulties in translating this word. As Horner notes the origin-story indicates that the donor, because of exceptional circumstances, has a pressing need to give a robe. The rendering “extraordinary” both conveys the sense of the extraordinary circumstances the donor who is giving the robe is in, and also the extraordinary time that the robe is given to the bhikkhu. + **cīvaraṃ**.

accekaṃ: extraordinary, exceptional, urgent, irregular; adjective qualifying an unexpressed *cīvaraṃ*; see Sp above.

maññamānena: considering, conceiving, deeming; pr.p. of *maññati* ($\sqrt{man} + ya$) agreeing with *bhikkhunā*.

bhikkhunā paṭiggahetabbam paṭiggahetvā: see NP 3.

yāva: until; indecl.

cīvarakālasamayaṃ: the occasion of the robe-season; acc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. **cīvarakāla**: robe-season, season for the robe (-cloth); kammadhāraya cpd. = **cīvara** + **kāla**: time, here: right time, season, opportunity; cf. *akālacīvara*, NP 3. + **samaya**: (right) occasion; see NP 6. See BD II 152 n. 1.

Nikkhipitabbam; tato ce uttarim nikkhipeyya: see NP 3.

[NP 29: Sāsaṅkasikkhāpadaṃ]

Upavassam kho pana kattikapuṇṇamaṃ. Yāni kho pana tāni ārañṇakāni senāsanāni sāsaṅkasammatāni³⁵² sappatibhayāni. Tathārūpesu bhikkhu senāsanesu viharanto ākaṅkhamāno tiṇṇaṃ cīvarānaṃ aññataraṃ cīvaraṃ antaraghare nikkhipeyya, siyā ca tassa bhikkhuno kocid-eva paccayo tena cīvarena vippavāsāya, chārattaparamaṃ³⁵³ tena bhikkhunā tena cīvarena vippavasitabbam; tato ce uttarim³⁵⁴ vippavaseyya, aññatra bhikkhusammutiyā,³⁵⁵ nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on risks]

Now, the Kattika-full-moon has been observed. [There are] those wilderness lodgings which are considered risky, which are dangerous. A bhikkhu dwelling in such kind of lodgings, who is wishing [to do so], may put aside one of the three robes inside an inhabited area. And if there may be any reason for that bhikkhu for dwelling apart from that robe, the bhikkhu can dwell apart from that robe for six days at the most; if he should dwell apart for more than that, except with the authorisation of bhikkhus, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

upavassam: has been observed, dwelt, Ñm: having completed, H: having spent; pp. (or ṇamul abs.) of *upavasati* (*upa* + \sqrt{vas} + *a*).

Padabhājana: “... *vutthavassānaṃ*.”: “... one who has dwelt the rains (retreat).” (“*Vutthavassa*” or “*vassam vuttha*” is the usual expression for one who has kept the rains; see PED “*vassa*.”)

Pāli Canon, the commentaries and sub-commentaries. The terms *kattika-temāsika/cātumāsika bhikkhu* are also nowhere to be found.

³⁵² C, G, W: -saṅka-.

³⁵³ Mi Se, G, V, W, : *chārattaparamantena*.

³⁵⁴ Dm, Um, UP: *uttari*. See NP 3.

³⁵⁵ Mi & Mm Se, BhPm 1 v.l.: *sammutiyā*.

Sp 730: "... upavassan-ti upavassaṃ (Kkh 140 & Sp v.l.: upavassa) vasitvā ti vuttaṃ hoti. ... vassaṃ upagantvā vasitvā cā ti attho." "Upavassanṃ: having observed the latter rains (upavassa) is said. ... The meaning is: having entered and observed the rains."

Sp takes this to refer to a bhikkhu who is among the bhikkhus who have spent the rains and are living in the lodgings (... vutthavassānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ senāsane viharanto ti evarūpānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ abbhantare yo koci bhikkhū ti.) and further states that a bhikkhu who has observed the (early) rains unto the first Kattikā is among those who have spent the rains ("... yo vassaṃ upagantvā yāva paṭhamakattikapuṇṇamaṃ vasati so vutthavassānaṃ abbhantaro hoti ..."). Cf. "bhikkhū vutthavassā ..." in origin-story, Vin III 262.

Thus according to the Sp commentary upavassaṃ is an absolutive, i.e., a ṇamul absolutive in -aṃ; see NP 23: sannidhikāraṃ. However, the Padabhājana and the origin-story suggest a past participle: vuttha and this in line with the p.p. in the previous rule: āgataṃ and the way upavassaṃ agrees in case, number, and gender with puṇṇaṃ.

Cf. A I 215, IV 255 "upavassuposathaṃ" explained by A-a II 329 as "upavasitvā uposathaṃ." Sn 402 has upavass'uposathaṃ and Sn 403: upavutth'uposatho. Sn-a 378 also takes upavassaṃ to be an absolutive: "... upavass'uposathaṃ upagamma vasitvā ti," and the latter as a p.p. upavasita. In the note to Sn 403 Norman suggests that -vutta originates from a form *vasta. The form -vassa could be an alternative form of this past participle. Further support for a past participle here is that, unlike past participles, absolutives don't normally come at the start of sentences and occur in combination with a main verb in a clause to express an action preceding the action of the main verb. In this clause there is no main verb. Maybe the original reading was upavassa, which is a proper absolutive in -ya. This might be supported by the upavassa readings in Kkh and the Sp v.l., and "upavass'uposatha" in the AN and Sn, which could be upavassa with final -a elided or upavassaṃ with -aṃ elided.

A ṇamul absolutive, which has an adverbial sense, further makes no sense here as there is no verb for it to modify. ṇamul absolutives end in -aṃ so upavassaṃ would be expected instead of upavassaṃ as the root is √vas (dwells), not √vass (rains).

upavassaṃ kho pana kattikapuṇṇamaṃ: now the Kattika-full-moon has been observed, having observed the Kattika-full-moon, Ñm: when at the Kattika full moon a bhikkhu has completed the Rains Retreat, Norman: when a bhikkhu has kept the rains up to the Kattika full moon; Introductory clause.

The clause, like the one in the previous rule, is an introductory statement. The usage of upavassa and upavuttha with uposatha makes it clear that it is the observance of the Uposatha that is intended rather than the rains; e.g., A I 215, IV 248 & 255. At D III 145 & 169 the action noun upavāsa is used: "uposath' upavāse."

Mā-L: "Upavarṣaṃ kho punaḥ tremāsaṃ kārtiko paurṇamāso bhikṣū cāranyake śayanāsane viharanti ..."; PrMoMā-L p.18. Sa: "Trayomāsānāgate kārttike pūrṇamāse..."; PrMoSa 201.

kho pana: now; emphatic particles; impossible to translate literally.

kattikapuṇṇamaṃ: the Kattikā full moon; acc. sg. m. This is the proper four-month Kattikā full moon marking the end of the rainy season; see BD II 157 n. 1. The Padabhājana explains kattikapuṇṇamā as kattikacātumāsini (cf. Vin I 155: "... anāgatāya pavāraṇāya ... anāgatāya Komudiyā cātumāsiniyā ...", Vin I 176, and D I 47: "... Komudiyā cātumāsiniyā puṇṇāya puṇṇamāya rattiya ..."), see BD II 157 n. 3. Vinaya Texts I 324 n. 2: "The Komudī cātumāsini is the full moon day in the month Kattika, which is called Kaumuda in the epic Sanskrit literature; the epithet cātumāsini refers to the Vedic Cāturmāsya festival that falls on that day..." The Komudī cātumāsini is thus the same as the Kattika-cātumāsini.

According to the Jain Āpastamba-Grhya-Sūtra³⁵⁶ there were three chāturmāsya festivals to mark the start of the three seasons. They were celebrated at the fullmoons of: Phālguna (= Pāli: Phagguna) to celebrate the start of the hot season, Āṣāḍha (= Pāli: Āsāḷhā) for the rainy season, and Kārttika for the cold season. The Komudī festival is mentioned in the Sāmaññaphalasutta, D I 47, and in Jātaka nos 150 & 427. It was a night-festival with processions and other celebrations.

yāni kho pana tāni ...: Now, there are those ... which ...; another introductory clause; see above NP 23.

³⁵⁶ Quoted in Jain, 1991, p.271.

āraññakāni: wilderness, which are in the wilderness, forest; adj. qualifying *senāsanāni*. = *ārañña* (see Pār 2) + adjectival suf. *-ika*.

senāsanāni: lodgings, beds & seats; nom. pl. nt. = **sayana**: lying, bed; a contracted form of *sayana*; the form *sayanāsana* also exists at Sn 338; see PG § 26 & 26,1 and Sd 6 *kārayamāno*. + **āsana**: sitting, seat.

sāsaṅkasammatāni: which are considered risky, Ñm & H: dangerous; adj. Bb cpd. = **sāsaṅka**: risky, unsafe, suspicious, dangerous; pref. **sa-**: with + **āsaṅka**: suspect, distrust + **sammata**: considered, reckoned as, agreed upon; p.p. of *sammannati*; see NP 2, Pāc 21–22, 27, 84, Pd 3 + 4.

The Padabhājana states that in this monastery a place where robbers are staying, etc, is seen.

sappaṭibhayaṇi: which are frightening, H: frightening, Ñm: risky; adj. Bb cpd. = pref. **sa-**: with + **paṭibhaya**: dangerous, frightening, terrifying, fear, dangerous. = prefix (*p*)*paṭi*: near to + *bhaya*: fear. Like with the previous term, the Padabhājana is not of much help in clarifying this term. It states that in this place people injured, plundered, and beaten down by robbers are seen. Although the primary meaning of *paṭibhaya* is “frightening,” the present context seems to indicate that it means “dangerous.”

tathārūpesu: which are of such kind; adj. qualifying *senāsanesu*. See Pār 2.

senāsanesu: in lodgings; loc. pl. nt.

viharanto: dwelling, living; pr.p. of *viharati* (*vi* + *√har* + *a*) used as an adjective agreeing with *bhikkhu*; see IP p.47.

ākaṅkhamāno: who is wishing; pr.p. agreeing with *bhikkhu*; see NP 3.

tiṇṇaṃ: of three; gen. pl. m. of numeral *taṇṇa*; see Aniy 1.

cīvarānaṃ: of the robes; gen. pl. nt. Here, as the three robes of a *bhikkhu* specified *cīvara* is translated as “robe” rather than “robe (-cloth).”

aññataraṃ: a certain one; adj. see Aniy 1.

cīvaraṃ: a robe; acc. sg. nt.

antaraghare: inside a house, inhabited area, H: inside a house, Ñm: in a house; loc. sg. nt. (DP: indecl.) Kammadhāraya cpd. = **antara**: inside; indecl. + **ghara**: a house, but here meaning a village. Maybe what is meant is a house-compound encompassing several houses of different members of the family and servants and surrounded by a wall as is still common in India and elsewhere in Asia.

Vibh: “... *sāmantā gocaragāme* ...”: “... in a food village in the neighbourhood” The *Sāratthadīpāni-ṭīkā* explains it as *antaragharāni*, thus taking it as acc. pl. nt. In the Vibh to Pd 1 the explanation is different. It mentions different kinds of roads and a house.

There is some dispute among scholars whether *antaraghara* means inside a village or a house, see Bapat, 1970, pp.LIVf. and Paschow in CSP 47–49. Bapat argues that Vin I 40: “*antaragharaṃ pavīṭṭho piṇḍāya carati*” and other references show that *ghara* can not mean house here, but means a village. Paschow takes *antaraghara* to have a wider meaning including both village and house, arguing that *bhikkhus* sit in a house and not in a village. PED 47 takes *antaraghara* to mean inside the house. *Ghara* means house and it is translated accordingly. Cf. Pd 1, Sekh 3 ff.

nikkhipeyya: may put aside; cf. NP 3.

siyā: may be, would be; 3 sg. opt. of *atthi*; see above Nid.

ca: and if; hyp. particle (in this context).

tassa bhikkhuno: for that *bhikkhu*; dat. sg. m.

kocid-eva: any; = *kocid* + *eva*. **ko-cid**: any; nom. m. form of *kiñ-ci* = a junction form of *ko-ci* by way of restoration of the original Skt form *cid* so as to avoid hiatus; see PG § 72, PED 173 and Sd 4 *etad-aggaṃ*. + **eva**: just; indecl. here emphatic.

paccayo: reason, cause; nom. sg. m. **tena cīvarena**: from that robe; ins. sg. nt. . Instrumental in dissociative/ablative sense; see NP 2.

vippavāsāya: for dwelling apart, for being away from; dat. (of purpose) sg. m. of *vippavāsa*, der. fr. *vippavasati*; see NP 2.

chārattaparamaṃ: for six nights at the most; see NP 1, = **cha(ḷ)**: six, num. A cpd form of *cha*, of which the last consonant assimilates with the initial consonant of *ratta*, which gives *charratta*, which in turn is changed to *chāratta* in accordance with the Law of Morae; cf. NP 10 *chakkhattuṃ*, and Pāc 5 & 49: *dirattatiratta*. + **ratta**: night + **paramaṃ**: at the most.

tena bhikkhunā: by that bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

vippavasitabbam: can be apart; f.p.p. of *vippavasati*; see NP 2.

tato ce uttarim: if more than that; see NP 3.

vippavaseyya: should be apart; 3 sg. opt. of *vippavasati*.

aññatra bhikkhusammutiyā: except with the authorisation of the (community of) bhikkhus; see NP 2.

[NP 30: Pariṇatasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ saṅghikaṃ³⁵⁷ lābhaṃ pariṇataṃ³⁵⁸ attano pariṇāmeyya,³⁵⁹ nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

Pattavaggo tatiyo.

[The training precept on allocation]

If any bhikkhu should knowingly allocate for himself a gain belonging to [and] allocated to the community, [this is a case] involving expiation with forfeiture.

The section [starting with the rule] on bowls is third.

jānaṃ: knowingly; nom. sg. m. Pr.p. of *jānāti* used as an adverb, or agreeing with *bhikkhu* ("(although) knowing it); see Pār 4.

saṅghikaṃ: belonging to the community; adj. *saṅgha* + poss. suf. *-ika*.

lābhaṃ: gain; acc. sg. m.; from the verb *labbhati* ($\sqrt{\text{labh}}$ + *ya*).

pariṇataṃ: allocated, allotted, designated, directed, Ñm: appropriated, H: apportioned; p.p. of *pariṇāmeti* (*pari* + $\sqrt{\text{nam}}$ + *e*), see *pariṇāmesuṃ* in the origin story, and Pāc 81: *pariṇāmenti*. In PED only *pariṇāmita* is given as the p.p. of *pariṇāmeti*, *pariṇata* is given as the p.p. of *pariṇamati* (*pari* + $\sqrt{\text{nam}}$ + *a*), which has a different sense.

attano: to himself; dat. sg. m. of *attā*: (one-) self.

pariṇāmeyya: should allocate; 3 sg. opt. of *pariṇāmeti*.

pattavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on bowls, bowl-chapter; nom. sg. m. = **patta**: bowl; see NP 21 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

tatiyo: third; ordinal.

[NP conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhā kho āyasmanto tiṃsa nissaggiyā pācittiyā dhammā.

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Dutiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Tatiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

³⁵⁷ BhPm 1, C, V, W: *saṅghikaṃ*.

³⁵⁸ C, D, W: *-nataṃ*.

³⁵⁹ D, W: *-nāmeyya*.

Parisuddh'etthāyasmanto, tasmā tuṇhī, evam-etaṃ dhārayāmi.³⁶⁰

*Nissaggiyā pācittiya dhammā niṭṭhitā.*³⁶¹

Venerables, the thirty cases involving expiation with forfeiture have been recited.

Concerning this I ask the Venerables: [Are you] pure in this?

A second time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

A third time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

The Venerables are pure in this, therefore there is silence, thus I keep this [in mind].

The cases involving expiation with forfeiture are finished.

uddiṭṭhā ... niṭṭhitā: see NP intro. and Nid. concl.

[Suddhapācittiya]³⁶²

Ime kho panāyasmanto dvenavuti pācittiya dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti.

[Mere Expiation]

Venerables, these ninety-two cases involving expiation come up for recitation.

suddhapācittiya: the mere expiation (cases); nom. pl. m. Kammadhāraya cpd. = *suddha*; mere; adj. + *pācittiya*. A commentarial term also used in the Mā-L school: *śuddhapācattika*; PrMoMā-L p.19, BV 186. The *pācittiyas* are *suddha*: “mere” in the sense of not involving anything but a confession, except some of the rules in the last chapter, i.e., Pāc 86–92, which involve cutting, breaking, and tearing. The reason why these rules, which are not *suddhapācittiyas*, are placed in this rule section is that they are not sufficient to form separate sections like the *nissaggiya pācittiyas*.

ime kho panāyasmanto ... dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti: see Sd intro.

dvenavuti: ninety-two; num. = **dve**: two + **navuti**: ninety.

pācittiya: involving expiation; adj. qualifying *dhammā*; see Aniy 1.

[Musāvādavaggo]³⁶³

[Pāc 1: Musāvādasikkhāpadaṃ]

Sampajānamusāvāde, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on false speech]

In deliberate false speech, [there is a case] involving expiation.

sampajānamusāvāde: in deliberate false speech, falsely speaking, Ñm: in (uttering) false speech, H: in telling a conscious lie; loc. sg. m. Kammadhāraya cpd.; see Nid. = **sampajāna**: deliberate, fully aware, fully knowing,

³⁶⁰ Dm, UP, Ra, Um: *dhārayāmi ti*.

³⁶¹ = Mm Se, Ra, Ñd Ce & Mi Se: *Tiṃsa nissaggiyā pācittiya dhammā niṭṭhitā*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, UP, V: *Nissaggiyā pācittiya niṭṭhitā*. Dm, Um: *Nissaggiyapācittiya niṭṭhitā*. C, W: *Nissaggiyā niṭṭhitā*. D (also Wae Uda Pm): *Nissaggiyaṃ niṭṭhitam*. G: *Nissaggiyapācittiyaṃ niṭṭhitam*.

³⁶² = Dm. Um in brackets. Mi Se: *Dvenavuti pācittiya dhammā*. Nothing in other eds.

³⁶³ Only in Mi Se.

fully comprehending; adjective. Present participle of *sampajānāti* without *-ant*; see Nidāna. + **musā**: false; adv., cf. Pār 4 + **vāda**: speech, speaking, telling; m. Action-noun der. fr. *vadati* (\sqrt{vad} + *a*). Sp 736: “... jānitvā jānantassa ca musā bhaṇane.”

pācittiyaṃ: (a case) involving expiation; adj. qualifying an unexpressed *dhamma*; see Aniy 1.

[Pāc 2: Omasavādasikkhāpadaṃ]

Omasavāde, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on abusive speech]

In abusive speech, [there is a case] involving expiation.

omasavāde: in insulting speech, Ñm: in abusive speech; loc. sg. m. kammadhāraya cpd. = **omasa**: abusive, hurtful, insulting; adj. der. fr. *omasati* (*ava* + \sqrt{mas} + *a*): touches (cf. *parāmasati*, Sd 2); here in the sense of “touching” a person by abusing, etc. + **vāda**: see above.

[Pāc 3: Pesuññasikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhikkhupesuñṇe, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on slandering]

In the backbiting of a bhikkhu, [there is a case] involving expiation.

bhikkhupesuñṇe: in the backbiting of a bhikkhu, Ñm: in slander of a bhikkhu, H: in slander by bhikkhus, backbiting, malice; loc. sg.m., gen. tapp., action-noun der. fr. *pisuṇa*. = **bhikkhu** + **pesuñṇa**: backbiting, slander, calumny, treachery; action-noun. Horner translates as an ins. tapp. cpd: “In slander by bhikkhus...,” but a genitive tappurisa is intended, rather than an instrumental. Vibh/Vin IV 13: “*upasampanno upasampanassa sutvā pesuñṇaṃ upasaṃharati ...*”: “one who has been fully admitted (into the bhikkhu-community) having heard of one who has been fully admitted provides backbiting. “Sp 740: “... *bhikkhūnaṃ pesuñṇe bhikkhuto sutvā bhikkhūnā bhikkhussa upasaṃhaṭapesuñṇe ti attho*.”: “... having heard of a bhikkhu, backbiting of a bhikkhu is provided by a bhikkhu.”

[Pāc 4: Padasodhammasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu anupasampannaṃ³⁶⁴ padaso dhammaṃ vāceyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on teaching Dhamma line by line]

If any bhikkhu should have one who has not been fully admitted [into the community] recite the Dhamma [line] by line, [this is a case] involving expiation.

anupasampannaṃ: one who has not been fully admitted (into the bhikkhu-community), Ñm: one who is not fully admitted (to the community), H: one who is not ordained, *Vinaya Texts*: one not received into the higher grade (of the order); acc. sg. nt. = neg. particle **an-** + **upasampanna**: admitted, entered upon (the state of a bhikkhu), to take upon oneself. p.p. of *upasampajjati* (*upa* + *saṃ* + \sqrt{pad} + *ya*) used as a noun or as an adjective to an unexpressed *puggalaṃ*; see Pāc 65.

The usual rendering “ordination” for the acceptance into the Saṅgha as a sāmaṇera or bhikkhu, although often used by Western Buddhists, is a bit inappropriate as it has too much of a Christian connotation to convey the actual meaning.

“Ordination” is the Christian concept and practice of ordaining a priest to do Mass etc. *The Oxford Dictionary of World Religions*, ed. John Bowder, p.718 states: “... The term ‘ordination’ has then been applied to the

³⁶⁴ V: *anūpasampannaṃ*.

formal and ritual admission procedures in other religions, especially of the admission of women and men to the Buddhist saṅgha, whereby they become nuns (bhikṣuṇī) and monks (bhikṣu). Such terms are inevitable in translation, but they are misleading if they obscure differences -- e.g. Buddhist 'ordination' is not necessarily for life."

padaso: line by line; adv. = **pada**: sentence, line + abl. distributive suf. **-so**. See Padabhājana: "... rūpaṃ aniccan-ti ..."

dhammaṃ: the Dhamma, a Dhamma-teaching; acc. sg. m.

vāceyya: should have recite, repeat, speak; or: should instruct, teach (to an unadmitted one), Ñm: should rehearse together with, H: should make speak, Norman: make recite; 3 sg. opt. of *vāceti* (√vac + e) taking two patients in the accusative. According to Wijesekera it is a "faded causative"; see Syntax § 58d iii & IP p.80. Since *vāceyya* also takes datives, as in A III 177 quoted below, it seems more appropriate to take it to mean "teaches." Vibh Padabhājana: "*padena vāceti*." In Pāc 7 *deseyya* is used instead of *vāceyya* and Vibh gives the same explanation for the two words.

See A III 177–80: "... *yathāsutaṃ yathāpariyattaṃ dhammaṃ vitthārena paresaṃ desenti ... paresaṃ vācenti ...*": "... they teach the Dhamma as they have heard, as they have mastered, in full extent to others. They recite" Teaching in India was, and still is, done by having the pupils memorise everything by heart through repetition. *Vāceti* is also used for brahmins teaching mantras to pupils at Sn 1020, Sn p.105, D II 248, 114, S I 239. Cf. Bhī Pāc 50: "... *tiracchānavijjaṃ vāceyya ...*": "... should make (someone else) recite animal-knowledge (= worldly knowledge)...."

Possible reasons for this rule are given by Thanissaro Bhikkhu in his discussion of this rule in BMC I.

[Pāc 5: Paṭhamasahaseyyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu anupasampanna³⁶⁵ uttarim dirattatirattam³⁶⁶ saha seyyam³⁶⁷ kappeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The first training precept on (using a) sleeping place together with]

If any bhikkhu should make use of a sleeping place for more than two nights or three nights together with one who has not been fully admitted [into the bhikkhu-community], [this is a case] involving expiation.

anupasampanna: with one who has not been fully admitted (into the bhikkhu-community); ins. sg. m. see Pāc 4.

uttarim: more than; adverb. Cf. NP 3, Pāc 7, and 73.

dirattatirattam: for two or three nights; acc. sg. nt. or m. = Acc. of Extent in Time or adv. in acc. sg. nt.; see Syntax § 44b. A disjunctive dvanda cpd composed of 2 digu cpds; cf. Pāc 49. **diratta**: two nights; digu cpd. = **di-**: two, num. Contracted compound form of *dvi-* as in *diyadḍha-* at Pāc 57. + **ratta**: night; nt. + **ti**: three; num. + **ratta**: night.

saha seyyam kappeyya: should make use of a sleeping place together, lie down together, Ñm: spread out a bed, H: lie down in a sleeping place, Norman: make his bed; acc. sg. f. Vibh: "... *nipajjati*": "lie down." In the origin-story Ven. Rāhula uses the toilet as a *seyyā*. See Aniy 1: *nisajjaṃ kappeyya*, where there are also two shades of meaning. Sp 745: "... *kāyapasāraṇasaṅkhātāṃ sayanaṃ pi vuccati yasmim senāsane sayanti taṃ pi*." Cf. D I 167: "... *kaṇṭakaseyyaṃ kappeti*": "he uses a thornbed," and the origin-story to Pāc 6 where a naked woman lies down on the bed, *seyyaṃ kappeti*, in a last attempt to seduce Ven. Anuruddha. Th 367: "*Santharito vāna saṅghātiṃ seyyaṃ kappesi Gotamo*."

saha: together, with, accompanied by; indecl. taking ins. of accompaniment; see Syntax § 64. *Saha* here is not a prefix fixed to *seyyam*, but an indeclinable taking an instrumental, *anupasampanna*, which needs to be separated from *seyyam*; cf. Pāc 69, Sn 49 & 928.

³⁶⁵ V: *anūpasampanna*.

³⁶⁶ Mi & Mm Se, Vibh Ee: *dvi-*. Dm, Um, UP, Mi & Mm Se, Vibh Ee: *uttaridirattatirattam*.

³⁶⁷ Mi Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2: *saha seyyam*. Other printed editions (Vibh Ee, Vibh Ce, UP, Mm Se): *sahaseyyam*.

seyyaṃ: bed, couch, bedding; acc. sg. f. Der. fr. *sayati* (√si + a): lies down. Vibh: “*Seyyā nāma sabbacchannā sabbaparicchannā yebhuyyena channā ... paricchannā*,”: “a *seyyā* is all covered, all covered over, mostly covered, mostly covered over.” See Vibh to Pāc 15 “*seyyaṃ santharitvā*” mentioning a mattress, carpet, mat, etc. Th 367: “*Santharitvāna saṅghātiṃ seyyaṃ kappesi Gotamo*.”: “Having spread the outer robe, Gotama used it as a sleeping-place.”

It appears that *seyyaṃ kappeyya* is a verbal compound, for even though in cases where the verb is plural *seyyaṃ* remains singular; e.g., in the origin-story to Pācittiya 5 (Vin IV 15) is *seyyaṃ kappenti*. Cf. *aṭṭhikato* and *manasikarosi* in Pāc 73. Otherwise, *seyyaṃ* is used adverbially.

kappeyya: should make use of; 3 sg. opt. of *kappati*; see Aniy 1.

[Pāc 6: Dutiyasahaseyyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu mātugāmena saha seyyaṃ³⁶⁸ kappeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The second training precept on (using a) sleeping place together with]

If any bhikkhu should make use of a sleeping place together with a woman, [this is a case] involving expiation.

mātugāmena: with a woman; ins. sg. m.; see Sd 2, Aniy 1.

[Pāc 7: Dhammadesanāsikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu mātugāmassa uttarim chappañcavācāhi³⁶⁹ dhammaṃ deseyya, aññatra viññunā purisaviggahena, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on teaching Dhamma]

If any bhikkhu should teach the Dhamma to a woman by [means of] more than five or six sentences, except [when being together] with a discerning male human being, [this is a case] involving expiation.

mātugāmassa: to a woman; dat. sg. m. see Sd 3.

uttarim: more than; adverb; see Pār 4.

chappañcavācāhi: by [means of] more than five or six sentences; ins. pl. f. = Ins. of means, here denoting the of medium through which one communicates; see Syntax § 66,c. Cf. M I 7: “*Gāthāhi ajjhābhāsim*.”

A digu cpd. containing a disjunctive dvanda *chappañca*, of which the numerals are inverted for euphony because normally *pañca* will come first. + **cha(l)**: six; numeral of which the last consonant is assimilated to the initial consonant of *pañca* which is therefore doubled; see PG § 67. Cf. *chārattaṃ* in Sd concl. + **pañca**: five; num. + **vācā**: sentence, word, saying, speech; Vibh: “... *padena deseti*” The v.l. *uttarichappañcavācāhi* is a Kammadhāraya cpd. containing a digu cpd.

dhammaṃ: the Dhamma, a Dhamma-teaching; acc. sg. m. See Pāc 4. Cf. Vin IV 21: “*Anujānāmi ... mātugāmassa chappañcavācāhi dhammaṃ desetuṃ*.”: “I allow ... to teach a Dhamma-teaching by means of five or six sentences.”

deseyya: should teach; 3 sg. opt. of *deseti* (√dis + a).

aññatra: except; indecl. prep. taking ins.; see Pār 4.

viññunā: discerning, intelligent, knowledgeable; adj. qualifying *purisaviggahena*, der. fr. *viñānāti* (vi + √ñā + ṇā): knows, discerns.

purisaviggahena: with a male human being; ins. sg. m. or nt. = Ins. of accompaniment; see NP 2, Pāc 28. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **purisa**: male person + **viggaha**: human being, person; see Pār 3.

³⁶⁸ In G the correction *saddhiṃ* has been inserted before *sahaseyyaṃ*.

³⁶⁹ Dm, Um, UP, Mi & Mm Se, Vibh Ee: *uttarichappañcavācāhi*. Cf Pāc 5.

[Pāc 8: Bhūtārocanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu anupasampannassa uttarimanussadhammaṃ āroceyya bhūtasmiṃ, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on factual announcing]

If any bhikkhu should declare a superhuman state to one who has not been fully admitted [into the bhikkhu-community], [even] when it is a fact, [this is a case] involving expiation.

anupasampannassa: to one who has not been fully admitted (into the bhikkhu-community); dat. sg. m.

uttarimanussadhammaṃ: a superhuman state; acc. sg. m. See Pār 4.

āroceyya: should declare, announce, inform, relate; 3 sg. opt. of *āroceti* (*ā* + *√roc* + *e*). This verb takes the dative of the person informed, *anupasampannassa*; see IP p.68 & Syntax § 93rd.

“Should inform” would fit best here, but it takes an accusative in English, so in order to preserve the Pāli syntax ‘should declare’ is used. Cf. Pār 4 where *samudācareyya* has been used instead.

bhūtasmiṃ: when it is a fact; loc. sg. m. absolute, p.p. of *bhavati* (*√bhū* + *a*): lit. what has become, used as a noun. Probably a locative absolute with the subject (*tasmīṃ*) unexpressed; see Syntax § 186 and *bhūtasmiṃ* at Pāc 36.

[Pāc 9: Duṭṭhullārocanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhussa duṭṭhullaṃ āpattiṃ anupasampannassa³⁷⁰ āroceyya, aññatra bhikkhusammutiyā,³⁷¹ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the announcing of depraved (offences)]

If any bhikkhu should declare the depraved offence of [another] bhikkhu to one who has not been fully admitted [into the bhikkhu-community], except with the authorisation of bhikkhus, [this is a case] involving expiation.

bhikkhussa: of a bhikkhu; gen. sg. m.

duṭṭhullaṃ: depraved, wicked; adj. qualifying *āpattiṃ*; see Sd 3.

āpattiṃ: offence; acc. sg. m.; see above Nid.

anupasampannassa āroceyya: should declare to one who has not been fully admitted; see Pāc 8.

aññatra bhikkhusammutiyā: except with the authorisation of (the community of) bhikkhus; see NP 2.

[Pāc 10: Paṭhavīkhaṇanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu paṭhaviṃ³⁷² khaṇeyya vā khaṇāpeyya vā, pācittiyaṃ.

*Musāvādavaggo*³⁷³ *paṭhamo*.³⁷⁴

[The training precept on digging earth]

If any bhikkhu should dig the earth or should have it dug, [this is a case] involving expiation.

The section [starting with the rule] on false speech is first.

paṭhaviṃ: earth; acc. sg. f.

³⁷⁰ V: *anūpasampannassa*. (No long *ū* in Pāc 8.)

³⁷¹ Mi & Mm Se, BhPm 1 v.l.: *sammutiyā*.

³⁷² Dm, V: *pathaviṃ*.

³⁷³ Mm Se: *musāvādāvagga*. (Probably a misprint or a corruption as initial members of compounds normally aren't inflected.)

³⁷⁴ V: *pathamo*.

khaṇeyya: dig; should dig; 3 sg. opt. of *khaṇati* ($\sqrt{khaṇ}$ + *a*). **vā**: or; disj. particle.

khaṇāpeyya: should make (someone else) dig; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *khaṇati*.

musāvādavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on false speech, false-speech-section; nom. sg. m. Appositive kammadhāraya cpd.= **musāvāda**: false speech see Pāc 1. + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

paṭhamo: first; ordinal.

[Bhūtagāmapavaggo³⁷⁵]

[Pāc 11: Bhūtagāmasikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhūtagāmapātabyatāya³⁷⁶, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on vegetation]

In the destroying of vegetation, [there is a case] involving expiation.

bhūtagāmapātabyatāya: in the destroying of vegetation; loc. sg. f. Gen. tapp. cpd. containing another gen. tapp. cpd.

Cf. M III 34, S V 467: “*bījagāmapātabyatāmasamārambhā*”: “destruction of seed-kind and being-kind,” and S V 46: “*bījagāmapātabyatā vuddhiṃ ...*”

Mā-L rule 11: *bījagrāmapātabyatāpanake*; PrMoMā-L p.20, BV 188. Sa: “*Bījagrāmapātabyatāpanāt ...*”; PrMoSa p.206.

= **bhūtagāma**: vegetation, being-kind; Gen. tapp. cpd. It is does not mean “habitation of a being.” *Bhūtagāma* is mistakenly rendered in the Chinese translations as “village of the ghost” or “village of living beings”; see CSP 127. = **bhūta**: what has become, a being; see above Pc 9, usually a lower class of *devatā* i.e., tree-spirits etc., see origin-story, but the use together with *bījagāma*, see below, shows that probably *bhūta* in the more general sense of “what has become” is intended. Sp 761: “... *jātā vaddhitā cā ti attho*.”: “...: born and grown is the meaning.” + **-gāma**: -kind; postposition, in same sense as in *mātugāma*, Sd 2, rather than in the sense of village of Pār 2. Sp 761: “*Gāmo ti rāsi, bhūtānaṃ gāmo ti bhūtagāmo, bhūtā eva vā gāmo. Paṭiṭṭhitaharitatānarukkhaṇaṃ etaṃ adhiṭṭhānaṃ*.”: “A *gāma* is a heap/quantity/collection, ‘a collection of beings’ is a being-collection, or just a beings-collection. This is a designation of established greenery, grass, and trees.”

pātabyatā: destroying, felling, bringing to fall, bringing down; action-noun der. fr. *pāṭeti* (\sqrt{pat} + *e*): fells, kills (cf. *pāṇātipāṭa*, the destruction of living beings, in the first precept) + abstract termination *-bya* + abstr. suf. *-tā*. Not given in PED. (The pre-Pāli Sankrit consonant combination *-vy-* has usually been changed to *-bb-* via *-vv-* in Pāli, but sometimes—like in the Ce variant reading above—it has been retained or re-introduced; see PG § 54,6. Cf. *sahavya/sahabya(tā)* at D I 235, 245, A I 267 and *dāsavya/dāsabya* M I 275.)

Sp 761: “... *pātabyassa bhāvo pātabyatā, chedanabhedanādīhi yathāruciṃ paribhuñjītabbatā ti attho*.”: “...: the state, *bhāva*, of destroying, *pātabyassa*, is *pātabyatā*; by means of cutting and destroying etc the state of using according to one’s liking is the meaning.”

In *Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha* (Ñāṇamoli and Bodhi, 1995) “*te kāmesu pātabyataṃ āpajjanti*” has been translated as: “they take to gulping down sensual pleasures,” but “gulping down” is probably not the right translation of the noun “*pātabyata*.”

The word is found in different contexts and the commentaries give basically three different interpretations of the word. To list:

1: M-a II 371 to M I 305 (= above): “...: *te vatthukāmesu kilesakāmena pātabyataṃ pivitabbataṃ yathāruciṃ paribhuñjītabbatāṃ āpajjanti ti attho*.”

³⁷⁵ Only in Mi Se.

³⁷⁶ Vibh Ce, C, W, Ra: *-pātavyatāya*.

A-a II 368 to A I 267: "Pāṭavyatan-ti: pivitabbataṃ paribhuñjitabbataṃ nirāsaṅkena cittaṇa pipāsitaṣṣa pāṇīya-pivana-sādisaṃ paribhuñjitabbataṃ."

Vin IV Pācittiya 11: "bhūtagāma-pāṭavyatāyā." Sp 761: "...: pāṭavyassa bhāvo pāṭavyatā, chedana-bhedanādīhi yathārucaṃ paribhuñjitabbatā ti attho."

2: D III 89: "Asaddhamme ativelam pāṭavyataṃ āpajjimsu." D-a: "Pāṭavyatan-ti sevittabbataṃ."

3: Vin III 42: "Pāṇesu pāṭavyataṃ āpajji." Sp 288: "mā pāṇe pāṭabbe ghaṃsitabbe evaṃ maññi ti."

To summarise the interpretations: 1: pivitabbata/pāṭabbata: to be drunk, 2: sevittabbata: to be used, 3: ghaṃsitabba: to be crushed/destroyed.

All three are future passive participles and the commentator understood the *-bya/-vya* ending to be a form of *-bba*, i.e., the Pāli form of the Sanskrit f.p.p. ending *-tavya*. However, it more likely is an abstract ending like in *dāsavya* and *sahavya*. Cf. A-a II 369 to A I 267: *sahavyatā*: "sahabhāva." M-a II 318: "dāsavyā ti dāsabhāva."

The *-tā* ending after *-bya* only occurs in the accusative (M I 305: *pāṭavyataṃ*, and A I 267 & M III 99: *sahavyataṃ*) and locative endings (Pācittiya 11: *pāṭavyatāyā*). It is found without the *-tā* at D I 73: *dāsavyaṃ* and D I 245: *sahavyūpaga*. Maybe the *-bya/-vya* abstract termination was misunderstood to be a f.p.p. early on due to confusion with the Sanskrit f.p.p. ending *-tavya*, and the *-tā* was added to make it abstract. There are examples of a f.p.p. used as an abstract noun in Pāli such as *bhabbatā* and also f.p.p. nouns like *peyya*, *kicca*, *geyya* etc. However, the nouns *sahavya(tā)* and *dāsavya(tā)* are not based on verbal roots and can't be future passives. In Dh 332 the double abstract nouns *matteyyatā* and *petteyyatā* are found (*māṭṭvyatā* and *pitṭvyatā* in Udānavarga 30.21). Another double abstract noun is *pāramitā*, where *pāramī* is an abstract noun from *parama*; see Norman's note on Dh 332 in Norman, 2000..

The commentaries derive *pāta* from the roots $\sqrt{pā}$: drinks and $\sqrt{pat/pāt}$ "makes fall," "destroys."

It could be possible that it has a double meaning (i.e., a word-play), but the derivation from the root $\sqrt{pā}$ seems rather far sought and unnatural, while the derivation from *pāṭeti* seems natural. It would seem strange that the idiom *pāṭavyatā* could have different meanings in different contexts, so I prefer the translation: "they come to ruin [by indulging] in sense-pleasures."

The sentence "asaddhamme ativelam pāṭavyataṃ āpajjimsu" at D III 89 with the adverb *ativelam* qualifying *āpajjimsu*, is to be rendered accordingly: "they exceedingly came to ruin with regards the untrue Dhamma."

[Pāc 12: Aññavādakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Aññavādake vihesake, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on evading]

In evading, in vexing, [there is a case] involving expiation.

aññavādake: in evading, lit. "in speaking different," in talking about something else, Ñm: in prevarication, H: in evasion; loc. sg. m. Kammadhāraya cpd. = **añña**: other, different; adj. + **vādaka**: speaker; = \sqrt{vad} (strengthened) + action-noun suf. *-a* = adjectival suffix *-ka*.

Cf. Pār 3: *satthahāraka*, Sd 11: *anuvattakā vaggavādakā*, Sd 13: *kūladūsako*, Pāc 12: *aññavādake*, *vihesake*, 13: *ujjhāpanake*, *khiyyanake*, 72 -*vivaṇṇanake*, 73: *mohanake*, 86: *bhedanakaṃ*, 87, 89–92: *chedanakaṃ*, 88: *uddālanakaṃ*.

Norman in TP xlii–xliii assumes that the *-aka* forms in the Pātimokkha refer to the doers and not to the actions —i.e., they are agent-nouns. He points out that the Kkh commentary is not consistent in its interpretation of the *-aka* endings. The *-aka* endings in this rule are explained by the Kkh as referring to the agent, while the words with *-aka* endings of the next rule, Pāc 13, are explained as referring to the action.

The difficulty with the assumption of Norman is that there is no unambiguous example of agent-nouns in this position. On the other hand there are unambiguous examples of action-nouns such as "*sampajāna-musāvāde*" (Pāc 1) and "*gaṇabhojane*" (Pāc 32) etc.

Further, in the Bhikkhunī-pātimokkha, where this rule and the next are also found as Bhī-Pāc 108 and 109, the

corresponding words are still in the masculine gender rather than the feminine, which would be expected if the words were agent-nouns. (For example, *kārikā* is the feminine form of the agent-noun *kāraka*: “one who does” (see DP).

Edgerton, BHSgd I, § 22,38, notes that the *-ka* suffix often adds to the primary word a sense of individual specificity; something like “the one who is” and this could also be the case here.

It could also be that these words are action-nouns with the “original meaning” or “pleonastic” (*‘ka-svārtha’*) suffix *-ka* that is expressing the inherent or original meaning of the primary word to which *-ka* was added. It does not change the meaning and merely converts the noun into an adjective; see IP p.187. According to Edgerton this *svārtha* usage of *-ka* is common in Sanskrit, Pāli, and Prākṛit; see BHSgd I § 22.23. Cf. the addition of the *-ka* suffix before the *ṇamul* absolutive ending *-am*; see BHSgd I § 35.5 and NP 23 *sannidhikāraṇam*.

In order to convey both the action and agent sense of the *-ka* suffix the rendering “the one who is -ing” can be used.

It appears that when there is locative + *pācittiyam* the locative is idiomatically an action-noun in Pāli. The same applies to the nominative + *pācittiyam* (e.g. “*bhedanakaṃ pācittiyam*” at Pāc 86).

Padabhājana: “... *saṅghamajjhe āpattiyaṃ vā anuyuññijyamāno taṃ na kathetukāmo ... aññena aññaṃ paṭicarati ...*”: “... he evades one (thing) by speaking about another ...” Kkh 154: “*Aññaṃ vadatī ti aññavādako*.”: “‘He speaks otherwise’ (thus: he is) one who is evading.” Cf. BD II 230 n. 4.

vihesake: in vexing, in annoying (by remaining silent when questioned), troubling, Ñm: hedging, H: in vexing; loc. sg. m. Cf. Bhī Sd 12 (Vin IV 239f): “*Bhikkhuniyo ... bhikkhunīsaṅghassa vihesikā ...*”: “... nuns ... who are ones vexing the order of nuns....” = *vehesa*: action-noun der. fr. *viheseti* (*vi* + *√his* + *e*): vexes, annoys, harasses, bothers (denominative of *vihesā/vihiṃsā*, cf. Pāc 72) + adjectival suf. *-ka*. Padabhājana: “... *tuñhībhūto saṅgham viheseti, eso vihesako nāma*.”: “... being silent he vexes the community, this one is one who is vexing.”

Kkh 154: “*Viheseti ti vihesako*.”: “‘He vexes’ (thus) he is called one who vexes.”

[Pāc 13: Ujjhāpanakasikkhāpadam]

Ujjhāpanake khiyyanake,³⁷⁷ *pācittiyam*.

[The training precept on making (a bhikkhu) find fault]

In making [another bhikkhu] find fault, in criticising, [there is a case] involving expiation.

ujjhāpanake: in making (someone else) find fault, Ñm: in disparaging, H: in making (someone else) look down upon; loc. sg. m. = the action-noun *ujjhāpana*, from *ujjhāpeti* the causative of *ujjhāyati* (*ud* + *√jhā* + *ya*): finds fault. The point is that he causes other bhikkhus to find fault as is indicated by the origin-story in the Vibh. (Cf. BD II 2 n. 3 & 235 n. 5, and Sekh 38: *ujjhānasaññī*.) + adjectival suffix *-ka* (see Pāc 12).

Kkh 155 takes *ujjhāpanaka* and *vihesaka* to be action-nouns (See Pāc 12: *aññavādake*): “*Taṃ vacanaṃ ujjhāpanakaṃ. Yena ca tath’eva vadantā khīyanti sabbatha tassa avaṇṇaṃ kathenti* (= Sp 296, see BD II n. 4) *pakāsentī, taṃ khiyyanakaṃ. Tasmiṃ ujjhāpanake khiyyanake pācittiyam*.”: “That speech is fault-finding. Through whatever way they criticise they speak (and) show dispraise of him everywhere; that is criticising. For him in faultfinding (and) criticising, (a case) involving expiation.”

Mā-L rule 13: “*odhyāpana-kṣīyanake pācattikam*.”; PrMoMā-L p.20, BV 188.

khiyyanake: H: in criticising, complaining, Ñm: in decrying; loc. sg. m. = *khiyyana* from *khīyati* (*√khī* + *ya*). Cf. *khiyyanadhamma*, Pāc 79, 81.

+ adjectival suffix *-ka*; see Pāc 12: *aññavādake*. See BD II 2 n. 4, 236 n. 2.

Khiyyanake/khīyanake: Origin-story: Be: *khiyyanti*; Ce Vibh, Vibh Ee: *khīyanti*. Mā-L: *kṣīyanake*; PrMoMā-L p.20, BV 188. Mū: *kṣīpana*; PrMoMū p.33. Sa: *avadhyānakṣīpaṇāt* (cf. BMD n. 27 and 86).

³⁷⁷ Bh Pm 1 & 2, Dm, UP, Mi & Mm Se, V: *khiyyanake*. C, D, G, W, Um, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee, Ra, Pg: *khīyanake*.

The root is $\sqrt{khī}$ and it belongs to the third conjugation so *khīyanaka* is probably the correct form. *Khiyyanaka* is an alternative and grammatically correct form in which the $-ī$ of the root $\sqrt{khī}$ is assimilated to *y*, and then $ī$ is weakened and *y* doubled. Forms like this are fairly common in Pāli, e.g. *mīyati/miyyati*, *bhīyo/bhiyyo*.

[Pāc 14: Paṭhamasenāsanāsikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu saṅghikaṃ³⁷⁸ mañcaṃ vā pīṭhaṃ³⁷⁹ vā bhisim vā kocchaṃ vā ajjhokāse santharitvā³⁸⁰ vā santharāpetvā³⁸¹ vā, taṃ pakkamanto neva uddhareyya na uddharāpeyya³⁸², anāpucchāṃ³⁸³ vā gaccheyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The first training precept on sleeping places]

If any bhikkhu, having [himself] put out or after having [someone else] put out in the open air, a bed or seat or mattress or stool belonging to the community, [and] then, when departing, should not take [it] away or should not have [it] taken away or should go without asking [someone to put it back], [this is a case] involving expiation.

saṅghikaṃ: which is belonging to the community; adj.; see NP 30.

mañcaṃ: bed, a platform for lying down upon; acc. sg. m. This and the next are pieces of furniture to sit and lie down on; see Vin II 148–150 and Pāc 87.

pīṭhaṃ: seat, bench, stool, chair; acc. sg. nt. **vā**: or; disj. particle.

bhisim: mattress, cushion, bolster, door-mat; acc. sg. f. see BD II 47 n. 1, and Vin II 150.

kocchaṃ: stool; acc. sg. nt. There is no modern Western equivalent of this stool. The Thai forest-bhikkhus' bowl-stand, made of bamboo, is a miniature version of it. See BD II 240 n. 10. For a drawing see Ñd 153.

ajjhokāse: in the open air; loc. sg. m. = **ajjha**: in; the palatalised junction form of prefix *adhi-* before a vowel, = *adhya* in Skt, see PG § 55 + **okāsa**: sky, air.

santharitvā: having put out, spread, strewn; although “spread” is the literal meaning it does not fit well with furniture in English; abs. of *santharati*; see NP 11.

santharāpetvā: having (someone else) put out; causative of the above.

taṃ: then; adv. = adverbial use of the acc. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*; see IP p.75. It can not a simple dem. pron. meaning “that (place),” i.e., “leaving that (place),” since then it would need to be an ablative form: *tamhā*. An accusative with *pakkamati* signifies the direction in which one moves.

pakkamanto: departing, leaving; pr.p. of *pakkamati*; see Sd 13.

n'eva ... na ...: neither... nor...; = **na**: not; neg. particle. + **eva**: emph. particle.

uddhareyya: should take away, remove; 3 sg. opt. of *uddharati* (*ud* + \sqrt{har} + *a*). (*d* + *h* > *ddh*; see IP p.217)

uddharāpeyya: should make (someone else) take (it) away; causative of the above.

anāpucchāṃ: without asking, without asking leave/permission, without informing, Ñm: without announcing the fact, H: without asking (for permission); a pr.p. that has been made negative by adding the negative prefix *an-*; see IP p.98. = **an-**: not, non-; neg. prefix + **āpucchāṃ**: present participle of *āpucchati* (*ā* + \sqrt{pucch} + *a*). It is not clear why here *anāpucchāṃ* is used and not *anāpucchā* as in Pāc 46 and 85; maybe because here an adverbial sense is required.

If *āpucchāṃ*, like *āpucchā*, is an absolutive of *āpucchati*, then it would probably be a so-called ṇamul absolutive (see NP 23 *sanniddhikāraṇaṃ*) acting as an adverb of manner.

³⁷⁸ BhPm 1, C, V, W: *saṅghikaṃ*.

³⁷⁹ V: *pīṭhaṃ*.

³⁸⁰ V: *saṅthar-*

³⁸¹ V: *saṅthar-*

³⁸² D: *n'uddharāpeyya*.

³⁸³ Ra, Pg, Sannē: *anāpucchā*. Also in the 1981 Śri Kalyāṇi Yogāśrama Saṃsthāva Bhikkhupātimokkhaṇḍī edition.

However, because in the preceding part of this clause there is a present participle—*pakkamanto*—it seems likely that *āpuccham* is also a present participle in *-ant*, e.g., like *gaccham* (see IP p.169).

The point in this rule is not to leave the communal furniture in the open without having asked someone—a responsible bhikkhu, novice, or monastery-attendant—to take care of it. Cf. Vin II 211: “... *senāsanānaṃ anāpucchā pakkamanti* ...”: “they depart not having asked (permission to) as to the lodgings,” i.e., without having asked someone to take care of it; see BD II 238 n. 4. See also the non-offence clause where it is mentioned that there is no offence if one goes having asked (but nevertheless it is not taken away due to some obstacle, see Sp 776). At Vin IV 232, and 316 *anapaloketvā*—not having obtained permission, given notice—is commented upon by the Vibh as *anāpucchā*. At Vin IV 335 *ananuññāta*—not having permission/ consent—has been commented upon in the same way. Cf. Vin IV 229, 271, 282, 290, 306, 343. See also Pāc 46 & 85: “... *santaṃ bhikkhuṃ anāpucchā* ...”

“Having asked leave/permission” seems a bit unfitting in the present rule and at Vin II 211. “Having informed” or “having given notice” seems better.

Mā-L rule 15: *anāmantrayitvā*; BV 188. Mū rule 15: *bhikṣhum-anavalokyanyatra*; Ban 33. The Sa rule (PrMoSa p.207) only gives the part corresponding to the first part of the clause.

gaccheyya: should go; 3 sg. opt. of *gacchati* ($\sqrt{\text{gam}} + a$).

[Pāc 15: Dutiyasenāsanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu saṅghike vihāre seyyaṃ santharitvā³⁸⁴ vā santharāpetvā³⁸⁵ vā, taṃ pakkamanto neva uddhareyya na uddharāpeyya,³⁸⁶ anāpuccham³⁸⁷ vā gaccheyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The second training precept on sleeping places]

If any bhikkhu, having [himself] put out or having [someone else] put out, bedding in a dwelling belonging to the community, [and] then, when departing, should not take [it] away or should not have [it] taken away, or should go without asking [someone to put it back], [this is a case] involving expiation.

saṅghike: communal; adj. see NP 30.

vihāre: dwelling; loc. sg. m. see Sd 7.

seyyaṃ: bedding; acc. sg. f.; see Pāc 5. The Vibh. mentions a mattress, carpet, mat, etc., that is, anything to sleep on, excepting the bed itself.

[Pāc 16: Anupakhajjasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu saṅghike³⁸⁸ vihāre jānaṃ pubbupagataṃ³⁸⁹ bhikkhuṃ anupakhajja³⁹⁰ seyyaṃ kappeyya: “Yassa sambādho bhavissati, so pakkamissati ti”, etad-eva paccayaṃ karitvā anaññaṃ, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on encroaching upon]

If any bhikkhu, having encroached upon a bhikkhu who has arrived before, should knowingly use a sleeping place in a dwelling belonging to the community [saying]: “He for whom it is [too] cramped, will leave,” having done [it] for just this reason, [and] not another, [this is a case] involving expiation.

saṅghike vihāre: in a communal dwelling; see Pāc 15.

jānaṃ: knowingly; pr.p. of *jānāti* used like an adverb; see Pār 4: *ajānaṃ* and NP 30: *jānaṃ*.

³⁸⁴ V: *santhar-*

³⁸⁵ V: *santhar-*

³⁸⁶ D: *n’uddharāpeyya*.

³⁸⁷ Ra, Pg, Sannē: *anāpucchā*. Also in the 1981 Śrī Kalyāṇi Yogāśrama Saṃsthāva Bhikkhupātimokkhaṇḍī edition.

³⁸⁸ BhPm 1, C, V, W: *saṅghikaṃ*.

³⁸⁹ Mi & Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, D, W, Um, Pg: *pubbupagataṃ*. (C unclear.)

³⁹⁰ Mi & Mm Se, V: *anupakhajja*.

pubbupagataṃ: arrived before, previously arrived; adj. = **pubba**: before; adv. + **upagata**: arrived, come to; p.p. of *upagacchati* (*upa* + $\sqrt{\text{gam}}$ + *a*). Sp: “*Pubbupagataṃ: pubbaṃ upagataṃ.*” An assimilation of *pubba* and *upagata* through the elision of the final *a* of *pana*. In some MSS and printed eds. the initial *u* of *upagata* is lengthened. Both readings are possible; see PG § 70.1c.

bhikkhuṃ: acc. sg. m.

anupakhajja: having encroached upon, Ñm & H: encroaching, intruding; neg. pref. *an-* + abs. of *anupakkhandati* (*anu* + *pa* + $\sqrt{\text{khand}}$ + *a*), Vibh: *anupavisitvā*. (Through assimilation *khand* + *ya* > *khajja*.) Cf. BD II 247 n. 3.

seyyaṃ kappeyya: should use a sleeping place; see Pāc 5.

yassa: for whom, to whom; dat. sg. m. of rel. pron. *yo*, correlative to **so**: he; nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

sambādho: cramped place, crowded place; nom. sg. m. It needs to be rendered as “cramped” in English.

bhavissati: it will be; 3 sg. fut. of *bhavati*. The future tense expresses the probable or certain here.

pakkamissati ti: he will leave, ... depart; = junction of **pakkamissati**: 3 sg. fut. of *pakkamati*; see Pāc 14 + **ti**: “...,” end quote; see above Nid.

yassa sambādho bhavissati so pakkamissati: he, for whom it is cramped, will leave, (i.e., he who finds it too crowded can leave), Ñm: being cramped he will go away, H: he for whom it becomes too crowded may depart, Norman: he for whom it is too crowded will go away; relative clause with verbs in the future tense to indicate certainty; see IP p.88 and Pāc 84: “... *bhavissati ... harissati ...*”

etad-eva: just this; = **etad**: this; acc. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *eta(d)*, = vowel-sandhi form in which the Skt *-d-* has been restored to avoid hiatus; see PG § 72.1. + **eva**: just; emph. particle.

paccayaṃ: reason; acc. sg. m. = *pati* + $\sqrt{\text{i}}$; for the assimilation see Sd 10: *iccetaṃ*.

karitvā: having made; abs. of *karoti*. made just this the reason

etadeva paccayaṃ karitvā: having done [it] for just this reason, lit. “having made just this the reason.”

anaññaṃ: not another; adj. agreeing with *paccayaṃ*. Bb. cpd.; = neg. pref. *an-* + *añña*: other, different; adj. see Pāc 12.

[Pāc 17: Nikkaḍḍhanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhuṃ kupito³⁹¹ anattamano saṅghikā vihārā nikkāḍḍheyya³⁹² vā nikkāḍḍhāpeyya³⁹³ vā, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on driving out]

If any bhikkhu, being resentful and displeased, should drive out a bhikkhu or have [him] driven out from a dwelling belonging to the community, [this is a case] involving expiation.

bhikkhuṃ: acc. sg. m.

kupito anattamano: being resentful (and) displeased; see NP 25.

saṅghikā: communal; adj. **vihārā**: from a dwelling; abl. sg. m.

nikkāḍḍheyya: Ñm: should drive out, H: throw out, expel, turn away, lit. drag out; 3 sg. opt. of *nikkāḍḍhati* (*ni(r)* + $\sqrt{\text{(k)kaḍḍh}}$ + *a*). = *ni(r)*: out; prefix + *kaḍḍhati*: drags, pulls. “Drag out” or “throw out” might be too strong. At Vin IV 66 and in a passage identical to Pāc 17 at Vin II 166 Horner renders “turn away.” Cf. J III 16, 100, 425ff. **vā**: or; disj. particle.

nikkāḍḍhāpeyya: make driven out; causative of the above.

³⁹¹ V: *kuppito*. Cf NP 25 & Pāc 74.

³⁹² V: *nikaḍḍheyya*. Cf *aḍḍhamāso* at NP 24 and Pāc 57 in V.

³⁹³ V: *nikaḍḍhāpeyya*.

[Pāc 18: Vehāsakuṭisikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu saṅghike vihare uparivehāsakuṭiyā āhaccapādakaṃ mañcaṃ vā pīṭhaṃ³⁹⁴ vā abhinisīdeyya³⁹⁵ vā abhinipajjeyya vā, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the hut with an upper-floor]

If any bhikkhu should [brusquely] sit down or lie down on a bed or seat with detachable legs in a hut with an upper-floor in a dwelling belonging to the community, [this is a case] involving expiation.

saṅghike vihare: in a communal dwelling; see Pāc 15

uparivehāsakuṭiyā: a hut with an upper-storey, loft-hut, hut in the loft, Ñm: upper-floor room, H: lofty cell with an upper part, Than: on an (unplanked) loft; loc. sg. f. Loc. tapp. cpd. containing a kammadhāraya cpd.

= **uparivehāsa:** upper-floor, up in the air, upstairs, above the ground; cf. M I 231, S II 184; = **upari:** up, on top of, over, upper storey, upstairs; as in *uparipāsāda*: upper/top storey of a palace; pref. + **vehāsa:** sky, air, m. As Horner points out in BD I 78 n. 6 to Vin III 48 *vehāsa* has to be distinguished from *ākāsa*. Both mean “sky” but the latter means “free” or “unsupported in the sky” while the former means “supported by the earth in the sky,” i.e., above the ground. + **kuṭi:** hut; see Sd 6. See BD II 254 n. 1.

āhaccapādakaṃ: which has removable feet, detachable-legged; adjective qualifying *mañcaṃ* & *pīṭhaṃ*. Bb cpd. = **āhacca:** detachable, removable; abs. of *āharati* (*ā* + *har* + *a*): takes away. + **pādaka:** which has a foot, legged; adj. Cf. Pāc 87. = *pāda*: foot + poss. adjectival suf. -ka. See BD II 240 n. 5.

mañcaṃ vā pīṭhaṃ vā: bed or seat; acc. sg.; see Pāc 14.

abhinisīdeyya: should sit down on; 3 sg. opt. of *abhinisīdati* (*abhi* + *ni* + *√sad* + *a*).

sahasā: brusquely, violently, inconsiderably, suddenly; adv.

Several printed eds. and MSS of the Pātimokkha, all of Sinhalese origin, include the word *sahasā* before *abhinisīdeyya*. The origin story has “... *sahasā abhinisīdi* ... *abhinisīdisati ti*”: “sat brusquely.”

The Sarvāstivādin version of the rule has “... *balena niṣīded-vā* ...”; PrMoSa p.208. Mū rule 18: “*sahasā valenābhipaded-vābhipaded-vābhipaddhena vā*”; PrMoMū p.33. Some other Prātimokṣasūtras, but not the Mā-L version (rule 18), also have a word similar to *sahasā* here; see CSP 131, BV 189, and BMD p.77.

Sahasā might have been left out by mistake in this Pāli Pātimokkha rule; see BD II 255 n. 1. The Padabhājana, however, doesn’t mention *sahasā* in its commentary. The Parivāra (p.16) and Kkh (p.94), although they state that the ground (*vatthu*) for the rule was the *sahasā abhinisīdana*, don’t mention it in their summary and discussion of the rule itself. The Mā-L Prātimokṣasūtra also does not have any word corresponding to it, suggesting that at the time the Mahāsaṅghikas split off it was not in the Pātimokkha. Perhaps, the different readings suggest that very early on in the transmission of the Pātimokkha and Suttavibhaṅga there were disagreements on the interpretation of this rule and that some reciters included the word while some not. Some might have held to the interpretation the action of sitting down itself entailed the offence, while the others held to the interpretation held that the sitting down itself was not an offence, but rather the action of sitting down brusquely or forcibly. The Vibhaṅga and other commentaries support the latter explanation.

abhinipajjeyya: should lie down on; 3 sg. opt. of *abhinipajjati* (*abhi* + *ni* + *√pad* + *ya*).

[Pāc 19: Mahallakavīhārasikkhāpadaṃ]

Mahallakaṃ pana³⁹⁶ bhikkhunā vihāraṃ kārayamānena, yāva dvāraḥkosā aggaḷaṭṭhapanāya³⁹⁷

³⁹⁴ V: *pīṭhaṃ*.

³⁹⁵ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra, UP sīhala v.l.: *sahasā abhinisīdeyya*. In G the correction *sahasā* has been inserted later. It is not mentioned in the Sannē or Pg.

³⁹⁶ Mi Se, G, V, W: *mahallakam-pana*.

³⁹⁷ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, W, Ra, Pg, Vibh Ce, UP, Mi & Mm Se: *aggala-*. V: *aggalaṭṭhappanāya*.

ālokasandhiparikammāya dvatticchadanassa³⁹⁸ pariyāyaṃ appaharite ʔhitena³⁹⁹ adhiṭṭhātabbaṃ; tato ce uttarim,⁴⁰⁰ appaharite pi ʔhito,⁴⁰¹ adhiṭṭhaheyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on a large dwelling]

By a bhikkhu who is having a large dwelling built, a surrounding-layer of two or three coverings can be ordered, by [a bhikkhu] standing on [a place which has] few crops, upto the frame of the door for [the purpose of] fixing the bolt, [and] for surrounding the window. If he should order more than that, even [when] standing on [a place which has] few crops, [this is a case] involving expiation.

The meaning of this rule is obscure and it is possible that the wording of it has got corrupted due to misunderstandings of it; for more discussions of this rule see BD II 257–260, BMC I 316 f., Ñd 154–156, Ñm 107, CSP 132 f, BMD p.133 n. 99. Dr. Paschow, CSP 133, remarks the following on the widely differing versions of the rule in the various Prātimokṣasūtras: “The present rule, ... is so variously expressed that there seems hardly to be anything in common in all the texts, each having its own particularities.”

It appears that already by the time the Pāli origin-story was composed the exact sense of the rule was not understood anymore, because there appear to be contradictions between the rule in the origin-story. In the origin-story the bhikkhu, while collecting wood and sticks (for the roof, etc.), spoiled the corn-field of a brahmin. However, in the rule it seems that the monk is standing on crops while giving orders for the construction of the building. (Maybe it is possible that the original rule expressed that some kind of surrounding-layer is placed on a place with crops.) As the note on this rule in Ñm 107 also states, the import of this rule seems to be to encourage the construction of sturdy buildings while at the same time to discourage the excessive usage of building-materials and also the destruction of crops.

mahallakaṃ pana bhikkhunā vihāraṃ kārayamānena: by a bhikkhu who is having (someone else) build a large dwelling; see Sd 6 & 7.

yāva: as far as, until; indecl. takes abl.

dvārakosā: frame of the door, Than: door-frame, Ñm: door-panel, H: door-way; abl. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. =

dvāra: door + **kosa:** sheath, enclosure.

aggalaṭṭhapanāya: for fixing the bolt, Ñm: for the purpose of steadying the (door-) hinges, H: for placing the door-bolts; dat. sg. nt. = Dat. of purpose; see Syntax § 107. Probably it is an accusative tapp. cpd in which the inflected form has been retained, i.e., *aggalaṃ + ʔhapana*, as the ʔ in *ʔhapana* has been doubled, which indicates assimilation. = **aggala** (= cpd form of *aggalā*): a bolt or cross-bar for fastening or securing; f. **ʔhapana**: fixing, establishing; action-noun from *ʔhapeti*, the causative of *tiṭṭhati*: stands.

ālokasandhiparikammāya: for surrounding the window, Ñm: for the purpose of setting the window-shutters, H: for making the window-holes; dat. (of purpose) sg. nt. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **āloka**: light + **sandhi**: opening, hole, **ālokasandhi**: window + **parikkamma**: surrounding, doing around, arrangement, preparation, cf. Sd 6: *saparikkammaṇi*.

dvatticchadanassa: having two (or) three coverings, (thatch-) roofings, Ñm: ways of roofing, H: enclosure of roofings; gen. sg. nt. Digu cpd. containing a disjunctive dvanda cpd.: **dvatti**: two or three; see NP 10. = **dva**: two; num. cpdform + **(t)ti**: three; num. cpd form. + **(c)chadana**: covering, roofing; action-noun from *chādeti* ($\sqrt{(c)chad} + e$): covers. The Vibh lists covering-materials such as bricks (“...iṭṭhakāya chādentassa.... ” BD: “roofing with tiles”), stones, plaster, grass, and leaves, therefore the action of covering refers probably to the wall as well as the roof. This also fits the context of windows and doors. Cf. NP 10 *dvattikkhattuṃ*. The initial *c*- is probably doubled because as an initial consonant of the root $\sqrt{(c)chad}$ it is liable to do so when compounded; see NP 8 *acchādeti* and IP p.11 n. 1 & PG § 74,1. Mā-L: *cchādana*; PrMoMā-L p.20. Mū: *chedana*; PrMoMū p.34.

³⁹⁸ Vibh Ee, Mi & Mm Se: *dvi-*; see NP 10.

³⁹⁹ V: *ʔhitena*.

⁴⁰⁰ Dm, Um, Vibh Ee: *uttari* (but Be Sp & Ee Sp read *uttarim*.)

⁴⁰¹ V: *ʔhito*. (D: *appaharite ʔhito pi*.)

pariyāyaṃ: here probably: layer, course, turn, manner (see *pariyāya*, Pār 3); acc. sg. m. Vibh: "... *pariyāyena chādentassa dve pariyāye adhiṭṭhahitvā tatiyaṃ pariyāyaṃ āṇāpetvā pakkamitabbam*." "If he would be causing to cover with a layer, having applied two layers, (and) having ordered the third (layer), he is to depart (because he can't order a 4th layer."

appaharite: on (a place which has) few crops, greenery, verdure; loc. sg. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd. = Locative of place where; Syntax § 164. Or adjective to an unexpressed *thāne*: place.

Sp: *aharite*: "no greenery," but see Sn-a (on Sn p.15: *appaharite chaḍḍehi*): *paritta-harita-tiṇa*: "little/few greens and grass." Cf. Vin IV 205 (= *anāpatti*-section to Sekh 74): "*appaharite kato haritaṃ ottharati*": "(There is no offence if) he covers it (i.e., the excrement) with greens having done it on a place with few greens." and Ud 42. = **appa**: little, few; adj. + **harita**: lit.: yellow, green, figurally: crops, straw, greenery, vegetables; see Sekh 74.

ṭhiteṇa: by one standing on, Ñm: by him standing, H: establishing; p.p. of *tiṭṭhati* ($\sqrt{\text{ṭha}} + a$), used as an adjective qualifying an unexpressed *bhikkhunā*: ins. sg.

adhiṭṭhātabbam: can be ordered, H: to be determined. Or: to be placed, applied, directed, managed, Ñm: deposited; f.p.p. of *adhiṭṭhāti* (*adhi* + $\sqrt{\text{ṭha}}$ + *a*). Meaning uncertain; see BD II 258 n. 5. The Padabhājana quoted above under *pariyāyaṃ* indicates that *adhiṭṭhātabbam* here means *āṇāpetvā*: to be ordered, directed, commanded, enjoined. This makes sense since the bhikkhu is not making the hut by himself but is having the hut built by others, *kārayamānena*, and is giving directions as to how to do it.

tato ce uttarim: if more than that; see NP 3.

appaharite pi: even if on few crops; = **appaharite**; see above + **pi**: even; emph. particle. see Pār 1.

ṭhito: standing; p.p. of *tiṭṭhati*; see above.

adhiṭṭhaheyya: should apply; 3 sg. opt. of *adhiṭṭhāti*; see above.

[Pāc 20: Sappāṇakasikkhāpadam]

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ sappāṇakaṃ udakaṃ tiṇaṃ vā mattikaṃ vā siñceyya vā siñcāpeyya vā, pācittiyam.

Bhūtagāmaṃvaggo⁴⁰² dutiyo.

[The training precept on [water] containing living beings]

If any bhikkhu should knowingly pour out, or should have [someone else] pour out, water containing living beings on grass or clay, [this is a case] involving expiation.

The section [starting with the rule] on vegetation is second.

jānaṃ: knowingly; nom. sg. m. Pr.p. of *jānāti* used like an adverb, or agreeing with *bhikkhu* ("[though] knowing [it]"); see Pār 4 and NP 30.

sappāṇakaṃ: containing living beings; adj. Bb cpd. = **sa-**: containing, with; pref. used in cpds. + **pāṇa**: living being. (The Skt *prāṇa* is "breath," "life," e.g. *prāṇāyāma*; cf. Pāli *ānāpāna*.) + adjectival possessive suffix **-ka**; cf. Pāc 12 & 62.

In the junction of *sa-* + *pāṇa* (= Skt *sa-prāṇa*) the consonant *-p-* doubles at the beginning of *pāṇa*; see PG § 67.

udakaṃ: water; acc. sg. nt.

tiṇaṃ: on grass; acc. sg. nt. **vā**: or; disj. particle.

mattikaṃ: on clay; acc. sg. f.

siñceyya: should pour, sprinkle; 3 sg. opt. of *siñcati* ($\sqrt{\text{sic}} + \text{ṇa}$), a transitive verb taking *udaka*, *tiṇa*, and *mattika* as patients.

siñcāpeyya: should make (someone else) pour; causative of the above.

⁴⁰² Vibh Ce v.1.: *senāsanavaggo*.

bhūtagā mavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on vegetation, vegetation-section; nom. sg. m. = **bhūtagāma**: vegetation; see Pāc 11 + **vagga**: see NP 10. V.l.: *senāsanavaggo*: the section starting with the rule on lodgings; see introduction.

dutiyo: second; ordinal.

[Bhikkhunovādavaggo⁴⁰³]

[Pāc 21: Ovādasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu asammato bhikkhuniyo ovadeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on exhortation]

If any bhikkhu who has not been authorised should exhort the bhikkhunīs, [this is a case] involving expiation.

asammato: who has not been authorised, who has not been agreed upon, without having the consent (of bhikkhus); adjective qualifying *bhikkhu*. Bb cpd. = neg. pref. **a-** + **sammato**: p.p. of *sammannati*; see NP 2 and 29.

bhikkhuniyo: bhikkhunīs; acc. pl. f. of *bhikkhunī* = *bhikkhu* + feminine suf. *-nī*.

ovadeyya: should exhort, instruct, advise; 3 sg. opt. of *ovadati* (*o/ava* + *√vad* + *a*). See Vibh for the contents of the exhortation.

[Pāc 22: Atthaṅgatasikkhāpadaṃ]

Sammato pi⁴⁰⁴ ce bhikkhu atthaṅgate suriye⁴⁰⁵ bhikkhuniyo ovadeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on (after sun-) set]

Even if a bhikkhu who has been authorised should exhort the bhikkhunīs after the sun has set, [this is a case] involving expiation.

pi: even; emph. particle; see Pār 1.

ce: if; hyp. particle. **bhikkhu**: nom. sg. m.

atthaṅgate: has set, disappeared; adj. qualifying *suriye*. Accusative tappurisa used as Bb. cpd. The first part of the cpd has retained its inflection. = **atthaṃ**: setting, ending, disappearance; acc. sg. nt. The cpd acts as a passive subordinate clause; see Pātimokkha concl: *suttāgataṃ*. + **gata**: gone; p.p. of *gacchati* (*√gam* + *a*). The traditional Pāli grammarians would explain this cpd as something like: “Yo atthaṃ gato so.”: “which has gone to rest.”

suriye: when the sun; loc. sg. m.

atthaṅgate suriye: when the sun has set, i.e., after the sun has set; A loc. absolute construction, which is here used to denote the time since or after which the action takes place; see Syntax § 183c.

[Pāc 23: Bhikkhunupassayasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhunūpassayaṃ⁴⁰⁶ upasaṅkamitvā bhikkhuniyo ovadeyya, aññatra samayā, pācittiyaṃ.

Tatthāyaṃ samayo: gilānā⁴⁰⁷ hoti bhikkhunī; ayaṃ tattha samayo.

⁴⁰³ Only in Mi Se.

⁴⁰⁴ Vibh Ee: *ce pi*.

⁴⁰⁵ Dm: *sūriye*. (= Sanskritisation; see Pecenko, Ee A-ṭ introduction p.liii.

⁴⁰⁶ C, G, W, Dm: *bhikkhunupassayaṃ*. Um: *bhikkhūnūpa-*

⁴⁰⁷ V: *gilānā*.

[The training precept on the bhikkhunī-quarters]

If any bhikkhu, having approached the bhikkhunī-quarters, should exhort the bhikkhunīs, except at the [right] occasion, [this is a case] involving expiation.

Here the occasion is this: a bhikkhunī is sick; this is the occasion here.

bhikkhunūpassayaṃ: bhikkhunī-quarters, quarters of the bhikkhunīs; acc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **bhikkhunī** + **upassaya**: quarters, residence; (fr. *upa* + √(s)si), related to the Hindi/Sanskrit word *āśrama*; cf. Mā-L: *upāśrayam*;-; PrMoMā-L p.21.

upasaṅkamitvā: having approached; abs.; see NP 8.

aññatra samayā: except at the (right) occasion; see NP 6.

tatthāyaṃ samayo ... ayaṃ tattha samayo: Here the occasion is this:..., this is the occasion here. see NP 6.

gilānā: sick, ill; adj. **hoti**: is; 3 sg. pres. ind. of *bhavati* (√bhū + a).

[Pāc 24: Āmisasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu evaṃ vadeyya: "Āmisahetu⁴⁰⁸ bhikkhū⁴⁰⁹ bhikkhuniyo ovaḍanti⁴¹⁰ ti, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on worldly gain]

If any bhikkhu should say so: "The bhikkhus exhort bhikkhunīs for the sake of reward," [this is a case] involving expiation.

evaṃ: thus; adv.

vadeyya: should say; 3 sg. opt. of *vadati* (√vad + a).

āmisahetu: for the sake of reward; dat. sg. m. in -u. = Dat. of advantage. = **āmisa**: (here:) reward, fee, gain, profit, gift + **hetu**: cause, sake, because of. The Padabhāṣana defines *āmisa* not just as material gain in the form of robes, etc., but also defines immaterial gain in the form of honour and respect, etc.

bhikkhū: bhikkhus; nom. pl. m.

Āmisahetu therā bhikkhū/āmisahetu bhikkhū: The origin story (Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee) supports the reading which includes *therā*: "... *therā bhikkhū bhikkhuniyo ovaḍantā*" The Prātimokṣasūtras have no equivalent to *therā*, see PrMoMā-L p.21, PrMoMū p.34, PrMoSa p.210, CSP 134, BMD pp.78–79, BPP 14, Beal, 1871, p.222.

Parivāra (Be) mentions the rule without *therā*. Sp does not comment, but Kkh 169 states: "*Bhikkhū ti: sammatā bhikkhū idhādhippetā*," this shows that the text the commentator was using was without *therā*. In the origin-story to Pāc 21 & 22 the bhikkhus are also *theras*, but there is no *therā* in those rules. One of the eight qualities with which an exhorter of bhikkhunīs is supposed to be endowed to be an authorised bhikkhu is to have been a bhikkhu for at least twenty years, see Vibh to Pāc 21. Being a *thera* is thus implied in being an authorised bhikkhu and therefore there is no mention of a *thera* either in this rule or in Pāc 22.

ovaḍanti ti: they exhort; = **ovaḍanti**: 3 pl. pres. ind. of *ovadati*; see Pāc 21 + **ti**: end quote; see above Nid.

[Pāc 25: Cīvaradānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu aññatikāya bhikkhuniyā cīvaraṃ dadeyya, aññatra pārivattakā,⁴¹⁰ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on giving robe (-cloth)]

If any bhikkhu should give a robe [-cloth] to an unrelated bhikkhunī, except in an exchange, [this is a case] involving expiation.

⁴⁰⁸ V: *āmissahetu*.

⁴⁰⁹ Dm, Um, Vibh Ee: "... *āmisahetu therā bhikkhū*"

⁴¹⁰ Mi & Mm Se, Vibh Ce, UP, Ra, BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, G, V, W, Um, Pg: -*vaṭṭakā*.

aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā: to an unrelated bhikkhunī; dat. sg. f. See NP 4.

cīvaraṃ: a robe (-cloth); acc. sg. nt.

dadeyya: should give; 3 sg. opt. of *dadāti* ($\sqrt{dā}$ duplicated + *a*).

aññatra pārivattakā: except in an exchange; see NP 5.

[Pāc 26: Cīvarasibbanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā cīvaraṃ sibbeyya vā sabbāpeyya vā, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on sewing a robe]

If any bhikkhu should sew a robe or should have a robe sewn for an unrelated bhikkhunī, [this is a case] involving expiation.

aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā: for an unrelated bhikkhunī; dat. sg. f. See NP 4.

sibbeyya: should sew; 3 sg. opt. of *sibbati* (\sqrt{siv} + *ya*). **vā:** or; disj. particle.

sabbāpeyya: should make (someone else) sew; causative of the above.

[Pāc 27: Saṃvidhānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhuniyā saddhiṃ saṃvidhāya ekaddhānamaggaṃ paṭipajjeyya antamaso gāmantaram-pi, aññatra samayā, pācittiyaṃ.

Tatthāyaṃ samayo: satthagamaniyo⁴¹¹ hoti maggo sāsaṅkasammato⁴¹² sappatibhayo; ayaṃ tattha samayo.

[The training precept on making arrangements]

If any bhikkhu, having made an arrangement, should travel together with a bhikkhunī on the same main road, even [if] just the distance between villages, except at the [right] occasion, [this is a case] involving expiation.

Here the occasion is this: the road, which is considered risky [and] which is dangerous, has to be gone with a company [of other travellers], this is the occasion here.

bhikkhuniyā: with a bhikkhunī; ins. sg. f. = Ins. of accompaniment; see Syntax § 63.

saddhiṃ: together with; postposition taking ins.; see Sd 2.

saṃvidhāya: having made an arrangement, H: having arranged, Ñm: by appointment; abs. of *saṃvidahati* (*saṃ* + *vi* + $\sqrt{dhā}$ + *a*). Ñm took it to be an instrumental, but this is probably incorrect.

ekaddhānamaggaṃ: the same main road, Ñm: the same journey, H: the same high-road; acc. sg. m. (Acc. of Place Where; see Syntax § 45b.) Digu cpd. = **eka:** one, the same; num. adj. + **addhānamagga:** main road, highway, travelling-road; see NP 16.

paṭipajjeyya: should travel on, go on, set out; 3 sg. opt. of *paṭipajjati*; see NP 16.

antamaso: even so much as, just; indecl. see Pār 1.

gāmantaram-pi: even the distance between villages; junction through labialisation of *-ṃ*. = **gāmantaram:** the distance between villages, lit. “the interspace of villages”; acc. sg. nt. (= Acc. of Place Where; see above) Gen. tapp. cpd. **gāma:** village; see Pār 2 + **antaram:** interval, distance between, place between; nt. noun. Cf. NP 29 *antaraghare* where it is an indecl. + **pi:** even; emph. particle.

aññatra samayā: except at the (right) occasion; see NP 6, Pāc 23.

tatthāyaṃ samayo ... ayaṃ tattha samayo: see Pāc 23.

⁴¹¹ V: *-gamaniyo*.

⁴¹² C, W: *saṃka-*.

satthagamanīyo: has to be gone with a company [of other travellers], ... with a caravan, ... with an escort; adjective qualifying *maggo*. Ins. tapp. cpd. used as Bb cpd. A periphrastic construction in which *hoti* acts as an auxiliary verb; see IP p.107 & 233ff, and Syntax § 19.

= **sattha**: company, travelling-company, caravan, escort. *Sattha* corresponds to the Skt *sārtha*. (Cf: Mū: “*sārthagamanīyo mārgo*,” PrMoMū p.34.) It is not a weapon, the *sattha* of Sekh 59 (Skt *śastra*), as Horner renders in BD 289 n. 3. For double (here triple, as *sattha* can also mean a teaching, science, the Skt *śāstra*; see *satthar* at Pāc 70.) meanings of one Pāli word due to being derived from two or more Sanskrit words; see the end of the note on *dosa* at Sd 8. The Vibh and the Sp don’t explain *sattha* (Padabhājana: “*Satthagamanīyo nāma maggo na sakkā hoti vinā satthena gantuṃ*.”), but see Pāc 66: “... *bhikkhu theyyasatthena saddhiṃ saṃvidhāya ekaddhānamaggaṃ paṭipajjeyya* ...” Vin III 62: “... *bhikkhu satthena saddhiṃ addhānamaggapaṭipano hoti*.” Vin I 152: “... *bhikkhu ... satthena gantukāmo hoti*.” (followed by: ... *nāvāya gantukāmo* ..., see Pāc 28), and origin-story to Pāc 34. Cf. Bhikkhunī Pācittiya 37: “... *antoraṭṭhe sāsāṅkasammate sappatibhaye asatthikā cārikaṃ careyya*.” In BD III 317 n. 1 Horner renders “without a weapon,” not being aware that it is improper for a *samaṇa* to carry weapons; how much more to use them! Cf. Dh 123 “*bhayamaggo ... appasattho*”: a frightening road ... a small travel-company. + **gamanīya**: to be gone; f.p.p. of *gacchati* (√*gam* + *a*).

hoti: it is; 3 sg. pres. ind. of *bhavati*.

maggo: road; nom. sg. m.

sāsāṅkasammato sappatibhayo: which is considered risky, which is dangerous; see NP 29, Pd 4.

[Pāc 28: Nāvābhiruhanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhuniyā saddhiṃ saṃvidhāya ekaṃ nāvaṃ⁴¹³ abhirūheyya⁴¹⁴ uddhaṃgāminiṃ⁴¹⁵ vā adhogāminiṃ vā, aññatra tiriyaṃtaraṇāya,⁴¹⁶ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on embarking on a boat]

If any bhikkhu, having made an arrangement, should embark [on a voyage] together with a bhikkhunī on the same boat, which is going up [-stream] or which is going down [-stream], except with [a boat which is] crossing over [a river], [this is a case] involving expiation.

ekaṃ: one, the same; num. adj.

nāvaṃ: boat; acc. sg. f.

abhirūheyya: should embark [on a voyage], should voyage; 3 sg. opt. of *abhirūhati* (*abhi* + √*ruh* + *a*). In English “boards” and “embarks” denote the action of going onto a boat or ship before starting a journey, here, however, the action of going on a journey on a boat is intended. This is why the translation “embark [on a voyage]” has been used. Cf. Pāc 32 where having a group-meal while voyaging on a boat is listed.

uddhaṃgāminiṃ: (which is) going up (-stream); adj. qualifying *nāvaṃ*. = Kammadhāraya used as Bb cpd. = **uddhaṃ**; adv. + **gāminiṃ**: going; adj. from *gacchati* (√*gam* + *a*).

Uddhaṃ is taken here to be the original reading since *uddhaṃ*, like *adho*, is an archaic Vedic accusative form, see Syntax § 2. Elsewhere too it occurs in this form with *adho* and *tiriyaṃ*, e.g. Sn 150. However, *uddha-* is also used in cpds; see PED 136.

vā: or; disj. particle.

adhogāminiṃ: (which is) going down(-stream); adj. Bahubbīhi cpd. = **adho**: down; adv. + **gāminiṃ**.

aññatra: except; indecl. that here takes an ins. of accompaniment: *bhikkhuniyā*; see NP 2, and Pāc 7: “*aññatra*

⁴¹³ Mi Se, G, V, Pg, Burmese ms. v.l. in Vibh Ee, Bh Pm 2 v.l.: *ekanāvaṃ*. (Mm Se: *ekamānāvaṃ*.)

⁴¹⁴ BhPm 1 & 2, C, V, W, Dm, UP: *-ruheyya*.

⁴¹⁵ UP: *uddhaṃ gāminiṃ adho gāminiṃ*. Mi & Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, Ra, Pg, Vibh Ce: *uddhaṃgāminiṃ*.

⁴¹⁶ Dm, Vibh Ce, UP, Bh Pm 1 & 2, D, Ra: *tiriyaṃ taraṇāya*. C, W, Vibh Ee: *tiriyaṃtaraṇāya*, Mi & Mm Se, G, Um, V: *tiriyaṃ-taraṇāya*.

viññunā purisaviggahena."

tiriyam̐taraṇāya: with [a boat which is] crossing over (a river), Ñm: unless it is (merely) to cross to the other bank, H: except for crossing over to the other bank; abl. sg. f. The translation of Ñm & H would require the noun *tira*, but *tiriyam̐* is an adverb. In the origin-story *uttarati*: "crosses over," is used. A phrase not found in other contexts. *Tiriyam̐taraṇāya* is one word; see the origin-story in the Vibh: "*Anujānāmi bhikkhave tiriyam̐taraṇāya bhikkhuniyā saddhiṃ sam̐vidhāya ekaṃ nāvam̐ abhirūhituṃ*." "I allow, bhikkhus, for crossing over [a river], having made an arrangement with a bhikkhunī, to board the same boat" This also shows that "*aññatra tiriyam̐taraṇāya*" means "except with [a boat] crossing over [a river]." *Bhikkhuniyā*, although unexpressed, is implied here. Another way to understand this would be take *nāvāya* to be unexpressed: "except for crossing over [with a boat]."

Sa Prātimokṣasūtra: "... *tīryakpārasam̐taraṇāt ...*," PrMoSa p.210.

= **tiriyam̐**: over, across; adv. Cf. Sd 6. + **taraṇāya**: passing, traversing; ins. sg. f. Action-noun der. from *tarati* ($\sqrt{tar} + a$). As mentioned above, it is probably an adjective qualifying an unexpressed *nāvāya*. Less likely, it is a dative of purpose that is not governed directly by *aññatra* because there is no preceding dative to be assimilated with as in Sd 12: "*viramath'āyasmanto vacanāya*." PED 303 translates: "... ferrying across; adj. *taraṇā nāvā*: a vessel crossing over, a traject, Vin IV 65." This is incorrect since *taraṇāya* qualifies *bhikkhuniyā*. The Suttavibhaṅga and commentaries offer no help.

[Pāc 29: Paripācitasikkhāpādaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ bhikkhunīparipācitaṃ⁴¹⁷ piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjeyya, aññatra pubbe gihīsamārambhā,⁴¹⁸ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on (alms-food) that has been prepared]

If any bhikkhu should knowingly eat alms-food which a bhikkhunī has caused to be prepared, except through previous arrangement of householders, [this is a case] involving expiation.

jānaṃ: knowingly; pr.p. of *jānāti* used like an adverb; see Pār 4 and NP 30.

bhikkhunīparipācitaṃ: which a bhikkhunī has caused to be prepared; adj. Ins. tapp. cpd. used as Bb cpd. qualifying *piṇḍapātaṃ*.

= **bhikkhunī** + **paripācita**: H: procured, Ñm: obtained, Than: prompted. This is not the prefix *pari*: around + **pācita*: p.p. of *pacināti* (*pa* + \sqrt{ci} + *ṇa*): obtains, because no strengthening takes place in past participles. It rather is the p.p. of *paripāceti* (*pari* + \sqrt{pac} + *e*): causes (someone else) to prepare, cook.

See the Padabhājana which states that the bhikkhunī causes the laypeople to prepare through mentioning the good qualities of the bhikkhu. Vin IV 67: "... *ayyo dhammakathiko. Detha ayyassa. Karotha ayyassā ti. Esa paripāceti nāma*." "... the master is a speaker of Dhamma. Give to the master! Make for the master! This is called makes (someone else) prepare."

piṇḍapātaṃ: alms-food; acc. sg. m. see NP 27.

bhuñjeyya: should eat; 3 sg. opt. of *bhuñjati* (\sqrt{bhuj} + *ṇa*).

aññatra: except; indecl. see NP 2.

pubbe: previous, before; pronominal adv.; see PG § 113,8. Loc. sg. of *pubba*; see NP 8.

gihīsamārambhā: through the arrangement of householders; abl. or ins. sg. m. in

-ā. An ablative of cause or instrumental of reason; see Syntax § 67–68, and 122c. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **gihi**: householder; from *gaha*: house; see NP 6. Both the readings *gihi* and *gihī* occur in cpds., see PED 251. Buddhaghosa might have had the reading *gihī* since he comments in Sp with *gihīnaṃ*. + **samārambha**: arrangement, undertaking, effort; action-noun derived from *samārambhati* (*saṃ* + \sqrt{rabh} + *a*).

⁴¹⁷ D, Dm, UP, V: *bhikkhuni-*.

⁴¹⁸ D, Dm, Bh Pm 1, Vibh Ee, UP, Mi & Mm Se: *gihi*. C, W, Um, Pg, Ra, Vibh Ce, Ee Sp: *gihī*. V: *gihī-*.

Sp 809: “*Samārambho ti samāradḍhaṃ vuccati, paṭiyāditass’etaṃ adhivacanaṃ, gihīnaṃ samārambho gihīsamārambho.*”: “The arrangement of householders: it is arranged is said, it has been arranged/prepared this is the designation, the arrangement of householders: the arrangement of householders.”

[Pāc 30: Rahonisajjasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhuniyā saddhiṃ eko ekāya raho nisajjaṃ kappeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

*Ovādavaggo*⁴¹⁹ *tatiyo.*

[The training precept on taking a seat privately]

If any bhikkhu should sit down together with a bhikkhunī, privately, one [man] with one [woman], [this is a case] involving expiation.

The section [starting with the rule] on exhortation is third.

bhikkhuniyā saddhiṃ: together with a bhikkhunī; see Pāc 27.

eko ekāya raho nisajjaṃ kappeyya: should sit down together with a bhikkhunī, one (man) with one (woman), privately; see Aniy 1.

ovādavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on exhortation, exhortation-section; nom. sg. m. = **ovāda**: exhortation; from *ovadati*; see Pāc 21. + **vagga**: section; see NP 10. V.l. **bhikkhunovādavaggo**: the section (starting with the rule) on exhortation of bhikkhunīs.

tatiyo: third; ordinal.

[Bhojanavaggo⁴²⁰]

[Pāc 31: Āvasathapiṇḍasikkhāpadaṃ]

Agilānena⁴²¹ bhikkhunā eko āvasathapiṇḍo bhuñjitabbo; tato ce uttarī⁴²² bhuñjeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the alms-meal in the resthouse]

By a bhikkhu who is not ill one alms-meal in a resthouse can be eaten; if he should eat more than that, [this is a case] involving expiation.

agilānena: not-sick; adj.; neg. pref. *a-* + *gilāna*: sick; see above Pāc 23.

bhikkhunā: by a bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

eko: one, single; num. adj.

āvasathapiṇḍo: alms-meal in a (religious) rest-house; nom. sg. m. Loc. or gen. tapp. cpd. = **āvasatha**: H: public rest-house, Ñm: food distribution centre; from *āvasati* (*ā* + *vas* + *a*): inhabits, resides. See origin-story to Pāc 6 where *āvasathaghāra* is a public rest-house. For other references see *Vinaya Texts* 37 n. 3. An *āvasatha* is not always a public rest-house though, see Ud 89 and Bhī Pāc 48 where it just means a dwelling or house. See VINS I 66: “... place for receiving guests, like a *dharmasāla* nowadays in India.” + **piṇḍa**: alms, alms-food; see NP 27. Sp: “*āvasathe piṇḍo*.”: “alms in a rest-house.” The origin-story and word-commentary indicate that alms has been prepared (*paññatta*: appointed, pointed out, made known) in a rest-house. It does not mention whether the meal has to be eaten there itself.

bhuñjitabbo: to be eaten; f.p.p. of *bhuñjati*; see Pāc 29.

⁴¹⁹ Dm, Mm Se, UP, Vibh Ee: *ovādavaggo*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, G, V, W, Um, Mi Se, Vibh Ce, Ra: *bhikkhunovādavaggo*.

⁴²⁰ Only in Mi Se.

⁴²¹ V: *agilānena*.

⁴²² Be & UP, Um, Vibh Ee: *uttari*.

tato ce uttarim: if more than that; see NP 3.

bhuñjeyya: he should eat; 3 sg. opt. of *bhuñjati*.

[Pāc 32: Gaṇabhojanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Gaṇabhojane, aññatra samayā, pācittiyaṃ.

Tatthāyaṃ samayo: *gilānasamayo*,⁴²³ *cīvaradānasamayo*, *cīvarakārasamayo*, *addhānagamanasamayo*, *nāvābhirūhanasamayo*,⁴²⁴ *mahāsamayo*, *samaṇabhattasamayo*; *ayaṃ tattha samayo*.

[The training precept on eating in a group]

In eating [a meal] in a group, except at the [right] occasion, [there is a case] involving expiation.

Here the occasion is this: the occasion of illness; the occasion of a giving of robe [-cloth]s; the occasion of a robe-making; the occasion of going on a [long] journey; the occasion of voyaging on a boat; the occasion of a great [gathering]; the occasion of a meal [made] by an ascetic; this is the occasion here.

gaṇabhojane: eating in a group, H: a group-meal, Ñm: in eating in groups; loc. sg. m. Loc. or gen. tapp. cpd. See BMC I 342—48. = **gaṇa**: group, (or plur. “groups,” but Vibh seems to indicate the sing.); see Sd concl. + **bhojana**: meal, eating, food, feeding; action-noun derived from *bhuñjati*.

aññatra samayā ... tatthāyaṃ samayo ... ayaṃ tattha samayo: except at the (right) occasion. Here the occasion is this:... this is the occasion here; see NP 6.

gilānasamayo: occasion of illness; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **gilāna**: illness; see Pāc 31 + **samayo**: occasion; see NP 6.

cīvaradānasamayo: occasion of a giving of robe (-cloth)s; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **cīvara**: robe (-cloth) + **dāna**: giving; action-noun der. fr. *dadāti*; see Pāc 25.

cīvarakārasamayo: occasion of a robe-making; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. **kāra**: making; action-noun fr. *karoti*.

This rule is relaxed in Cv VII 1,3 and referred to there as “*gaṇabhojane*”: “eating in a group” and is one of the five allowances (*pañca kappissanti*) when the *kaṭhina*-privileges are in effect. Other Pātimokkha rules which are relaxed during this period are NP 1, 2, 3, Pāc 46.

addhānagamanasamayo: occasion of going on a (long) journey; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **addhāna**: long journey, path, road; see NP 16, Pāc 27 + **gamana**: travelling, going, journey; action-noun fr. *gacchati* (√gam + a).

nāvābhirūhanasamayo: occasion of voyaging on a boat; lit.: occasion of embarking a boat; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **nāva**: boat; see Pāc 28 + **abhirūhana**: lit. “embarking, boarding” but here having the meaning of travelling on a boat.; action-noun fr. *abhirūhati*; see Pāc 28.

mahāsamayo: occasion of (a) great (number), the occasion of a great gathering, Ñm: an extraordinary occasion (where one hundred or one thousand bhikkhus gather), H: a great scarcity; nom. sg. m. = **mahā**: great (number of bhikkhus); adj. The Padabhāṇa and the Kkh explain that there is not enough food to sustain themselves when more than three bhikkhus go on alms-round. In the origin-story it is related that after the rains-retreat (many) bhikkhus came from various districts to visit the Buddha.

Mahāsamaya probably means that there is a great number of bhikkhus, a great assembly. Cf. D II 253 f., S I 26: “... mahatā bhikkhusaṅghena saddhiṃ pañcamattehi bhikkhusatehi ... mahāsamaya pavanasmiṃ, ...”

Samaya here might have both the meaning of “gathering” and the meaning of “occasion.” The commentaries explain it as *mahāsamūha*: great gathering; S-a 76; cf. PED 683–84.

Hinüber, SPPS 195–97, thinks that the original form of the word was *mahāsamāja* (fr. √aj; see note on *pārājika*), which changed into the eastern form *-samāya* and then into *-samaya* in Ceylon. He refers to *mahāsamajja*, a great gathering, at S V 170. The Buddhist Sanskrit version of the Mahāsamayasutta is called the

⁴²³ V: *gilāna*-.

⁴²⁴ Dm, Um, V: *-ruhana*-.

Mahāsamājasūtra. If Hinüber is correct, then the original formulation of *mahāsamaya* in the present rule would be *mahāsamājasamaya*: the occasion of a great gathering, since *samaya* in the sense of occasion is required here. It is also possible that when the rule was formulated and transmitted that *mahāsamaya* had both the original meaning of great gathering, *samajja*, and the meaning of great occasion, *samaya*. This double meaning is confirmed by the commentaries; see above. In any case this occurrence shows that already very early on in India, and not in Ceylon, *samāja* would have changed into *samaya*. The Prātimokṣasūtra parallels of this rule also read *mahāsamaya*; see BMD n. 109.

samaṇabhattachasamayo: occasion of a meal (made) by an ascetic, Ñm: an occasion for a meal for ascetics, H: a meal-time of recluses; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. Containing another gen. tapp. cpd.: = **samaṇabhattacha**: a meal of a recluse = **samaṇa**: an ascetic, contemplative, religious wanderer. *Samaṇa* corresponds to the Skt *śramaṇa*, which as neuter action-noun means “making effort” or “exertion” and as masculine noun means “one who performs acts of austerity” or “an ascetic.” The root √*śram* from which these nouns are derived means “to exert oneself (esp. in acts of austerity)”; see MW. + **bhatta**: meal, feeding; cf. Pāc 46 and its origin-story: “*dethāvuso, bhattaṃ.*” Originally a p.p. of *bhajati* (√*bhaj* + *a*): divides, partakes. The word *samaṇabhattacha* is only found in this rule. Vibh: “*Samaṇabhattachasamayo nāma yo ko-ci paribbājakasamāpanno bhattaṃ karoti ...*”: “when whoever one who has attained (the state of) wanderer makes a meal...” Kkh 176: “*Yadā yo ko-ci pabbajito bhattacha nimanteti.*”: “when whoever one who has gone forth invites for a meal.”

[Pāc 33: Paramparabhojanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Paramparabhojane,⁴²⁵ **aññatra samayā, pācittiyaṃ.**

Tatthāyaṃ samayo: gilānasamayo,⁴²⁶ **cīvaradānasamayo, cīvarakārasamayo; ayaṃ tattha samayo.**

[The training precept on substituting a meal]

In [taking] a meal before another [invitation-meal], except at the [right] occasion, [there is a case] involving expiation.

Here the occasion is this: the occasion of illness; the occasion of a giving of robe [-cloth]s; the occasion of a robe-making; this is the occasion here.

paramparabhojane: In (taking) a meal before another (invitation-meal), H & Than: an out-of-turn meal, Ñm: in substituting one meal for another (and in *Path of Purity* 76: “a meal subsequent to a previous one”), Norman: in meals in succession, PED: “taking food in succession,” successive feeding; loc. sg. m. See BD II 317 n. 3. = **parampara**: lit.: another after another, nt, successive; see *paramparāya*: Th 785, A II 191. M II 170: “*andhaveṇi paramparāsaṃsatta.*”

= **param**: another; acc. sg. nt. abstract noun taking ablative + **para**: another; according to PED it is the uninflected form of the feminine ablative *parā*: after another (but it might also be an ins. or dat.). According to the Suttavibhaṅga the offence is committed when eating the other non-invitation meal. The origin-story relates that the bhikkhus were eating *before*, not *after*, the meal that they had been invited for and had therefore lost their appetite. Therefore, the point does not seem to be the eating *after*—this is covered by Pāc 35—but the act of taking *in addition to*, i.e., the eating of another meal before the meal one has been invited to. See also Mv VI 25,7 (Vin I 223–224) forbidding bhikkhus to eat thick conjei (early in the morning) before an invitation-meal (unless it has been offered by the person who is giving the invitation-meal) as they would lose their appetite: “Bhikkhus, by one who is invited elsewhere the eating-conjei of someone else is not to be eaten. Whoever eats he is to be made to do (what is) according to the case (i.e., Pāc 33).”: “*Na, bhikkhave, aññatra nimantitena aññassa bhojjayāgu paribhuñjitabbā. Yo paribhuñjeyya, yathā dhammo kāretabbo ti.*”

+ **bhojana**: meal; see Pāc 32.

⁴²⁵ V: *parappara*-. Vibh Ee: *parampara*-.

⁴²⁶ V: *gilāna*-.

[Pāc 34: Kāṇamātusikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhikkhuṃ pan'eva kulaṃ upagataṃ pūvehi⁴²⁷ vā manthehi⁴²⁸ vā abhihaṭṭhuṃ pavāreyya,⁴²⁹ ākaṇkhamānena bhikkhunā dvattipattapūrā⁴³⁰ paṭiggahetabbā; tato ce uttarim⁴³¹ paṭiggaṇheyya,⁴³² pācittiyaṃ.

Dvattipattapūre⁴³³ paṭiggahetvā, tato nīharitvā, bhikkhūhi saddhiṃ saṃvibhajitabbam.⁴³⁴ Ayaṃ tattha sāmīci.

[The Kāṇa's mother training precept]

Now, should a family invite a bhikkhu who has approached to take as many cakes and parched cakes [as he likes], by a bhikkhu who is wishing [so] two or three bowls full [of cakes] can be accepted; if he should accept more than that, [this is a case] involving exiation.

Having accepted two or three bowls full, having taken [them] away from there, [it] is to be shared together with [other] bhikkhus. This is the proper procedure here.

Kāṇamātusikkhāpadaṃ: Kāṇa's mother training precept; nom. sg. m. Appositive kammadhāraya cpd; see Pār 1. *Kāṇa* is a proper name and *mātu* is "mother." *Kāṇamātu* plays the leading role in the origin-story to this rule.

bhikkhuṃ: to a bhikkhu; acc. sg. m. **pan'eva:** now if; see Sd 12.

kulaṃ: a family; nom. sg. nt.

upagataṃ: that has been approached, visited; p.p. of *upagacchati* (*upa* + √*gam* + *a*) qualifying *bhikkhuṃ* (or *kulaṃ*). See stock-phrase in story to Pāc 7: "... *kulūpako* (= *kulūpago*; see PED) *hoti bahukāni kulāni upasaṅkamati*." and A III 10: "...*kulaṃ...alaṃ upagantum*..."

bhikkhuṃ pan'eva kulaṃ upagataṃ pūvehi vā manthehi vā abhihaṭṭhuṃ pavāreyya: Now, should a family invite a bhikkhu who has approached to take as many cakes and parched cakes [as he likes], (or: Now, a bhikkhu has approached a family [and someone there], should invite [the bhikkhu] to take [as much] baked cakes...), ņm: Should a family invite a bhikkhu who has arrived to accept cakes or sweets..., Norman: should a family bring and invite with cakes or biscuits a bhikkhu who has arrived, *Vinaya Texts*: In case people should offer a bhikkhu, who has gone to some house, to take as much as he chose of their sweetmeats and cakes, ..., H: If a monk, going up to a family, (who) asking should invite him (to take) cakes and barley-gruel..., Than: In case a bhikkhu arriving at a family residence is presented with cakes or cooked grain-meal...

The syntax of this line is complex and needs some explanation. There seem to be two agents: one is the bhikkhu who has approached the family, and the other the family who gives cakes to the bhikkhus. Horner and Thanissaro translate in this way. ņm, Norman, and *Vinaya Texts*, however, translate *kulaṃ* as the agent (i.e., nom. sg. nt.) and *bhikkhuṃ* as its patient (i.e., acc. sg. m.).

The usage of forms of the verb *upagacchati* taking the accusative *kulaṃ* and *kulāni* (see above) suggests that here too *kulaṃ* could be accusative and that "*kulaṃ upagataṃ*" is a qualification of *bhikkhuṃ*: "a monk who has approached a family." If this is the case, then both *bhikkhuṃ* and *kulaṃ* are patients in the accusative case. As there is no expressed agent in the nominative case in the sentence, *pavāreyya* takes an unexpressed agent in the nominative that can be any member of the family present there, not the family as a whole.

It is impossible to render the line literally into English and to keep intact the Pāli syntax.

The Vibh Padabhājana explains *upagataṃ* as "*tattha gataṃ*" and offers no other help, nor do Kkh and Sp.

⁴²⁷ V, Bh Pm 2 v.l.: *puvehi*.

⁴²⁸ V: *maṇḍhehi*.

⁴²⁹ Mi Se, G: *abhihaṭṭhuṃ-pavāreyya*. V: *abhihaṭṭham-pavāreyya*. Cf NP 7.

⁴³⁰ Vibh Ee, Mi & Mm Se: *dvi-*; see NP 10. V: *-purā*.

⁴³¹ Be & UP, Um, Vibh Ee: *uttari*. See NP 3.

⁴³² C, D, W: *paṭiggaṇheyya*. (Cf. NP 5, NP 10.)

⁴³³ Vibh Ee, Mi & Mm Se: *dvi-*; see NP 10. V: *-pure*.

⁴³⁴ V, Bh Pm 2 v.l.: *saṃvibhajitabbam*.

pūvehi: with baked cakes; ins. pl. m. S ED: *pūpāla*: “a kind of sweet cake fried with ghee or oil”. **vā**: or; disj. particle.

manthehi: with parched flour cakes, Ñm: sweets, H: barley-gruel, Than: cooked grain-meal; ins. pl. m. Der. fr. *mantheti*: to crush, churn, parch. Meaning not certain. Hinüber’s “barley-gruel”’s is unlikely since the cake is something special to be shared with other bhikkhus. According to Vibh it is prepared as a provision for a journey. Barley-gruel spoils quickly, so would not be fitting. Small square cakes made out of dry parched rice or flour mixed with sugar or palm-syrup are still offered to bhikkhus in Sri Lanka and a *mantha* might be something like this. The two merchants who became the first upāsakas offered the Buddha a *mantha* and a *madhupīṇḍika*, Vin I 4, the latter is a honey-ball and this might imply that the *mantha* was something sweet too. The origin-story uses *sattu*: barley meal, instead of *mantha*. See BD II 322 n. 4, 323 n. 3. Misra, 1972, p.180: “*Sattu* ... prepared by by pounding fried grains, which is still very popular in the rural areas of NE India, chiefly among the poor as a cheap diet. Mostly it was mixed with water for Pāṇini also mentions it by *udakasaktu*, but sometimes it was also mixed with curds as is clear by Patañjali’s mention of *dadhisaktu* ... *Mantha*, too, was a kind of groat that was made from fried rice and was generally mixed with milk.” Probably a *mantha* is a cake prepared with parched rice groat. MW: *saktu*: “coarsely ground meal, grit, groats (esp. of barley meal).” VINS II 131 gives *mantha* as a drink in which solid ingredients, usually parched barley meal (*saktu*, see VINS II 415), are mixed with fluid by stirring.

Mā-L rule 28: “*Bhikṣuṃ kho punaḥ kulehi upasaṅkrāntaṃ pravāreṇsu pūvehi vā manthehi vā tathā pravāritena bhikṣuṇā yāvan tri-pātra-pūra-paramaṃ tato pratigrhṇitavyaṃ pratigrhṇitvā bahirddhā nīharitavyaṃ bahirddhā nīharitvā agilānakehi bhikṣūhi sārdaṃ samvibhajitvā khāditaṃ bhumjitavyaṃ tad-uttariṃ pratigrhṇitvā bahirddhā nīharitvā agilānakehi bhikṣūhi sārdaṃ samvibhajitvā vā asamvibhajitvā khādeya vā bhumjeya vā pācattikaṃ.*”; BV 191, PrMoMā-L p.22.

See Pachow 138. Dhg & Mhs include “if he is not sick,” i.e., he can accept more than 3 bowls if he (or another?) is sick. The Pāli Suttavibhaṅga has no exemption like this, but mentions in the *anāpatti*-section that one can accept for the sake/good of another, *aññass’atthāya*; Vin IV 81.

abhihaṭṭhum pavāreyya: should invite to take [as much as he likes]; see NP 7.

ākaṅkhamānena bhikkhunā: by a bhikkhu who is wishing (so); see NP 3.

dvattipattapūrā: two or three bowls full, ... bowlfuls; adjective to unexpressed nom. pl. m. *pūvā* and *manthā*. Cf. Vin III 59: “... *bhikkhu ... pattapūraṃ pūvaṃ ... pattapūrā sakkhaliyo ... pattapūre modake theyyacitto avahari.*”: “... the bhikkhu took with the mind of a thief a bowlful of baked cake, ... bowlful of cake, ... bowlful of sweets.”

An inverted bb cpd including a digu cpd: *dvattipatta*, which in turn contains a disjunctive dvanda:

dvatti: two or three; see NP 10. + **patta**: bowl; see NP 21. + **pūra**: full; adj. derived from *pūreti*: fills. Could also be an action-noun fr. *pūreti*: filling. **pattapūra**: Ñm & H: bowlful, *Vinaya Texts*: bowls full, full bowls; an inverted cpd; see Sd intro. Normally the adjective *pūra* would come first, but inverted it sounds nicer.

paṭiggahetabbā: can be accepted; f.p.p. of *paṭigaṇhāti*, see NP 3, agreeing with “*dvattipattapūrā (manthā)*”

tato ce uttarim: if more than that: see NP 3.

paṭigaṇheyya: should accept; 3 sg. opt. of *paṭigaṇhāti*.

dvattipattapūre: acc. pl. m.

paṭiggahetvā: having accepted; abs.

tato: from there; abl. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

nīharitvā: having taken away; abs. of *nīharati* (*nis* + √*har* + *a*). The prefix *nī-* here corresponds to the Sanskrit prefix *nis-*: “out,” not the Skt pref. *ni-*: “down.” In Pāli both Skt prefixes *ni-* and *nis-* have merged into *nī(r)-*; see PED 351. The distinction is that *nis-* tends to make a long syllable while *ni-* a short one. When Pāli *nī-* represents Skt *nis-* the following consonant is doubled. Here, since the consonant combinations *-rh-* and *-hh-* are not found in Pāli, the vowel *-i-* in the prefix has instead been lengthened in accordance with the law of Morae; see PG § 5–6 & 51 and IP p.217.

bhikkhūhi: with bhikkhus; ins. pl. m.

saddhiṃ: together with; indecl. see Sd 2.

saṃvibhajitabbam: (it) is to be shared, divided together; f.p.p. of *saṃvibhajati* (*saṃ* + *vi* + *√bhaj* + *a*) agreeing with an unexpressed *taṃ*.

ayaṃ tattha sāmīci: this is here the proper procedure; see Sd concl.

[Pāc 35: Paṭhamapavāraṇāsikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhuttāvī pavārito anātirittam khādaniyam vā bhojanīyam⁴³⁵ vā khādeyya vā bhuñjeyya vā, pācittiyam.

[The first training precept on invitation]

If any bhikkhu who has eaten [a meal], who has been invited [to take more and refused], should chew uncooked food or eat cooked food which is not left over, [this is a case] involving expiation.

bhuttāvī: who has eaten (a meal); active past participle used as an adjective (IP p.274). = *bhutta*, p.p. of *bhuñjati* (*√bhuj* + *a*) + active p.p. suffix *-tāvīn*. Active past participles can take an agent in the nominative (*bhikkhu*) and a patient (unexpressed *bhojanam*) in the accusative. If the normal passive p.p. *bhuttam* would have been used here, it would mean "a bhikkhu who has been eaten (by someone)."

pavārito: who has been invited (to take more), offered, satisfied; adj. p.p. of *pavāreti*; see NP 7 + Pāc 34; cf. BD II 326 n. 2.

anātirittam: not left over; adj. Bb cpd. = Neg. pref. *an-* + *atiritta*, p.p. of *atiriccati* (*ati* + *√ric* + *ya*). Cf. *atireka* at NP 1.

khādaniyam: uncooked food, hard food, lit.: what is to be chewed, Ñm: eatables, H: solid food, Than: non-staple food; acc. sg. nt., f.p.p. of *khādati* (*√khād* + *a*): chews/ bites, used as a neuter noun; see IP p.107. The specific or technical meaning of this term here is "hard/solid food" while the general meaning elsewhere is "uncooked food." See BD IV 343 n. 5 and BMC I 358 (i.e., preface to "The Food Chapter") on this term and the next one: *bhojanīya*.

Venerable Ṭhāṇissaro takes *khādaniya* to be non-staple food and *bhojanīya* to be staple. There are some problems with this division as flour, normally considered a staple in western cultures, is a *khādaniya* according to the commentary, while meals are *bhojanīya*. Maybe the difference between the two terms is rather whether the food is cooked or uncooked. The *bhojanīya* as described in the Padabhājana explanation to this rule, Pāc 35, appears to be foods that are eaten after cooking and this agrees, for example, with the rule that two of the *bhojanīyas*, fish and meat, are not allowable when raw. The *khādaniya* on the other hand, especially as listed in the commentary on Pāc 37, all appear to be uncooked foods such as raw vegetables and non-cooked sweets made with sugar and flour (which are still made in Sri Lanka).

vā: or; disj. particle.

bhojanīyam: cooked food, Ñm: comestibles, H: soft food, Than: staple food, lit.: what is to be savoured, relished; acc. sg. nt., f.p.p. of *bhuñjati*, see above, used as a neuter noun.

khādeyya: Than: should chew, H & Ñm: eat (solid food); 3 sg. opt. of *khādati*.

bhuñjeyya: eat, Ñm & Than: should consume, H: partake; 3 sg. opt. of *bhuñjati*.

[Pāc 36: Dutiyapavāraṇāsikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhum bhuttāviṃ pavāritam anārittena khādaniyena vā bhojanīyena⁴³⁶ vā

⁴³⁵ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee, Um: *khādaniyam* & *bhojanīyam* throughout the text.

⁴³⁶ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee, Um: *khādaniyena* & *bhojanīyena*.

abhihaṭṭhum pavāreyya, ⁴³⁷ “Handa bhikkhu khāda vā bhuñja vā ti,” **jānaṃ** ⁴³⁸ **āsādanāpekkho,** ⁴³⁹ **bhuttasmiṃ, pācittiyaṃ.**

[The second training precept on invitation]

If any bhikkhu, knowingly [and] desiring to cause offence, should invite a bhikkhu, who has eaten [a meal and] who has been invited [to take more], to take uncooked food or cooked food which is not left over [saying]: “Here, bhikkhu, chew and eat!,” when [the bhikkhu] has eaten, [this is a case] involving expiation.

bhikkhum: a bhikkhu; acc. sg. m.

bhuttāviṃ pavāritaṃ: see Pāc 35, here agreeing with *bhikkhum*.

anatirittena khādanīyena vā bhojanīyena: with uncooked food or cooked foods which is not left over; as Pāc 36, here ins. sg. m.

abhihaṭṭhum pavāreyya: should invite to take [as much as he likes]; see NP 7.

handa: here!, come!, (the French *voilà!*); emphatic particle.

bhikkhu: voc. sg. m.

khāda vā bhuñja: chew or eat; 2 sg. imp. of *khādati* & *bhuñjati*; see Pāc 35.

vā: or; disj. particle. **ti:** “...,” end quote; see above Nid.

jānaṃ: knowingly; pr.p. of *jānāti* used like an adverb; see Pār 4 and NP 30. Padabhājana “He knows: he knows himself, or others inform him, or he (i.e., the other bhikkhu) informs.” *Jānāti nāma: sāmaṃ vā jānāti aññe vā tassa ārocenti so vā āroceti.* Sp IV 831 “knowingly, knowing the state of being invited. Because the knowing is of three kinds, therefore it is said in the Padabhājana: ‘he knows: he knows himself...’ etc.” : “*jānanti pavāritabhāvaṃ jānanto. taṃ panassa jānanaṃ yasmā tihākārehi hoti, tasmā “jānāti nāma sāmaṃ vā jānāti”ti-ādinā nayena padabhājanaṃ vuttaṃ.*”

āsādanāpekkho: desiring to cause offence, desiring to take revenge, desiring to rebuke, Ñm: in expectation of his discomfiture, H: desiring to find fault; adj. qualifying *bhikkhu*. Loc. tapp. cpd. like *visuddhāpekkho* in Nid, *visibbanāpekkho* in Pāc 56, and *hassāpekkho* in Pāc 60. = **āsādana:** causing annoyance, causing discomfort, causing offence; action-noun fr. *āsādeti* (*ā* + *√sid* + *e*) the causative of *asīdati*: strikes against, offends, insults, assails. In the origin-story a bhikkhu seeks revenge for being reprimanded by another bhikkhu. The way he does so is by making the one who reprimanded fall into offence through deception and then reprimanding him in turn so as to rebuke him. + **apekkha:** longing for, desiring for; action-noun taking loc.; see above Nid.

Padabhājana: “*Āsādanāpekkho ti: Iminā imaṃ codessāmi, sāressāmi, paṭicodessāmi, paṭisāressāmi, mañku karissāmi ti.*”: “...: By this means I will reprove him, remind him, reprove him in return, remind him in return, I will make him embarrassed.”

bhuttasmiṃ: when he has eaten, H & Ñm: in the eating; p.p. of *bhuñjati*, see Pāc 35, used as a action-noun in the loc. case. *Pācittiyaṃ* constructs with the locative, e.g. *gaṇabhojane* at Pāc 31. Here it is probably a locative absolute with the subject (*bhojanasmiṃ*) unexpressed; see Pāc 8: *bhūtasmiṃ* and Pāc 65 and 73. It could also be a p.p. used as a neuter noun, but the Padabhājana indicates that the offence is fulfilled at the end of the meal (“*Bhojana-pariyosāne āpatti pācittiyassa.*”) and the absolutive thus fits more.

[Pāc 37: Vikālabhojanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu vikāle khādanīyaṃ vā bhojanīyaṃ ⁴⁴⁰ **vā khādeyya vā bhuñjeyya vā, pācittiyaṃ.**

[The training precept on eating at the wrong time]

⁴³⁷ Mi Se, G: *abhihaṭṭhum-pavāreyya*. V: *abhihaṭṭham-pavāreyya*. Cf NP 7 and Pāc 34.

⁴³⁸ Um omits *jānaṃ*..

⁴³⁹ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra, Ce Kkh: *-āpekkho*. (Cf *-āpekkho* v.l. at Nid and Pāc 56, 60.)

⁴⁴⁰ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee, Um: *khādanīyaṃ* & *bhojanīyaṃ*.

If any bhikkhu should chew uncooked food or eat cooked food at the wrong time, [this is a case] involving expiation.

vikāle: at the wrong time; loc. sg. m., pref. *vi-*: wrong + *kāla*: time. Padabhājana: “*Majjhantike vitivatte yāva aruṇuggamaṇā*”: “When mid-day has passed until the arising of dawn.”

For the rest see Pāc 36.

[Pāc 38: Sannidhikāraṇasikkhāpadam]

Yo pana bhikkhu sannidhikāraṇaṃ khādanīyaṃ vā bhojanīyaṃ⁴⁴¹ vā khādeyya vā bhuñjeyya vā, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on keeping (food) in store]

If any bhikkhu should chew uncooked food or eat cooked food [while] keeping [it] in store, [this is a case] involving expiation.

sannidhikāraṇaṃ: (while) keeping in store; ṇamul absolutive; see NP 23. Padabhājana: “*Ajja paṭiggahitaṃ aparajju khāditaṃ hoti*.”: “It is accepted today (and) eaten the following day.”

[Pāc 39: Paṇītabhojanasikkhāpadam]

Yāni kho pana tāni paṇītabhojanāni, seyyathīdaṃ⁴⁴² sappi, navanītaṃ,⁴⁴³ telaṃ, madhuphāṇitaṃ,⁴⁴⁴ maccho, maṃsaṃ, khīraṃ, dadhi;⁴⁴⁵ yo pana bhikkhu evarūpāni paṇītabhojanāni agilāno⁴⁴⁶ attano atthāya viññāpetvā bhuñjeyya,⁴⁴⁷ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on superior food]

Those foods which are superior, namely: ghee, butter, oil, honey and molasses, fish, meat, milk, curd; whichever bhikkhu, who is not ill, having requested such superior foods for his own benefit, should eat [them], [this is a case] involving expiation.

yāni kho pana tāni ... seyyathīdaṃ sappi navanītaṃ telaṃ madhuphāṇitaṃ: see NP 23.

paṇītabhojanāni: foods which are superior, excellent foods; nom. pl. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd; cf. NP 23: *paṭisāyaniyāni bhesajjāni*. = **paṇīta**: superior, excellent; p.p. of *paneti* (*pa* + *√ni* + *a*): raises, exalts, brings out. + **bhojana**: food, nourishment in general; action-noun from *bhuñjati*; see Pāc 31.

maccho: fish; nom. sg. m.

maṃsaṃ: flesh, meat; nom. sg. nt

khīraṃ: milk; nom. sg. nt.

dadhi: curd, sour milk: nom. sg. f. MW 468: “*Dadhi*: coagulated milk, thick sour milk (regarded as a remedy; differing from curds in not having the whey (*dadhimāṇḍa*) separated from it.)” Cf. VINS I 338.

evarūpāni: such, of such kind; adj. See above Nid., NP 8.

agilāno: who is not-sick; adj. qualifying an unexpressed *ahaṃ*, see Pāc 31, Sekh 37. Kammadhāraya used as Bb cpd. = neg. pref. *a-* + *gilāna*. The Padabhājana defines *agilāna* here as “...: for whom there is comfort without

⁴⁴¹ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee, Um: *khādanīyaṃ & bhojanīyaṃ*.

⁴⁴² Dm, UP: *seyyathīdaṃ*. Cf NP 23.

⁴⁴³ V: *navanītaṃ*. Cf NP 23.

⁴⁴⁴ C, D, W: *madhuphāṇitaṃ*.

⁴⁴⁵ C, P (, Wae Uda Pm, Sirimalwatta Pm): *dadhiṃ*. (This reading has later been scribbled through in C.) Both *dadhi* and *dadhiṃ* are neuter nominative according to CPED, although normally *dadhiṃ* is accusative. Cf J-a IV 140: “*khīraṃ viya dadhiṃ viya obhāsantaṃ*.”

⁴⁴⁶ V: *gilāno*.

⁴⁴⁷ C, D, W: *paribhuñjeyya*.

the excellent foods.”: “...: *yassa vinā paṇītabhojanāni phāsu hoti.*”

attano: of himself, his own; gen. sg. of *attā*: self; reflexive pronoun (see Sd 6).

atthāya: for the benefit, need, use; dat. (of advantage) sg. m.; cf. NP 10.

attano atthāya: for his own benefit, for the benefit of himself, Ñm: for his own use, H: for himself.

viññāpetvā: having requested, indicated, informed, having made (someone) understand; abs. of *viññāpeti*; see NP 6.

bhuñjeyya: should eat; see Pāc 35.

[Pāc 40: Dantaponasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu adinnaṃ mukhadvāraṃ āhāraṃ⁴⁴⁸ āhareyya, aññatra udakadantaṇṇa,⁴⁴⁹ pācittiyaṃ.

Bhojanavaggo catuttho.

[The training precept on tooth-wood]

If any bhikkhu should take into the mouth [any] nutriment that has not been given [to bhikkhus]; except water and tooth-wood, [this is a case] involving expiation.

The section [starting with the rule] on eating is fourth

adinnaṃ: which has not been given; adj. qualifying *āhāraṃ*; see Pār 2. Padabhājana: “*Adinnaṃ nāma: apaṭiggahitakaṃ vuccati. Dinnaṃ nāma: kāyena vā kāyapaṭibaddhena vā nissaggiyena vā dente hatthapāse ṭhito kāyena vā kāyapaṭibaddhena vā paṭigaṇhāti etaṃ dinnaṃ nāma.*”: “Not given: is called not accepted. Given: when giving with the body, or what is connected with the body, or by relinquishing (with a spoon, etc.), one accepts standing within arms-length.”

mukhadvāraṃ: mouth, lit.: face-door; acc. sg. m. (Acc of aim; Syntax § 38. Gen. tapp. cpd = **mukha**: mouth, face + **dvāra**: door. Cf. Sekh 41, Vin I 84 and M III 242.

āhāraṃ: nutriment, intake, ingestion, consumption, something taken in, sustenance; acc. sg. m. der. fr. *āharati* (*ā* + *√har* + *a*). Water and toothwood are either excluded because they weren’t considered as food.

āhareyya: ingest, take into, ingest, consume, bring to; 3 sg. opt. of *āharati*; see above.

adinnaṃ mukhadvāraṃ āhāraṃ āhareyya: H: should convey to his mouth nutriment not given, Ñm: convey to the opening of his mouth food not given, Than: take into his mouth an edible that has not been given, Norman: should convey to the opening of his mouth food that has not been given. The word-order would normally be: “... *adinnaṃ āhāraṃ mukhadvāraṃ āhareyya* ...,” compare the previous rules, but here it has probably been changed for euphonic reasons. The Sarvāstivādin Prātimokṣa has: “... *aparigṛhītaṃ āhāraṃ mukhadvāreṇāhared* ...”; PrMoSa p.214. Mā-L rule 35: “... *adinnam-apratigrāhitaṃ mukha-dvārikam-āhāram-āhāreya anyatrodakadantaṇṇa* ...”; PrMoMā-L p.22, BV 190. Mū: “... *adinnaṃ (mukhadvārā)hāramāhared* ...”; PrMoMū p.36. The expression “*āhāraṃ āharati*” is also found at M I 81, Thi 460, and D II 223.

Vibh: “*Khāḍissāmi, bhuñjissāmi ti gaṇhāti āpatti dukkaṭassa. Ajjhohāre ajjhohāre pācittiyassa.*”: “(Thinking) ‘I shall chew, I shall eat’ he takes: an offence of wrong-doing for him. In each swallowing an offence of expiation.” The meaning of *ajjhoharati* is “swallows” in M II 138 and Vin II 201 but in M I 245 it means “puts into.” Cf Vin II 132 (the ruminating rule) where *mukhadvāra* can only mean “mouth”.

aññatra: except; indecl. see Pār 1.

udakadantaṇṇa: water and tooth-wood; abl. sg. nt. Dvanda-cpd.

= **udaka**: water + **danta**: tooth + **poṇa**: wood, stick, pick. This is a small stick that is made out of branches of trees with fragrant or medicinal wood by making it pointed at one end by a knife to pick the teeth and at the

⁴⁴⁸ V: *adinnaṃ mukhadvāraṃ āhareyya*..

⁴⁴⁹ Bh Pm 1 & 2, Ra, Dm, Vibh Ce, Pg: -dantaponā.

other end making it frayed by beating for brushing the teeth. These sticks are still being made in India and in the Sri Lankan and Thai forest monasteries. Derivation uncertain, Vin II 137–138 has *dantakaṭṭha*: tooth-wood. It should be between 4 and 8 finger-breadths long. Mā-L rule 35: *-dantapone*; BV 190.

bhojanavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on food, the food-section; nom. sg. m. = **bhojana**: see Pāc 39 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

catuttho: fourth; ordinal.

[Acelakavaggo⁴⁵⁰]

[Pāc 41: Acelakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu acelakassa⁴⁵¹ vā paribbājakassa vā paribbājikāya vā sahatthā khādanīyaṃ vā bhojanīyaṃ⁴⁵² vā dadeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on naked ascetics]

If any bhikkhu should give with his own hand uncooked food or cooked food to a naked ascetic or to a male wanderer or to a female wanderer, [this is a case] involving expiation.

acelakassa: to a naked ascetic, a naked one, lit.: one who has no clothes; dat. sg. m., neg. particle. **a-** + **cela**: cloth, clothes + conn. suf. *-aka*. There are still ascetics in India who are “sky-clad.”

paribbājakassa: male wanderer; dat. sg. m. = pref. *pari*: around + *√vaj*: wanders + conn. suf. *-aka*.

paribbājikāya: female wanderer; dat. sg. f., *pari-* + *√vaj* + fem. conn. suf. *-ika*, compare *upāsaka/upāsikā*.

sahatthā: with his own hand; ins. sg. m. in *-ā*; see NP 16.

khādanīyaṃ vā bhojanīyaṃ vā: see Pāc 35.

dadeyya: should give; 3 sg. opt. of *dadāti*; see Pāc 25.

[Pāc 42: Uyyojanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhuṃ evaṃ vadeyya,⁴⁵³ “Eh’āvuso, gāmaṃ vā nigamaṃ vā piṇḍāya pavississāmā⁴⁵⁴ ti,” tassa dāpetvā vā adāpetvā vā uyyojeyya, “Gacchāvuso! Na me tayā saddhiṃ kathā vā nisajjā vā phāsu hoti; ekakassa⁴⁵⁵ me kathā vā nisajjā vā phāsu hoti ti,” etad-eva paccayaṃ karitvā anaññaṃ, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on dismissing]

If any bhikkhu should say so to a bhikkhu, “Come friend! We shall enter a village or town for alms,” [then after] having had [food] given or not having had [food] given to him, should he dismiss [the bhikkhu saying], “Go friend! There is no ease for me talking or sitting down together with you; there is ease for me talking or sitting down by myself;” having made just this the reason, [and] not another, [this is a case] involving expiation;

bhikkhuṃ: to a bhikkhu; acc. sg. m.

evaṃ vadeyya: should say so; see Pāc 24.

Regarding the readings with *evaṃ vadeyya* and those without: The origin-story (Be, Ce, Ee) has both forms: and thus offers no help: “*Upanando ... bhikkhuṃ etad avoca: “Eh’āvuso ... bhikkhū ... vipācenti: ‘kathaṃ hi nāma āyasmā Upanando sakyaputto bhikkhuṃ eh’āvuso gāmaṃ piṇḍāya pavississāmā ti tassa adāpetvā uyyojessatī’ ti—pe—*

⁴⁵⁰ Only in Mi Se.

⁴⁵¹ C: *acelak-*.

⁴⁵² C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee, Um: *khādanīyaṃ & bhojanīyaṃ*.

⁴⁵³ (= Mi & Mm Se, G, D, Bh Pm 1 & 2, V, Ra.) C, W, Dm, Um, UP, Vibh Ee, Vibh Ce: ... *bhikkhuṃ ehāvuso ...*, i.e., no “*evaṃ vadeyya*.” (Pg and Sannē also do not have it.)

⁴⁵⁴ V: *pavississāmā*.

⁴⁵⁵ V: *ekatassa*.

saccaṃ kira tvaṃ upananda bhikkhuṃ eh'āvuso gāmaṃ piṇḍāya pavisissāmāti tassa adāpetvā uyyojessīti'ti. Saccaṃ bhagavā ... 'kathaṃ hi nāma tvaṃ moghapurisa bhikkhuṃ eh'āvuso gāmaṃ piṇḍāya pavisissāmāti tassa adāpetvā uyyojessasi.'" The Padabhāṣana gives no useful comment. The Parivāra (Be): "*Bhikkhuṃ: eh'āvuso ...*"

The clause lacks a verb if *vadeyya* is left out, and a quotation is normally preceded by a verb, cf. "*evaṃ vadeyya*" in Pār 4, Sd 13, Pāc 24, Pāc 68 & 70. Maybe the verb was left out in one recension, perhaps under influence of the Parivāra, because the optative *vadeyya* would be followed by two absolutes, and then an optative again in the next clause, i.e., the main sentence verb *uyyojeyya*.

The corresponding Prātimokṣasūtra versions have what is corresponding to "*evaṃ vadeyya*": Mā-L: "... *evaṃ vadeya ...*" (PrMoMā-L p.23, BV 192). Mū: "... *evaṃ vadet...*" (PrMoMū p.37). Sa: "... *evaṃ vaded ...*" (PrMoSa p.217).

eh'āvuso: come friend!; junction of *ehi* + *āvuso* in which the final *-i* of *ehi* has been elided; PG § 70,2b. = **ehi**: come!; imp. of *eti* ($\sqrt{i} + a$) + **āvuso**: friend; voc. sg. m. See above Nid.

gāmaṃ vā nigamaṃ vā: village or town; see Sd 13.

piṇḍāya: for alms; dat. sg. m. see NP 27, Pāc 31.

pavisissāmā ti: we shall enter; = **pavisissāma**: 1 pl. fut. of *pavisati* (*pa* + \sqrt{vis} + *a*) + **ti**: end quote; see above Nid.

tassa: to him; dat. sg. m. of dem. pron *ta(d)*.

dāpetvā: having had (food) given; abs. of **dāpeti**, causative of *dadāti*; see Pāc 25.

adāpetvā: not having had (food) given; neg. pref. **a-** + **dāpetvā**.

uyyojeyya: should dismiss, send off; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *uyyujjati*: *uyyojeti* (*ud* + \sqrt{yuj} + *e*). (Skt *-dy-* is palatalised to *-yy-* in Pāli; see PG § 55.)

gacchāvuso: go friend!; junction of *gaccha* + *āvuso* through contraction; PG § 69,1.

= **gaccha**: go!; imp. of *gacchati* (\sqrt{gam} + *a*). **āvuso**: voc. sg. m.

na: not; neg. particle.

me: for me; dat. sg. of pers. pron. *ma(d)*: I.

tayā: with you; ins. sg. of pers. pron. *tvaṃ*.

saddhiṃ: together with; indecl. taking an ins. Cf. Sd 2.

kathā: speaking, conversing; nom. sg. f. action-noun der. fr. *katheti* (\sqrt{kath} + *e*).

nisajjā: sitting down; nom. sg. f. action-noun der. fr. *nisīdati*; see Aniy 1.

phāsu: ease; nom. sg. nt. or adv. See above Nid.

hoti: there is; 3 sg. pres. ind. of *bhavati*; see above Nid.

ekakassa: by myself, alone; dat. sg. of *ekaka*. Adjective qualifying *me*. Lit.: "group of one," = numeral substantive; see PG § 119,6. = **eka**: one + con. suf. **-ka**. Not to be confused with *ekassa* at Pd 2.

etad-eva paccayaṃ karitvā anaññaṃ: see Pāc 16.

[Pāc 43: Sabhojanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu sabhojane kule anupakhajja⁴⁵⁶ nisajjaṃ kappeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on having a meal]

If any bhikkhu, having intruded upon an family having a meal, should sit down, [this is a case] involving expiation.

sabhojane kule: a family having a meal, a family with both people, Ñm: (the bedroom) of a family with two persons, H: family with food, *Vinaya Texts*: a house where a meal is going on.

⁴⁵⁶ Dm, Mi & Mm Se: *anūpakhajja*.

sabhojane: having a meal, with a meal; adj. This is an untranslatable word-play.

Sp 856: “*Sabhojane: saha ubhohi janehī ti. Sabhojanaṃ tasmīṃ sabhojane. Atha vā sabhojane sabhoge; rāgapariyuṭṭhitassa purissa hi itthī bhogo itthiyā ca puriso ...*”: “With a meal: with both people. With a meal when there is a meal in there. Or perhaps with a meal is with enjoyment; for a man beset by lust a woman is enjoyment and for a woman a man ...” Thus, one commentarial etymology suggests that it is a *sandhi* of *sa-* + *ubho*: pref. *sa-*: with, having + *ubho*: both + *jana*: people; i.e.: with both people. The second etymology is pref. *sa-*: with, having + *bhojana*: food, meal, enjoyment; see Pāc 32, i.e., the family is having a meal. The first derivation is supported by the Vibh word-commentary: “... *itthi ca puriso ca ubho anikkhantā honti ubho avītarāgā*”: “... the woman and the man have both not departed (from the bedroom), both are not without lust.”

“Food,” or “eating,” *bhojana*, can have a sexual implication in Indian culture, see S I 10: “*Bhūñja ... kāme ...*”: “Enjoy/eat sense-pleasures!” *Bhoga*, “property” or “enjoyment”, like *bhojana*, is derived from *bhūñjati*. In Sanskrit (see MW 767 & 1194) *bhoga* can mean “sexual enjoyment” and *sahabhojana* means: “eating together, common enjoyment.” MW 119: *asambhoga*: non-enjoyment, absence of sexual union. Cf. Sn 102: “*sahirañño sabhojano eko bhūñjati ...*”: “having gold, having food/enjoyment/property, he enjoys it alone ...”; cf. J II 232, Ap I 361.

The origin-story and word-commentary suggest that there is a sexual implication. The *āpatti* and *anāpatti* clauses in the Vibhaṅga, *sayananighare* & *asayananighare*, also indicate that it is encroaching on a couple (the man and woman of a family) by sitting in the bedroom. For the versions of other schools, which are more or less the same as in the Pāḷi, see CSP 143.

Notwithstanding the origin-story and all the etymologies, it is possible that the word *sabhojane* originally simply meant “a family having a meal.” Nowadays too it would be considered very bad manners if a monk, hoping that he will get some food, would intrudingly sit down while a family is having a meal. It is also strange that the act of sitting down is specified, because the very action of walking into or standing in a bedroom with an amorous couple in it is as intrusive. If only intrusion into a bedroom would be intended, the rule simply could be, “... *kule anupakkhandeyya ...*”: “intrude upon a family,” without any further specification.

kule: upon a family; loc. sg. m. In Sanskrit *kula* can mean “residence of a family”, “abode”, and “house”; see MW.

anupakhajja: having intruded, encroached; abs. of *anupakhajjati* taking a locative; see Pāc 16.

nisajjaṃ kappeyya: should sit down; see Aniy 1.

[Pāc 44: Rahopaticchannasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu mātuḡāmena saddhiṃ raho paṭicchanne āsane nisajjaṃ kappeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on being privately and concealed]

If any bhikkhu should sit down together with a woman, privately, on a concealed seat, [this is a case] involving expiation.

mātuḡāmena saddhiṃ raho paṭicchanne āsane nisajjaṃ kappeyya: should sit down together with a woman, privately, on a concealed seat; see above Aniy 1.

[Pāc 45: Rahonisajjasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu mātuḡāmena saddhiṃ eko ekāya raho nisajjaṃ kappeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on taking a seat privately]

If any bhikkhu sit down together with a woman, one [man] with one [woman], privately, [this is a case] involving expiation.

eko ekāya: one (man) with one (woman); see Aniy 1.

[Pāc 46: Cārittasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu nimantito sabhatto samāno santaṃ bhikkhuṃ anāpucchā purebhattaṃ vā pacchābhattaṃ vā kulesu cārittaṃ⁴⁵⁷ āpajjeyya aññatra samayā, pācittiyaṃ.

Tatthāyaṃ samayo: cīvaradānasamayo, cīvarakārasamayo; ayaṃ tattha samayo.

[The training precept on visiting]

If any bhikkhu who has been invited for a meal, not having asked [permission to] a bhikkhu who is present [in the monastery], should go visiting families before the meal or after the meal, except at the [right] occasion, [this is a case] involving expiation.

Here the occasion is this: the occasion of a giving of robe [-cloth]s; the occasion of a making of robes; this is the occasion here.

nimantito: has been invited; adj. qualifying *bhikkhu*, p.p. of *nimanteti* (*ni* + *√mant* + *e*).

sabhatto: with (the expectation of) a meal (i.e., having accepted an invitation for a meal); adj. qualifying *bhikkhu*. = pref. **sa-**: with + **bhatta**: meal; see Pāc 32.

samāno: being; pr.p. of *atthi* (*√as* + *a*) agreeing with *bhikkhu*. *Samāno* appears to act as an auxiliary to both *nimantito* and *sabhatto*. *Samāno* is acting as an auxiliary verb expressing duration in this periphrastic construction; see IP p.234.

nimantito sabhatto samāno: *Ñm*: who has been invited for a meal, H & Norman: being invited and being (provided) with a meal. An idiomatic expression. *Nimantito* would normally take an instrumental object, but the instrumental here has been replaced by *sabhatto*.

Padabhājana: “*Sabhatto nāma yena nimantito tena sabhatto.*”: “*Sabhatto*: Where one has been invited for, thereby one is with a meal.” Origin-story: “*upanandaṃ ... bhattena nimantesi*”: “[he] invited Upanda ... for a meal.” Parivāra: *Nimantitena sabhattena santaṃ bhikkhuṃ ...*: “By one who has been invited, who is with [the prospect] of a meal ...”

santaṃ: is present; also pr.p. of *atthi*; see above Nid. It refers to any other bhikkhu who is living in the monastery.

bhikkhuṃ: a bhikkhu; acc. sg. m.

anāpucchā: without having asked; absolutive of *āpucchati* preceded by neg. pref. *an-*; see Pāc 14 and 15. *Anāpucchā* is a maybe truncated form of *anāpucchāya*. At the end of words *-āya* is often contracted to *-ā*; see *anādā* at NP 13 and PG § 27,2. CPD states that it has been formed in analogy of the absolutive *āraddha* or that it is a shortened instrumental from the feminine noun **āpucchā*.

purebhattaṃ: before the meal; adv. An *abbayībhāva* cpd. in acc. sg. nt. (Cf. Vin I 378, III 53.) = **pure**: before; indecl. + **bhatta**.

pacchābhattaṃ: after the meal; adv. An *abbayībhāva* cpd. = **pacchā**: after; indecl. See above Nid. concl.

kulesu: in families, among families; loc. pl. nt.

kulesu cārittaṃ āpajjeyya: should go visiting families, should engage in visiting families, should engage in going among families, *Ñm*: should visit families, H: should call on families. This might be a periphrastic construction in which two verbs express a single idea. This type of construction is normally found with forms of other verbs (usually past participles) but here *cārittaṃ* could maybe be seen as a form of the past participle of *carita*, the p.p. of *carati*.

cārittaṃ: visiting, going, moving; acc. sg. nt. fr. *√car* + *-itta*. Skt: *cāritra*: moving, proceeding; see MW and BHSGD. Only occurs preceding forms of the verbs *āpajjati* and (a few times) *anuyuñjati*.

āpajjeyya: should engage in; 3 sg. opt. of *āpajjati*; see above Nid. *Āpajjati* could be an auxiliary verb, see IP

⁴⁵⁷ V: *carittaṃ*.

p.233f.

aññatra samayā ... tatthāyaṃ ... samayo: see NP 6.

This rule is relaxed in Cv VII 1,3 and referred to there as “*anāmantacāra*”: “going without asking” and is one of the five allowances (*pañca kappissanti*) when the *kaṭhina*-privileges are in effect. Other Pātimokkha rules that are relaxed during this period are NP 1, 2, (by extension NP 3), Pāc 32.

[Pāc 47: Mahānāmasikkhāpadaṃ]

Agilānena⁴⁵⁸ bhikkhunā cātumāsapaccayapavāraṇā⁴⁵⁹ sādītābbā; aññatra punapavāraṇāya, aññatra nīccapavāraṇāya; tato ce uttarim⁴⁶⁰ sādiyeyya, pācittiyāṃ.

[The Mahānāma training precept]

By a bhikkhu who is not ill a four-month invitation for requisites can be accepted; except with a repeated invitation, except with a permanent invitation; if he should accept more than that, [this is a case] involving expiation.

Mahānāmasikkhāpadaṃ: the Mahānāma training precept; nom. sg. m. Appositive kammadhāraya cpd; see Pār 1. Mahānāma is the proper name of the male lay-disciple who plays the leading role in the origin-story to this rule in the Suttavibhaṅga.

agilānena bhikkhunā: by a non-sick bhikkhu; ins. sg. m. See Pāc 31.

cātumāsappaccayapavāraṇā: four-month invitation for requisites, an invitation for requisites that lasts for four months, four-month-requisite-invitation; nom. sg. f. Gen. tapp. cpd. that contains another dat. tapp. cpd: *paccayapāvāraṇa* and a digu cpd: *cātumāsa*. **cātumāsa:** *four-month*; digu cpd. = **cātu:** four; num. cpd form + **māsa:** month + **paccayapavāraṇā:** invitation for requisites; dat. tapp. cpd. + **paccaya:** support, requisite (of one of the four types: robes, alms-food, lodgings, medicines; e.g. Vin III 89.). Not to be confused with *paccaya* in the sense of “reason” as in Pāc 16. *Paccaya* = *paṭi* + *aya* fr. √i; *pratyaya* is the Skt form; see Sd 10 *iccetam*. + **pavāraṇā:** invitation; nom. sg. f.

The *-ppaccaya-* reading is probably the correct one since *paṭi-* in *paccaya* corresponds to Skt *prati-*; see IP p.11 n. 1 & 2 and NP 16 *-magga(p)paṭi-*.

sādītābbā: can be accepted; f.p.p. of *sādiyati*; see NP 7. Agreeing with *-pavāraṇā*. As it is an option it can not be translated with the more imperative “is to be accepted.”

aññatra: except; indecl. taking abl./ins.

punapavāraṇāya: with a repeated invitation; ins. sg. g. Ins. in *-ā*. Kammadhāraya cpd. = Instrumental of accompaniment; Syntax § 63 (or Ins. of attendant circumstances, § 65, see next rule.); cf. Pāc 48. = **puna:** again, repeated, renewed; indecl. + **pavāraṇā:** invitation; see above. It is remarkable that there is no reading – *ppavāraṇāya* as the prefix *-pa* is usually *-ppa* in compounds.

nīccapavāraṇāya: with a permanent invitation; ins. sg. f. Kammadhāraya cpd. = **nicca:** permanent; adj. + **pavāraṇā:** invitation; see above.

tato ce uttarim sādiyeyya: if he should accept more than that; see NP 7.

[Pāc 48: Uyyuttasenāsikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu uyyuttaṃ⁴⁶¹ senaṃ dassanāya gaccheyya; aññatra tathārūpapaccayā⁴⁶², pācittiyāṃ.

⁴⁵⁸ V: *agilānena*.

⁴⁵⁹ C, G, W, UP, Dm, Vibh Ce: *cātumāsappaccaya-*. D, Mi & Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, Um, V, Vibh Ee, Pg: *cātumāsapaccaya-*.

⁴⁶⁰ Be & UP, Um, Vibh Ee: *uttari*. See NP 3.

⁴⁶¹ G: *uyyutaṃ*.

⁴⁶² C, D, V, W, Dm, Vibh Ce, UP, Bh Pm 1 & 2, Ra, Pg: *-rūpapaccaya*. (In G later corrected from *-p-* to *-pp-*.) See note to *-magga(p)paṭipannassa* at NP 16 and *cātumāsappaccaya-* at Pāc 47.

[The training precept on the army in action]

If any bhikkhu should go to visit an army in action; except with an appropriate reason, [this is a case] involving expiation.

uyyuttam: in action, set out (on a march), dispatched, H: fighting, Ñm: in battle array, Than: on active duty; p.p. of *uyyunnjati* (*ud* + *√yunnj* + *a*) (cf. Pāc 42) used as an adjective qualifying *senam*. The padabhājana states that *uyyutta* means that “the army has departed from the village and has camped/settled or has marched forth”: “... *gāmato nikkhamitvā nivīṭṭhā vā hoti payātā vā*.” The origin-story states that king Pasenadi (with his own army) was marching out against (another) army (*senāya abbhuyyāto hoti*) and that the group of six bhikkhus went to see this “*uyyuttam senam*.” The king calls them and says that they delight in battles (*yuddhābhinandinā*).

senam: army; acc. sg. f.

dassanāya: to visit, to see, for the purpose of seeing; dat. (of purpose) sg. nt. of *dassana*; cf. Pār 4. An action-noun that takes an accusative patient; see IP p.138. Literally *dassana* means “seeing,” but it often has the sense of “visiting” in Pāli.

gaccheyya: should go; 3 sg. opt. of *gacchati*.

aññatra: except; indecl. takes ins. or abl.

tathārūpapaccayā: with an appropriate reason; ins. sg. m. = Ins. of attendant circumstances; see Syntax § 65 and Pāc 85: *karaṇīyā*. **tathārūpa**: such kind; see Pār 2. + **paccaya**: reason; see Pāc 16.

[Pāc 49: Senāvāsasikkhāpadam]

Siyā ca tassa bhikkhuno ko-cid-eva paccayo senam gamanāya,⁴⁶³ dirattatirattam⁴⁶⁴ tena bhikkhunā senāya vasitabbam; tato ce uttari⁴⁶⁵ vaseyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on staying in the army]

And if there might be any reason for that bhikkhu for going to the army, two nights or three nights can be stayed within the army by that bhikkhu; if he should stay more than that, [this is a case] involving expiation.

siyā ca tassa bhikkhuno ko-cid-eva paccayo: and if there might be any reason for that bhikkhu; see NP 29. Check

senam: to an army; acc. sg. f.

gamanāya: for going, to go; dat. sg. nt. Action-noun fr. *gacchati* put in the dative (of purpose) taking *senam* as patient; see IP p.138. When an action is intended, the action-noun is put in the dative and acts very much like an infinitive; see Syntax § 107a.

dirattatirattam: two nights or three nights, for two or three nights; acc. sg. nt. or m. = Acc. of extent in time or an adverb in accusative sg. nt.; see Syntax § 44b. See *dirattatirattam* at Pāc 5.

tena bhikkhunā: by that bhikkhu; ins. See Sd concl.

senāya: within the army; loc. sg. f., not ins. sg. f.: with the army. = Locative of place where; see Syntax § 163a, or a locative of proximity: “being in” or “being within a place,” “a place near,” Syntax § 164c, or a locative of co-residence: a person in the company of whom one stays: § 164e.

Nothing is explained in the Vibhaṅga or commentaries, but see the origin-story at Vin IV 105: “*aḥam hi senāya gilāno*”: “For I am ill in the army (camp).”

vasitabbam: can be stayed; f.p.p. of *vasati* (*√vas* + *a*).

⁴⁶³ C, W: *senāṅgamanāya*.

⁴⁶⁴ Mi & Mm Se, Vibh Ee: *dvi*-.

⁴⁶⁵ Be & UP, Um, Vibh Ee: *uttari*. See NP 3.

tato ce uttarim: if more than that; see NP 29.

vaseyya: he should stay; 3 sg. opt. of *vasati*.

[Pāc 50: Uyyodhikasikkhāpadaṃ]

Dirattatirattañ-ce⁴⁶⁶ **bhikkhu senāya vasamāno, uyyodhikaṃ vā balaggaṃ vā senābyūhaṃ**⁴⁶⁷ **vā anīkadassanaṃ vā gaccheyya, pācittiyaṃ.**

*Acelakavaggo*⁴⁶⁸ *pañcamo.*

[The training precept on battle-fields]

If a bhikkhu staying two nights or three nights within an army should go to a battle-field, or a review, or a massing of the army, or an inspection of units, [this is a case] involving expiation.

The section [starting with the rule] on naked ascetics is fifth

dirattatirattañ-ce: if two or three nights. **dirattatirattaṃ**: see Pāc 49. + **ce**: if; hyp. particle.

senāya: within an army; ins. sg. f. See Pāc 49.

vasamāno: staying; pr.p. of *vasati*; see Pāc 49.

The meanings of the following terms are not completely clear. See BD II 379 n. 1. They are mentioned in the *visūkadassana*-section of the Majjhimasāla section in the Brahmajālasuttanta (D I 5).

uyyodhikaṃ: Ñm & Than: battle-field, H: sham-fight, *Vinaya Texts*: battle-array; acc. sg. m. *uyyodha*: battle + suf. of connection: *-ika*. Not derived from *uyyūñjati*; see Pāc 48, but according to PED, from *ud* + *yudh*. Vibh: *sampahāraṃ*: a clash. The difference is clear in the corresponding Sa and Mū Prātimokṣasūtra rules: the rule corresponding to Pāc 48 has “*udyuktāṃ senāṃ*,” while the rule corresponding to Pāc 50 has “*udyūthikāṃ senāṃ*”; see PrMoSa p.216. BHSGD *udyūthikā*: “(an army) ready for military operations.”

balaggaṃ: army-review, Than: roll-call, H: troop-array, Ñm: review, *Vinaya Texts*: numbering of forces, MW: parade, lit.: best of power; acc. sg. nt. gen. tapp. cpd. = **balā**: strength, power + **agga**: front, the best. Vibh: “... *ettakā hatthī* ...”: “... so many elephants...” See BD II 379 n. 1.

senābyūhaṃ: massing of the army, battle-mass, Than: troops in battle-formation, CSP: drawing up of battle-array, H: massing of the army, Ñm: parade, *Vinaya Texts*: drawing up of the forces; acc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **senā**: army + **byūha**: massing; = *vi* + *y* + $\sqrt{ū}lh > vyūha > byūha$: *vi* + $\sqrt{ū}lh$: p.p. of *vahati* ($\sqrt{v}ah + a$): carries, proceeds. Vibh: “... *ito hatthī hontu*...” Cf. J VI 275: “*balaggāni viyūlhāni*.” PED 633: *vīyūlha*: dense (of fighting), M I 186, A III 94: “*vīyūlhaṃ saṅgamaṃ*” (Be: *byūlhaṃ*).

anīkadassanaṃ: inspection of units; Than: review of battle-units, H & *Vinaya Texts*: review, Ñm exercise; acc. sg. nt. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **anika**: front, face, army-array + **dassana**: see Pāc 48. Vibh: “... *tayo hatthī pacchimaṃ hatthānikaṃ*.” J VI 275: “*hatthanikaṃ rathanikaṃ*.”

gaccheyya: should go; 3 sg. opt. of *gacchati*.

acelakavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on naked ascetics, the naked-ascetic-section; nom. sg. m. =

acelaka: a naked ascetic; see Pāc 41 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

pañcamo: fifth; ordinal.

⁴⁶⁶ Mi & Mm Se, Vibh Ee: *dvi*-.

⁴⁶⁷ Ce Kkh: *-vyūhaṃ*. G, Um, UP, V, Ra, Pg: *-byuham*.

⁴⁶⁸ C: *acelaka*-.

[Surāpānavaggo⁴⁶⁹]

[Pāc 51: Surāpānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Surāmerayapāne pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on alcoholic drink]

In drinking alcoholic drink made of grain [-products] or fruit [and/or flower products], [there is a case] involving expiation.

surāmerayapāne: in drinking alcoholic drink made of grains or (alcoholic drink made of) fruits, Ñm: wines and spirits, H: fermented liquor and spirits; loc. sg. nt. gen. tapp. cpd. containing a disjunctive dvanda cpd.

= **surāmeraya**: alcoholic drink made of grains or alcoholic drink made of fruits; disjunctive dvanda cpd.

= **surā**: mild or strong alcoholic drink made out of grains and/or grain-products: e.g. beer, whiskey. See the Padabhājana on this rule in Vin IV 110: “*Surā nāma piṭṭhasurā pūvasurā odanasurā kiṇṇapakkhittā sambhārasaṃyuttā.*”: “*Surā* is *surā* made of flour, ... cakes, ... boiled rice, into which yeast has been thrown, (or) a combination of ingredients..” Cf. Vv-a 73 and PED.

+ **meraya**: mild or strong alcoholic drink made out of flowers, fruits, or honey: e.g. wine, rum. Vin IV 110: “*Merayo nāma pupphāsavo phalāsavo madhvāsavo gulāsavo sambhārasaṃyutto.*”: “*Meraya* is flower extract, fruit extract, honey extract, sugar extract or a combination of ingredients.” (*Sāratthadīpanī-ṭīkā* [Myanmar III 79]: “*Haritakī-sāsapādi-nānā-sambhārehi saṃyojitā sambhāra-saṃyuttā. ... Haritakā-malaka-kaṭuka-bhaṇḍādi-nānā-sambhārānaṃ raso cīraparivāsito sambhāra-saṃyutto.*”)

The Padabhājana indicates that in Pāli the distinction in names is due to the difference in ingredients, rather than the alcoholic strength or the process by which the drink is made as it is in the English language, therefore it is not possible to give a satisfactory translation with a single word. Cf. BD II 385 and PED.

+ **pāna**: drinking; action-noun der. fr. *pivati* (√*pā* + *a*).

[Pāc 52: Aṅgulipatodakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Aṅgulipatodake pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on tickling with the fingers]

In tickling with the fingers, [there is a case] involving expiation.

aṅgulipatodake: in tickling with the fingers, Ñm: in poking (anyone) with the fingers, H: tickling with the fingers; loc. sg. nt. Ins. tapp. cpd. = **aṅguli**: finger, fingers + **patodaka**: tickling, poking; from pref. *pa* + √*tud* + suffix *ka*, cf. *tudati*: pricks. Ins. tapp. cpd. Cf. BD II 387 n. 1.

[Pāc 53: Hassadhammasikkhāpadaṃ]

Udake hassadhamme⁴⁷⁰ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the act of playing]

In the act of playing in water, [there is a case] involving expiation.

udake: in water; loc. sg. nt.

hassadhamme: in the act of playing, ... having fun/amusement/mirth/fun/jest, Ñm: sporting with laughter, H: playing, Than: the act of playing; loc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd.

⁴⁶⁹ Only in Mi Se.

⁴⁷⁰ Dm, Um: *hasa-*. Mi Se, G, V, Vibh Ee: *hāsa-*. C, D, W, UP, Ee Sp, Mm Se, Mi Se, Vibh Ce v.l.: *hasa-*. Vibh Ee gives all three readings as Burmese ms. v.l.l.

= **hassa**: amusement, fun; adjective or nt. action-noun. Probably derived from the Sanskrit root $\sqrt{hṛṣ}$: is excited, rather than from the root \sqrt{has} : laughs. The two roots have merged in Pāli. (For this merging cf. note on *dosa*, Sd 8, and PED 730: *hasati* & *hassati*.)

Sp: "... *udakakīlikā*": "sporting/playing in the water." Vibh origin-story: "*udake kīlanti*." Cf. Pāc 60 *hassāpekkho*. Be Kkh comments with *hasādhippāya* both to this rule and to Pāc 60, which indicates that the reading the commentator had was the same for both. The Sarvāstivādin Prātimokṣasūtra has: *udakaharṣaṇāt*, PrMoSa p.225.

+ **dhamma**: act, practice; m. For *dhamma* in this sense see Pār 1.

[Pāc 54: Anādariyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Anādariye pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on disrespect]

In disrespect, [there is a case] involving expiation.

anādariye: in disrespect; loc. sg. nt. neg. pref. **an-** + **ādariya**: respect, esteem, affection; abstract noun (from *anādara*). There are two types of disrespect according to the Padabhājana: *puggalānādariya* & *dhammānādariya*, disrespect towards a person and towards the Dhamma.

[Pāc 55: Bhimsāpanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhuṃ bhimsāpeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on scaring]

If any bhikkhu should scare [another] bhikkhu, [this is a case] involving expiation.

bhikkhuṃ: a bhikkhu; acc. sg. m.

bhimsāpeyya: should scare, ... make afraid, Ñm & H: frighten; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *bhīṃseti* ($\sqrt{bhī}$ + *e*). Not given as a verb in PED, but see *bhīṃsa* at PED 504. Vibh: "... *bhīṃsāpetukāmo ... bhāyeyya*"

Sa: "... *bhikṣuṃ bhīṣayed bhīṣāpayed ...* "; PrMoSa p.225. (So Mū; see LC 7.) Mā-L rule 65: *bhīseya*; PrMoMā-L p.26, BV 194. Cf. MW 758 $\sqrt{bhī}$.

The root of *bhāyati* is $\sqrt{bhī}$ "is afraid," the causative is *bhāyāpeti*, the p.p. is *bhīta*.

In the commentaries the verb *bhīṃseti* is found at S-a I 323, Sn-a 224, Ap-a 78. Forms of the causative *bhīṃsāpeti* are also found in the commentaries, e.g., M-a I 117. The reason why *bhīṃsāpeti* probably is used here is probably because the other bhikkhu is frightened through an appearance: a sound, sight etc.; see Padabhājana. *Bhīṃsa* always occurs as an adj. in *bhīṃsarūpa*: a frightening appearance (of Māra etc.) According to the Padabhājana it makes no difference whether the monk actually becomes scared or not.

[Pāc 56: Jotisikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu agilāno⁴⁷¹ visibbanāpekkho⁴⁷² jotim samādaheyya vā samādahāpeyya vā, aññatra tathārūpapaccayā,⁴⁷³ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on (lighting) fires]

If any bhikkhu who is not ill, desiring to warm [himself], should light a fire or should have [it] lit, except with an appropriate reason, [this is a case] involving expiation.

⁴⁷¹ V: *agilāno*.

⁴⁷² Mm Se, Pg: *visīvanāpekkho*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Sannē: *visīvanāpekkho*. Vibh Ce, Um, Ra: *visibbanāpekkho*. (Cf v.l. at Pāc 36).

⁴⁷³ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, Dm, Um, UP, V, Vibh Ce: *-rūpapaccayā*; see Pāc 48.

agilāno: who is not ill; adj.; see Pāc 31.

visibbanāpekkho: who is desiring to warm (himself), longing for warmth; adj. Loc. tapp. cpd used as Bb cpd. = **visīvana**: warming (oneself); action-noun der. fr. *visibbeti/visīveti* (*vi* + \sqrt{siv} + *e*). Cf. BD II 398 n. 2, and PED 640 + **apekkha**: desiring; adj.; see above Nid.

jotiṃ: a fire; acc. sg. m.

samādaheyya: should light, kindle; 3 sg. opt. of *samādahati* (*saṃ* + *ā* + \sqrt{dah} + *a*).

samādahāpeyya: should have (a fire) lit; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *samādahati*.

aññatra tathārūpapaccayā: except with an appropriate reason; see Pāc 48. The origin-story implies that a reason would be the lighting of a lamp, or a small fire (*jotika*, which the commentary specifies as one for baking a bowl, etc.), and lighting a fire in a sauna (*jantaghara*).

[Pāc 57: Nahānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu oren’adḍhamāsaṃ⁴⁷⁴ nahāyeyya,⁴⁷⁵ aññatra samayā, pācittiyaṃ.

Tatthāyaṃ samayo: diyaḍḍho⁴⁷⁶ māso seso gimhānan-ti,⁴⁷⁷ vassānassa paṭhamo⁴⁷⁸ māso, iccete adḍhateyyamāsā,⁴⁷⁹ uṇhasamayo, parilāhasamayo,⁴⁸⁰ gilānasamayo,⁴⁸¹ kammamasamayo, addhānagamasamayo, vātavuṭṭhisamayo; ayaṃ tattha samayo.

[The training precept on bathing]

If any bhikkhu should should bathe within less than half a month, except at the [right] occasion, [this is a case] involving expiation.

Here the occasion is this [thinking]: “one and a half month is what remains of the hot season,” [and “this is] the first month of the rainy season”—these two and a half months [are] the occasion of dry heat, [and] the occasion of humid heat—[also:] the occasion of being sick; the occasion of work; the occasion of going on a journey; the occasion of [dusty] wind and rain; this is the occasion here.

oren’adḍhamāsaṃ: less than half a month; junction of *orena* + *adḍhamāsaṃ* through elision of the final *-a* of *orena* before a closed syllable; see PG § 69 = **orena**: within, in less than; adv. + **adḍhamāsaṃ**: half a month; acc. sg. m. = acc. of time when; Syntax § 46. Digu cpd; see NP 24.

adḍhamāso: a half month; nom. sg. m. Digu cpd. = **adḍha**: half; numeral adj. called a “fraction”; see IP p.270. + **māsa**: month.

nahāyeyya: should bathe; 3 sg. opt. of *nahāyati* ($\sqrt{nhā}$ + *ya*). *Nahāyeyya/nhāyeyya*. Both forms *nahāti* and *nhāti* are given in PED 348. See PG § 50,5. The *-nh-* form is the verse form (where the *-a-* is softly recited as a *sarabhatti* (PG § 29f.), the *nah-* form is the prose form.

aññatra samayā ... tatthāyaṃ samayo ... ayaṃ tattha samayo: except at the (right) occasion. Here the occasion is this: ... this is the occasion here; see NP 6, Pāc 32.

diyaḍḍho: one and a half; num. = **di**: two; num. contracted compound form of uninflected *dvi* + euphonic semi-vowel *-y-* + **adḍha**: half; fractional number, which is compounded with the next higher ordinal number like in the German “*halb drei*”; see PG § 119,2. Normally, when *adḍha* comes after a cardinal number, it indicates half thereof, e.g., *dasadḍha* means “five.” However, *diyaḍḍha* (lit. two-half) is an exception to this rule and probably is so for the reason that the (non-existing) compound *adḍhadve* (nom.) doesn’t sound so nice.

māso seso gimhānan-ti: (thinking:) “one month is what remains of the hot season”; see NP 24.

⁴⁷⁴ Mi & Mm Se, G, V: *adḍha-*.

⁴⁷⁵ Vibh Ee, Mi & Mm Se: *nhāyeyya*. V: *ṇhāyeyya*.

⁴⁷⁶ V: *diyaḍḍho*.

⁴⁷⁷ Vibh Be v.l.: *gimhānaṃ*.

⁴⁷⁸ V: *paṭhamo*.

⁴⁷⁹ V: *aḍḍha-*.

⁴⁸⁰ C: *parilāha-*.

⁴⁸¹ V: *gilāna-*.

vassānassa: of the rainy season; gen. sg. m. of *vassāna*.

paṭhamo: the first; adj. ordinal.

iccete: these [are], thus these [are]; see above Sd 8: *iccetam*, = junction of **iti**: thus; indecl. Refers back to the preceding items. No need to translate. + **ete**: acc. pl. of dem. pron. *eta(d)*.

aḍḍhateyyamāsā: two and a half months; nom. pl. m.

aḍḍhateyya: two and a half; digu cpd. = **aḍḍha** + **teyya**. (Elsewhere also spelled as *aḍḍhatiya*. Cf. *ardhātiya* in the PrMoMā-Lp.24.) A shortened form of *aḍḍhatatiya* in which the syllable *-ti-* has been lost due to haplology; see PG § 65,1. + **māsā**: nom. pl. m. The two and a half months are the one and a half months remaining of the hot season and the first month of the rains.

māso seso gimhānan-ti vassānassa paṭhamo māso iccete: The rule underwent six amendments. (Bathing less than once in two weeks > + 2 ½ months of dry heat and humid heat > + illness > + work > + journey > + wind rain.) It seems that during these amendments of the rule something went wrong in the wording of the rule.

There is no reason for the quotation mark *ti* after *gimhānaṃ* and it is possible that it is a corruption under influence of the same clause at NP 24. Further it would be strange that *gimhānaṃ* is followed by *ti* and *paṭhamo māso* not. Perhaps the *iti* in *iccete* originally belonged to the “*vassānassa paṭhamo māso*” clause, i.e., “... *gimhānan-ti, vassānassa paṭhamo māso ti, ete aḍḍhateyyamāsā uñhasamayo ...*” rather than to the “*ete aḍḍhateyyamāsā*” clause. This is what the Padabhājana seems to suggest (Vin IV 119): “The occasion of scorching heat is the remaining one and a half months of the hot season, the occasion of oppressive heat is the name of the first month of the rainy season, (thinking:) ‘These are the two and a half months which are the occasion of dry heat (and) the occasion of humid heat’ there can be bathing.” : “*Uñhasamayo nāma diyaḍḍho māso seso gimhānaṃ, pariḷāhasamayo nāma vassānassa paṭhamo māso, iccete aḍḍhateyyamāsā uñhasamayo pariḷāhasamayo ti nahāyitabbaṃ.*”

Otherwise, perhaps the *iti* before *ete* was misunderstood as a quotation mark and it was felt that a similar construction was needed for “... *gimhānaṃ.*”

The Mā and Sa Prātimokṣasūtras (the corresponding Mū rule is missing) have no *ti* after what corresponds to *gimhānaṃ*. The Sa PrMo has no *iti* before *etau* (= Pāli *ete*), while the Mā PrMo has *ityete* (= Pāli *iccete*). Mā Pāc 50 “*Anvaddhamāsaṃ snānamuktaṃ bhagavatā anyatra samayo pācattikam. Tatrāyaṃ samayo dvyarddho māso śeṣe grīṣmāṇāṃ, varṣāṇāṃ ca purimo māso, ityete ardhātiyamāsāḥ paridāhakālasamayo, adhvaṇagamanakālasamayo gilānasamayo karmasamayo vātasamayo vṛṣṭisamayo ayamatrasamayo,*” PrMoMā-Lp.24. Sa Pāc 60: “*Ardhamāsikaṃ snātram anyatra samayāt tadatikrāmataḥ pātayantikā. Tatrāyaṃ samayaḥ sārḍho māsaḥ śeṣo grīṣmasya, pūro māso varṣāṇāṃ, etau sārḍhau dvau māsau paridāghasamayaḥ. Avaśiṣṭaṃ glānasamayaḥ karmasamayo vātasamayo vṛṣṭisamayo dḥvānamārgasamayo ‘yaṃ tatra samayaḥ,*” PrMoSa p. 224.

uñhasamayo: occasion of dry heat, scorching heat, Ñm & H: hot weather; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd.

= **uñha**: dry heat (of the end of the hot season) + **samaya**: occasion; see NP 6 + Pāc 32.

pariḷāhasamayo: occasion of humid heat, oppressive heat, Ñm: occasion of fever, H: fever weather; nom. sg. m. = **pariḷāha**: humid heat, fever; der. fr. *pariḷāhati* (*pari* + *ḷāh* + *a*). It is not completely clear whether *pariḷāha* refers to a physical condition, such as fever, or to hot weather. The latter is more likely since *uñha* and *pariḷāha* occur together in the same origin-story, while *gilāna*, illness, has its own separate origin-story. The commentary also takes them together. It is possible that *uñha* is the dry scorching heat that occurs at the end of the hot season in India, when it has not rained for long time, while *pariḷāha* refers to the humid, sweaty, and oppressive heat that occurs at the beginning of the rains when it is still hot but when the first rains have fallen that can cause an atmosphere like a steam sauna. Although *pariḷāha* can refer to physical (and mental) fever, one wonders why only the first month of the rainy season is included if it refers to malarial fever (maybe because the fevers are stronger or more frequent?) here, since malaria mosquitoes are abundant during the whole rainy season and also afterwards. Moreover, when having fever, it is said to be no good to bathe. Cf. M I 284: *ghamma-pariḷāha*: “hot weather fever” (Ñm) + **samaya**.

gilānasamayo: occasion of being sick; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd; see Pāc 32.

kammasamayo: occasion of work; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. **kamma**: work.

addhānagamanasamayo: occasion of going on a journey; nom. sg. m. See Pāc 32.

vātavuṭṭhisamayo: occasion of (dusty) wind and rain; nom. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. containing a dvanda.

vātavuṭṭhi: wind or rain; dvanda cpd. = **vāta**: wind; der. fr. *vāyati* ($\sqrt{vā} + ya$): blows. + **vuṭṭhi**: rain; p.p. of *vassati* ($\sqrt{vass} + a$). The origin-story to this occasion states that this occasion, like the other occasions, was laid down because the bhikkhus bodies got dirty and soiled their robes and lodgings. The wind here according to the origin-story is dusty wind. Vin IV 119: "... bhikkhū ajjhokāse cīvarakammaṃ karontā sarajena vātena okiṇṇā honti, devo ca thokaṃ thokaṃ phusāyati.": "... bhikkhus while making a robe outside were covered by a dusty wind, and it drizzled." Cf. A III 370, Vin I 184. A-a to A III 370: "Bhusā vātavuṭṭhi ti balavā vātakkhandho." Ja I 328: "mahatī vātavuṭṭhi uppajji. Vātassa atibalavatāya dalhamulā vanajetṭhakarukkhā pi sambhaggasākhāviṭapā samulā nipatiṃsu."

[Pāc 58: Dubbaṇṇakaraṇasikkhāpadam]

Navam pana⁴⁸² bhikkhunā cīvaralābhena tiṇṇam dubbaṇṇakaraṇānam aññataram dubbaṇṇakaraṇam ādātabbam, nīlam vā kaddamam⁴⁸³ vā kālasāmam vā.

Anādā ce bhikkhu tiṇṇam dubbaṇṇakaraṇānam aññataram dubbaṇṇakaraṇam navam cīvaram paribhuñjeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on stains]

By a monk with the gain of a new robe a certain stain [from] amongst the three stains is to be applied: dark-blue or muddy [-grey] or dark-brown.

If a bhikkhu, not having applied a certain stain [from] amongst the three stains, should use a new robe, [this is a case] involving expiation.

navam: new; adj. qualifying *cīvaram* in *cīvaralābhena*.

pana: again, but; connective part; see Pār 1.

bhikkhunā: by a bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

cīvaralābhena: with the gain of a robe, with a robe-gain; adj. Gen. tapp. cpd used as Bb cpd qualifying *bhikkhunā*. = **cīvara**: robe (-cloth) + **lābha**: gain, acquisition, obtaining; m. Action-noun used as an adj. Der. fr. *labhati* ($\sqrt{labh} + a$).

navam pana bhikkhunā cīvaralābhena: by a bhikkhu with the gain of a new robe.

The sentence construction seems to be incorrect here since the adjective *navam* should normally qualify *cīvaram*, which is not found in this line. Instead, it appears to qualify *cīvara-* in the gen. tapp. cpd *cīvaralābhena*. Normally, the instrumental *navena* should be qualifying *cīvaralābhena*. This strange construction might have arisen under influence of "*navam pana santhataṃ*" at NP 13.

The Mā-L version has one compound that would correspond to "*navacīvaralābhinā bhikkhunā*" in Pāli: Mā-L rule 48: "*Navacīvaralābhinā bhikkhunā trayāṇān durvarṇikaraṇānāṃ ...*": "By a bhikkhu who has a new-robe-gain ..."; PrMoMā-L p.24, BV 193. The Sa version is "*navacīvarapratilābhād bhikkhunā trayāṇāṃ durvarṇikaraṇānāṃ anyatamānyatamam ādātavyaṃ navasya durvarṇikaraṇāya ...*"; PrMoSa p.223. The Mū version is incomplete; PrMoMū p.40.

tiṇṇam: of three; gen. pl. num. used as adj. see NP 29.

dubbaṇṇakaraṇānam: amongst the stains, unattractive makers, Ñm: disfiguring mark, H: disfigurement; gen. pl. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd. See NP 15. A partitive genitive that denotes distinguishing or selecting out of multitude; see Syntax §144.

= **dubbaṇṇa** (= *durvaṇṇa* > *duvvaṇṇa*, cf. NP 14 *chabbassāni*): unattractive; adj.; see NP 15 + **karaṇa**: making,

⁴⁸² Mi Se, G, V, P: *navam-pana*.

⁴⁸³ V: *kaddumam*.

makers; action-noun der. fr. *karoti*; see NP 15.

aññataraṃ: a certain, a , some; adj.; see Pār concl. PED: often used as indefinite particle: “a.”

dubbaṇṇakaraṇaṃ: a stain; acc. sg. m.

ādātabbaṃ: to be applied, lit.: to be taken, included; f.p.p. see NP 13.

nīlaṃ: dark-green (Vibh), dark-blue (usual meaning); acc. sg. m.

kaddamaṃ: mud, clay, i.e., muddy-grey or muddy-brown; acc. sg. m.

kāḷasāmaṃ: dark-brown; acc. sg. m. = **kāḷa**: black, dark + **sāma**: brown, dark, cf. BD II 408 n. 5.

anādā: not having taken; abs. See NP 13.

ce: if; hyp. particle.

cīvaraṃ: acc. sg. nt.

paribhuñjeyya: should use; 3 sg. opt. of *paribhuñjati*; see NP 23.

[Pāc 59: Vikappanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhussa vā bhikkhuniyā⁴⁸⁴ vā sikkhamānāya vā sāmaṇerassa vā sāmaṇeriyā⁴⁸⁵ vā sāmaṃ cīvaraṃ vikappetvā apaccuddhāraṃ⁴⁸⁶ paribhuñjeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on assigning]

If any bhikkhu, having himself assigned a robe to a bhikkhu or a bhikkhunī or a male novice or a female novice, should use [it] without withdrawing [the assignment], [this is a case] involving expiation.

bhikkhussa: to a bhikkhu; dat. sg. m.

bhikkhuniyā: to a bhikkhunī; dat. sg. f.

sikkhamānāya: to a female trainee; dat. sg. f.; pr.p. of *sikkhati*, see Pār 1, Sd 12, used as a noun: one who is training (in the six training precepts, Padabhājana), cf. Pāc 71: *sikkhamānena ... bhikkhunā*.

sāmaṇerassa: to a novice; dat. sg. m. Der. *samaṇa*: see Pāc 32 + patrynomic suf. *-nera*. It literally means something like “offspring of a *samaṇa*” or “one who belongs to a *samaṇa*,” i.e., is under the guidance of a [fully-fledged] *samaṇa*.

sāmaṇeriyā: to a female novice; dat. sg. f.

sāmaṃ: himself; adv. see NP 10. **cīvaraṃ**: acc. sg. m.

vikappetvā: H: having assigned (ownership), Ñm: having transferred, Norman: a formal taking back, *Vinaya Texts*: has made over; abs. of *vikappeti*; see NP 8. Cf. Vibh.

apaccuddhāraṃ: not withdrawing (the assignment), Than: without the shared ownership being rescinded, Ñm: without having rejected, H: (the robe) not having been taken away; = a ṇamul absolute in *-akaṃ*; see NP 23. Cf. BD II 22 n. 3 & BMC 413 f. = *an-* + *paṭi* + *ud* + *√dhar* + *ika*. For the *-cc-* assimilation; see Sd 10: *iccetvaṃ*. Sa PrMo: *apratyuddhārya*; CSP 158–59; so Mū; LC 7. Mā-L rule 63: “... *cīvaraṃ datvā apratyuddhareya paribhuñjeyya, apratyuddhāraparibhoge pācattikaṃ*”; PrMoMā-L p.26.

paribhuñjeyya: should use; see Pāc 58.

[Pāc 60: Apanidhānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhussa pattaṃ vā cīvaraṃ vā nisīdanaṃ vā sūciḥaram⁴⁸⁷ vā kāyabandhanaṃ vā apanidheyya vā apanidhāpeyya vā antamaso hassāpekkho⁴⁸⁸ pi pācittiyaṃ.

⁴⁸⁴ V: *bhikkhuniyā*.

⁴⁸⁵ Bh Pm 1 & 2: *sāmaṇerāya*. The editor of the Sannē gives this as a v.l. of “some (MSS).” Mm Se: *sāmaṇerassa ... sāmaṇeriyā*.

⁴⁸⁶ Dm, Um, UP: *appaccuddhāraṇaṃ*. Pg (p. 57): *apaccuddhāraṃ*.

⁴⁸⁷ D, V, Ra: *suci-*. Cf. Pāc 86.

⁴⁸⁸ Dm, Um, V: *hasāpekkho*; Vibh Ce, Mi & Mm Se, G, Pg: *hassāpekkho*. Vibh Ee: *hāsāpekkho*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra:

*Surāpānavaggo*⁴⁸⁹ *chaṭṭho*.

[The training precept on hiding]

If any bhikkhu should hide a bhikkhu's bowl or robe or sitting-cloth or needle case or body-belt, or have [it] hidden, even if just desiring amusement, [this is a case] involving expiation.

The section [starting with the rule] on alcoholic drink is sixth.

pattam: bowl; acc. sg. m. see NP 21. **cīvaram**: robe (-cloth); acc. sg. nt.

nisīdanam: sitting-cloth; acc. sg. nt. see NP 15, Pāc 89.

sūcigharam: needle-case; acc. sg. nt. = **sūci**: needle + **ghara**: a case, lit. a house; see NP 29.

kāyabandhanam: body-belt; acc. sg. nt. Dat. tapp. cpd. = **kāya**: body + **bandhana**: belt, band, lit. binding; action-noun der. fr. *bandhati*.

apanidheyya: should hide; 3 sg. opt. of *apanidahati* (*apa* + *ni* + √*dah* + *a*).

apanidhāpeyya: should make (someone else) hide; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of the above.

antamaso ... pi: even if just, even if simply; see Pār 1.

hassāpekkho: desiring amusement, looking for amusement, Ñm: even for a joke, H: even in fun; adj. qualifying *bhikkhu*. = **hassa**: amusement; see Pāc 53 + **apekkha**: desiring; adj.; see Nid: *visuddhāpekkho*.

Origin-story: *hasanti* (Skt √*has*). Cf. origin-story to Pāc 52: *hāsesum*: to make laugh (Skt √*has*) + note to Pāc 53: *hassadhamme*. Vibh: "... *kīlādhipāyo*." "intending fun." Sa PrMo: *hāsyaprekṣyam*, (= √*has*; see MW 1294), Finot 59, so Mū Pātimokkha. Mā-L: "*antamaśato hāsyārthaṃ pi*"; PrMoMā-L p.26, BV 191. Cf. M I 415: *hassāpi*.

Hinüber, in SPPS 67–68 n. 14, suggests that the form *hāsa* is the correct one since a feminine *hāsā* or *hāsyā* is not found elsewhere. However, he overlooked the fact that here this is not a feminine *hāsā* compounded with *pekkha*, but a junction through contraction of the final *-a* of *hāsa* and the initial *a-* of *apekkha* as in *visuddhāpekkha* in the Nidāna. Thus both forms are in accordance with the law of Morae and are therefore correct; cf. NP 10 *dvatti* and Pd 3 *sekkha*.

surāpānavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on drinking alcoholic drink, the drinking-alcoholic-drink-section; nom. sg. m. = **surāpāna**: see Pāc 51 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

chaṭṭho: sixth; ordinal.

[Sappānavaggo⁴⁹⁰]

[Pāc 61: Sañcicca pāṇam]

Yo pana bhikkhu sañcicca pāṇam⁴⁹¹ jīvītā voropeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on intentionally (depriving a being of life)]

If any bhikkhu should intentionally deprive a living being of life, [this is a case] involving expiation.

sañcicca ... jīvītā voropeyya: intentionally ... deprive of life; see Pār 3.

pāṇam: a living being; acc. sg. m.

hassāpekkho. Bh Pm 2 v.l. *hasāpekkho*. (Cf Nid: *visuddhāpekkho*.) Vibh Ee gives all three as Burmese MS. v.l.l.

⁴⁸⁹ V: *-pāṇa-*.

⁴⁹⁰ Only in Mi Se.

⁴⁹¹ C, W: *pāṇam*.

[Pāc 62: Sappāṇakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ sappāṇakaṃ⁴⁹² udakaṃ paribhuñjeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on (water) with living beings]

If any bhikkhu should knowingly use water containing living beings, [this is a case] involving expiation.

jānaṃ sappāṇakaṃ udakaṃ: ... knowingly ... water containing living beings; see Pāc 20.

paribhuñjeyya: should use; see Pāc 59.

[Pāc 63: Ukkoṭanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ yathādhammaṃ nihatādhikaraṇaṃ⁴⁹³ punakammāya ukkoṭeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on agitating]

If any bhikkhu should knowingly agitate for further [legal] action a legal issue which has been disposed of according to the law, [this is a case] involving expiation.

jānaṃ: knowingly; pr.p. of *jānāti* used like an adverb; see Pār 4 and NP 30.

yathādhammaṃ: according to the law/rule; adv. *Abbayībhāva* cpd.; see Syntax § 52,c. Adverb to the p.p. *nihata(ṃ)* in *nihatādhikaraṇaṃ*, which functions as a verb; see *suttāgataṃ*, *Pātimokkha* concl. = **yathā**: as; adv. +

dhamma: case, law, rule; for more see *yathādhammo* at Pāc 73.

Padabhājana: “*Yathādhammaṃ nāma dhammena vinayena satthusāsanena kataṃ ...* (cf. Vin IV 152)” : “*Yathādhammaṃ* means done according to the Dhamma, the Vinaya, the Dispensation of the Teacher ...

MW 842: “*yathādharmāṃ*: indecl., according to duty or right, in proper form or order ...”

Yathādhammaṃ is found in the stock-phrase of seeing ones transgression and making amends for it: “*accayam accayato disvā yathādhammaṃ paṭikaroti*,” e.g., M I 440, A I 103, (also used for laity, e.g. at D I 85) and has the same meaning of “according to the custom/rule/law.”

A usage of *yathādhammaṃ* with *paṭikaroti* in confessing *Pātimokkha* offences as at A II 242 (used with the *Pārājika* and the other two classes of offence given there), is also found at Vin I 173–174: *yathādhammaṃ paṭikatā*.

M III 10 sheds light on the meaning of *yathādhammaṃ* and also on *yathā dhammo* of Pāc 73: “*Tasmiṃ te bhaññamāne hoti bhikkhussa āpatti hoti vītikkamo taṃ mayaṃ yathādhammaṃ yathānusiṭṭhaṃ⁴⁹⁴ kāremā ti*”: “While it is being told (*bhaññamāne*) to them in that place if there is an offence, a transgression of a bhikkhu we make him do what is according to the rule, according to the instruction.” See also the Introduction on this passage.

nihatādhikaraṇaṃ: a legal issue which has been disposed of; acc. sg. nt. *Kammadhāraya* cpd. = **nihata**: which has been disposed, settled, put down (legally), executed, slain; p.p. of *nihanati* (*ni* + *√han* + *a*) cf. Padabhājana at Vin IV 126,6: “*niharitabbaṃ*.” + **adhikaraṇa**: legal issue; see Sd 8.

yathādhammaṃ nihatādhikaraṇaṃ: Ñm (1966): “when a legal issue has been disposed of (under the heading) of a (certain) case,” H: “a legal action settled according to the rule.” Horner’s suggested translation in Ñm 1969 ed. p.166: “knowing that a legal process has been disposed of according to what is righteous...”

punakammāya: for further action, lit.: for again action. Dat. (of purpose) sg. m. *Kammadhāraya* cpd. = **puna**: again, further; indecl. (Not the cpd form *punar*, which, when assimilated, would give *punakkamāya*.) + **kamma**:

⁴⁹² C: -pāṇakaṃ.

⁴⁹³ Mi & Mm Se: *nīhat*-.

⁴⁹⁴ Ee: -*satthaṃ*, p.p. of *sāsati*, Be, Ce: *yathānusiṭṭhaṃ*: p.p. of *anusāsati*; both have the same meaning. M-a (Be): “*Yathā dhammo ca anusīṭṭhi ca ṭhitā*.” Cf. Vin I 9 f. “... *dhammaṃ desemi yathānusiṭṭhaṃ tathā paṭipajjamānā ...*” MW 843: *yathāsāstra*: ind., according to precept or rule, according to the codes of law.

(legal) action; from *karoti*, cf. Pāc 79. See BD II 5 n. 2.

ukkoṭeyya: Ñm: should agitate, H: should open up, should stir up/instigate; 3 sg. opt. of *ukkoṭeti* (*ud* + √*kuṭ* + *e*). Cf. the parallel in Vin II 94: "... *ukkoṭanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ*"; see NP intro.

[Pāc 64: Duṭṭhullasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhussa jānaṃ duṭṭhullaṃ āpattiṃ paṭicchādeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on depraved (offences)]

If any bhikkhu should knowingly conceal a bhikkhu's depraved offence, [this is a case] involving expiation.

bhikkhussa ... duṭṭhullaṃ āpattiṃ: a depraved offence of a bhikkhu; see Pāc 8.

paṭicchādeyya: should conceal; 3 sg. opt. of *paṭicchādeti*; see Sd concl.

[Pāc 65: Ūnavāsativassasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ ūnavāsativassaṃ⁴⁹⁵ puggalaṃ upasampādeyya, so ca puggalo anupasampanno,⁴⁹⁶ te ca⁴⁹⁷ bhikkhū gārayhā. Idaṃ tasmim pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on (a person) less than twenty years (old)]

If any bhikkhu should knowingly have a person who is less than twenty years [old] fully admitted [into the bhikkhu-community], then that person is one who has not been fully admitted and those bhikkhus are blameworthy. Because of that, this [is a case] involving expiation.

ūnavāsativassaṃ: who is less than twenty rainy-seasons (old); adj. qualifying *puggalaṃ*. Bb cpd containing a digu cpd.: *vīsativassa*. = **ūna**: lacking; adj. see Sd concl. + **vīsati**: twenty; num. see Sd concl. + **vassa**: a year, rainy-season. See NP 14 *chabbassāni*.

puggalaṃ: a person, individual; acc. sg. m.

upasampādeyya: should make (someone) fully admitted (into the bhikkhu-community), to make enter, Ñm: give the Full Admission, H: confer the *upasampadā* ordination; 3 sg. opt. of *upasampādeti*, the causative of *upasampajjati*; see Pāc 4.

so: that; 3 sg. nom. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. **ca**: then, and; conn. particle.

puggalo: person, nom. sg. m.

anupasampanno., one who has not been fully admitted (into the bhikkhu-community), not fully admitted; kammadhāraya cpd. used as adjective qualifying an unexpressed *puggalo* (i.e., "*so ca puggalo anupasampanno puggalo*"; see Pāc 4.

The following "*te ca bhikkhū gārayhā*" in this rule suggests it is an adjective, but it could perhaps be a noun like it might be in Pāc 4. When there are two nouns in the same case in a clause and no verb, then this denotes nexus, i.e., that one is the other; see IP p.9 & 61.

te ca bhikkhū gārayhā: and those bhikkhus are blameworthy; see Sd concl.

idaṃ: this, it; nom. sg. nt. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*

tasmim: because of that, on that account of, in that case, Ñm: for the bhikkhu (who gave full ordination), H & Norman: for him, Hin: in this case; loc. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*: lit.: with regard this (one). Cf. Pāc 73: "*idaṃ tasmim mohanake*."

Elsewhere in the Pātimokkha *pācittiyaṃ* goes with an impersonal locative, see Pāc 12, and here that seems to

⁴⁹⁵ G: ūṇa-. V: ona-

⁴⁹⁶ V: anūpasampanno.

⁴⁹⁷ No *ca* in V.

apply too. That *tasmiṃ* would come to mean a personal “for him” is unlikely, so it should refer to an unexpressed *upasampadakkamme*, or *dhamme*. It might also refer to the clause “should knowingly make (a person) fully admitted” at the start of the rule. This would give: “This, on account of that (knowingly admitting), is a ...” for “*idaṃ tasmiṃ*”

The type of locative is locative of motive and reason; Syntax § 176. (It can also be a “partitive locative” or “predicative locative,” see Syntax § 168: “It, in that (knowledge), is a”)

The Kkh states that it refers to an unexpressed *puggale*, i.e., the *upajjhāya*. Kkh 215: “*Idaṃ tasmiṃ pācittiyaṃ-ti yo pana upajjhāyo hutvā upasampādeti, tasmiṃ-yeva puggale idaṃ pācittiyaṃ veditabbaṃ*”: “*Idaṃ tasmiṃ pācittiyaṃ*: whoever, having become a preceptor makes someone fully admitted, just for that person this *pācittiya* is to be understood.”

Padabhājana: “*Kammavācāpariyosāne upajjhāyassa āpatti pācittiyassa. Gaṇassa ca ācariyassa ca āpatti dukkaṭassa*”: “At the end of the legal announcement there is a *pācittiya* for the preceptor. For the group and the teacher an offence of wrong doing.”

Mā-L Pācattika rule 71: “*Yo puna bhikkur jānan ūna-viṃśati-varṣaṃ pudgalaṃ bhikkhu-bhāvāya upasampādeya so ca pudgalo anupasaṃpanno te ca bhikkhū gārhyā imaṃ tasya⁴⁹⁸ bhikkhūnaṃ garhaṇa-pācattikaṃ*”: “... this for such bhikkhus is (a case of) expiation involving blame”; BV 238; PrMoMā-L p.26.

Interestingly, according to the Mā-L Bhikkhunī Vinaya all the nuns participating in the legal procedure who know the girl is less than 20 years old commit a *pācattika*, while the participating nuns who don’t know do not commit any offence. The unmarried girl has not been fully admitted: “... *sarvā ūna-viṃśati-varṣa-samjñinīyo upasampādenti sarvāyo pācattikaṃ āsādayanti, sā ca anupasaṃpannā ... ekā ūna-viṃśati-varṣa-samjñinīyo upasampādenti, ekā pūra-viṃśati-varṣa-samjñinīyo yā ūna-samjñinīyo upasampādenti tāyo pācattikaṃ āsādayanti, pūra-samjñinīyo anāpattiḥ, sā cānupasaṃpannā ...*”; BV 239.

[Pāc 66: Theyyasatthasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ theyyasatthena saddhiṃ saṃvidhāya ekaddhānamaggaṃ paṭipajjeyya antamaso gāmantaram-pi, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on a company (of travellers intent on) theft]

If any bhikkhu, having made an arrangement, should knowingly travel together on the same main road with a company of thieves, even [if] just the distance between villages, [this is a case] involving expiation.

theyyasatthena: with a caravan of thieves, with a caravan (of travellers intent on) theft, Ñm: caravan of thieves, H: caravan (set on) theft; ins. sg. m. = **theyya**: theft; see Pār 1, but in this context it seems to mean “thieves” + **sattha**: caravan; see Pāc 27. Padabhājana: “*Theyyasattho nāma corā katakammā vā honti akatakammā vā, rājānaṃ vā theyyaṃ gacchanti, suṅkaṃ vā pariharanti*.” Sp: “... *rājānaṃ vā thenetvā vañcetvā ...*”

jānaṃ: knowingly; pr.p. of *jānāti* used like an adverb; see Pār 4 and NP 30.

saddhiṃ ... gāmantaram-pi: see Pāc 27.

[Pāc 67: Saṃvidhānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu mātugāmena saddhiṃ saṃvidhāya ekaddhānamaggaṃ paṭipajjeyya antamaso gāmantaram-pi, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on making arrangements]

If any bhikkhu, having made an arrangement, should travel together with a woman on the same main road, even [if] just the distance between villages, [this is a case] involving expiation.

⁴⁹⁸ PrMoMā-L n. 4 states that this word is illegible and has *tesaṃ* in the text. BV reads “*imaṃs tathā*.” The Mā-L rule corresponding to Pāc 73 has “*imaṃ tasya*”; see Pāc 73. The Sa rule has: “*iyaṃ tatra sāmīciḥ*” (PrMoSa p.228)

Identical with preceding rule except:

mātugāmena: with a woman; ins. sg. m. see Sd 2.

[Pāc 68: Ariṭṭhasikkhāpadam]

Yo pana bhikkhu evaṃ vadeyya, “Tathāhaṃ bhagavatā dhammaṃ desitaṃ ājānāmi,⁴⁹⁹ yathā ye’me antarāyikā dhammā vuttā bhagavatā, te paṭisevato nālaṃ antarāyāyā ti,” so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi evaṃ-assa vacaniyo,⁵⁰⁰ “Mā āyasmā⁵⁰¹ evaṃ avaca, mā bhagavantam abbhācikkhi,⁵⁰² na hi sādhu bhagavato abbhakkhānaṃ,⁵⁰³ na hi bhagavā evaṃ vadeyya; aneka-pariyāyena āvuso⁵⁰⁴ antarāyikā dhammā antarāyikā⁵⁰⁵ vuttā bhagavatā, alaṇ-ca pana te paṭisevato antarāyāyā ti,” evaṇ-ca⁵⁰⁶ so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi vuccamāno tath’eva paggaṇheyya, so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi yāvataṭṭhiyaṃ samanubhāsitaṃ tassa paṭinissaggāya, yāvataṭṭhiyaṇ-ce⁵⁰⁷ samanubhāsiyamāno taṃ paṭinissajeyya,⁵⁰⁸ iccetaṃ kusalaṃ, no ce paṭinissajeyya,⁵⁰⁹ pācittiyaṃ.

[The Ariṭṭha training precept]

If any bhikkhu should say so, “As I understand the Teaching taught by the Fortunate One, these obstructive acts which are spoken of by the Fortunate One: they are not enough to be an obstruction for the one who is being engaged in [them],” [then] that bhikkhu is to be spoken to thus by the bhikkhus: “Venerable, don’t say so! Don’t misrepresent the Fortunate One; for the misrepresentation of the Fortunate One is not good; for the Fortunate One would not say so; friend, [that] obstructive acts are [really] obstructive is spoken of in manifold ways by the Fortunate One and they are enough to be an obstruction for the one who is being engaged in [them],” and [if] that bhikkhu being spoken to thus by the bhikkhus should persist in the same way [as before], [then] that bhikkhu is to be argued with up to three times by the bhikkhus for the relinquishing of that [view], [and if that bhikkhu,] being argued with up to three times, should relinquish that [view], then this is good, [but] if he should not relinquish [it]: [this is a case] involving expiation.

ariṭṭhasikkhāpadam: the Ariṭṭha training precept; nom. sg. m. Appositive kammadhāraya cpd; see Pār 1. Ariṭṭha is a proper name. Ariṭṭha bhikkhu plays the leading role in the origin-story to this rule in the Suttavibhaṅga.

evaṃ vadeyya: should say so; see Pāc 24.

tathāhaṃ: as I; = **tathā**: as, so; adv. = dem. pron. *ta(d)* + suf. of manner *-thā*. + **ahaṃ**: I; pers. pron. 1 pers. sg.

bhagavatā: by the Fortunate One; ins. sg. m. of *bhagavant*; see above Nid.

dhammaṃ: the Teaching; acc. sg. m.

desitaṃ: taught; p.p. of *deseti*; see Pāc 7.

ājānāmi: (I) understand; 3 sg. pres. ind. of *ājānāti* (*ā* + *√nā* + *ṇa*).

yathā: as; relative indecl. (IP p.291) correlative to *tathā* above = rel. pron. *ya* + *-thā*. The order of clauses is inverted for extra emphasis; see IP p.71.

ye’me: these which= junction of *ye* + *ime* through elision of the initial *i-* of *ime*; PG § 71,1a. **ye**: which; nom. pl.

⁴⁹⁹ G, P: *ājānāmi*.

⁵⁰⁰ V: *vacaniyo*.

⁵⁰¹ Dm, UP, Vibh Ee, Um: *māyasmā*.

⁵⁰² Mi Se, G, V: *abbhācikkha*.

⁵⁰³ Um, Vibh Be v.l., Mi Se v.l.: *abbhācikkhanaṃ*.

⁵⁰⁴ Dm, Um, UP: *-pariyāyenāvuso*.

⁵⁰⁵ Mi & Mm Se, G, V, Ra: “... āvuso antarāyikā dhammā vuttā bhagavatā” D: “... anekapariyāyena āvuso antarāyikā vuttā bhagavatā ...” (Probably a misprint as not found in Malwatta mss.) (Pg unclear.)

⁵⁰⁶ Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee, Um, Vibh Be v.l., Mi v.l.: “*evaṇ-ca pana so*”. (Pg: ... *evaṃ so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi* ...)

⁵⁰⁷ C, W, Bh Pm 1 & 2, Vibh Ce: “*yāvataṭṭhiyaṃ ce*”.

⁵⁰⁸ = C, D, W. Other editions: *paṭinissajeyya*. See Sd 10.

⁵⁰⁹ = C, D, W. Other editions: *paṭinissajeyya*.

of rel. pron. *ya(d)* correlative to *the. ime*: these; nom. pl. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

Relative clause with *ye* correlative to *te* below. When the relative pronoun *ya(d)* is followed by a dem. pron. (*sa* or *ayaṃ*; see NP 22 and Pāc 38) it gets the general meaning “whatever” according to PG § 106,1b & 108,2 & 110,3. However, Warder, IP p. 72, states it is emphatic: “those which.” Norman, in his note to Dhp 42 in *The Word of the Doctrine*, suggests that that antecedent has been included in the relative clause (for emphasis): “Those which” PED 544 states: “a sort of deictic or emphatic use referring to what follows, introducing a definition as our ‘just this’.” In the sense of “whatever” the combinations “*ye keci*” or “*ye ye*” would be used in Pāli, see PED 544 & MW 844, and the examples quoted at PG § 108,2 (Dhp 56 & 149, M II 220,11) support the emphatic “those which” sense. Cf. “*yāni kho pana tāni*” in NP 23.

antarāyikā: obstructive; adj. See above Nid. Cf. BD III 21 n. 5

dhammā: acts, practices; nom. pl. m. For *dhamma* in this sense see “*methuna dhamma*” at Pār 1.

vuttā: have been said; p.p. of *vadati*; see above Nid. According to PG § 66,1 the *v-* in *vutta* is a fossilised junction vowel for the Sanskrit form is *ukta*; see the Skt quotations below.

bhagavatā: by the Fortunate One; ins. sg. m.; see above Nid.

te: those, they; acc. pl. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. Correlative to *ye* above which refers back to *dhammā*. Other translators take *te* to be an accusative patient of *paṭisevato*, but here it is taken as the correlative to *ye* above since *paṭisevato* is a present participle and can not take an accusative.

paṭisevato: for the one who is being engaged in, N̄m: for him who indulges, H: in following, Norman: for one indulging in them; dat. of the pr.p. of *paṭiseveti* (see Pār 1): *paṭisevant*. Cf. NP 1: *atikkāmayato*. Horner renders it as a present participle: “... it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the lord, there is no stumbling-block at all.” But see M I 10: “*Yaṃ hi’ssa apaṭisevato uppajjeyyūṃ āsavā vighātapaṇiḥhā, paṭisevato evaṃsa te na ... honti*.”: “The taints, distresses and fevers, which would arise for the one who is being engaged in, for one who is not being engaged they are not.” Nāṇamoli and Bodhi, 1995, p.94: “there are no taints, vexation, and fever in one who uses them thus.”

This passage dealing with the use of requisites shows the inadequacy of rendering *paṭisevati* with “indulges” or “pursues”; “uses” does not seem adequate either. There is no genitive or dative in *-ato* of the agent-noun *paṭisevitar*, only in *-ussa, -uno*. The ending *-ato* in *paṭisevato* is the dative use of the present participle ending in *-ant*: “for one using,” qualifying an unexpressed *bhikkhussa* or the like; see PG § 97,1 & IP p.169. A-a III 11: “*Idha pana methunadhammo adhippeto; methunaṃ sevato hi yassa kassa-ci nissamsayaṃ eva maggaphalaṃ antarāyo hoti*.”

nālaṃ: not enough; junction of *na* + *alaṃ* through contraction; PG § 69,1. An adverb taking the dative *antarāya*; see Syntax 107c & 108d. Cf. Sd 13. = junction of *na* + *alaṃ* through contraction. **na**: not; neg. particle. + **alaṃ**: enough; indecl. takes dat. (*antarāyāya*); cf. Pār 4.

antarāyāyā ti: = *antarāyāya* + *ti*: for being an obstruction; dat. sg. m. of **antarāya**; obstruction, obstacle, danger; masc. action-noun. Cf. Nid. Dative of (dis-) advantage; see Syntax § 101b.

so bhikkhu ... avaca ...: That bhikkhu ... speak thus! ...; see Sd 13.

mā: don’t, let not; prohibitive article taking an aor: *abbhācikkhi*.

āyasmā: venerable; voc. sg. m. See above Nid. Further on in the rule, and in the origin-story, *āvuso* is used: Ee M I 130: “*mā evaṃ āvuso Ariṭṭha*,” Ee Vin II 25 & Vin IV 134: “*māvuso Ariṭṭha evaṃ*”

The reason for this change might be that in the Pātimokkha more polite and formal language is used, which of course would not apply to the novice, addressed as *āvuso*, of Pāc 70. But it could rather be that the bhikkhus addressing the bhikkhu with the wrong view are junior to him. See D II 154: “*Navakatarena bhikkhunā therataro bhikkhu bhante ti vā āyasmā ti vā samudācaritabbo*”: “By a more junior bhikkhu a more senior bhikkhu is to be addressed as *bhante* or *āyasmā*.” Cf. Padabhājana on Nid (Vin I 103): *Āyasmanto ti piyavacanam-etam garuvacanam-etam sagāravasappatissādhivacanam-etam āyasmanto ti*.”: “*Āyasmanto* is a word of endearment, respect, honour, veneration.”

Due to it being an emphatic, forceful statement, *āyasmā* is probably vocative rather than nominative and the

verb *abbhācikkhi* is 2nd person rather than 3rd person; cf Sd 11–12: “*Mā āyasmanto avacuttha...*, although it could possibly also be in the third person, see Sd 10.

Āyasmā is only used in the nominative with a third person verb, while *āvuso* is used in the vocative with a 2nd person verb; e.g. “*mā āvuso samañuddesa evaṃ avaca* in Pāc 70; see Sd 10 and *bhante* in the Nidāna.

Mā-L: “*mā āyusmannevaṃ vada ...*”; PrMoMā-L p.23, BV 192–93.

bhagavantam: the fortunate one, acc. sg. m. of *bhagavant*.

abbhācikkhi: misrepresent, calumniate; 2 sg. i-aorist of *abbhācikkhati* (*abhi* + *ā* + √*cikkh* + *a*). It could also be in the 3^d person.

Mi Se: *abbhācikkha*, = 2 sg. imp. Mā-L: *abyācakṣa*; PrMoMā-L p.23, BV 192–93. Mū: *abhyācakṣuḥ*; PrMoMū p.38.

na: not; neg. particle.

hi: for, because, indeed; emphatic particle that usually introduces a cause or reason; see IP p.297.

sādhū: good, proper; interjection denoting approval, cf. Nid.

bhagavato: of the fortunate one, gen. sg. m. of *bhagavant*.

abbhakkhānam: misrepresenting; action-noun der. fr. *abbhācikkhati*.

bhagavā: nom. sg. m.

anekapariyāyena: in manifold ways, in various ways; kammadhāraya cpd used as adverb of manner in ins. sg. m. to *vuttā*; see DP. (The manifold, or various, ways are given in the similes origin-story). Cf. Pār 3.

The MN versions at M I 130 & 256 read “*anekapariyāyena h’āvuso*.” This reading is not found in any Pāli or Skt Prātimokṣhasūtra edition.

āvuso: friend; see above Nid.

anekapariyāyena antarāyikā dhammā antarāyikā vuttā bhagavatā: “obstructive acts are (really) obstructive is said in a manifold way by the Fortunate One,” “obstructive acts are said (to be really) obstructive by the Fortunate One,” Ñm: “obstructive things ... have been said by the Blessed one in many ways to be obstructions,” H: in many a figure ... are things that are stumbling-blocks called stumbling-blocks by the lord”; cf. Nid: “*Sampajānamusāvādo ... antarāyiko dhammo vutto bhagavatā*.”

V.I. “... *āvuso antarāyikā dhammā vuttā bhagavatā ...*”: This reading is a corruption. The repetition of *antarāyikā* is because the second *antarāyikā* is a predicate to *antarāyikā dhammā* and has an emphatic effect; see IP p.9, 14, and 61.

Sa: “... *anekapariyāyena bhagavatā antarāyikā dharmāḥ samānā antarāyikā dharmā ity uktās ...*” (PrMoSa p.219) (“... obstructive acts are being really obstructive is said by the Fortunate One ...”) Mū: “... *antarāyikā dharmāḥ santaḥ antarāyikā evoktā bhagavatā, ...*” PrMoMū p.38 & LC 5. Mā-L: “... *antarāyikā evāyusman dharmāḥ samānā antarāyikā dharmāḥ uktā bhagavatā, ...*” (BV 192, PrMoMā-L p.23): (“Friend, acts that are really being obstructive are obstructive acts is said by the Fortunate One.”)

alañ-ca = **alam**: enough + **ca**: and; conn. particle.

pana: and; concl. or conn. particle; or: but, on the contrary; adversative particle.

te: they; nom. pl. dem. pron. refers back to *dhammā*.

evañ-ca ... paṭinissajeyya: see Sd 10.

Mā-L: “*evaṃ ca so*”; PrMoMā-L p.23, BV 192.

The Mā-L rule 45 differs here from the Pāli Pātimokkha and the Prātimokṣasūtras of other schools: “*no ca pratinissareya so bhikkhu samaggeṇa saṃghena utkṣipitavyo, imaṃ tasya bhikkusya utksepaṇa-pācattikaṃ*”: “... and if he does not relinquish (that view) that bhikkhu is to be boycotted by a united community, this, for that bhikkhu, is a *pācattika* involving boycott.” See the analysis of *akaṭānuddhammena* in the next rule for the *ukkhitta bhikkhu*.

[Pāc 69: Ukkhittasambhogasikkhāpadam]

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ tathāvādinā bhikkhunā akaṭānudhammena⁵¹⁰ taṃ diṭṭhiṃ appaṭinissatṭhena saddhiṃ sambhuñjeyya⁵¹¹ vā saṃvaseyya⁵¹² vā saha vā seyyaṃ kappeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on boycotted food]

If any bhikkhu knowingly should eat together with, or should live together with, or should use a sleeping place together with a bhikkhu who is speaking thus, who has not performed the normal procedure, who has not relinquished that view, [this is a case] involving expiation.

See Hinüber 1999 p.66ff for this rule.

jānaṃ: knowingly; pr.p. of *jānāti* used like an adverb; see Pār 4 and NP 30.

tathāvādinā bhikkhunā: with a bhikkhu who is speaking thus, Ñm: with a bhikkhu who says thus, H: with a monk who talks thus.

tathāvādinā: who is speaking thus, who is asserting thus, who has such a view; adj. Kammadhāraya used as bahubbīhi cpd. refers back to the previous rule = **tathā**: so, in such manner; adv. of manner, cf. Nid. concl. + **vādin**: speaking, asserting, holding a view; possessive adjective from *vāda*, cf. Sd 11 *vādaka*. The word seems to have the double meaning of “who is speaking thus” and “who has such a view” as *vāda* can mean both “speaking” as well as “theory,” “doctrine,” “view.” The Padabhājana gives no conclusive explanation: “*Tathāvādinā ti: tathāhaṃ bhagavatā dhammaṃ desitaṃ ājānāmi ... antarāyāyā ti evaṃ vādinā.*” Cf. Sn 430: “*Taṃ tathāvādināṃ māraṃ, bhagavā etad-abravi ...*” Even when *vāda* denotes speech, it does so in the sense of speech being based on a certain view.

bhikkhunā: ins. sg. m. = Ins of association; see *saddhiṃ* below.

akaṭānudhammena: who has not performed the normal procedure, H: who has not acted according to the rule, Ñm: whose case has not been settled, Norman: who has not been dealt with according to the law, *Vinaya Texts*: has not been dealt with according to the law, DP: not dealt with according to the rule; adj. Kammadhāraya used as Bb cpd. The cpd acts as a passive subordinate clause; see *suttāgataṃ* in Pātimokkha conclusion. In traditional Pāli grammar the cpd would be analysed as: “*yena (or yassa) anudhammo na kaṭo so.*”

= **akaṭa**: not performed; kammadhāraya cpd. = neg. pref. -a + *kaṭa*, a side-form of *kata*, p.p. of *karoti*, found esp. in cpds; see DP. + **anudhamma**: normal procedure, procedure according to the dhamma, regular procedure, what is in conformity with the rule, DP: right method, method according to the dhamma; masculine noun. (Not to be confused with the indeclinable adverb: *anudhammaṃ*.) Pref. *anu*: along + *dhamma*: case (in the Pātimokkha). Cf. Pāc 73: “*yathā dhammo kāretabbo*”: “he is to be made to do (what is) according to the case (in the Pātimokkha).”

Padabhājana: “*Akaṭānudhammo nāma ukkhito anosārīto*”: “(By whom) the normal procedure has not been done is a designation for (one who) has been boycotted, (one who) has not been reinstated.” Cf. BD III 28 n. 4.

Sp 870: “*Akaṭānudhammenā ti anudhammo vuccati āpattiyā adassane vā appaṭikamme vā pāpikāya diṭṭhiyā appaṭinissagge vā dhammena vinayena satthusāsanena ukkhittakassa anulomavattaṃ disvā kat’osāraṇā, so osāraṇasankhāto anudhammo; yassa na kato ayaṃ akaṭānudhammo nāma. Tādisena saddhin-ti attho. Ten’evassa padabhājane: akaṭānudhammo nāma ukkhito anosārīto ti vuttaṃ.*”

“...: normal procedure is said when one who does not make amends or who does not relinquish the bad (wrong-) view has seen by means of the Law and Discipline and the Teacher’s Dispensation the correctness of the observance of the boycott (and then) has done the reinstatement; the normal procedure is reckoned as the re-instatement. One who has not performed (it), this one is called one who has not performed the normal procedure. The meaning is: “together with such a one.” Therefore in the word-analysis it is said of him: “who has ... reinstated.”

⁵¹⁰ Bh Pm 1 & 2, G, Um, UP, V: *akatānudhammena*.

⁵¹¹ G, Vibh Ee: *sambhuñjeyya*.

⁵¹² D, G, V, Vibh Ee: *saṃvāseyya*.

This bhikkhu is one on whom an “act of boycott”: “*ukkhepaniya-kamma*” has been put by the other bhikkhus. Certain privileges of the bhikkhu have been withdrawn until he has shown good behavior and the bhikkhus agree to reinstate him; see Vin II 27 ff./CV I 32–34. Cf. Vin I 97–98. See Dhirasekera 108–109 and 118–121 for more on the *ukkhepaniyakamma*.

BD III 27 n. 3: “... i.e., he had not given up his wrong view after the admonition suggested in ... Pāc 68.”

Cf. Vin I 135f.: “*Na āpattiya appaṭikkamme ukkhittakassa nisinnaparisāya, na pāpikāya diṭṭhiyā appaṭinissagge ukkhittakassa nisinnaparisāya pātimokkhaṃ uddissituṃ, yo uddiseyya yathā dhammo kāretabbo*.”: “The Pātimokkha is not to be recited in a seated assembly to one who has been boycotted due to not making amends for an offence, one who recites is to be made to do (what is) according to the case (in the Pātimokkha). In a seated assembly to one who has been boycotted due to not relinquishing his bad (wrong) view is seated ...,” and Vin I 323: “... *n’atthi me āvuso āpattiṃ yam ahaṃ paṭikareyyaṃ, n’atthi me pāpakā diṭṭhi yam ahaṃ paṭinissajjeyyaṃ* ...”: “There is no offence for me that I should make amends for. There is no bad (wrong-) view that I should relinquish.”

Thus *akaṭānudhamma* in this rule could correspond to the not amending, *na paṭikaroti*, of the Pāc 68 offence (by confessing), and the not giving up the wrong view, the interpretation of Horner might be correct.

There is something odd in the Ee Cv edition of the Vin II 27 ff./CV I 32–34 passage mentioned above. It refers back to CV I 2–5 in the “*peyyāla*” (abbreviated) section, Cv I 33, for the conditions of the kamma and the observances (*vatta*) the erring bhikkhu has to follow. It seems that it should rather be Cv I 2–4 for the conditions of the *kamma*, as referred to in the *peyyāla* in Cv I 26, but Cv I 27 for the *vatta* instead of Cv I 5. In section 5 four less *vatta* are given than the 42 in section 27 and the *vatta* of not staying under one roof with a proper bhikkhu: “*na pakatattena bhikkhunā saddhiṃ ekacchanne āvāse vatthabbaṃ*”: “he can not live with a regular/normal bhikkhu under one roof in a dwelling” is not given there. The Pāc 69 rule, however, makes it clear that the proper bhikkhus can not sleep under the same roof (*saha seyyaṃ kappeyya*) with the *ukkhittaka bhikkhu* and this corresponds to the *vatta* in Cv I 27. It seems proper that for both acts of boycott the same amount of 42 observances have to be followed, although the section-conclusion statement of section 33 says that there are 38 observances for the not relinquishing of a bad view. The *asambhogena* clause in the *ñatti*, corresponding to *sambhuñjeyya* in Pāc 69, is not found in Cv I 1 while it is found in Cv I 25 & 32.

taṃ: that; acc. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

diṭṭhiṃ: (wrong) view; acc. sg. f. *Diṭṭhi* by itself usually means a wrong view. Der. fr. *diṭṭha*, the p.p. of the middle passive base *dissati*.

appaṭinissaṭṭhena: who has not relinquished; adj. qualifying *bhikkhunā*. = neg. pref. *a-* + p.p. of *paṭinissajati*; see Sd 10. Cf. Vin II 27.

saddhiṃ: together; prepositional adverb taking an instrumental of association: *bhikkhunā*; see Syntax § 64.

sambhuñjeyya: should eat together with; 3 sg. opt. of *saṃbhuñjati* (*saṃ* + $\sqrt{bhuñj}$ + *a*), pref. *saṃ*: together + *bhuñjati*; see Pāc 31. See Vin II 27 where the *ukkhepaniyakamma* for Ariṭṭha is described: “*asambhogaṃ saṃghena*.” Cf. Vin I 323. The Padabhājana defines it as *āmisasambhoga* “physical-food,” and *dhammasambhoga* “teaching-food” such as reciting Dhamma together.

saṃvaseyya: should live together with; 3 sg. opt. of *saṃvasati* (*saṃ* + \sqrt{vas} + *a*); see Sd 13. Padabhājana: “*Saṃvaseyya vā ti ukkhittakena saddhiṃ uposathaṃ vā pavāraṇaṃ vā saṅghakammaṃ vā karoti* ...”: “*Saṃvaseyya*: he does the Uposatha or Invitation or a legal act together with one who has been boycotted ...” Cf. Pār 1 *saṃvāsa*.

saha vā seyyaṃ kappeyya: or should use a sleeping place together with; see Pāc 5. Padabhājana: “...: *ekacchanne ukkhittake nīpanne bhikkhu nīpajjati*”: “He lies down under the same roof when a boycotted bhikkhu is lying down.”

[Pāc 70: Kaṇṭakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Samañuddeso pi ce evaṃ vadeyya, “Tathāhaṃ bhagavatā dhammaṃ desitaṃ ājānāmi,⁵¹³ yathā ye’me

⁵¹³ G, P: *ājānāmi*.

antarāyikā dhammā vuttā bhagavatā, te paṭisevato nālaṃ antarāyāyā ti,” so samaṇuddeso bhikkhūhi evam-assa vacaniyo,⁵¹⁴ “Mā āvuso⁵¹⁵ samaṇuddesa evaṃ avaca, mā bhagavantam abbhācikkhi,⁵¹⁶ na hi sādhu bhagavato abbhakkhānaṃ⁵¹⁷, na hi bhagavā evaṃ vadeyya; anekapariyāyena āvuso⁵¹⁸ samaṇuddesa antarāyikā dhammā antarāyikā⁵¹⁹ vuttā bhagavatā, alaṇ-ca pana te paṭisevato antarāyāyā ti,” evaṇ-ca⁵²⁰ so samaṇuddeso bhikkhūhi vuccamāno tath’eva paggaṇheyya, so samaṇuddeso bhikkhūhi evam-assa vacaniyo,⁵²¹ “Ajjatagge te āvuso samaṇuddesa na c’eva so bhagavā satthā apadisitabbo, yam-pi c’aññe samaṇuddesā labhanti bhikkhūhi saddhiṃ dirattatirattam⁵²² saha seyyam,⁵²³ sā pi te n’atthi, cara pire⁵²⁴ vinassā ti.”

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ tathānāsitaṃ samaṇuddesaṃ upalāpeyya vā upaṭṭhāpeyya vā sambhuñjeyya⁵²⁵ vā saha vā seyyam kappeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

Sappāṇakavaggo⁵²⁶ sattamo.

[The Kaṇṭaka training precept]

If a novice should say so too, “As I understand the Teaching taught by the Fortunate One, these obstructive acts which are spoken of by the Fortunate One: they are not enough to be an obstruction for the one who is being engaged in [them],” [then] that novice is to be spoken to thus by the bhikkhus, “Friend novice, don’t say so! Don’t misrepresent the Fortunate One; for the misrepresentation of the Fortunate One is not good; for the Fortunate One would not say so; friend novice, [that] obstructive acts are [really] obstructive is spoken of in manifold ways by the Fortunate One and they are enough to be an obstruction for the one who is engaging [in them],” and if that novice being spoken to thus by the bhikkhus should persist in the same way [as before], [then] that novice is to be spoken to thus by the bhikkhus, “From today on, friend novice, the Fortunate One is not to be referred to as the teacher by you, and also the two or three nights sleeping together [in one room] with bhikkhus that other novices get, that too is not for you. Go away, disappear!”

If any bhikkhu knowingly should treat kindly such an expelled novice, or should make [him] attend [to himself], or should eat together with [him], or should use a sleeping place together with [him], [this is a case] involving expiation.

The section [starting with the rule] on living beings is seventh

kaṇṭakasikkhāpadam: the Kaṇṭaka training precept; nom. sg. m. Appositive kammadhāraya cpd; see Pār 1. Kaṇṭaka is a proper name. The novice Kaṇṭaka plays the leading role in the origin-story to this rule in the Suttavibhaṅga.

samaṇuddeso: a novice, lit.: “one due to be an ascetic,” “one resembling an ascetic”; nom. sg. m. = **samaṇa**: ascetic; see Pāc 32 + **uddesa**: destined to be, due to be. A noun derived from the verb *uddisati*; see above Nid, Sd 6. Cf. Hinüber 1999 n. 149. See in DP the entry *uddesika*³: “being in the region of, being about” = the Skt *uddeśya* (MW): “destined for.” Cf. Skt *deśiya* (MW): “bordering on, resembling, almost, nearly.”

Cf. *soḷasa-vassuddesikā*: “(a girl who is) due to be sixteen years old”; M I 88.

⁵¹⁴ V: *vacaniyo*.

⁵¹⁵ Dm, UP, Vibh Ee: *māvuso*.

⁵¹⁶ Mi Se, G, V: *abbhācikkha*.

⁵¹⁷ Um, Vibh Be v.l., Mi Se v.l.: *abbhācikkhanaṃ*.

⁵¹⁸ Dm, Um, UP: *-pariyāyenāvuso*.

⁵¹⁹ Mi & Mm Se, G, V, Ra: “... āvuso antarāyikā dhammā vuttā bhagavatā” D: “... anekapariyāyena āvuso antarāyikā vuttā bhagavatā ...” (Probably a misprint as not found in Malwatta mss.) (Pg unclear.)

⁵²⁰ Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee, Um, Vibh Be v.l., Mi v.l.: “*evaṇ-ca pana so*”. (Pg: ... *evaṃ so bhikkhu bhikkhūhi* ...)

⁵²¹ V: *vacaniyo*.

⁵²² Mm Se, Vibh Ee: *dvi-*.

⁵²³ Dm, Vibh Ce, UP, Mm & Mi Se, V, Vibh Ee: *sahaseyyam*. See Pāc 5.

⁵²⁴ Dm, Um, UP, Vibh Ee, Mi & Mm Se, V, W: *pire*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, Vibh Ce, Ra, Pg, Ce Kkh: *pare*. G: *cara pi pare*.

⁵²⁵ G, Vibh Ee: *sambhuñjeyya*.

⁵²⁶ Mi & Mm Se, G, V: *sappāṇavaggo*.

In Pāc 59 *sāmaṇera* is used and, as *Vinaya Texts* I 48 n. 4 notes, it is not clear why two different expressions are used in the Pātimokkha. Padabhājana: “*Samaṇuddeso nāma sāmaṇero*”; see BD III 31 n. 1. Perhaps it somewhat playfully refers to his resembling a *samaṇa* although not fully being one yet.

Sa: *śramaṇoddeśaś ce evaṃ vadet*; PrMoSa p.220. Mā-L: *śramaṇuddesoṇi cedevaṃ vadeyyaṃ*. BV 193, PrMoMā-L p.24.

pi: also, too; conn. particle; or: even; emph. part; see Pār 1.

ce: if; hyp. particle.

pi ce: if also, H: even if. The latter fits NP 2: *ekarattam-pi ce* but not the present context Sp 870: “*Ariṭṭhassa viya etassā pi ...*”: “Like (the view) of Ariṭṭha, so (the view) of this one is also”

samaṇuddesa: voc. sg. m.

ajjatagge: from today onward; adv. = *ajja*: today + *-t-*: euphonic consonant/hiatus-filler + *agge*: from, after. Mā-L rule 47: *adyadagrena*; BV 193, PrMoMā-L p.24. Or: *ajjato*: from today; abl. of *ajja* + *agge*, see PG § 73,5 (n.1) and Syntax § 187a iii. (This latter explanation seems less likely as the sense of “from” would be reduplicated: “from from today.”) Loc. sg. nt. used as adv. See DP and PED.

te: by you; ins. sg. of pers. pron. *tvaṃ*: you. Horner renders “as your (teacher)” and Ñm “by you as your (teacher),” connecting *te* to *satthā*. However, in this passive sentence the agent *te* is instrumental and *satthā* is nominative; see IP p.41f. Further, if *te* would be connected to *satthā*, it normally would precede it.

āvuso: friend; see above Nid.

c’eva: junction of *ca* and *eva* through elision of *-a* in *ca*; PG § 70,1b. = **ca**: and; conn. particle. + **eva**: just; emphatic particle. **na**: not; neg. particle.

so: the, that; 3 sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

bhagavā: the Fortunate One; nom. sg. m.

satthā: teacher; nom. sg. m. of *satthar*.

apadisitabbo: is to be referred to (as authority), Ñm: claimed, appointed, used as pretext; f.p.p. of *apadisati* (*apa* + *√dis* + *a*).

yam-pi: junction of *yaṃ* + *pi* through labialisation of *-ṃ*. *Yaṃ* is here an acc. sg. nt. adverb functioning as a connective or marker of a relative clause; see NP 10 *yaṃ*.

= **yaṃ**: which; acc. sg. of rel. pron. *ya(d)*. + **pi**: also; conn. particle.

c’aññe: = junction of *ca* + *aññe* through elision of the *-a* of *ca* before the initial closed syllable of *aññe*; see PG § 69.

ca: and; see above + **aññe**: other; pronominal adj.

samaṇuddesā: novices, nom. pl. m.

labhanti: get, obtain; 3 sg. pl. of *labhati*.

bhikkhūhi: with bhikkhus; ins. pl. m.

saddhiṃ: together; adv. see previous rule.

dirattatirattam: two nights or three nights; acc. sg. m. = Acc. of Extent in Time; see Syntax § 44b.

saha: together, with, accompanied by; indecl. taking ins. of accompaniment; see Syntax § 64.

seyyaṃ: bed, couch, sleeping place; acc. sg. f.

sahaseyyaṃ: a sleeping place together with; see Pāc 5. Because the adv. *saddhiṃ* has been used already and there is no verb, it is better not to split this into two words as in Pāc 5.

sā: that; nom. sg. f. of dem. pron. *ta(d)* agreeing with the unexpressed feminine noun *seyyā*; PG § 105,2.

pi: too, also; conn. particle.

te: for you; dat. sg. m. of pers. pron. *tvaṃ*.

n’atthi: (there) is not; = junction of *na* + *atthi* in which the *-a* of *na* has been elided before the initial closed

syllable of *atthi*. **na**: not; neg. particle. + **atthi**: there is; 3 sg. pres. ind.; see above Nid.

cara: go!; 2 sg. imp. of *carati* ($\sqrt{\text{car}} + a$): goes, moves. **pi**: too; see above.

re: particle of exclamation or contempt, a shortened side-form of *are*; elsewhere *re* also occurs with imperatives: e.g. D II 349: “*Gila re gila pāpadhuttaka!*”: “Swallow, evil cheat!”; cf. J III 184, 228. Cf. Hinüber 1999 n. 152.

pire/pare: Sp (Be, Ee): “*Pire ti para amāmaka.*”: “*Pire*: other, not one of us.” See BD III 32 n. 3.

A parallel is at M II 108 (Ee): “*Cara pi re, Mallike, vinassā ti!*,” Ce: *pare*, Be: “*cara pi, re Mallike, vinassā ti.*” M-a (Be): “*Cara pire ti: apehi amhākaṃ pare, anajjhāttikabhūte ti attho. Atha vā cara pire ti parato gaccha, mā idha tiṭṭhā ti pi attho.*”: “...: go away from us to others, to non-insiders is the meaning. Or perhaps rather: ‘Go elsewhere, don’t stay here!’ is the meaning too.”

Re is not found together with *pi* elsewhere and there seems to be no reason for *pi* in M II 108. This may mean there was a corruption in M II under influence of Pāc 70, or that *pire* or *pare* was the original reading with a different sense than *re*. It could be that *pi re* is a mix-up due to the *pi* in the line before: “*sā pi te n’atthi.*”

Sa: “... *cara pareṇa mohapuruṣa naśya...*”: “go with another, deluded man, perish!”; PrMoSa p.222. Mā-L: “*Gaccha nasya cala prapālāhi.*”; BV 193, PrMoMā-L p.24.

There are three possible meanings for the Ce reading *pare*: the acc. pl. of *para*: to others (This has the sense of those of other sects; see PED. Cf. Dh 257); or loc. sg.: into another (sect); or voc. sg. (as in *Mallike*): other!, alien! The last seems the best of the three.

vinassā ti: disappear, get lost, perish; 2 sg. imp. of *vinassati*. Not to be confused with the aorist *vinassa* in NP 10.

Sp: “*Vinassā ti nassa, yathā te na passāma tattha gaccha!*”: “*Vinassa*: Get lost! Go where we don’t see you!” Cf. Vin I 85: “*Vinassa paṇḍaka,*” A II 182: “*Apehi tvam Upaka vinassa, mā tam addasan-ti!*” + ‘**ti**’ end quote.

One of the one of ten factors that a novice can be expelled for, *nāsetum*, is having a wrong view, *micchādiṭṭhi* (M I 60/Vin I 85).⁵²⁷ These ten, together with the five of Mv I 57:1,⁵²⁸ are recited by the *sāmaṇeras* after the Pātimokkha-recitation of the bhikkhus in Thai monasteries. For the expelling of a bhikkhu, see Vin I 73/Mv IV 16,18.

jānaṃ: knowingly; pr.p. of *jānāti* used like an adverb; see Pār 4 and NP 30.

tathānāsitaṃ: such an expelled, thus-expelled; adj. Bb cpd. = **tathā**: thus, such; see Pāc 68 + **nāsita**: expelled, lost; p.p. of *nassati* ($\sqrt{\text{nas}} + ya$); see NP 6.

samaṇuddesaṃ: acc. sg. m.

upalāpeyya: should treat kindly, H: should encourage, Ñm: should speak to, should console; 3 sg. opt. of *upalāpeti* (*upa* + $\sqrt{\text{lap}} + e$). See DP s.v. *upalāpeti* “treats with kindness, wins over ...” Sp 871: “... *saṅgaṇheyya*”: “... should he treat kindly/favour. (Maybe *upalāpeti* has a similar meaning as *apaḷāleti* (= *upalāleti*; see PED 146) of Vin I 107/Mv I 59: wins over, lures away; i.e., the bhikkhu is trying to win over the novice with wrong view in order to get an attendant like the group of six did in the Mv.)

upaṭṭhāpeyya: should he make attend, i.e., he causes the novice to attend on him, H: should support, Ñm: be looked after by him; 3 sg. opt. of *upaṭṭhāpeti*, the causative of *upaṭṭhāhati* (*upa* + $\sqrt{\text{thā}} + a$). Sp: “... *tena attano upaṭṭhānaṃ kārāpeyya.*”

sappānakavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on living beings, the with-living-beings-section; nom. sg. m. = **sappānaka**: which is with living beings; see Pāc 62. On this title, named after the second rather than the first rule, see the section on pācittiya rule titles in the section Chapter Division in the Introduction. + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

sattamo: seventh; ordinal.

⁵²⁷ The others are: breaking the first five precepts (1–5), speaking dispraise of the Buddha, Dhamma, and Saṅgha (6–8), and raping a bhikkhuni (10).

⁵²⁸ 1. endeavouring for the non-receiving of bhikkhus, 2. endeavouring for the non-good of bhikkhus, 3. endeavouring for the non-residence of bhikkhus, 4. he reviles and abuses bhikkhus, 5. he causes a monk to break with [another] monk.

[Sahadhammikavaggo⁵²⁹]

[Pāc 71: Sahadhammikasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhūhi sahadhammikaṃ vuccamāno evaṃ vadeyya, “Na tāvāhaṃ āvuso etasmim sikkhāpade sikkhissāmi, yāva na aññaṃ⁵³⁰ bhikkhuṃ byattaṃ⁵³¹ vinayadharaṃ paripucchāmi” ti, pācittiyaṃ.

Sikkhamānena, bhikkhave, bhikkhunā aññātabbaṃ paripucchitabbaṃ paripañhitabbaṃ.⁵³² Ayaṃ tattha sāmīci.

[The training precept on (being spoken to) righteously]

If any bhikkhu when being righteously spoken to by bhikkhus should say so, “Friends, I shall not train in this training precept for as long as I can not question another bhikkhu [about it] who is a learned memoriser of the discipline,” [this is a case] involving expiation.

Bhikkhus, [the training precept] is to be understood, is to be questioned about, is to be investigated by a bhikkhu who is training [in it]. This is the proper procedure here.

bhikkhūhi sahadhammikaṃ vuccamāno: being righteously spoken to by bhikkhus; see Sd 12.

evaṃ vadeyya: should say so; see Pāc 68. **na**: not; neg. particle.

tāvāhaṃ: junction of *tāva* and *ahaṃ* through contraction. = **tāva**: so long; adv. correlative to *yāva*. Can not be properly put in the sentence construction in English where the translation of the correlative *yāva* is sufficient to give the meaning. + **ahaṃ**: I; 1 sg. pers. pron. The subordinate (*tāva*) clause precedes the main (*yāva*) clause is for extra emphasis; see IP p.300 and Pāc 73: “tassa te ... yaṃ taṃ”

āvuso: friend; see above Nid.

etasmim: in this; loc. sg. of dem. pron. *eta(d)*.

sikkhāpade: in the training precept; loc. sg. nt.; see Sd 12.

sikkhissāmi: I shall train; 1 pl. fut. of *sikkhati*; cf. Pār 1.

yāva: for as long as, until; relative adv. Cf. Sd 10. **na**: not; neg. particle.

aññaṃ: another; adj. V.l.: *n’aññaṃ* = junction of *na* + *aññaṃ* through elision of the final -a of *na*.

bhikkhuṃ: a bhikkhu; acc. sg. m.

byattaṃ: learned, wise; adj., shortened form of *viyatta*, pref. *vi* + euphonic consonant -y- + *atta*: p.p. of *añjati* (*√añj* + *a*): smears. V.l. *vyattaṃ*, for *v > b* alternation see NP 14.

In other occurrences of this word in the Canon the alternative spelling *viyatta* is used. The pronunciation of *vya-* is always *viya-*; see IP p.211.

vinayadharaṃ: a memoriser of the discipline, lit. “a bearer of the discipline,” H: expert in discipline; acc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. (see IP p.92) = **vinaya**: discipline; from *vi* + *√nī*, see PED 623. + **dhara**: memoriser, bearer; action-noun fr. *dharati*: bears, holds (in mind); see Nid concl. & NP 14. = dependent word; see Sd 2: -*gāha* and IP p.92.

According to AN 7:71/A IV 140, a *vinayadhara* is a bhikkhu 1. who knows an offence as an offence, 2. knows a non-offence, 3. ... light offence, 4. ... heavy offence, 5. he is virtuous, dwells restrained with the restraint of the Pātimokkha, endowed with right conduct and resort, seeing fear in the slightest faults, he trains undertaking the training-rules, 6. he is one who gains the four jhānas without effort*, and 7. dwells having attained the destruction of the āsavas*. (* abbreviated)

In the next sutta, no. 72, factor 5 is replaced with “Both pātimokkhas are well handed down in breadth to

⁵²⁹ Only in Mi Se.

⁵³⁰ Mi & Mm Se: *naññaṃ*. G: *na aññaṃ*.

⁵³¹ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, UP, Ra, Vibh Ce, Pg: *vyattaṃ*.

⁵³² D, G, V: -*pañhi-*.

him, well analysed, well set forth, well investigated, as to rule, as to detail." And in the next sutta, no. 73, this factor in turn is replaced with "he is immovably (i.e., firmly) established in the Discipline."

bhikkhuṃ byattaṃ vinayadharaṃ: *Vinaya Texts* I 50 takes *byatta* to be an adjective agreeing with *vinayadhara* rather than with *bhikkhu*: "an experienced master of the vinaya." So Ñm: "a learned expert in the Discipline." Horner: "... bhikkhu, experienced, expert in discipline." Both are possible.

paripucchāmi ti: = *paripucchāmi* + *ti*. **paripucchāmi:** I (can) question about, consult; 1 sg. pres. ind. of *paripucchati* (*pari* + √*pucch* + *a*) Often in "*yāva ... tāva ...*" constructions the former verb is in the future tense while the latter is in the present as it precedes the *yāva* future action; see IP p.298.

ti: end quote; see above Nid.

sikkhamānena: who is training; pr.p. of *sikkhati*; used as adj. qualifying *bhikkhunā*.

bhikkhave: bhikkhus; voc. pl. m.; see NP 10.

bhikkhunā: by a bhikkhu; ins. sg. m.

aññātabbaṃ: it is to be understood, known, H: to be learnt, H footnote: should come to be known; f.p.p. of *añjānāti*; see Pāc 68. Agreeing with an unexpressed *sikkhāpadaṃ* or *taṃ*. Ñm has mistranslated this line: "when a bhikkhu is training he should ask and inquire about what he can not understand."

paripucchitabbaṃ: (it) is to be questioned about, consulted; f.p.p. of *paripucchati*.

paripañhitabbaṃ: (it) is to be investigated (mentally), to be considered; f.p.p. of *paripañhati*, denom. from pref. *pari-*: about + *pañha*: question. Vibh: "... cintetabbaṃ tulayitabbaṃ.": "... to be thought about, to be considered." Cf. BD III 37 n. 3.

ayaṃ tattha sāmīci: This is here the proper procedure; see Sd concl.

[Pāc 72: Vilekhanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu pātimokkhe⁵³³ uddissamāne evaṃ vadeyya, "Kiṃ pan'imehi⁵³⁴ khuddānukhuddakehi sikkhāpadehi uddiṭṭhehi; yāvad-eva kukkucāya, vihesāya, vilekhāya saṃvattantī ti," sikkhāpadavivaṇṇanake,⁵³⁵ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on creating discomfort]

If any bhikkhu, when the Disciplinary Code is being recited, should say so, "But why these small and minute training precepts that are recited? They just lead to worry, annoyance, [and] discomfort." In the disparaging of training precepts, [there is a case] involving expiation.

pātimokkhe: the Disciplinary Code; loc. sg. nt.; see above Nid.

uddissamāne: is being recited; pr.p. of *uddisati* agreeing with *pātimokkhe*; see above Nid.

pātimokkhe uddissamāne: when the Disciplinary Code is being recited; locative absolute construction.

evaṃ vadeyya: should say so; see Pāc 68.

kiṃ pan'imehi: "but why these?," "but what use are these?"; = **kiṃ:** what?; interrogative particle introducing a question + **pan'imehi:** junction of *pana* + *imehi* through elision of the final -a of *pana*. = **pana:** but; adversative particle. + **imehi:** with these; ins. pl. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

khuddānukhuddakehi: which are small and minute, H & Ñm: lesser and minor, BHSDG II 200: very minor; adj. qualifying *sikkhāpadehi*. Bahubbhihi cpd containing a dvanda cpd.

= **khudda:** small, lesser, inferior; adj. + **anukhuddaka:** very small, minute, subtle; adj. = *aṇu* > *anu*: very small, minute, subtle + *khuddaka*. There has been a lot of dispute, already at the first council, on the meaning of the small and minute training precepts; see Ñāṇarāma, 1997, pp.108–128, and BD III 41 n. 1.

⁵³³ Mm Se, G, V: *pātimokkhe*.

⁵³⁴ Mi & Mm Se, G, V: *kim-pan'imehi*.

⁵³⁵ Dm, UP, G, V, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee: *vivaṇṇanake*. BhPm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Mi & Mm Se, Um, Ra, Pg, Ce Kkh: *vivaṇṇanake*.

It is said by the Buddha that *sekhas* and *arahants* can commit offences with regards the small and minute training precepts, but are of stable and firm virtue regarding the training precepts that are fundamental and proper to the holy life: “*So yāni tāni khuddhānukhuddakāni sikkhāpadāni tāni āpajjati pi vuṭṭhāti ... Yāni ca kho tāni sikkhāpadāni ādibrahmacariyakāni brahmacariyasārūppāni tattha dhuvasīlo ca hoti ʔhitasīlo ca ...*”; A I 231.

At the end of the Pācittiya section in the Vibhaṅga (Ee + Be) it is said as conclusion: “*Khuddakaṃ samattaṃ.*” After the Bhikkhunī Pācittiya section: “*Khuddakaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ*” (Be: “... *samattaṃ*”). If this is the original conclusion, rather than a later addition, it might mean that the Pācittiyas (or some of them) were understood to be the *khuddakā sikkhāpadā*, and the *sekhiyā* the *anukhuddakā*. It might refer to the formulation-length of the rules, the formulation of the Pācittiya rules tends to be short, shorter than the ones in the preceding sections, while the formulation of the *sekhiya* rules is even shorter. It can not refer to the size of the section, since the *pācittiya*-section is the longest one. See also the introduction verse of the Pācittiyādi-aṭṭhakathā, Sp IV 735 (Be, Ee): “*Yesaṃ navahi vaggehi saṅgaho suppatitṭhito, khuddakānaṃ ayaṃ dāni tesaṃ bhavati vaṇṇanā.*” and the conclusion-verse at Sp 885 (Be, Ee): “... *khuddakavaṇṇanā samattā.*” Cf. Parivāra intro. & concl. The *sekhiyas* are not referred to as *anukhuddaka* anywhere though.

The *anukhuddakā* could also be the Pāṭidesanīyā rules; see Sp 886 & 948: “*khuddakānaṃ anantarā.*” Anu- in *anukhuddaka* could maybe mean “after” i.e., “(the rules) after the small training precepts.”

sikkhāpadehi: with the training precepts; ins. pl. nt. see Pāc 71.

uddiṭṭhehi: (that are) recited; adj. qualifying *sikkhāpadehi*; p.p. of *uddisati*; see above Nid. concl.

yāvad-eva: but only, just until, only up to; See PED 555 and Sp. = **yāva(d)**: until; relative adv.; see Pāc 71. The -d after *yāva* originally formed part of it in Sanskrit and has been restored here to avoid hiatus; see PG § 72,1+ **eva**: just, only; emph. particle.

kukkuccāya: to worry, to remorse, to agitation; dat. sg. nt. = *ku(d)*: wrong; 3rd stem of inter. pron. *ka* in cpds., as adverb it has a disparaging sense + *kicca*: to be done; see above Nid. Cf. Pāc 77.

vihesāya: to annoyance, to trouble; dat. sg. f.; see Pāc 12.

vilekhāya: to uneasiness, perplexity, discomfort; dat. sg. m. *Vilekha* literally means “scratching” from √*likh*: scratches. See A I 238 for a case of *adhisallekha*.

saṃvattantī ti: they conduce, lead; 3 pl. pres. ind. of *saṃvattati*; see Sd 10. + *ti*.

sikkhāpadavivaṇṇake: in disparaging of training precepts, in being one who discourages the training precepts, H & Nm: in disparaging; loc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **vivaṇṇa**: dispraising, action noun from *vivaṇṇeti* (*vi* + √*vaṇṇ* + *e*): disparages, dispraises. + pleonastic suffix (or agent-noun suffix) *-ka*; see Pāc 12: *aññāvādake* and Pāc 73 *mohanake*. The only other occurrence of *vivaṇṇaka* is in Pv 212: “*dhātu-vivaṇṇakaṃ petaṃ*”: “an element-disparaging *peta*,” where it is an adjective. Cf. Parivāra 23: “*Vinayaṃ vivaṇṇentassa pācittiyaṃ ...*” Mā-L: *śikṣāvigarhaṇe*; BV 188, PrMoMā-L p.18.

[Pāc 73: Mohanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu anvaḍḍhamāsaṃ⁵³⁶ pātimokkhe⁵³⁷ uddissamāne evaṃ vadeyya, “Idān’eva kho⁵³⁸ ahaṃ jānāmi,⁵³⁹ ayaṃ-pi⁵⁴⁰ kira dhammo suttāgato suttapariyāpanno anvaḍḍhamāsaṃ⁵⁴¹ uddesaṃ āgacchatī ti,” tañ-ce⁵⁴² bhikkhuṃ aññe bhikkhū jāneyyū, “Nisinnapubbaṃ iminā bhikkhunā dvattikkhattuṃ⁵⁴³ pātimokkhe⁵⁴⁴ uddissamāne. Ko pana vādo bhiyyo ti,⁵⁴⁵ na ca tassa bhikkhuno aññāṇakena mutti atthi, yañ-

⁵³⁶ As in Pāc 57, only Mi, Mm Se, & V read *anvaḍḍha-*. The rest read *anvaddha-*.

⁵³⁷ Mm Se, G, V: *pātimokkhe*.

⁵³⁸ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, W, UP, Ra: *kho āvuso*.

⁵³⁹ Bh Pm 1 & 2, Mi & Mm Se, V, Ra, Pg: *ājānāmi*.

⁵⁴⁰ Um: *ayaṃ pi*.

⁵⁴¹ Mi, Mm Se, & V: *anvaḍḍha-*. In the second occurrence of this word in this rule G read *-ḍḍh-*, but was corrected to *-ddh-*.

⁵⁴² C: *taṃ ce*.

⁵⁴³ Vibh Ee, Mm Se: *dvi-*. (Mi Se reads *dva-* here, instead of *dvi-* elsewhere. See NP 10.)

⁵⁴⁴ Mm Se, G, V: *pātimokkhe*.

⁵⁴⁵ Mi & Mm Se, C, D, V: *bhiyyo ti*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, G, Um: *bhiyyo ti*. Others MS and texts have “..” *bhiyyo na ca ...*” without *ti*. (Pg unclear.)

ca tattha āpattiṃ āpanno, tañ-ca yathā dhammo⁵⁴⁶ kāretabbo, uttariñ-c’assa⁵⁴⁷ moho āropetabbo, “Tassa te āvuso alābhā, tassa te dulladdhaṃ. Yaṃ tvaṃ pātimokkhe⁵⁴⁸ uddissamāne, na sādhuḥkaṃ aṭṭhikavā⁵⁴⁹ manasikarosi ti.” Idaṃ tasmīṃ mohanake, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on delusion]

If any bhikkhu when the Disciplinary Code is being recited half-monthly should say so, “Only now I know! This too, indeed, is a case which has been handed down in the Sutta, which has been included in the Sutta, which comes up for recitation half-monthly!” [and] if other bhikkhus should know [about] that bhikkhu [thus], “This bhikkhu has sat [in] two or three times previously when the Disciplinary Code was being recited. What to say about more [times than that]!” [then] there is no release for that bhikkhu through not-knowing, and whatever the offence is that he has committed there, he is to be made to do according to that case and moreover his deluding is to be exposed, “Because of that [there are] losses for you, because of that [it] has been ill-gained by you, that you, when the Disciplinary Code is being recited, do not take [it] to mind [after] having focussed carefully [on it].” Because of that deluding, this [is a case] involving expiation.

This is the rule that is the most difficult in analysing and translating. As with Pāc 19, it seems that some corruption occurred during the transmission of the rule as the syntax sometimes does not make sense.

anvaḍḍhamāsaṃ: half-monthly; = adv. to *uddissamāne*; see Vin II 255 & M II 8. = bahubhihi cpd in acc. sg. nt. used as an adverb as in Pāc 57; see IP p.212 and 255.

= junction of *anu*: after, along + *aḍḍha*: half. In this sandhi the final *-u* of *anu*, followed by a dissimilar vowel, becomes *-v-*; see PG § 70.2 and IP p.215. + **aḍḍhamāsa**: half-month; see NP 24.

Why is *anvaḍḍhamāsaṃ* added here and not in Pāc 72? In the Vibh Padabhājana on Pāc 72 it is said that *uddissamāne* means “when reciting the Pātimokkha (*uddisante*. Sp: by a teacher to a pupil), or making (another) recite it (*uddisāpente*. Sp: pupil to teacher), or studying it”: “Pātimokkhe uddissamāne ti: uddisante vā uddisāpente vā sajjhāyaṃ vā karonte.” In Pāc 73 *uddissamāne* is only explained as reciting (*uddisante*): “... uddissamāne ti: uddisante.” Thus Pāc 72 seems to include unofficial study situations. Sp 876 to Pāc 72: “Uddissamāne ti: ācariyena antevāsikassa uddissamāne ...”: “when it is being recited by a teacher to a pupil,” while Pāc 73 only applies to the official half-monthly recitation of the Pātimokkha. Sp 876–77 to Pāc 73: “Uddissamāne ti: uddisiyamāne, yasmā pana so pātimokkhuddesakena uddisante uddisiyamāno nāma hoti, tasmā uddisante ti padabhājane vuttaṃ”: “Uddissamāne: when it is being recited (passive voice), because when it is being recited by the Pātimokkha reciter it is called “is being recited” (passive voice), therefore ‘when it is being recited’ (*uddisante*) is said in the word-analysis,” This shows that the commentarial tradition understood *uddissamāne* to be a passive pr.p. Cf. DP: *uddisanta* is the pr.p. of *uddisati*, while *uddissamāna* and *uddisiyamāna* are the pr.p. of the passive forms *uddisati* and *uddisiyati* respectively.

pātimokkhe uddissamāne evaṃ vadeyya: see Pāc 72.

idān’eva: only now; junction of *idāni* + *eva* in which the final *i* of *idāni* is elided; see PG § 70,2b.

= **idāni**: now; adv. of time; dem. pron. *ayaṃ* + suf. of time *-dāni*. + **eva**: only, just; emph. particle. **kho**: indeed; emph. particle.

ahaṃ: I; 1 sg pers. pron.

jānāmi: I know, find out; 1 sg. pres. ind. of *jānāti*: knows; see Pār 4.

Sa: *jānāmi*; PrMoSa p.232. Mā-L: *jānāmi*; PrMoMā-L p.27, BV 197.

Cf. Vin II 68: “Dve bhikkhū saṅghādisesaṃ āpannā honti. Te pātimokkhe uddissamāne evaṃ vadanti: Idān’eva kho mayaṃ jānāma, ayam-pi kira dhammo suttāgato suttapariyāpanno anvaddhamāsaṃ uddesaṃ āgacchatī ti. Te saṅghādisese saṅghādisesadiṭṭhino honti. Eko chādeti, eko nacchādeti. Yo chādeti so dukkaṭaṃ desāpetabbo.

⁵⁴⁶ Bh Pm 1 & 2, Ra: *yathā dhammo*. Other printed eds: *yathādhhammo*.

⁵⁴⁷ Dm, Vibh Ee, Um: *uttari cassa*. C, G, W, Bh Pm 1 & 2, Vibh Ce, Ra: *uttariṃ cassa*.

⁵⁴⁸ Mm Se, G, V: *pātimokkhe*.

⁵⁴⁹ Dm, Um, UP: *aṭṭhiṃ katvā*.

Yathāpaṭiṭṭhanne cassa parivāsaṃ datvā ubhinnaṃ-pi mānattaṃ dātabbaṃ”: “Two bhikkhus have fallen into (a case) involving the community in the beginning and in the rest. They, while the Disciplinary Code is being recited, say thus: “Only now we know! This too, indeed, is a case that has been handed down in the Sutta, which has been included in the Sutta, (which) comes up for recitation half-monthly!” They are [both] having the view of saṅghādisesa with regards saṅghādisesa, [but] one conceals, [and] the other not. Whoever conceals is to be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing, and having given the dwelling apart in accordance with the concealment, the state of deference [to bhikkhus] is also to be given to both.”

ayam-pi: this too; junction of *ayaṃ* + *pi* through labialisation of *m*; PG § 74,3.

= **ayaṃ**: nom. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*+ *pi*: too, also; conn. particle.

kira: indeed!, truly!, really!, Ñm: it seems, H: as is said, apparently; particle expressing surprise or doubt.

dhammo: Ñm: a case, H & Vinaya Texts: rule, Norman: matter; nom. sg. m. *Dhamma* here refers to a case of offence. See Pār intro: “*pārājikā dhammā*,” Aniy 1: “*tiṇṇaṃ dhammānaṃ, dhammo aniyato*” etc. *Vinaya Texts* I xxviii: “The Dhammas recited half-monthly are those contained in the scheme of offences given in the Pātimokkha, and the suttas therefore mean the separate clauses of that formulary.”

suttāgato: which has been handed down in the Sutta, ... come into a clause/rule, H: handed down in a clause, Ñm: is in the Suttavibhaṅga, Norman: is handed down in the sutta, *Vinaya Texts*: is handed down in the suttas; adj. Bb cpd. According to the Kkh commentary on the Pātimokkha conclusion it is a locative bb cpd: Kkh 277: “*Suttāgatan-ti: sutte pātimokkhe āgato*”: “... handed down in the Sutta, in the Pātimokkha.” The verb *āgacchati* normally takes an accusative, rarely a locative, and if an accusative is assumed here this would give: “which has come to a rule.” (“*yaṃ suttaṃ āgato so*”). Cf. *dasāhanāgataṃ* in NP 28 and “*uddesaṃ āgacchati*” below and in Pār intro etc.

sutta: Sutta, Rule-string, clause; nt. See note on *suttāgata* in the Introduction p. @ + **āgata**: come to, come down, handed down; p.p. of *āgacchati*; see Pār intro etc.: “... *dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti*.”

Suttāgata is not commented upon in the Sp nor in the Kkh, but see the Kkh commentary on *suttāgataṃ* in the Pātimokkha conclusion

suttapariyāpanno: which has been included in the Sutta; adj. = **sutta** + **pariyāpanna**: included, *Vinaya Texts*: embraced; p.p., see *uddesapariyāpanna* at Sd 12. Compare “*uddesapariyāpanna sikkhāpada*” of Sd 12 with “*dhamma suttapariyāpanna*” here. *Dhamma* and *sikkhāpada* are synonyms in the Pātimokkha, so might be *sutta* and *uddesa*.

uddesaṃ āgacchatī ti: come up for recitation; see Pār intro., here sg. Cf. *suttāgato* above and *uddesaṃ āgacchati* below.

tañ-ce: if that; junction of *taṃ* + *ce* through palatalisation. = **taṃ**: that; acc. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. + **ce**: if; hyp. particle.

bhikkhuṃ: (about) that bhikkhu, acc. sg. m. = accusative of external object; see Syntax § 32 and Nid.: *āyasmante*.

aññe: other; pronominal adj.; see Pāc 70.

bhikkhū: bhikkhus; nom. pl. m.

jāneyyū: they should know; 3 pl. opt. of *jānāti*.

nisinnapubbaṃ: has sat in; adj. An inverted bahubbhi cpd; see IP p.138. “*Yena pubbaṃ nisinnaṃ taṃ*.” =

nisinna: has sat in/down; p.p. of *nisajjati*; see Aniy + **pubbaṃ**: before; indecl. see above Nid.

The past participle in this compound is acting as an impersonal passive sentence verb and the compound as a whole acts as a subordinate clause; see note to *suttāgataṃ* in the Pātimokkha conclusion. Cf. the stock-phrase (e.g. M I 71): “*Abhijānāmi ... khattiyaparisaṃ ... upasaṅkamitā, tatra pi mayā sannisinnapubbaṃ c’eva sallapitapubbaṃ ca sākacchā ca samāpajjitapubbā ...*”: “I admit ... having approached ... an assembly of *khattiyas* (*upasaṅkamitā*, abs. in -*tā*), that I have sat there too before ...” M-a: “*Sannisinnapubban-ti saṅgamma nisinnapubbaṃ. Sallapitapubban-ti ālāpasallāpo katapubbo*.” Cf. Ud-a 219: “*Nisinno ca yasmiṃ maṅgalasilāpatṭe pubbe anupaṭipāṭiyā pañca jātisatāni rājā hutvā uyyānakīlaṃ kilanto vividha-nāṭaka-parivāro nisinnapubbo, tasmiṃ*

yeva thāne nisīdi."

Cf. *Vimativinodanī-ṭikā*: "...: *tehi aññehi bhikkhūhi diṭṭha-dvatti-vārato bhiyyo pana vitthārena uddisiyamāne pātimokkhe nisinnapubbatā atthi ce ...*" translated below at "*Ko vādo bhiyyo.*"

It is noteworthy that the *Prātimokṣasūtra* versions of this rule have what is corresponding to *sannisinnaṇapubbam* in Pāli and make it qualify the preceding *bhikkhum*. As this *sannisinnaṇapubbam* is also used in the MN passage above it might have been that this reading got lost in the Pāli *Pātimokkha*. In any case it could indicate that the instrumental *bhikkhunā* is an instrumental of accompaniment, i.e., other monks would know about that monk with whom has been seated before.

Pubbam here as acc. sg. nt. refers back adverbially to what has happened before, denoting the time when; see Syntax § 46.

iminā: by this; ins. sg. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

bhikkhunā: by (this) *bhikkhu*; ins. sg. m.

tañ-ce bhikkhum aññe bhikkhum jāneyyum nisinnapubbam iminā bhikkhunā ... ko pana vādo bhiyyo: [then] if other *bhikkhus* should know [about] that *bhikkhu* [thus]: "This *bhikkhu* has sat [in] two or three times previously when the Disciplinary Code was being recited, no need to speak about more [times than that]!," *Ñm*: and if other monks should know of that *bhikkhu*: "This *bhikkhu* has already sat while the *Pātimokkha* was recited (at least) two or three times, perhaps oftener," *H*: "if other monks should know concerning this monk that this monk has sat down two or three times before, not to say oftener, while the *Pātimokkha* was being recited."

dvattikkhattum: two or three times; adv. see NP 10.

ko pana vādo bhiyyo: what to say about more, no need to speak about more, what about oftener, *H*: not to say oftener, *Ñm*: perhaps oftener, *Norman*: then why speak further?

ko pana vādo: lit.: but what speaking ...; an idiomatic phrase found elsewhere, e.g.: M I 43 (transl. MLDB: so what should be said, M I 227: so what shall I say, II 95: so what of, III 166: let alone, 255: then what should be said.

Vimativinodanī-ṭikā (Be): "*Ko pana vādo bhiyyo ti: tehi aññehi bhikkhūhi diṭṭha-dvatti-vārato bhiyyo pana vitthārena uddisiyamāne pātimokkhe nisinnapubbatā atthi ce, tattha kim-eva vattabam.*" "... if there is a state of having been seated before more than two or three times when the *Pātimokkha* was being recited in full extent, which has been seen by those other *bhikkhus*, what can be said about that."

Wijesekera, Syntax § 83rd, suggests that this set-phrase is an elliptical form of "*ko pana attho vādena*": "what need to talk."

Mā-L rule 92: "*Yo puna bhikṣur anvardhamāsaṃ sūtre prārimokṣe uddisiyamāne evaṃ vadeya adya punar ahaṃ jānāmi idānīṃ punar ahaṃ jānāmi ayaṃ pi dharmo sūtrāgato sūtraparyāpanno anvardhamāsaṃ sūtre prārimokṣe uddeśam āgacchati yāvad ahan na jānāmi tāvaṃ nāstithaṃ mahyam āpattir/jānesu ca (ce) te bhikṣu taṃ bhikṣum sakṛd dvikkhuto trikkhuto āgatapūrvam pi sanniṣaṇṇapūrvam pi kaḥ punarvādo bahuśo nāsti kho punas tasya bhikṣusya ajñānena muktiḥ/atha khu yāṃ pi ca so bhikṣur āpattiṃ āpanno tat kṣipram eva yathādharmam yathāvinayam kārapayitavyo uttariṃ saṃmoham āpādayitavyo tasya te āyusman lābhā durlabdhā yas tvam anvardhamāsaṃ sūtre prātimokṣe uddisiyamāne nāstikṛtvā na manasi kṛtvā na sarvacetasā samanvāhrtya avahitaśroto satkṛtya dharmam śṛṇoṣi ti/iman [Taita: imam] tasya bhikṣusya sammohana-pācattikaṃ.*"; BV 197, *PrMoMā-L* p.28.

Sa: "*yah punar bhikṣuḥ prātimokṣasūtroddisiyamāne evaṃ vaded idānīm ahaṃ jānāmi yad aya(ṃ) dharmah sūtragataḥ sūtraparyāpanna iti taṃ ca bhikṣavo jānīyuh saṃniṣaṇṇapūrvam 'yam āyusmāṃ dvīs triḥ prātimokṣsūtroddeśe kaḥ punar vādo bhūya iti tasya punar bhikṣor nāsty ajñānān mokṣo yāṃ cāpattiṃ āpannaḥ syāt tām yathādharmam kārayitavya uttaraṃ ca saṃvejayitavyas tasya te āyusmann alābho na lābhaḥ durlabdhō na sulabdhah yo hi nāma tvam anvardhamāsaṃ prātimokṣasūtroddisiyamāne na satkṛtyārthikṛtvā na gurukṛtvā na manasikṛtvā naikāgracitto nāvahitśroto na sarvacetasā samanvāhrtya śṛṇoṣi iyaṃ tasya saṃvejanāt pātayantikā.*"; *PrMoSa* p.232.

ko: who, what; nom. sg. m. of inter. pron. *ka*.

pana: then, so; conn. particle, or: but; adversative particle.

vādo: speaking, speech; nom. sg. m.; see Pāc 69.

bhiyyo: oftener, more; adv. (to *nisinna*); cf. Sekh 36. Comparative fr. $\sqrt{bhū}$: is; see IP p.124.

If there is no *ti* here, then the quotation mark should be after "... *mutti atthi*," since the quotation needs to end before "*Yañ-ca tattha ...*" to prepare for the new quotation: "*Tassa te ...*" (Maybe *ti* has been introduced into the text from the (sub-) commentary where *ti* always comes after a word commented upon.)

na: not; neg. particle.

ca: and; conn. particle.

tassa: for that; dat. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

bhikkhuno: for (that) monk; dat. sg. m.

aññāṇakena: through not-knowing, H: on account of ignorance, Ñm: in pleading ignorance; ins. sg. m. Kammadhāraya. Neg. pref. *a-* + *ñāṇa*: knowing; action-noun; see Pār 4 + action- (not agent-) noun suf. *-aka*. Cf. Sn-a: "... *amanasikārena kataṃ, aññāṇakena vā akataṃ*." Cf. M-a I 56.

mutti: release, freedom (from penalty); nom. sg. f. Abstract noun der. fr. \sqrt{muc} .

atthi: there is; 3 sg. pres. ind.; see above Nid.

yañ-ca tattha āpattiṃ āpanno, tañ-ca yathā dhammo kāretabbo, uttariñ-c'assa moho āropetabbo: "and whatever the offence is that he has committed, he is to be made to according to that case, and moreover his delusion is to be exposed," H: "but he ought to be dealt with according to the offence into which he has fallen there, and further confusion should be put on him," Ñm: "and whatever the fault is that he has committed it should be dealt with according to the particular case, and furthermore negligence should be imputed to him (by an act of the Community)," Norman: "and whatever fault he has committed, for that he is to be dealt with as one acting in accordance with the law, and furthermore negligence is to be imputed to him."

yañ-ca ... tañ-ca: and whatever... that. A junction of **yaṃ** & **taṃ** + **ca** through palatalisation of *ṃ*; PG § 74,3. = **yaṃ + taṃ**: whatever/which ... that; correlative use of the relative pronoun *ya(d)* and demonstrative pron. *ta(d)*; acc. sg. m. + **ca**: and; conn. particle. Both *yaṃ* & *taṃ* are pronouns to *āpattiṃ*. (i.e., "*So bhikkhu yaṃ ca āpattiṃ tattha āpanno, taṃ ca āpattiṃ yathā dhammo (tathā) kāretabbo*.")

tattha: there, in this connection, in that manner; indecl. in modal or locative sense; see Nid. concl. It refers to the offence that he pretended to be ignorant about.

āpattiṃ: offence; acc. sg. m. see above Nid.

āpanno: committed; p.p. of *āpajjati*, see above Nid, qualifying an unexpressed *bhikkhu*.

yathā: according to, as; adv. see Nid.

dhammo: the case (of offence), rule, law; nom. sg. m.; see above.

yathā dhammo: (what is) according to that case, as the case (prescribes), in accordance with (what) the case (of offence he committed entails), H: according to the rule, Than: in accordance with the rule, Ñm: according to the particular case, Norman: as one acting in accordance with the law, PED: "one according to the law," i.e., as the rule prescribes....

The Vinaya idiom "*yathā dhammo*" is not to be confused with the adverb *yathā dhammaṃ*, see Pāc 63, which has a different meaning.

As the Sp suggests, it seems appropriate to regard this Vinaya idiom not as a compound but as two separate words used together with *kāretabbo* and not connected to *taṃ*. Ñānamoli's translation is a translation of the adverb *yathā dhammaṃ*, not of *yathā dhammo*. *Yathā dhammo* always refers to a rule in the Pātimokkha while *yathā dhammaṃ* has a wider application.

There is no commentary on this word in the Vibh but there are explanations in the commentaries: Sp 876: "*Yathā dhammo kāretabbo ti aññāṇena āpannattā tassā āpattiyaṃ makkho n'atthi. Yathā pana dhammo ca vinayo titho tathā kāretabbo, desanāgāminiṃ ce āpanno hoti desāpetabbo, vuṭṭhānagāminiṃ ce vuṭṭhāpetabbo ti attho*": "*Yathā dhammo kāretabbo*: there is no release from that offence by committing through not-knowing. But as the Dhamma and Vinaya has been established so (he) is to be made to do; he has to be made to confess if he he

has committed (an offence) leading to confession (= all offences less than Sd), he has to be made to emerge if he has committed (an offence) leading to emergence (= Sd, see Hinüber 1999 p.59 n. 125). "

Sp 877: "*Yañ-ca ... āpanno ti: tasmiṃ anācāre aciṇṇe yaṃ āpattiṃ āpanno*": "The offence which he has fallen into when he has done that misconduct." Cf. Sp 1214: "*yathā dhammo kāretabbo ti dukkaṭavattthumhi dukkaṭena pācittiyavattthumhi pācittiyena kāretabbo*." (to Vin II 142: "*Yo ācareyya yathā dhammo kāretabbo ti*"). Sp 1095: "*... ti paramparabhojanena kāretabbo*." (to Vin I 223: "*Yo paribhuñjeyya, yathādhammo kāretabbo ti*").

Vimativinodanī-ṭikā: "*Tañ-ca yathādhammo kāretabbo ti tan-ti kāraṇatthe upayogavacanaṃ, tāyā ti attho. Yathā dhammo ca vinayo ca ṭhito, tathā tāya āpattiyā kāretabbo ti vuttaṃ hoti*": "...: 'taṃ' is an accusative in the sense of an instrumental, 'tāya' (ins. sg. fem. agreeing with *āpattiyā*) is the meaning. As the Dhamma and Vinaya has been established, so he is to be made to do with that offence, is said."

The "*yathā dhammo*" idiom is an implicit reference to a Pātimokkha-rule and it is frequently found in the Khandhakas e.g. Vin II 166: "*... yo nikaḍḍheyya yathā dhammo kāretabbo*," referring back to Pāc 17. *Yathā dhammo* in Pāc 73 could refer back to Pāc 1, the rule about intentional false speech that is referred to in the Nidāna, i.e., if the bhikkhu remains silent and does not confess an offence he knows about, he deliberately lies. Of course, he also has to confess the offence he pretended to be ignorant about.

See Hinüber 1999 p.54–62, especially p.60, on this word. Hinüber translates the "difficult sentence" "*tañ ca yathādhammo kāretabbo*" as "*mit diesen muss er veranlasst werden umzugehen wie einer der nach den Regeln [lebt]*" ("with this he is to be made to behave as one who lives according to the rules") taking *yathādhammo* to be an abhayibhāva compound like *yathāgamaṃ*, "traditionalist." According to Hinüber the resolution into two words in the Sp (i.e., *yathā pana dhammo*) cannot be justified since *yathādhammo* is connected to *taṃ*.

The subcommentary, however, takes *taṃ* as a pronoun in instrumental sense; see Syntax § 65. This might be because the clause is passive and requires an instrumental subject and nominative patient. A f.p.p. agrees with the patient in the sentence and this here is either *dhammo* or an unexpressed *bhikkhu*.

Kāretabbo agrees with an unexpressed *bhikkhu* as the patient in nom. sg. m. like in Aniy 1 "*bhikkhu kāretabbo*" and *taṃ* is the offence which the bhikkhu has to be made to confess. In the M III 10 passage quoted at Pāc 63 *taṃ* refers to the *bhikkhu*. Cf. Sp given above: *desanāgāminiṃ ce āpanno hoti desāpetabbo*.

PED takes *yathādhammo* to be an adjective, but this does not make sense. Hinüber taking *yathādhammo* to be agreeing with *yo* and suggests it might be a mistranslation from an eastern dialect and a petrified stock-phrase. He refers to Vin II 263: "*Na ... bhikkhuniyā ovādo na gantabbo; yā na gaccheyya yathā dhammo kāretabbo*." where *yathādhammo* does not agree with *yā*. However, in this Cv regulation *yathā dhammo* refers to Bhikkhunī-pācittiya 58, Vin IV 325, and is thus referring to a *dhamma* in the Bhikkhunīpātimokkha. Further, there are cases where "*yathā dhammo kāretabbo*" is used in different constructions without a pronoun; see Vin II 196 and Vin I 209 quoted below.

The clause "*yathā dhammo kāretabbo*" is passive and the (instrumental) subject is unexpressed. As the clause is passive *dhammo* is nominative and *kāretabbo* agrees with it in the same way as *āropetabbo* agrees with *moho* in the next clause.

From the way the idiom is used in the Khandhakas it appears that *dhammo* refers to a specific case/rule in the Pātimokkha rather than the Law in general as Sp suggests.

There are a few other contexts where *yathā dhammo* is used without *kāretabbo*, see below, and two things are noteworthy. The first is that *dhammo* stands for Dhamma (with a capital) rather than a rule, and the second is that *yathā dhammo* occurs as part of relative constructions. It is possible that in the Vinaya context the second part of the relative construction is implied: "*yathā dhammo (tathā) kāretabbo*": "As the law is, (so) he is to be made to do."

Vin II 302 (and I 354): "*Tena hi, bhante sāḷha, yathā dhammo tathā tiṭṭhāhī ti. Pubbe pi cāhaṃ, devate, etarahi ca yathā dhammo tathā ṭhito*" A V 222: "*dhammañ-ca viditvā atthañ-ca, yathā dhammo yathā attho tathā paṭipajjitabbaṃ*." J III 104: "*ubhinnaṃ vacanaṃ sutvā, yathā dhammo tathā kare*."

It is noteworthy that *yathā dhammo kāretabbo* is not found anywhere elsewhere with any accusative such as *taṃ*. In other contexts besides the one in this rule, *yathā dhammo* is always found with relative pronoun (*yo/yā*)

+ optative verb construction, see above, except once when it is found in a locative construction, Vin II 196 (referring to Pāc 32): “*Gaṇabhojane yathā dhammo kāretabbo*”: “In (the case of) eating in a group, he is to be made to do in accordance with the case” and once when it is found with a dative, Vin I 209 (referring to NP 23): “*tāni paṭiggahetvā sattāhaparamaṃ sannidhikāraṃ paribhuñjitabbāni, taṃ atikkāmayato yathā dhammo kāretabbo ti*.”: “... for one who lets it pass beyond: (he) is to be made to do in accordance with the case.”

kāretabbo: he is to be made to do, he is to be dealt with; f.p.p. of *kāreti* ($\sqrt{\text{kar}} + e$) agreeing with unexpressed *bhikkhu* as in Aniya 1. The verb *kāreti* is the causative form of *karoti* and it seems that the *bhikkhus* have to make the offending *bhikkhu* confess his offence, i.e., the *bhikkhu* is to be made to confess the offence. Cf. the similar rule in Vin II 68 given above under *jānāmi*: “*Yo chādeti so dukkaṭaṃ desāpetabbo*.”: “whoever conceals (it), he has to be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing.”

uttariñ-c’assa: = junction of *uttariṃ* & *ca* through palatalisation of *ṃ* and *ca* & *assa* through elision of the *-a* in *ca* before a closed syllable. **uttariṃ**: moreover; + **ca**: and; conn. particle. + **assa**: his, of this one; gen. sg., or dat.: to him, of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

moho: deluding, delusion, the act of deluding, H: confusion, Ñm & Norman: negligence, Than: deception; nom. sg. m. A stronger sense than confusion is intended since the group of six was actively deluding, see the origin-story, and the word-commentary (mistranslated in BD): “*Taṇ-ce ti mohetukāmaṃ bhikkhuṃ*.”: “‘If (about) that’: the *bhikkhu* who wishes to deceive.” Cf. *mohanaka* below.

āropetabbo: is to be exposed/shown/put on/imputed/imposed/refuted; f.p.p. of *āropeti*, the causative of *ārohati/āruhati* ($\bar{a} + \sqrt{\text{ruh}} + a$). (See Vin I 60: “... *upajjhāyassa vādaṃ āropetvā* ...”: “having refuted the speech of the preceptor” M II 122: “... *evam-assa mayaṃ vādaṃ āropessāma* ...”: “... thus we refute the speech of this one ...” The sense of refuting might fit here with the genitive *assa* and the scolding-context, i.e., his delusion is to be refuted.) In Vin II 2, 8, 13, and 21 “*āpattiṃ ropetabbo*” is used.

In the *Khandhakas* there is no legal act (*saṅghakamma*) corresponding to the “(legal) act of a motion (followed by an announcement) as the second” (*ñattidutiyakamma*) prescribed in the *Padabhāṣana* on this word.

assa moho āropetabbo: “his delusion is to be exposed,” “the deluding is to be shown to him,” Ñm: “when negligence has been imputed to him,” H: “confusion should be put on him.” H footnote: “It has to be established that he committed the offence in confusion.”

tassa te alābhā tassa te dulladdhaṃ: “because of that (there are) losses for you, because of that it has been ill-gained by you,” Ñm: “it is no gain for you, it is ill done,” H: “this is bad for you, this is badly gotten by you,” Norman: “it is no gain for you, it is ill gained by you.”

A difficult idiom that has been misunderstood by some scholars.

The opposite form is: “*tassa te lābhā, ... sulladdhaṃ*.” Other forms are also found; see M I 150–51, 164, 186, 206, 210, 255.

Vism 223: “*Lābhā vata me ti: mayhaṃ vata lābhā, ye ime: ... sulladdhaṃ vata me ti: yaṃ mayā idaṃ sāsaṇaṃ manussattaṃ vā laddhaṃ*.”: “‘Indeed, (there are) gains for me (enclitic dative of advantage *me*): indeed (there are) gains for me (*mayhaṃ* dative of advantage), ‘these which’ ... it has been well-gained by me (enclitic instrumental *me*) that by me (*mayā* instrumental) this dispensation or the state of being human has been gained.”

Ud-a 405: “*Alābhā ti: ye aññesaṃ dānaṃ dadantānaṃ dānānisamsa-sankhāta-lābhā honti, te alābhā. Dulladdhaṃ ti: puññavisesena laddhaṃ pi manussattaṃ dulladdhaṃ. Yassa te ti: yassa tava ...*”

The *te* in “*tassa te alābhā*” is a so-called “dative of (dis-) advantage” that is used with nouns denoting loss, gain, ...” e.g. “*lābhā rañño Pasenadissa ...*,” M II 209 and “*amhākaṃ ... pi alābhā ...*,” Vin IV 104; see Syntax § 110a. This is supported by the commentaries: “*tassa tuyhaṃ*” D-a 909 (to D III 121: “*tassa satthā ca te ...*”), “*mayhaṃ vata lābhā*,” Vism 223.

The *te* in “*tassa te dulladdhaṃ*” is said to be an instrumental by the Vism 223: “*mayā idaṃ*” and this seems to fit since past participles usually take an instrumental as agent.

M I 151: “*ye āyasmantaṃ ... labhanti payirupāsānāyā ... Amhākaṃ pi lābhā amhākaṃ pi suladdhaṃ, ye mayaṃ*

āyasmantaṃ ... labhāma payirupāsanāyā ti." A V 86: "*Tesaṃ vo, Sakkā, alābhā, tesaṃ dulladdhaṃ, ye tumhe ... appekadā ... uposathaṃ upavasatha ... na upavasatha.*" D II 135: "*Tassa te ... dulladdhaṃ, yassa te Tathāgataṃ pacchimaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjitvā parinibbuto.*" M II 194: "*Tesaṃ no, ... , amhākaṃ ... etad ahosi.*" It 32: "*Tesaṃ vo, ... , tumhākaṃ ...*" It 76: "*Ito, bho, sugatiṃ gaccha, sugatiṃ gantvā suladdhalābhaṃ labha, suladdhalābhaṃ labhitvā suppatiṭṭhito bhavāhi ti.*"

tassa: because of that, by that, (or) for you; gen. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

Tassa could also be a subjective genitive; see Pātimokkha conclusion and Syntax § 142, or an instrumental-like genitive; Syntax § 154–55. PED 126 calls it an adverbial usage of the genitive singular of the dem. pron. *ta(d)*: because of that, therefore. Cf. NP 8: *gahapatissa* and Pātimokkha concl: *bhagavato*. A IV 333: "*tassa me kāyo kilanto.*" *Tassa* could also be used emphatically here like in idioms such as *so 'haṃ*. The plural usage of *tesaṃ no/vo*, see the sutta quotations above, could suggest that *tassa* is used emphatically here like in *so 'haṃ*, etc, see Warder 29 and MW s.v. *tad*: "... sometimes, for the sake of emphasis, connected with the 1st and 2nd personal pronouns, with other demonstratives and with relatives e.g. *so'haṃ*, 'I that very person, I myself' ... *yāsāsrī*, 'that very fortune which' ..." If this is so, then the usage of *tassa* in *tassa te dulladdhaṃ* would be instrumental rather than dative.

Tassa is correlative to *yaṃ* in the next clause. The main clause "*tassa te ... dulladdhaṃ*" comes first in this sentence instead of the subordinate clause; this inversion of the usual clause order is for extra emphasis; see IP p.300.

te ... te ...: for you ... by you; enclitic forms of the dat. sg. m. and ins. sg. m. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. For an explanation of the reason for the different cases see the note on the whole idiom below.

tassa te: because of that ... for you ... because of that ... by you ..., H: "this is ... for you ... by you ..."; a frequent idiom, e.g. M I 221, 245, 317, 329.

āvuso: friend; see above Nid.

alābhā: losses, non-gains, disadvantages; nom. sg. pl. Kammadhāraya cpd. = neg. pref *a-* + *lābha*. PED 583 s.v. *lābhā* gives it as a shortened form of the dative *lābhāya* used adverbially, and gives no gender. According to Warder, IP p.300 and 408, it can be taken as an indeclinable or as a plural noun. CPED gives *lābhā* as an indeclinable: "it is profitable."

Lābhā is a nominative masculine plural. The commentaries, Ud-a 405 to Ud 84 and Vism 223, see below, explain it as a plural: "*ye ... lābhā honti*" and this seems the most reasonable explanation. This is also evident from the usage of *lābhā* in such contexts as Dhp 203–04: "*ārogyaparamā lābhā*" (cf. Dhp-a to this verse) and the usage of *lābho* and *alābho* as nominative masculine nouns as two of the eight worldly states (*lokadhammā*); e.g. A IV 157. There would be no reason not to use the full dative form *lābhāya* here if that would have been intended and moreover there are no other examples of shortened forms of *lābhāya* given in PED.

dulladdhaṃ: (it has been) ill-gained, badly gotten; nom. sg. nt. Kammadhāraya cpd. used a bahubbīhi cpd. = P.p. used as impersonal passive sentence verb; see IP p.42, the commentaries below, and cf. the Pātimokkha concl. *suttāgataṃ*. It is agreeing with an unexpressed impersonal nom. sg. nt. demonstrative pronoun *taṃ*: it. Cf. the usage of the f.p.p. at *bhavitabbaṃ* in the Nidāna. = Pref. *du(r)*: bad + *laddha*: gotten, gained; p.p. of *labhati* (√*labh* + *a*). The consonant combination *-rl-* becomes *-ll-* in Pāli; see PG § 52,5.

yaṃ: that, because, which; rel. pron. correlative to *tassa*. Adverbial usage in acc. sg. nt. of rel. pron. *ya(d)*, functioning as a connective or marker of a relative clause; see Syntax § 50c. A relative pronoun followed by a personal pronoun lays emphasis on the latter; see PG § 110,3 & 106,1b + MW 884: *yad*.

tvam: you; nom. sg. 2nd pers. pron.

sādhukam: well, carefully; adv. see above Nid.

aṭṭhikavā: having focussed, taken to heart; verbal compound, see IP p.156, in which *aṭṭhi* is a verbal compound form of *aṭṭha*, which in turn is the cpd form of *attha*: goal, aim, purpose, and *katvā*, the abs. of *karoti*. The final *i* instead of *a* is also found in other verbal cpds. such as *cittikata*, *aṅgibhūta* (but not in *manasikaroti*, as *manasi* is a locative of *manas*).

manasikarosī ti: you pay attention; 2 sg. nom. of *manasikaroti*; verbal compound; see above Nid. “*Yaṃ tvaṃ pātimokkhe uddissamāne na sādhuṃ aṭṭhikavā manasikarosi ...*” refers back to the request in the Nidāna: “... *taṃ sabbeva santā sādhuṃ suṇoma manasikaroma.*”

idaṃ tasmim mohanake: “because of that delusion this is,” “it is on account of that delusion,” H: “this for him on whom the confusion is put,” Nm: “and (if he acts thus again) when negligence has been imputed to him,” *Vinaya Texts*: “there is *Pākittiya* in such foolish conduct,” Norman: “this is an offence entailing expiation for that negligent person.”

idaṃ tasmim: because of that this; see Pāc 65.

mohanake: because of the delusion, with regards the one who is deluding; loc. sg. m. = **mohana:** the act of deluding, deceiving (e.g. S I 33); action-noun fr. *moheti* ($\sqrt{moh} + e$) + adjectival or pleonastic suffix *-(a)ka*; see Pāc 12: *aññavādake*. Although, it seems that this term refers to the act of deluding it might also refer to the delusion of the monk. The term “delusion” intends to cover both.

[Pāc 74: Pahārasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhussa kupito⁵⁵⁰ anattamano pahāraṃ dadeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on (giving) a blow]

If any bhikkhu who is resentful [and] displeased should give a blow to a bhikkhu, [this is a case] involving expiation.

bhikkhussa: to a bhikkhu; dat. sg. m.

kupito anattamano: resentful [and] displeased ...; see NP 25, Pāc 17.

pahāraṃ: blow; acc. sg. m.

dadeyya: should give; 3 sg. opt. of *dadāti*; see NP 25.

[Pāc 75: Talasattikasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhussa kupito⁵⁵¹ anattamano talasattikaṃ uggireyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on (brandishing) the hand-palm like a dagger]

If any bhikkhu should brandish the palm of the hand [threateningly] like [one holds] a dagger to a bhikkhu, [this is a case] involving expiation.

talasattikaṃ: palm of the hand (threateningly) like [one holds] a dagger; acc. sg. nt. An idiom denoting a threatening gesture with the hand. Perhaps it means holding a clenched fist above the head. = **tala:** palm of the hand, flat surface + **sattika:** like a spear; not found elsewhere, *satti* is “spear” or “dagger” + pleonastic suf. *-ika*. BHSGD 250 lists *talaśaktikā*: “... lit. palm-spear,” but in BHS it seems to indicate a salutation rather than a threat.

uggireyya: should brandish, raise; 3 sg. opt. of *uggirati* ($ud + \sqrt{gir} + a$).

[Pāc 76: Amūlakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhuṃ amūlakena saṅghādisesena anuddhamseyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on being groundless]

If any bhikkhu should should accuse a bhikkhu with a groundless [case concerning] the community in the beginning and in the rest [of the procedure], [this is a case] involving expiation.

⁵⁵⁰ V: *kuppito*. (Cf NP 25 & Pāc 17.)

⁵⁵¹ V: *kuppito*.

bhikkhuṃ amūlakena ... anuddhamseyya: should accuse a bhikkhu with a groundless ...; see Sd 8.

saṅghādisesena: (a case concerning) the community in the beginning and in the rest (of the procedure); ins. sg. m.; see Sd intro.

[Pāc 77: Sañciccasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhussa sañcicca⁵⁵² kukkucçaṃ upadaheyya, ⁵⁵³ “Iti’ssa muhuttam-pi aphāsu bhavissatī ti,” etad-eva paccayaṃ karitvā anaññaṃ, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on deliberately (provoking worry)]

If any bhikkhu should deliberately provoke worry for a bhikkhu [thinking], “Thus there will be discomfort for him, even [if only] for a short time,” having made just this the reason, [and] not another, [this is a case] involving expiation.

sañcicca: deliberately; adv. see Pār 3. **bhikkhussa:** for a bhikkhu; dat. sg. m.

kukkucçaṃ: worry; acc. sg. nt. see Pāc 73.

upadaheyya: Ñm: should provoke, H: should arouse; 3 sg. opt. of *upadahati* (*upa* + \sqrt{dah} + *a*).

Mā-L: *upasaṃhareyya*; PrMoMā-L p.26, BV 189. Sa: *upasaṃhared*; PrMoSa p.225.

iti’ssa: thus for this one; junction of *iti* + *assa* through elision of the initial *-a* of *assa*; see PG § 70,2b. = **iti:** thus; (here:) deitic particle, emphasising what follows; see IP p.36. + **assa:** for him, lit.: for this one; dat. sg. of dem. pron. *ayaṃ*.

muhuttam-pi: even for a short time, H: even for a moment, Ñm: for a while; junction of *muhuttaṃ* + *pi* through labialisation of *-ṃ*; see PG § 74,3.

= **muhuttaṃ:** a short time, a moment; acc. sg. m. + **pi:** even, just; emph. particle.

aphāsu: uneasiness, discomfort; adv. or nom. sg. nt. Neg. pref. *a-* + *phāsu*: see above Nid.

bhavissatī ti: there will be, he will have; 3 sg. fut. of *bhavati* + *ti*: quotation mark. See IP p.56 for the use of *bhavati* with a genitive.

etad-eva paccayaṃ karitvā anaññaṃ: having made just this the reason (and) not another; see Pāc 16.

[Pāc 78: Upassutisikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu bhikkhūnaṃ bhaṇḍana-jātānaṃ kalahajātānaṃ vivādāpannānaṃ upassutiṃ⁵⁵⁴ tiṭṭheyya; “Yaṃ ime bhaṇissanti, taṃ sossāmī ti,” etad-eva paccayaṃ karitvā anaññaṃ, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on overhearing]

If any bhikkhu should stand overhearing bhikkhus who are arguing, who are quarrelling, who are engaged in dispute [thinking], “I shall hear what these ones will say,” having made just this the reason, [and] not another, [this is a case] involving expiation.

bhikkhūnaṃ: bhikkhus; dat. pl. m.

bhaṇḍana-jātānaṃ: who are arguing; adj. Bb cpd. = **bhaṇḍana:** arguing; action-noun fr. *bhaṇḍati* ($\sqrt{bhaṇḍ}$ + *a*) + **-jāta:** are, become, started; p.p. of *jāyati* (\sqrt{jan} + *ya*): arises, is borne; used as adjective meaning “having become,” “being like,” “behaving as.”

kalahajātānaṃ: who are quarrelling, ... brawling; adj. Bb cpd. = **kalaha:** quarrel + **jāta:** see above.

vivādāpannānaṃ: who are engaged in dispute; adj. = **vivāda:** dispute, contention; from *vivadati*; see Sd 10 + **āpanna:** engaged in; pp. of *āpajjati*; see above Nid.

⁵⁵² W: *saṃcicca* (but not so at Pār 3 and Pāc 61.)

⁵⁵³ Ra, Pg, UP v.1.: *uppādeyya*. G: *uppādaheyya*. V: *upādaheyya*.

⁵⁵⁴ Mi Se, Bh Pm 2, Pg: *upassuti*. V: *upassūti*.

upassutiṃ: H: overhearing, Ñm: eavesdropping; acc. sg. f. An action-noun in *-i*. = pref. *upa*: near to + *suti*: hearing; from *suṇāti*: hears; see above Nid.

tiṭṭheyya: should stand; 3 sg. opt. of *tiṭṭhati*; see Sd 10.

yam ... tam ...: that what, which ... that ...; see Pāc 73.

ime: these ones; acc. pl. of *ima*: this.

bhaṇissanti: they will say; 3 pl. fut. of *bhaṇati* ($\sqrt{bhaṇ} + a$).

soṣṣāmī ti: I shall hear; = *soṣṣāmi*, 1 sg. fut. of *suṇāti* + *ti*: end quote; see above Nid.

etad-eva ...: see Pāc 16.

[Pāc 79: Kammappaṭibāhanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu dhammikānaṃ kammānaṃ chandaṃ datvā pacchā khiyyanadhammaṃ⁵⁵⁵ āpajjeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the averting of legal action]

If any bhikkhu, having given consent to legitimate [legal] actions, should afterwards engage in the act of criticising, [this is a case] involving expiation.

dhammikānaṃ: legitimate, lawful; adj. qualifying *kammānaṃ*. See Sd 12 *sahadhammikaṃ*.

kammānaṃ: to a (legal) action; dat. pl. nt. of *kamma*, see Vibh for definition, BD III 59–60, cf. Pāc 63.

Padabhājana: “*Dhammikaṃ nāma kammaṃ apalokanakammaṃ ñattikammaṃ ñattidutiyakammaṃ ñatticatutthakammaṃ dhammena vinayena satthusāsanena kataṃ, etaṃ dhammikaṃ nāma kammaṃ*”: “A *dhammika kamma* means the act of looking for approval (*apalokanakamma*), the (legal) act of a (legal) motion (*ñattikamma*), the (legal) act of a motion (followed by an announcement) as the second (*ñattidutiyakamma*), the (legal) act of a motion (and an announcement) as the fourth (i.e., one motion followed by three announcements, *ñatticatutthakamma*), which has been done in accordance with the Dhamma and the Vinaya and the Instruction of the Teacher.”

chandaṃ: consent, Ñm: proxy-vote; acc. sg. m. The giving of consent, *chanda*, by a sick bhikkhu, or a bhikkhu who can not come due to another urgent reason, through another bhikkhu, is for any community-business the community is attending to at a meeting; see BD III 58 n. 3, Vin I 121–122, Introduction p. @, and origin-stories to Pāc 79–80.

datvā: having given; abs. of *dadāti*, cf. NP 25. See BMC 454.

pacchā: afterwards; indecl. see above Nid. concl.

khiyyanadhammaṃ: the act of criticising, Ñm: decrying, H: criticism; acc. sg. m. Gen. tapp. cpd. Cf. BD III 59 n. 2 = **khiyyana**: criticising, criticism; action-noun fr. *khiyati*. Also at Pāc 82. Cf. *khiyyanaka* etc. at Pāc 13.

In accordance with the Law of Morae there is in Pāli only a short vowel before a double consonant or a long vowel before a simplified double consonant, thus it should either be *khīyana* or *khiyyana*; see PG § 5–6. +

dhamma: act; see Pār 1.

Mā-L rule 9: *kṣiyādharmaṃ*. (= the rule corresponding to Pāli Pāc 81; PrMoMā-L p.19, BV 187).

āpajjeyya: should engage in; 3 sg. opt. of *āpajjati*; see above Nid.

[Pāc 80: Chandaṃ-adatvā-gamanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu saṅghe vinicchayakathāya vattamānāya chandaṃ adatvā uṭṭhāyāsanaṃ pakkameyya, pācittiyaṃ.

⁵⁵⁵ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, G, W, Dm, Um, Ra, Vibh Ce, Parivāra Be: *khīyana*-. Mi & Mm Se: *khiyyana*-. (Also at Pāc 81.) Parivāra Ce: *khiyana*-. V: *khiyya*-. Vibh Ee, Parivāra Ee: *khīya*-. (This reading is also at A III 269, IV 374.) Cf *khiyyanaka* at Pāc 13.

[The training precept on going without having given consent]

If any bhikkhu, when investigatory discussion is going on in the community, not having given [his] consent, having gotten up from [his] seat, should depart, [this is a case] involving expiation.

saṅghe: in the community; loc. sg. m.

vinicchayakathāya vattamānāya: when investigatory discussion is going on; a loc. absolute construction.

vinicchayakathāya: Ñm: investigatory discussion, H: decisive talk, Than: deliberation; loc. sg. f. = **vinicchaya**: investigation, judgement, decision; der. fr. *vinicchīnāti* (*vi* + *ni* + *√ci* + *nā*). + **kathā**: talking, discussion, conversation; see Pāc 42.

vattamānāya: is going on, is taking place; pr.p. of *vattati* (*√vatt* + *a*) agreeing with *vinicchayakathāya*.

chandaṃ: consent; acc. sg. m. See Pāc 79. Here it does not refer to the giving consent of a bhikkhu who does not come to the meeting at all, but to the giving of consent to the outcome of the discussion by a bhikkhu who has to leave the meeting due to some urgent reason such as sickness, needing to go to the toilet, etc; see BMC 457f.

Padabhājana: “*Chandaṃ adatvā uṭṭhāyāsanaṃ pakkameyyā ti: kathaṃ idaṃ kammaṃ kuppaṃ assa vaggamā assa, na kareyyā ti gacchati, āpatti dukkaṭassa. Parisāya hatthapāsaṃ vijahantassa āpatti dukkaṭassa. Vijahite āpatti pācittiyassa*”: “...: he goes (thinking): “How would this legal action be disturbed and divided, (the Saṅgha) should not do (the action), an offence of wrong-doing.” [The text seems corrupt here.] Horner: “Why should it not carry out this (formal) act (although) it might be quashed, (although) it might be incomplete..”) he goes: an offence of wrong-doing for him. For one who leaves an arms-length of the assembly: an offence of wrong-doing. For one who has left: an offence of *pācittiya*.”

adatvā: not having given; abs. = neg. pref. *a-* + *datvā*; see Pāc 79. Mistranslated in Ñm: “Should any bhikkhu give his proxy-vote ...”

uṭṭhāyāsanaṃ: having gotten up from the seat; = sandhi of *uṭṭhāya* & *āsana* through contraction. **uṭṭhāya**: having got up; abs. of *uṭṭhāti* (*ud* + *√thā* + *a*) + **āsanā**: from the seat; abl. sg. nt. Cf. Aniy 1.

pakkameyya: should depart; 3 sg. opt. of *pakkamati*; see Sd 13.

[Pāc 81: Dubbalasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu samaggena saṅghena cīvaraṃ datvā pacchā khiyyanadhammaṃ⁵⁵⁶ āpajjeyya, “Yathāsanthutaṃ⁵⁵⁷ bhikkhū saṅghikaṃ lābhaṃ pariṇāmentī ti”, pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on feeble (-robes)]

If any bhikkhu, having given a robe [-cloth] [together] with a united community, should afterwards engage in criticising [saying]: “The bhikkhus allocate communal gain according to familiarity,” [this is a case] involving expiation.

dubbalasikkhāpadaṃ: the training rule on the feeble (robes).; nom. sg. m. Appositive kammadhāraya cpd; see Pār 1. **dubbala**: feeble, weak, worn out; adj. In the origin-story it is said that the robe of Dabba was a feeble out robe, *dubbala-cīvara*, i.e., easily torn due to being thin.

According to TP § 13, there is also another title to this rule: *dabbasikkhāpada*, but I have not been able to trace this in the Sp. It is not found anywhere in the CSCD Burmese Sixth Council edition. In the *uddāna* summary verse of this chapter in the Suttavibhaṅga *dabba* is listed, however, the words in the summary verses are not rule titles and no *dabbasikkhāpada* is found in the *uddāna* as TP states. Dabba is a proper name. Bhikkhu Dabba plays the leading role in the origin-story to this rule in the Suttavibhaṅga.

samaggena: united; adj. see Sd 10.

⁵⁵⁶ As in Pāc 79.

⁵⁵⁷ D: -*santhavaṃ*. Vibh Ee: -*santataṃ*. Pg, G: -*santhataṃ*. V: -*saṅṭhataṃ*.

Sp 242 (to Pār 1 Padabhājana): “*Samaggena saṅghenā ti sabbantimena pariyāyena pañcavaggakaraṇīye kamme, yāvatikā bhikkhū kammappattā tesam āgatattā, chandārahānaṃ chandassa āhaṭattā, sammukhūbhūtānañ-ca appaṭikkosanato, ekasmiṃ kamme samaggabhāvaṃ upagatena.*”: “*Samaggena saṅghena*: with regards a (legal) act to be done by a group of five (bhikkhus) as the minimum, through the state of having arrived of whatever bhikkhus are entitled (to carry out the legal) action,* through the bringing of consent of those who are eligible for (giving) consent, through the non-objection of those who are present, (it is done) with (a community) that has come to the state of unity with regards one single (legal) action.” (* See the Summary of preparations and preliminary duties” above at @.)

saṅghena: with a community; ins. sg. m.

cīvaram: robe (-cloth); acc. sg. nt.

datvā pacchā khiyyanadhammaṃ āpajjeyya: see Pāc 79.

yathāsanthutaṃ: according to familiarity, H: according to acquaintanceship, Ñm: according to their whims, according to favour; adv. Abbayībhāva cpd. = **yathā**: as, according to; adv. + **santhuta**: acquainted, familiar; p.p. of *santhavati* (*saṃ* + *√thu* + *a*). (See PED *thuta* and *thavati*: praises. MW 1121: *saṃstuta*: praised together, acquainted, familiar, intimate).

Mā-L: “*yathāsaṃstutaṃ*; BV 187, PrMoMā-L p.19. Sa: *yathā saṃstutānāṃ*; PrMoSa p.206.

bhikkhū: bhikkhus; nom. pl. m.

saṅghikaṃ lābham: communal gain; see NP 30.

pariṇāmeti ti: they allocate; 3 pl. pres. ind. of *pariṇāmeti*; see NP 30.

[Pāc 82: Pariṇāmanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu jānaṃ saṅghikaṃ lābham pariṇataṃ puggalassa pariṇāmeyya, pācittiyaṃ.

Sahadhammikavaggo aṭṭhamo.

[The training precept on allocation]

If any bhikkhu should knowingly allocate [already] allocated communal gain to a [lay-] person, [this is a case] involving expiation.

The section [starting with the rule] about [being spoken to] righteously is eighth.

jānaṃ saṅghikaṃ lābham pariṇataṃ ... pariṇāmeyya: see NP 30.

puggalassa: to a person, individual; dat. sg. m. See Pāc 65. It can be a monk, nun, novice, or layperson.

sahadhammikavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on (being spoken to) righteously, righteously-section; nom. sg. m. = *sahadhammika*: righteously: see Pāc 71 + *vagga*: section; see NP 10.

aṭṭhamo: eighth, the eighth one; ordinal.

[Ratanavaggo⁵⁵⁸]

[Pāc 83: Antepurasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu rañño khattiyassa muddhābhisittassa⁵⁵⁹ anikkhantarājake aniggataratanake⁵⁶⁰ pubbe appaṭisaṃvidito indakhīlaṃ atikkameyya,⁵⁶¹ pācittiyaṃ.

⁵⁵⁸ Only in Mi Se.

⁵⁵⁹ Bh Pm 1 & 2, D, Ra, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee, Pg: *muddhāvasittassa*. (Pg: ... *muddhāni abhisittassa rañño ... muddhāni avasitto.*)

⁵⁶⁰ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, G, W, Mi Se, Vibh Ce, Ee Sp, Ce Kkh, Pg: *anibhata*-. V: *anibhata*-. D, Ra, UP sīhala v.l.: *anīhata*. (The *bh* and *h* characters are very similar in Sinhala script.)

⁵⁶¹ Mi & Mm Se, G, Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, V, W, Ra: *atikkameyya*. Other eds. *atikkāmeyya*.

[The training precept on the harem]

If any bhikkhu, without having been announced beforehand, should go beyond the boundary post of a noble consecrated king's [bed-room] when the king has not departed, [and] the [queen-] jewel has not withdrawn, [this is a case] involving expiation.

This is another rule, like Pāc 19 and 73, which is somewhat obscure and probably got corrupted.

antepurasikkhāpada: the training precept on the harem; nom. sg. m. Loc. tapp. cpd. = **antepura**: harem, the king's palace; nt. noun. = **ante**: inside; adj. + **pura**: female apartment, fortress, castle.

rañño: king's, of a king; gen. sg. m. of *rājā*. (from the Sanskrit *rājñas*; see PG § 53,1.) The emphasis here on being noble and head-sprinkled is because *rājā* can also be a lesser ruler or a king's officer etc.; see note on *rājāno* at Pār 2. Here a powerful king is meant.

khattiyassa: a noble, warrior-noble; adj. qualifying *rañño*.

muddhābhisittassa: consecrated, head-sprinkled, H & Ñm: anointed; adj. = **muddha**: head + **abhisitta**: sprinkled over; p.p. of *abhisīcati* (*abhi* + √*sic* + *a*). "Anointed," as other translators render, means the sacred consecration of kings and priests by smearing or pouring oil as is mentioned in the Bible. However, in India water was sprinkled over the head as the way of consecrating; see VINS I 128 "*abhiṣeka*": "The Vedic king was consecrated after his election with an elaborate ritual ... The consecration took place by sprinkling with water (*abhiṣecanīyā āpah*)" Cf. *Encyclopedia of Buddhism* I 125 f. s.v. "Abhiṣeka."

Water-sprinkling ceremonies for bringing good fortune and fertility are still commonly done in South-East Asia.

V.l. *muddhāvasittassa*; *avasitta*, "sprinkled down," is the p.p. of *osiñcati* (*ava/o* + √*sic* + *a*). See PED *abhisitta* & *avasitta*. Sa PrMo: *mūrdhābhiṣiktasya*; PrMoSa p.231. Mā-L: *mūrdhābhiṣiktasya*: BV 198, PrMoMā-L p.29.

anikkhantarājake: "when the king has not -departed," Ñm: "while the king has still not made his exit (from the bedchamber)," H: "from which the king has not departed," Norman: "when the king has not departed"; adj. Locative absolute construction expressed in one cpd, like in *niṭṭhitacīvarasmim* at NP 1. (A *kammadhāraya* cpd acting as subordinate passive clause acting as an adjective to an unexpressed *sayananighare*: "*anikkhante rājake [sayanighare]*" like *suttāgata* in the Pātimokkha concl., would require the verb *pavisati* and the accusative case.) = **anikkhanta**: has not departed; neg. pref. **a-** + **nikkhanta**: departed, come out of; p.p. of *nikkhamati* (*ni[s]*- (see Pāc 34) + √*kham* + *a*). The word also occurs in the Vibh word-commentary on Pāc 43: "... *itthi ca puriso ca ubho anikkhantā honti ubho avītarāgā*." + **rājaka**: king; = *rājā*: king + adjectival suf. *-ka*.

It might not be clear why the adjectival suffix has been suffixed to this cpd and the next. However, the Sp explains that *anikkhantarājake* is a bahubbhi compound qualifying an unexpressed *sayananighare*: bedroom. Sp 880: "*Anikkhanto rājā ito ti anikkhantarājakaṃ. Tasmim anikkhantarājake sayanighare ti attho*": "The king has not departed from here' is 'the king has not departed.' 'In that bedroom from which the king has not departed,' is the meaning."

The Padabhājana, strangely enough, is also analysing the meaning of *sayananigharam* even though this word does not appear in the rule: "*Anikkhantarājake ti rājā sayanigharā anikkhanto hoti*." "...: the king has not departed from the bed-room." As Horner noted, either the word should have appeared in the rule or the Padabhājana is uniquely defining the word as it appears in the preceding definition of *indakhīlaṃ*.

The former seems more likely as it would explain the unusual adjectival *-rājaka* and *-ratanaka* forms.

aniggataratanake: "when the (queen-) treasure has not withdrawn," Ñm: "and while the (queen called the) Treasure has still not been conducted (from it)," H: "from which the queen has not withdrawn, Norman: "and the [queen-] treasure has not withdrawn." = **aniggata**: has not gone out, gone away; p.p. of *niggacchati* (*ni(s)* + √*gam* + *ya*). It is likely that in a royal household the queen would have been led out of the room by servants. + **ratanaka**: (queen-) treasure, jewel. + **ratana**: + adjectival suf. *-ka*. *Ratana* is here in the sense of the queen being one of the seven treasures of a king; see D II 175, cf. BD III 75 n. 2. Padabhājana: "*Aniggataratanake ti mahesī sayanigharā anikkhantā hoti, ubho vā anikkhantā honti*": "...: when the queen has not departed from the bed-room, or when both have not departed."

Sp 880: “*Ratanaṃ vuccati mahesī, niggatan ti nikkhantaṃ. Aniggataṃ ratanaṃ ito ti aniggataratanaṃ. Tasmiṃ aniggataratanaṃ sayanighare ti attho.*”: “The jewel is said to be the queen, ‘gone out’ is ‘departed.’ ‘The jewel has not gone out from here’ is ‘not gone out.’ ‘In that bedroom from which the jewel has not gone out’ is the meaning.”

V.l. *anībhata* & *anīhata*. The *bh* and *h* characters are easily confused in the Sinhala script. *Bhata* is p.p. of *bharati* (√*bhar* + *a*): “bears,” “carries,” so the meaning could be “carried out.”

For the confusion that has arisen over this cpd and the rest of the rule in the Sanskrit Buddhist traditions, see CSP 46–47, quoted in Ñm 113.

Sa PrMo: “... *aniṣkrānte rājñi anirgrhīteṣu ratneṣu*...”; PrMoSa p.231. Mā-L: “... *antaḥpuraṃ praviṣeyāniṣkrānte rājāne aniṣkrānte antaḥpure anirgatehi ratanehi* ...”; BV 198.

pubbe: before; adj. see NP 8.

appaṭisaṃvidito: without having been announced, who has not been announced, not been made known, Ñm: not being announced, H: not announced; adj. Bb. cpd. = neg. pref. *a-* + *paṭisaṃvidita*: p.p. of *paṭisaṃvedeti* ([*p*]paṭi + *saṃ* + √*vid* + *e*): experiences, perceives. Cf. Pd 4. Vibh: “... *pubbe anāmantetvā*”: “not having addressed, called.” Vibh to Pd 4: “... *sappaṭibhayan-ti ācikkhitabbaṃ*”: “... it is frightening” should be pointed out.” The meaning is that the bhikkhu has not made known his arrival.

indakhīlam., PED: Indra’s post, Ñm & H: threshold, Hinüber: a wooden post securing the wings of a door, CPD: a wooden post securing a city gate; acc. sg. m. = **inda**: the Vedic supreme god of the sky: Indra + **khīla**: post, column, slab, stake. According to Hinüber it is a low post put in the ground to secure the wings of a door. In SPPS 137–38 He discusses this somewhat obscure term and gives some examples from Sanskrit and Prākṛit literature that shed light on its meaning. Hinüber and CPD translate it as “wooden post,” but it might also be a post made out of stone, see PED 121. Kkh 239 explains it as the threshold of the bed-room: “... *sayananigharassa ummāraṃ*”

The Khuddakapāṭha commentary, KhpA 185 f., gives a clear explanation of the meaning of *indakhīla* in Sn 229. Ñāṇamoli’s translation of this is: “A locking-post (*indakhīlo*): this is a term for the post made of heart-wood hammered in after digging out the earth to a(a depth of) eight or ten hands in the middle of the threshold (of a city gateway), its purpose being to hold fast the (double) gates of a city.” (*Minor Readings and Illustrator* p.203.)

The significance of the *indakhīla* might also be that it marks the boundary of a protected (maybe by the god Inda) area or place whether a village or area in a palace. In Europe village boundaries were sometimes marked with a so-called a devil’s post: a small stone post with the image of the devil.

Misra (1972, p.229) mentions the *indakhīla* as the heavy wooden plank placed horizontally, against which the lower parts of the door closed and which marked the threshold of the house (*ummāna*). A plank like this, covered with silver, is found in the doorway of the relic chamber of the Temple of the Tooth in Kandy.

In the simile given in a verse in the Ratanasutta, Sn 229, the *indakhīla* signifies unshakeability (by the four winds), so also in S V 444 where it is mentioned together with an *āyokhīla*. This seems to indicate that the *indakhīla* could also be a free-standing post maybe similar to the Asoka-pillars. Warder 363 gives a different explanation and translation: “royal stake.”

Whatever it exactly means remains open for debate, but it is certain that it denotes the point of entry into the harem.

atikkameyya: should go beyond; 3 sg. opt. of *atikkamati*, not its causative *atikkāmeti* (see Sd 6, NP 1), which is transitive.

Mā-L rule 82: “*Yo puna bhikṣu rājñāḥ (aḥ) kṣatriyasya mūrdhāmabhiṣiktasya janapada-sthām (sthām) avīrya-prāptasya (prāptam) antaḥpuraṃ praviṣeyāniṣkrānte rājāne aniṣkrānte antaḥpure anirgatehi ratanehi antamasato indakīlam pi atikrameya pācattikaṃ*.”; BV 198, PrMoMā-L p.29.

[Pāc 84: Ratanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu ratanaṃ vā ratanasammatam vā, aññatra ajjhārāmā vā ajjhāvasathā vā uggaṇḥeyya vā uggaṇḥāpeyya vā, pācittiyaṃ.

Ratanaṃ vā pana bhikkhunā ratanasammatam vā ajjhārāme vā ajjhāvasathe vā uggahetvā vā uggahāpetvā⁵⁶² vā nikkhipitabbam, “Yassa bhavissati, so harissatī ti.” Ayaṃ tattha sāmīci.

[The training precept on treasures]

If any bhikkhu should pick up, or should make [someone else] pick up, a treasure or what is considered a treasure, except within a monastery or within a dwelling, [this is a case] involving expiation.

However, by a bhikkhu having picked up, or having had picked up, a treasure or what is considered a treasure within a monastery or within a dwelling, [it] is to be put aside [thinking]: “He to whom it belongs will take it.” This is the proper procedure here.

ratanaṃ: a treasure; acc. sg. nt.

vā: or; disj. particle.

ratanasammatam: what is considered as a treasure, agreed upon as ...; = bahubbīhi cpd. used as a noun in acc. sg. nt. = **ratana**: treasure + **sammata**: considered; see NP 29, Pāc 21.

aññatra: except; indeclinable that takes an abl. or ins.; see Sd 2.

ajjhārāmā: within a monastery; abl. sg. m. = *ajjha*: in, within = contracted (assimilated) form of pref. *adhi*- before a vowel + *ārāma*: (private-) park, (pleasure-) park, grove. Initially it had the sense of a park given to the Saṅgha by a rich sponsor to be used as a monastery such as “Anāthapiṇḍika’s park”: “*Anāthapiṇḍikārāma*.” However, it later came to have the sense of monastery as, for example in Pd 4, *ārāmas* in wilderness-areas are mentioned. See PED and DP.

ajjhāvasathā: within a dwelling-place; abl. sg. m. = *ajjha* + *āvāsatha*: dwelling-place; cf. *āvāsa*, Sd 13, Pāc 31.

uggaṇḥeyya: should pick up; 3 sg. opt. of *uggaṇhāti* (*ud* + *gah* + *ṇha*). Cf. NP 18.

uggaṇḥāpeyya: should make (someone else) pick up; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *uggaṇhāti*. Mā-L rule 49: “*udgrṇheya vā udgrṇhāpeya vā ... udgrṇhitavyaṃ vā udgrṇhāpayitavyaṃ vā*.”; BV 194, PrMoMā-L p.26.

pana: but; adversative particle.

bhikkhunā: ins. sg. m.

ajjhārāme ... ajjhāvasathe ...: loc. sg. of the above.

uggahetvā ...: having picked up; abs. of *uggaheti* (*ud* + $\sqrt{\text{gah}}$ + *e*), a side-form of *uggaṇhāti*; see PG § 139,2.

uggahāpetvā: having made (someone else) pick up; the causative of *uggaheti*. (The v.l. *uggaṇhāpetvā* = abs. of the causative of *uggaṇhāti*.)

nikkhipitabbam: to be put aside; f.p.p. of *nikkhipati*; see NP 3.

yassa: of whom, to whom; gen./dat. of rel. pron. *ya(d)*.

bhavissati: it is, it belongs, it will be; 3 sg. fut. of *bhavati*; see Pāc 77. See IP p.56 for the use of *bhavati* with a genitive.

so: he; 3 sg. nom. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

harissatī ti: he will take; 3 sg. fut. of *harati*; see NP 16. + ‘**ti**’: quotation mark.

bhavissati ... harissati ...: he to whom it belongs will take it, the one of whom it is, he will take it; lit.: of whom it will be he will take, H: It will be for him who will take it, Ñm: Whoever it belongs to will take it away; cf. Pāc 16 for this relative clause with future verbs to indicate certainty; see IP p.88.

ayaṃ tattha sāmīci: this is the proper procedure here; see Sd concl.

⁵⁶² Bh Pm 1 & 2, Mi & Mm Se, G, V, Ra, Pg: *uggaṇhāpetvā*.

[Pāc 85: Vikālagāmapavesanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu santaṃ bhikkhuṃ anāpucchā vikāle gāmaṃ paviseyya,⁵⁶³ aññatra tathārūpā accāyikā karaṇīyā,⁵⁶⁴ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on entering at the wrong time]

If any bhikkhu, not having asked (permission of) a bhikkhu who is present, should enter a village at the wrong time, except with an appropriate urgent duty, [this is a case] involving expiation.

santaṃ bhikkhuṃ anāpucchā: not having asked (permission of) a bhikkhu who is present; see Pāc 46.

vikāle: at the wrong time; loc. sg. m.; see Pāc 37.

gāmaṃ: village; acc. sg. m.

paviseyya: should enter; 3 sg. opt. of *pavisati*; see Pāc 42.

aññatra: except; indecl. taking abl.; see Pār 4.

tathārūpā: an appropriate, such a; adj. Bb cpd.; cf. Pār 2 and Pāc 48.

accāyikā: urgent; adj. See NP 28: *acceka*. = *ati* + *āya* + *ika*. here *-aya-* is not contracted to *e* as is usual in Pāli; see PG § 26, 1, and Sd 6: *kārayamāno*. Cf. M I 149 & A I 239 f. (*sīghasīghaṃ*).

karaṇīyā: with a duty, H: thing to be done, business, lit.: what is to be done; ins. sg. m. in *-ā*; see NP 16. For *aññatra* with an instrumental see Pāc 7: *-viggahena* and Pāc 48: *-paccayā*. = Ins. of attendant circumstances; see Syntax § 65,c. F.p.p. of *karoti* used as noun; see PG § 26,1 and Sd 6 *kārayamāno*.

[Pāc 86: Sūciḥarasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu aṭṭhimayaṃ vā dantamayaṃ vā visāṇamayaṃ vā sūciḥaraṃ⁵⁶⁵ kārāpeyya, bhedanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on the needle case]

If any bhikkhu should have a needle-case made, which is made of bone, or made of ivory, or made of horn, [this is a case] involving expiation with breaking up [the needle-case].

aṭṭhimayaṃ: which is made of bone; adj. qualifying *sūciḥaraṃ*. Genitive tapp. cpd (see IP p.92) used as bb cpd. = **aṭṭhi**: bone + **-maya**: -made; adj. = dependent word; see IP p.92.

dantamayaṃ: which is made of ivory; adj. = *danta*: ivory, tooth + *-maya*.

visāṇamayaṃ: which is made of horn; adj. = *visāṇa*: horn + *-maya*.

sūciḥaraṃ: needle-case, case for needles; acc. sg. nt. Dat. tapp. cpd. See Pāc 60.

kārāpeyya: should have (someone else) make; 3 sg. opt. of the causative of *kāreti*; see Sd 6 & NP 11.

bhedanakaṃ: Ām & Norman: with breaking up, H: involving breaking up; an adjective qualifying *pācittiyaṃ*; see NP intro. Cf. Hinüber 1999 p.18 & 62. = *bhedana*: breaking up; action-noun + *-ka*: connective adjectival suffix.

Sp 883/Kkh 243: “*bhedanaṃ eva bhedanakaṃ, taṃ assa atthi*”: “*Bhedanaṃ* (action-noun) is just (the same as) *bhedanakaṃ*, that there is for him.”

The Vibhaṅga mentions that the bhikkhu, after having broken the needle-case that has been made out of the improper material after obtaining it, is to confess a case involving expiation: “*Paṭilābhena bhinditvā pācittiyaṃ desetabbaṃ*.”

⁵⁶³ V: *paviseyya*.

⁵⁶⁴ V: *karaṇīyā*.

⁵⁶⁵ V: *suci-*. Cf. Pāc. 60.

[Pāc 87: Mañcapīṭhasikkhāpadaṃ]

Navam⁵⁶⁶ pana⁵⁶⁶ bhikkhunā mañcam⁵⁶⁷ vā pīṭham⁵⁶⁷ vā kārayamānena aṭṭhaṅgulapādakam⁵⁶⁸ kāretabbam⁵⁶⁹ sugataṅgulena⁵⁶⁸, aññatra heṭṭhimāya⁵⁶⁹ aṭaniyā⁵⁷⁰. Tam⁵⁷⁰ atikkāmayato, chedanakam⁵⁷³ pācittiyam⁵⁷³.

[The training precept on beds or seats]

By a bhikkhu who is having a new bed or seat made, [a bed or seat] which has legs of eight finger-breadths is to be made, according to the Sugata-finger-breadth, except the lowermost [edge of the] frame. For one who lets it exceed [this measure], [this is a case] involving expiation with cutting [down the legs].

navam⁵⁶⁶ pana⁵⁶⁶ bhikkhunā ... kārayamānena: by a bhikkhu who is having a new ... made; see NP 13 (and Pāc 58). V.l. *navampana*. = assimilation of -ṃ with the following p.)

mañcam⁵⁶⁷ vā pīṭham⁵⁶⁷: bed or seat see Pāc 14.

aṭṭhaṅgulapādakam⁵⁶⁸: which has legs of eight finger-breadths, eight-finger-breadth-legged, Ñm: with legs eight fingers of the sugata-finger; adj. Bb. cpd. qualifying *mañcam* and *pīṭham*. = **aṭṭhaṅgula**: eight-fingerbreadths; digu cpd. = **aṭṭha**: eight; num. + **aṅgula**: finger-breadth; from *aṅguli*: finger. Thanissaro, BMC 528–29 (Appendix II), estimates that a fingerbreadth is about 2.08 cm. + **pādaka**: which has feet, -legged; adj. See Pāc 18.

kāretabbam⁵⁶⁹: is to be made; f.p.p. of *kāreti*; see Sd 6.

sugataṅgulena⁵⁶⁸: according to the Sugata-finger-breadth; ins. sg. m. = Ins. of relation; see Syntax § 70. Gen. tapp. cpd. See BD III 90 n. 3. = **sugata**: well-gone; see Sd 6 + **aṅgula**: see above.

aññatra⁵⁶⁹: except; indecl. Here in the sense of “not including.”

heṭṭhimāya⁵⁶⁹: lower-most, lowest; adj. agreeing with *aṭaniyā*. *Heṭṭhima* is the superlative of **heṭṭhā**: below; indecl.

aṭaniyā⁵⁷⁰: from the frame; abl. sg. f. See BD III 90 n. 4 & PED.

aññatra heṭṭhimāya aṭaniyā⁵⁷⁰: H: except for the knotted ends below, Ñm: excepting the frame below, *Vinaya Texts*: exclusive of the lowermost piece of the bed-frame, Than: not counting the lower edge of the frame. Cf. BD III 90 n. 4. DP 49 *aṭani*: part of bed or chair (probably the rails forming the frame). Cf. J IV 84: “*rājā sokapareto ... mañcassa ... aṭanim pariggahetvā vilapento nipajji*.”

tam⁵⁷⁰ atikkāmayato⁵⁷⁰: for one who lets it exceed (the limit); see Sd 6 and NP 1.

chedanakam⁵⁷³: Ñm: with cutting down, H: involving cutting down; adj. qualifying *pācittiyam* = **chedana**: cutting; action-noun from *chid* + conn. suf. -ka.

[Pāc 88: Tūlonaddhasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu mañcam⁵⁷¹ vā pīṭham⁵⁷¹ vā tūlonaddham⁵⁷² kārapeyya, uddālanakam⁵⁷³ pācittiyam⁵⁷³.

[The training precept on covered with cotton]

If any bhikkhu should have a bed or seat covered with cotton made, [this is a case] involving expiation with tearing off [the cotton].

tūlonaddham⁵⁷²: which has been covered with cotton; adj. Bb. cpd. = **tūla**: cotton + **onaddha**: covered up; adj.,

⁵⁶⁶ Bh Pm 1 & 2, Mi Se, G, V: *navampana*.

⁵⁶⁷ V: *pīṭham*.

⁵⁶⁸ V: *sutaṅgulena*.

⁵⁶⁹ Mm Se: *hetthimāya*.

⁵⁷⁰ V: *aṭṭhaniyā*.

⁵⁷¹ V: *pīṭham*.

⁵⁷² C, UP, V, Ra: *tul*.

⁵⁷³ Bh Pm 1 & 2, Ra, Pg: *uddālanakam*.

p.p. of *onandhati* (*o/ava* + √*nand* + *ṇa*).

kārāpeyya: should have (someone else) make; 3 sg. opt. of *kāreti*; see Sd 6, NP 11.

uddālanakam: with tearing off, involving tearing off; adj. qualifying *pācittiya*. = **uddālana**: action-noun from *uddāleti* (*ud* + √*dāl* + *a*): tears off + conn. suf. **-ka**.

[Pāc 89: Nisīdanasikkhāpadam]

Nisīdanam pana⁵⁷⁴ **bhikkhunā kārayamānena pamāṇikam kāretabbam**. **Tatr'idaṃ**⁵⁷⁵ **pamāṇam, dīghaso dve vidatthiyo sugatavidatthiyā, tiriyaṃ diyaḍḍham,**⁵⁷⁶ **dasā vidatthi. Taṃ atikkāmayato, chedanakam pācittiyaṃ.**

[The training precept on the sitting-cloth]

By a bhikkhu who is having a sitting-cloth made, [a sitting-cloth] which has the [proper] measure is to be made. This measure here is: two spans of the sugata-span in length, one and a half across, [and] the border is a span. For one who lets it exceed [the measure], [this is a case] involving expiation with cutting [off the cloth].

nisīdanam: sitting-cloth; acc. sg. nt. see NP 15, Pāc 60.

pana bhikkhunā kārayamānena ... tatr'idaṃ pamāṇam: dīghaso ... vidatthiyo sugatavidatthiyā, tiriyaṃ: by a bhikkhu who is having ... made ... which has the [proper] measure. This measure here is...; see Sd 6.

pamāṇikam kāretabbam: (a sitting-cloth) which has the [proper] measure is to be made; see Sd 6.

pamāṇikam: [proper] measure; adjective qualifying and agreeing with an unexpressed *nisīdanam* in nom. sg. nt.

kāretabbam: is to be made, is to be caused to be made; f.p.p. of *kāreti* agreeing with an unexpressed *nisīdanam*.

dve: two; nom. num. adj. form of num. *dvi*.

diyaḍḍham: one and a half; see Pāc 57.

dasā: border; nom. sg. f.

vidatthi: a span; nom. sg. f.

dasā vidatthi: the border is a span; juxtaposition of two nouns without a verb, asserting that a thing is something (as attribute). In translating the verb “to be” must be used. See Warder p. 9.

taṃ atikkāmayato chedanakam: see Pāc 87.

[Pāc 90: Kaṇḍuppaṭicchādisikkhāpadam]

Kaṇḍuppaṭicchādiṃ⁵⁷⁷ **pana bhikkhunā kārayamānena pamāṇikā kāretabbā. Tatr'idaṃ**⁵⁷⁸ **pamāṇam, dīghaso catasso vidatthiyo sugatavidatthiyā, tiriyaṃ dve vidatthiyo. Taṃ atikkāmayato, chedanakam pācittiyaṃ.**

[The training precept on itch-coverings]

By a bhikkhu who is having an itch-covering [-cloth] made, [an itch-covering] which has the [proper] measure is to be made. This measure here is: four spans of the Sugata-span in length, two spans across. For one who lets it exceed [the measure], [this is a case] involving expiation with cutting off [the cloth].

As Pāc 89 except:

⁵⁷⁴ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, G, V, W, Mi Se, Sannē: *nisīdanam-pana*.

⁵⁷⁵ V: *tatr'idaṃ*.

⁵⁷⁶ V: *diyaḍḍham*.

⁵⁷⁷ Dm: *kaṇḍuppaṭicchādiṃ*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, G: *-ccchādim-pana*.

⁵⁷⁸ V: *tatr'idaṃ*.

kaṇḍupaṭicchādī: itch-covering (-cloth), itch-cloth; acc. sg. f. Gen. tapp. cpd. Cf. Vin III 296. = **kaṇḍu**: itch, itching + **paṭicchādi**: covering, covering-cloth, bandage; feminine action-noun fr. *paṭicchādeti*; see Sd concl.

pamāṇikā: [proper] measure; adjective qualifying and agreeing with the unexpressed *kaṇḍupaṭicchādī* in nom. sg. f.

In the Mā-L and Sa versions of this rule and the next rule there is agreement of cases. Mā-L: “*kaṇḍupaṭicchādānaṃ bhikkhūṇā kārapayamānena pramāṇikaṃ kārapayitavyaṃ ...*”; BV 199, PrMoMā-L p.28. Sa: “*kaṇḍupaṭicchādānaṃ bhikkhūṇā kārayatā pramāṇikaṃ kārayitavyaṃ ...*” PrMoSa p. 234.

kāretabbā: is to be made; .p.p. of *kāreti* agreeing with the unexpressed *kaṇḍupaṭicchādī*.

catasso: four; adj. qualifying *vidatthiyo*, = numeral; see PG § 117 & IP p.153.

[Pāc 91: Vassikasāṭīkasikkhāpadaṃ]

Vassikasāṭīkaṃ⁵⁷⁹ pana⁵⁸⁰ bhikkhunā kārayamānena pamāṇikā kāretabbā. Tatr’idaṃ⁵⁸¹ pamāṇaṃ, dīghaso cha vidatthiyo sugatavidatthiyā, tiriyaṃ aḍḍhateyyā.⁵⁸² Taṃ atikkāmayato, chedanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

[The training precept on rain’s bathing-cloth]

By a bhikkhu who is having a rain’s bathing-cloth made, [a bathing-cloth] which has the [proper] measure is to be made. This measure here is: six spans of the sugata-span in length, two and a half across. For one who lets it exceed [the measure], [this is a case] involving expiation with cutting [off the cloth].

vassikasāṭīkaṃ: rain’s (bathing-) wear, rains cloth; acc. sg. m. See NP 24.

pamāṇikā: [proper] measure; adjective qualifying an unexpressed *vassikasāṭīkā* in nom. sg. f.

Mā-L: “*Varṣāsāṭīkā bhikkhūṇā kārapayamānena pramāṇikā kārapayitavyā*”; PrMoMā-L p.28. Sa: “*varṣāsāṭīcīvaraṃ bhikkhūṇā kārayatā pramāṇikaṃ kārayitavyaṃ ...*” PrMoSa p. 233.

kāretabbā: is to be made; .p.p. of *kāreti* agreeing with the unexpressed *vassikasāṭīkā* in nom. sg. f.

cha: six; num.

aḍḍhateyyā: two and a half; num. see Pāc 57.

[Pāc 92: Nandasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu sugatacīvarappamāṇaṃ⁵⁸³ cīvaraṃ kārāpeyya atirekaṃ vā, chedanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ.

Tatr’idaṃ⁵⁸⁴ sugatassa sugatacīvarappamāṇaṃ,⁵⁸⁵ dīghaso nava vidatthiyo sugatavidatthiyā, tiriyaṃ cha vidatthiyo. Idaṃ sugatassa sugatacīvarappamāṇaṃ.⁵⁸⁶

Rājavaggo⁵⁸⁷ navamo.

[The Nanda training precept]

⁵⁷⁹ G, Mi Se v.l. (*porānapotthake, marammapotthake*): -sāṭīkā. It is possible that originally this rule and the previous one read -cchādī/-cchādi and -sāṭīkā, i.e., nominative feminines (as found in the padabhājana). The sentence is passive and the patient is therefore in the nominative.

⁵⁸⁰ C, Sannē: -sāṭīkaṃ-pana.

⁵⁸¹ V: tatr’idaṃ.

⁵⁸² V: aḍḍhateyya..

⁵⁸³ G: sugatacīvaraṃ-pamāṇaṃ.

⁵⁸⁴ V: tatr’idaṃ.

⁵⁸⁵ G: sugatacīvaraṃ-pamāṇaṃ.

⁵⁸⁶ C, W, Dm, Um, Mi Se v.l.: *pamāṇaṃ-ti*. D: *pamāṇaṃ ti*. G (In a later faint correction.): *sugatacīvaraṃ-pamāṇaṃ-ti*. This quotation mark *ti* here seems to be a remnant from the quotation of the rule in the Suttavibhaṅga. In the Suttavibhaṅga all rules end in *ti* as they were spoken by the Buddha, while the Pātimokkha is recited by other monks.

⁵⁸⁷ All editions, except Vibh Ce, have: *ratanavagga*. The Vibh Ce reading has been chosen here as it is found in the Parivāra, Vin V 27; see the section on chapter-division in the Introduction. The *Sikkhāpada-uddāna* at the end of Bh Pm 1 and 2 (see below) also has *rājavagga* in its summary of the Pācittiya section-titles.

If any bhikkhu should have a robe made which has the sugata-robe measure or [one] which is more [than that], [this is a case] involving expiation with cutting [off the robe].

This is the Sugata's sugata-robe measure here: nine spans of the sugata-span in length, six spans across. This is the Sugata's sugata-robe measure.

The section [starting with the rule] on kings is ninth.

nandasikkhāpadam: the Nanda training precept; nom. sg. m. Appositive kammadhāraya cpd; see Pār 1. Nanda is here a proper name. Nanda bhikkhu plays the leading role in the origin-story to this rule in the Suttavibhaṅga.

sugatacīvarappamāṇam: sugata-robe measure, Well-gone-One's-(robe)-cloth-measure; adj. genitive tappurisa cpd. used as a Bb cpd qualifying *cīvaram*, containing the genitive tappurisa cpd.: *sugatacīvara*: robe (-cloth) of the Well-gone One, or the genitive tappurisa cpd.: *cīvarappamāṇam*: measure of robe (-cloth). Both give the same translation. = **sugata**: Well-gone; see Pāc 87. + **cīvara**: robe + **pamāṇam**: measure; see Sd 6. The initial *p-* in the prefix *pa-* of *pamāṇa* is doubled under influence of the Vedic Sanskrit form *pra-*; see IP p.11 n. 1 & 2 and NP 16: *-maggappaṭi-*.

cīvaram: acc. sg. nt. **kārāpeyya**: should have (someone else) make; see Sd 6 & NP 11.

atirekam: more, more than; adj. qualifying *cīvaram*; see NP 1. **chedanakam**: see Pāc 87.

sugatassa: Sugata's, of the Well-gone one; gen. sg. m.

sugatavidatthiyā: Sugata-spans; nom. pl. m. = **sugata** + **vidatthiya**: span; see Sd 6.

cha: six; num. **nava**: nine; num.

rājavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on kings, the king-section; nom. sg. m. = **rāja**: king; see Pāc 83 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

navamo: ninth, (which is) the ninth one; ordinal.

[Pācittiya conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhā kho āyasmanto dvenavuti pācittiyā dhammā.

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Dutiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Parisuddh'etthāyasmanto, tasmā tuṇhī, evam-etam dhārayāmi.⁵⁸⁸

Pācittiyā niṭṭhitā.

Venerables, the ninety-two cases involving expiation have been recited.

Concerning that I ask the Venerables: [Are you] pure in this?

A second time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

A third time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

The venerables are pure in this, therefore there is silence, thus I keep this [in mind].

The [cases] involving expiation are finished.

⁵⁸⁸ Dm, UP, Ra, Um: *dhārayāmi ti*.

uddiṭṭhā ... niṭṭhitā: see Pāc intro. & Nid concl.

[Pāṭidesanīyā⁵⁸⁹]

Ime kho panāyasmanto cattāro pāṭidesanīyā⁵⁹⁰ dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti.

[Pd 1: Paṭhamapāṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yo pana bhikkhu aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā antaragharaṃ paviṭṭhāya hatthato khādanīyaṃ vā bhojanīyaṃ⁵⁹¹ vā sahatthā paṭiggahetvā khādeyya vā bhuñjeyya vā, paṭidesetabbaṃ tena bhikkhunā, “Gārayhaṃ āvuso dhammaṃ āpajjiṃ, asappāyaṃ, pāṭidesanīyaṃ,⁵⁹² taṃ paṭidesemi ti.”⁵⁹³

[The cases that are to be acknowledged]

Venerables, these four cases that are to be acknowledged come up for recitation.

[The first training precept on what is to be acknowledged]

If any bhikkhu, having accepted [it] with his own hand from the hand of an unrelated bhikkhunī who has entered an inhabited area [for alms], should chew uncooked food or eat cooked food], [it] is to be acknowledged by that bhikkhu [saying]: “Friend[s], I have committed a blameworthy act which is unsuitable, which is to be acknowledged; I acknowledge it.”

paṭhama-pāṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ: the first training precept on what is to be acknowledged, to be acknowledged training precept; nom. sg. nt. A kammadhāraya containing a locative tappurisa cpd:

pāṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ: the training precept on what is to be acknowledged = **paṭhama**: first; adj. +

pāṭidesanīya: (what is) to be acknowledged + **sikkhāpada**: training precept; see Pār 1.

Ime kho panāyasmanto ... dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti: see Sd intro.

cattāro: four; num.

pāṭidesanīyā: which are to be acknowledged, acknowledgeable, H & Ñm: to be confessed, Than: to be acknowledged, to be admitted; f.p.p. of *paṭideseti* (*paṭi* + *dis* + *e*) used as adjective qualifying *dhammā*. The future passive participles in *-nīya* are more often used as adjectives, while the forms ending in *-tabba* like *paṭidesetabba* are more often sentence verbs; see IP p.104.

See A III 215: “... upāsakasatāni paṭidesitāni samādapitāni ...,” IV 66: “yadāhaṃ bhante upāsikā paṭidesitā ...” The word “confess” would be too strong to fit the *upāsaka* acknowledgement or admission of their commitment to the Dhamma. On the other hand, the standard formula for confessing offences contains a form of *paṭideseti*. Vin I 126: “... ahaṃ itthan-nāmaṃ āpattiṃ āpanno taṃ paṭidesemi.”

At A II 243 (Ee) *pāṭidesanīyakā* is given in all mss, except one Burmese one. Mā-L: *prāṭidesanika*; BV 293 n. 5. Sa & Mū: *pratidesanīya*; PrMoSa p.236–39, LC 10.

aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā ... hatthato ...: from the hand of an unrelated bhikkhunī; see NP 5.

aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā antaragharaṃ paviṭṭhāya: of an unrelated bhikkhunī who has entered an inhabited area, H: of a nun who is not a relation (and) who has entered among the houses, Ñm: of a bhikkhuni who is not related to him who has gone into an inhabited area.

Mā-L: “Yo puna bhikṣur-anyātikāye bhikṣuṇīye antaragrhaṃ praviṣṭāye agilāno svahastaṃ khādanīyaṃ vā bhojanīyaṃ” PrMoMā-L p.29. Mū: “Yaḥ punar bhikṣur ajñātikāyā bhikṣuṇīyā rathyāgatāyā grāmaṃ piṇḍāya carantyā [s]aṃtikāt svahasam khādanīyabhojanīyaṃ ...”; LC 9. Yaḥ punar bhikṣur antargrhaṃ piṇḍāya carantyā ajñātyā

⁵⁸⁹ = Dm. (In Um in brackets.) Mi Se: *Cattāro pāṭidesanīyā dhammā*.

⁵⁹⁰ C, D, V, W, G, Vibh Ee: *pāṭidesanīyā*.

⁵⁹¹ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee, Um: *khādanīyaṃ & bhojanīyaṃ*.

⁵⁹² C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee: *pāṭidesanīyaṃ*.

⁵⁹³ Bh Pm 1: *īti*. (Not so in Pd 2, but again in Pd 3–4.)

bhikṣuṇyāḥ santikāt svahastaṃ khādanīyabhojanīyaṃ ...; PrMoSa p.236.

antaragharaṃ: an inhabited area, a house-compound, H: among the houses, Ñm: into an inhabited area; acc. sg. nt. Cf. NP 29 *antaraghare*. Here the scope of the word *antaraghara* seems to be wider as in the origin-story it is said that the bhikkhunī entered the town of Sāvattthī for alms.

paviṭṭhāya: who has entered; p.p. of *pavisati* used as adj. qualifying *bhikkhuniyā*. Cf. Vin I 40: “*antaragharaṃ paviṭṭho piṇḍāya carati*”

khādanīyaṃ vā bhojanīyaṃ vā khādeyya vā bhuñjeyya: should chew uncooked food or eat cooked food; see Pāc 35.

sahatthā: with his own hand; ins. sg. m. See NP 16.

paṭiggahetvā: having accepted; abs. of *paṭigaṇhāti*; see NP 3.

paṭidesetabbaṃ: to be acknowledged; (another form of) the f.p.p. of *paṭideseti* used as an impersonal passive sentence verb in nom. sg. nt.; see IP p.41, 104, and 107.

tena bhikkhunā: by that bhikkhu; ins. see Sd concl.

gārayhaṃ: to be blamed, blameable, H: blameworthy, Ñm: censurable; f.p.p. of *garahati*; see Sd concl.

āvuso: friend(s); see above Nid.

dhammaṃ: act, case, thing, matter; acc. sg. m. See Pār 1.

āpajjīṃ: I have committed; 1 sg. aor. of *āpajjati*; see above Nid.

asappāyaṃ: which is unsuitable, H & Ñm: unbecoming; adj. = neg. pref. *a-* + *saṃ* + *pa* + *aya* (= $\sqrt{i} + a > aya/e$).

pāṭidesanīyaṃ: which is to be acknowledged; adj. see Pd intro.

taṃ: that; acc. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

paṭidesemī ti: I acknowledge; 1 sg. pres. ind. of *paṭideseti*; see above. + *ti*: quotation mark.

[Pd 2: Dutiyapāṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Bhikkhū pan’eva kulesu nimantitā bhuñjanti, tatra ce⁵⁹⁴ bhikkhunī⁵⁹⁵ vosāsamānarūpā ṭhitā hoti, “idha sūpaṃ detha, idha odanaṃ dethā ti,” tehi bhikkhūhi sā bhikkhunī⁵⁹⁶ apasādetabbā, “apasakka tāva bhagini,⁵⁹⁷ yāva bhikkhū bhuñjanti ti,” ekassa pi ce⁵⁹⁸ bhikkhuno nappaṭibhāseyya⁵⁹⁹ taṃ bhikkhunim apasādetuṃ,⁶⁰⁰ “apasakka tāva bhagini,⁶⁰¹ yāva bhikkhū bhuñjanti ti,” paṭidesetabbaṃ tehi bhikkhūhi, “Gārayhaṃ āvuso dhammaṃ āpajjīmā,⁶⁰² asappāyaṃ, pāṭidesanīyaṃ,⁶⁰³ taṃ paṭidesemā ti.”

[The second training precept on what is to be acknowledged]

Now, bhikkhus who have been invited are eating among families, and if a bhikkhunī who is giving directions is standing there [saying], “Give curry here, give rice here!” [then] by those bhikkhus that bhikkhunī is to be dismissed [saying], “Go away, sister, for as long as the bhikkhus eat!,” and if not even one bhikkhu would speak against [it, so as] to dismiss that bhikkhunī [saying], “Go away, sister, for as long as the bhikkhus eat!,” [then it] is to be acknowledged by those bhikkhus, “Friend[s], we have committed a blameworthy act which is unsuitable, which is to be acknowledged; we acknowledge it.”

⁵⁹⁴ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, G, V, W, Dm, Um, UP, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee, Mi Se, Ra, Pg: *tatra ce sā bhikkhunī*. Mi Se v.l., Mm Se: *tatra ce bhikkhunī*.

⁵⁹⁵ W: *bhikkhuni*.

⁵⁹⁶ W: *bhikkhuni*.

⁵⁹⁷ C, Um: *bhaginī*.

⁵⁹⁸ D, W, Um, UP, Vibh Ee, Sannē: *ce pi*.

⁵⁹⁹ Dm, UP, Vibh Ee: *na paṭibhāseyya*. (Pg: *nappaṭibhāseyya*.)

⁶⁰⁰ G: *appasādetuṃ* ? immediately (inked) corrected to *appa-*.

⁶⁰¹ C, Um: *bhaginī*.

⁶⁰² C, D, W, Um, Sannē: *āpajjīmā* (= also a legitimate 1 pl. *a*-aorist.) In G the *ā* character stroke in *-īmā* has been scribbled through making it *-imā*.

⁶⁰³ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee: *pāṭidesanīyaṃ*.

bhikkhū: bhikkhus; nom. pl. m.

pan'eva: now; see Sd 12.

kulesu: among families, in the company of families, with families; loc. pl. nt. Locative of place where; see Syntax § 164d & e.

nimantitā: who have been invited, being invited; adj., p.p. of *nimanteti*, see Pāc 46, agreeing with *bhikkhū*.

bhuñjanti: are eating, they eat, consume; 3 pl. pres. ind. of *bhuñjati*.

nimantitā bhuñjanti: eat being invited.

tatra: there, then, now; here adv. of place. See Pār intro.

ce: if, and if; hyp. (or a conn.) particle.; see NP 8.

bhikkhunī: nom. sg. f. See Pāc 21.

tatra ce bhikkhunī: and if a bhikkhunī ... there; see NP 8, here feminine.

V.1. *tatra ce sā bhikkhunī*: There is no reason to have the demonstrative pronoun *sā* here as there is no *bhikkhunī* in a preceding part of the sentence or rule that it could refer back to. It might be a corruption due to the *sā* in the next line, or "*tatra ce so bhikkhu*" in NP 8, or, more likely, the equivalent NPs (8, 9, 27) in the Bhikkhunī Pm, i.e., *tatra ce sā*. In the origin-story the group of six bhikkhunīs are the cause, and *sā bhikkhunī*, being singular, cannot refer to them. The Padabhājana first comments only on the word *bhikkhunī*: "*bhikkhunī nāma ...*," while it comments on "*sā bhikkhunī*" later in this rule: "*sā bhikkhunī ti yā sā vosāsanti bhikkhunī*." This suggest that the original rule did not have *sā* here.

Sa: "*tatra ced bhikṣuṇī vyapadiśamānā sthitā syād ...*"; PrMoSa p.236. Mā-L: "*tatra ce bhikṣuṇī visvāsamānasrūpā sthitā bhavati*."; PrMoMā-L p.29. Mū: "*tatra ced bhikṣuṇī vyapadiśati sthitā syād*"; LC 10."

vosāsamānarūpā: who is giving directions, orders, commanding, H: as though giving orders, Ñm & Norman: giving directions; adj. qualifying *bhikkhunī*. Bahubbīhi cpd. = **vosāsamāna**: pr.p. of *vosāsati* (*vi* + *o/ava* + *√sās* + *a*). + **-rūpa**: pleonastic adjective.

Origin-story: "... *bhikkhuniyo ... vosāsantiyo ʃhitā honti*." The Padabhājana does not directly comment on *vosāsamāna* but instead comments on (the pr.p) *vosāsanti* (*bhikkhunī*): "*vosāsanti nāma yathāmittatā*" The *anāpatti*-section of the Suttavibhaṅga has: "... *sāmaṇerī vosāsati ...*"

It could also be a fossilised junction form from Sanskrit, see PG § 66 & 72,2, i.e., *avasāsamāna*, like the form *vonata* besides *onata*, which corresponds to the Skt *avanata*. Another possibility is that it is the fossilised sandhi vowel *-v-* + *osāsamāna*: pr.p. of *osāsati* which perhaps is related to *osāreti* (*ava* + *√sar* + *e*): propounds, explains; cf. MW 105: *ava* + *√so*, *avasāya*: chooses or appoints (as a place of dwelling or for a sacrifice). Cf. *voropeyya* at Pār 3.

ʃhitā: standing; p.p. of *tiṭṭhati* qualifying *bhikkhunī*.

hoti: is; 3 sg. pres. ind. of *bhavati*. *Hoti* is in this construction with *ʃhitā* an auxiliary verb expressing generality; see IP p.237.

idha: here; adv.

sūpaṃ: curry; acc. sg. m. See Sekh 29 and 36.

detha: give; 2 pl. imp. of *dadāti*.

odanam: rice; acc. sg. m.

tehi: by those; 3 pl. ins. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. **bhikkhūhi**: ins. pl. m.

sā: that; 3 sg. f. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. Referring back to the *bhikkhunī* who is giving orders.

apasādetabbā: is to be dismissed, Ñm: must be asked to desist, H: to be rebuked; f.p.p. of *apasādeti* (causative of **apa* + *śidati*): desists, dismisses, rebukes; see DP. Cf. origin-story to Bhi-Pāc 6 where a bhikkhunī is disparaged of attending to a bhikkhu.

apasakka: go away, Ñm: leave, H: stand aside; 2 sg. imp. of *apasakkati* (*apa* + *√sak* + *a*), also at Vin IV 70, 1: "... *tiṭṭhiyā apasakkanti*"

tāva ... yāva: for as long as, lit: “so long ... until ...”; see Pāc 71. = **tāva:** so long; adv. in correlation to *yāva*.
yāva: as long as, until; correlative adv.; cf. Sd 10.

bhagini: sister; voc. sg. f. See Sd 4.

bhuñjantī ti: they eat; 3 pl. pres. ind. = *bhuñjanti + ti*.

ekassa pi ce: even if to one; = **ekassa:** one of; adj. dat. sg. of num. eka. + **pi:** even; emph. part; see Pār 1. + **ce:** and if; conn. particle.

bhikkhuno: by a bhikkhu; gen. sg. m. Instrumental-like genitive; see NP 8: “*aññātakassa gahapatissa*.” In English one can’t render “by” and retain a proper sentence syntax so I did not translate it.

nappaṭibhāseyya: should speak against/back, Ñm & Than: should not speak, H: it should not occur. = **nappaṭi:** the proclitic use of *na* in a junction, here with *paṭi*; see NP 16: *maggappaṭi-*, and PG § 74,1 & PED 344. = **na:** not; neg. particle. + **paṭibhāseyya:** should speak against; 3 sg. opt. of *paṭibhāsati* (*paṭi + √bhās*): “speaks against,” “addresses in return” with a genitive *bhikkhuno*.

Horner translates it as a 3 sg. opt. of *paṭibhāti* (*paṭi + √bhā + a*): appears, occurs, comes to mind; with a dative *bhikkhuno*, but this, besides the fact that this would not be a proper formation of the optative of the verb *paṭibhāti*, is incorrect as is shown below.

ekassa pi ce bhikkhuno nappaṭibhāseyya: And if not even by one bhikkhu (it) should be spoken against, Ñm: if not even one bhikkhu should speak, H: if it should not occur to single monk. See A IV 259 “*ettakaṃ pi no nappaṭibhāseyyā ti ...*”: “this much would not have been said by us...”, Ud 27: “*ettakaṃ pi te na paṭibhāseyya ...*(v.l.: *nappaṭi-*).” These other occurrence of *paṭibhāsati* with a genitive enclitic pronoun show that *ekassa bhikkhuno* here too is a instrumental-like genitive.

Mā-L: “*ekabhikṣūpi ca taṃ bhikṣuṇīṃ neva vadeya*”; PrMoMā-L p.30. Sa: “*ekabhikṣor api ce (n)na pratibhāyāt taṃ bhikṣuṇī(ṃ) evaṃ vaktum*”; PrMoSa 237. Mū almost identical; LC 10.

taṃ: that; acc. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*. **bhikkhunim:** acc. sg. f.

apasādetum: to dismiss; inf. of *apasādeti*; see above.

paṭidesetabbaṃ ... taṃ paṭidesemā ti: as Pd 1 but here plural in number.

[Pd 3: Tatiyapāṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yāni kho pana tāni sekhasammatāni⁶⁰⁴ kulāni, yo pana bhikkhu tathārūpesu sekhasammatesu⁶⁰⁵ kulesu pubbe animantito⁶⁰⁶ agilāno⁶⁰⁷ khādanīyaṃ vā bhojanīyaṃ⁶⁰⁸ vā sahatthā paṭiggahetvā khādeyya vā bhuñjeyya vā, paṭidesetabbaṃ tena bhikkhunā, “Gārayhaṃ āvuso dhammaṃ āpajjīm, asappāyaṃ, pāṭidesanīyaṃ,⁶⁰⁹ taṃ paṭidesemī ti.”⁶¹⁰

[The third training precept on what is to be acknowledged]

Now, [there are] those families which are agreed upon as trainees: if any bhikkhu who has not been invited beforehand, who is not ill, should chew uncooked food or eat cooked food having accepted [it] with his own hand in families who are of such a kind, who are considered trainees, [then it] is to be acknowledged by that bhikkhu: “Friend[s], I have committed a blameworthy act which is unsuitable, which is to be acknowledged; I acknowledge it.”

yāni ... tāni ...: those ... which; nom. pl. nt. Correlative construction.

kho pana: now; emphatic particles; see Nid.

⁶⁰⁴ Dm, Mi & Mm Se, G, V: *sekkha-*. (Pg: *sekkha-*)

⁶⁰⁵ Dm, Mi & Mm Se, G, V: *sekkha-*.

⁶⁰⁶ C, W: *apanimantito*.

⁶⁰⁷ V: *agilāno*.

⁶⁰⁸ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee, Um: *khādanīyaṃ & bhojanīyaṃ*.

⁶⁰⁹ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee: *pāṭidesanīyaṃ*.

⁶¹⁰ Bh Pm 1: *iti*.

yāni kho pana tāni ...: see NP 23 and 29.

sekhasammatāni: agreed upon as trainees, Ñm: declared Initiate, H: as are agreed upon as learners; adj. = **sekha:** trainee, one who is training; action-noun from the verb *sikkhati*, see Sd 12, Pāc 71. + **sammata:** agreed upon, designated; p.p., see NP 2, 29.

A *sekha* is a disciple of the Buddha, such as a *sotāpanna*, who is endowed with supermundane knowledge regarding the four *ariyasaccas* and is training to fully realize these truths and become an *asekha*: “one who is not training,” i.e., an *arahant*. However, in this case any family which is increasing in faith and decreasing in wealth (to the extent that they have to go without), can be agreed upon as trainees by a local sangha through a formal announcement and motion.

V.l. *sekkha-* is an adjectival derivative from *sekha* (Both the forms, pronounced *sēkha* (*ē* = long *e*) and *sēkkha* (*ē* = short *e*), are in accordance with the law of Morae; PG § 5–6.). Mā-L: *śaikṣasammatāni*; PrMoMā-L p.30.

kulāni: families; nom. pl. m.

tathārūpesu: of such kind; adj. see Pār 2.

sekkhasammatesu kulesu: in such families, among such families; loc. pl. nt. Locative of place where; see Syntax § 164d & e. Cf. *kulesu* in Pd 2.

pubbe: previously, before; adj., loc. sg. of *pubba*.

animantito: who has not been invited; adj. p.p. of *nimanteti*; see Pāc 46.

agilāno: not sick; adj. See Pāc 31. Defined in the Padabhāṣana as not being able to go on piṇḍapāta.

khādanīyaṃ ... paṭidesemī ti: see Pd 1.

[Pd 4: Catutthapaṭidesanīyasikkhāpadaṃ]

Yāni kho pana tāni āraññakāni senāsanāni sāsaṅkasammatāni⁶¹¹ sappatibhayāni, yo pana bhikkhu tathārūpesu senāsanesu⁶¹² pubbe appaṭisaṃviditaṃ khādanīyaṃ vā bhojanīyaṃ⁶¹³ vā ajjhārāme sahatthā paṭiggahetvā agilāno⁶¹⁴ khādeyya vā bhuñjeyya vā, paṭidesetabbaṃ tena bhikkhunā: “Gārayhaṃ āvuso dhammaṃ āpajjiṃ, asappāyaṃ, pāṭidesanīyaṃ,⁶¹⁵ taṃ paṭidesemī ti.”⁶¹⁶

[The fourth training precept on what is to be acknowledged]

Now, [there are] those those wilderness lodgings which are considered risky, which are dangerous: if any bhikkhu, [staying] in lodgings which are of such a kind, without having announced [the danger] beforehand, having accepted [the food] with his own hand inside the monastery, [and then] not being ill, should chew uncooked food or eat cooked food, [then it] is to be acknowledged by that bhikkhu, “Friend[s], I have committed a blameworthy act which is unsuitable, which is to be acknowledged; I acknowledge it.”

yāni kho pana tāni āraññakāni senāsanāni sāsaṅkasammatāni sappatibhayāni: now, there are those wilderness-area lodgings which are considered risky, which are frightening; see NP 29.

yo pana bhikkhu tathārūpesu senāsanesu: if any bhikkhu in lodgings which are of such kind; see NP 29.

Vibh, Sp and Kkh do not offer any help regarding the correct reading. The origin-story to the earlier rule formulation also offers no help, but the origin story to the later rule formulation that excepts sick bhikkhus has: “... aṇṇataro bhikkhu araññakesu senāsanesu gilāno hoti.” This might indicate that *viharanto* was not originally in the rule. The point of the rule is the accepting and eating of food inside a dwelling in a forest

⁶¹¹ C, W: -saṃka-.

⁶¹² Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, G, V, W, Mi & Mm Se, Vibh Ce, Ra, Sannē: “... senāsanesu viharanto” Dm, Vibh Ee, Um, and UP omit *viharanto*. (Pg 71 appears not to have it: “... tathārūpesu senāsanesu na pubbe appaṭisaṃviditaṃ anārocitaṃ khādanīyaṃ vā ... pe ... agilāno yo pana bhikkhu khādeyya vā ...”)

⁶¹³ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee, Um: *khādanīyaṃ* & *bhojanīyaṃ*.

⁶¹⁴ V: *agilāno*.

⁶¹⁵ C, D, W, Vibh Ee: *pāṭidesanīyaṃ*.

⁶¹⁶ Bh Pm 1: *īti*.

monastery, *ajjhārāme*, and this makes *viharanto* superfluous.

The Sa PrMo does not have an equivalent to *viharanto*: "... *bhikṣus tathārūpe saṃghasyāraṇyakeṣu śayyāsaneṣu pūrvaṃ apratisaṃvīt samāno...*" PrMoSa p.238. So Mū PrMoMū p.47. The wording of the Mā-L rule is somewhat different: "*Yo puna bhikṣu araṇyake śayanāsane viharanto pūrve ...*"; PrMoMā-L p.29.

The reading with *viharanto* probably happened under influence of NP 29 in which the wording is partially the same. The Padabhājana to NP 29 has: "*tathārūpesu bhikkhu senāsanesu viharanto ti: evarūpesu bhikkhu senāsanesu viharanto.*" The Vibh Padabhājana on Pd 4 has: "*tathārūpesu senāsanesu: evarūpesu senāsanesu.*" This difference shows that the editor of the Vibh word-commentary had a reading without *viharanto* and that this is the correct reading. The Parivāra (Vin V 28) has: "*āraññakesu senāsanesu pubbe appaṭisaṃviditaṃ khādanīyaṃ ... bhuñjantassa ...*"

pubbe appaṭisaṃviditaṃ: which has not been announced beforehand; see Pāc 83. Here *appaṭisaṃviditaṃ* is agreeing with an unexpressed *etaṃ*, i.e., the danger; see Padabhājana: "*etaṃ appaṭisaṃviditaṃ nāma.*"

ajjhārāme: inside a monastery, Ñm: in his own monastery, H: within a monastery; loc. sg. m. See Pāc 84.

khādanīyaṃ sahatthā ... bhuñjeyya vā: see Pd 1 & 3.

[Pāṭidesanīya conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhā kho āyasanto cattāro pāṭidesanīyā⁶¹⁷ dhammā.

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Dutiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Tatiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Parisuddh'etthāyasmanto, tasmā tuṇhī, evam-etaṃ dhārayāmi.⁶¹⁸

Pāṭidesanīyā⁶¹⁹ niṭṭhitā.⁶²⁰

Venerables, the four cases that are to be acknowledged have been recited.

Concerning that I ask the Venerables: [Are you] pure in this?

A second time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

A third time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

The venerables are pure in this, therefore there is silence, thus I bear this [in mind].

The [cases] which are to be acknowledged have finished.

uddiṭṭhā ... niṭṭhitā: see Pd intro. and Nid. concl.

[Sekhiyā⁶²¹]

Ime kho panāyasmanto sekhiyā dhammā⁶²² uddesaṃ āgacchanti.

⁶¹⁷ C, D, V, W, G, Vibh Ee: *pāṭidesanīyā*.

⁶¹⁸ Dm, UP, Ra, Um: *dhārayāmi ti*.

⁶¹⁹ C, D, V, W, G, Vibh Ee: *pāṭidesanīyā*.

⁶²⁰ = C, G, W, Dm, UP, Nd Ce, Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, Um. Mi Se: *Cattāro pāṭidesanīyā niṭṭhitā*. D: *Pāṭidesanīyaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ*.

⁶²¹ = Dm. In brackets in Um. D: *sekhiyā dhammā*. Mi Se: *Pañcasattati sekhiyā dhammā*.

⁶²² Mi Se, V: *pañcasattati sekhiyā dhammā*.

[The cases related to the training]

Venerables, these cases related to the training come up for recitation.

Ime kho panāyasmanto ... dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti: see Sd intro.

sekhiyā dhammā: cases related to the training, H: rules for training, Ñm: a rule of conduct, Norman: a rule of training.

This is the only section introduction in which the number of rules is not given. Two Siamese tradition MSS, however, do give the number of sekhiyas here and at the conclusion: *pañcasattati sekhiyā dhammā*: “seventy-five cases related to the training.” See p. @.

According to the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* and the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī-ṇaṭṭikā*, the reason for not including the number is because the observances (*vatta*) in the Vattakkhandhaka of the Cūlavagga are *sekhiyas* too and when taking on the *sekhiyas*, one also takes on the observances in the Vattakkhandhaka.⁶²³

Parallels to many of these sekhiyas are mentioned at Vin II 213f. Parallels to sekhiyas 3 to 26 are at Cv VIII 4,3 and parallels to sekhiyas 27–55 at Cv VIII 4,5. Cf. Hinüber 1999 p.13f.

In the Cv the rules are not called *sekhiya* but *vatta*, observances, (*bhikkhūnaṃ bhattagavattaṃ paññāpessāmi yathā bhikkhūhi bhattagge vattitabbam*; Cv VIII 4,2) and are given in the passive voice rather than the active voice, e.g., “*susamvutena antaraghare gantabbam*”: “by [a bhikkhu] who is well-restrained (it) is to be gone among the houses.” (Or: By a restrained one (it) is ...)

sekhiya: related to the training, PED: connected with training; adj. = **sekha:** trainee, training; see Pd 3 + conn. suf. **-iya**; see Pd 3.

[Parimaṇḍalavaggo⁶²⁴]

[Sekh 1 & 2: Parimaṇḍalasikkhāpadaṃ]

Parimaṇḍalaṃ nivāsessāmi⁶²⁵ ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.⁶²⁶

Parimaṇḍalaṃ pārūpissāmi sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on being even all around]

“I shall wear [the under-robe] even all around,” thus the training is to be done.

⁶²³ Kkh 145: *Sekhiyesu paṭhame parimaṇḍalanti samantato maṇḍalaṃ. Sikkhā karaṇīyāti “evaṃ nivāsessāmi”ti ārāmeṇi antaragharepi sabbattha sikkhā kātābā, ettha ca yasmā vattakkhandhake vuttavattānīpi sikkhitabbattā sekhiyāneva honti, tasmā pārājikādīsu viya paricchedo na kato.*

Kkh-nt 436 Myanmar: *yathā “tatrime cattāro pārājikā dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti”ti-ādinā tattha tattha paricchedo kato, evametthāpi “tatrime pañcasattati sekhiyā dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti”ti kasmā paricchedo na katoti āha “ettha cā”ti-ādi. vattakkhandhake vuttavattānī pīti āgantukā vāsikagamikānumodanabhattagga-piṇḍacārīkāraññasenāsana-jantāgharavaccakuṭi-upajjhācariyasaddhivihārika-antevāsikavattānī. idaṃca nidassanamattaṃ aññesampi khandhakavattānaṃ ettheva saṅghassa icchitabbattā. ayañhettha adhippāyo: sekhiyaggahaṇena cettha vattakkhandhakādīsu āgatavattādināpi gahaṇaṃ. tepi hi sikkhitabbatṭhena “sekhiyā”ti icchitā. tasmā mātīkāyaṃ pārājikādīnaṃ viya sekhiyānaṃ paricchedo na katoti. na kevalaṃ vattakkhandhakādīsu āgatavattādināpi gahaṇatthamevāti āha “cārittavinayadassanattāñcā”ti. etthāpi paricchedo na katoti ānetvā yojetabbam.*

“Herein these 4 Pārājikas come up for recitation,’ etc., there a measure has been made. Why hasn’t here a measure been made here too in a likewise manner: ‘herein these 75 Sekhiya cases come up for recitation?’ was said. ‘And here ... the observances that have been said in the Observance Khandhaka (Vattakkhandhaka in the Mahāvagga),’ i.e., the visitors, dwelling, ... attendant observances, and this is a mere example. Of other khandhaka observances too it is just the desire of the Sangha in this. For this is the intention: by taking on the sekhiyas the taking on here is also of the observances that have come down in the Observance Khandhaka. For they too are desired as ‘sekhiyas’ by the state of training, therefore in the Mātīkā (i.e., the Pātimokkha) a measure has not been made like in the Pārājikas. It was not said ‘just for the purpose of taking on the observances, etc., that have come down in the whole Observance Khandhaka, etc.’ And ‘for the purpose of showing conduct and vinaya’ here a measure has not been made too.”

⁶²⁴ Only in Mi Se.

⁶²⁵ C, P: *nivāsessāmi*.

⁶²⁶ V: *karaṇīyā* throughout the Sekhiyā section.

“I shall wrap [the outer-robles] even all around,” thus the training is to be done.

parimaṇḍalaṃ: even all around (the [knee-] circle), round, Ñm: (even) all around, H: having made both edges level, Than: wrapped around, level with the (knee-) circle; an adverb of manner, or an adj. qualifying an unexpressed *antaravāsakaṃ*, cf. Sekh 40. Cf. the Cv parallel of Sekh 40 at Cv VIII 4.5: “*parimaṇḍalo ālopo kātabbo*.” This indicates that *parimaṇḍala* is an adjective.

= pref. **pari-**: (a)round + **maṇḍala**: circle, i.e., a circle around the waist level and especially the knee level; see Vibh and Sekh 40.

Vibh: “*Parimaṇḍalaṃ nivāsetabbaṃ nābhimaṇḍalaṃ jāṇumaṇḍalaṃ paṭicchādentena. Yo anādariyaṃ paṭicca purato vā pacchato vā olambento nivāseti, āpatti dukkaṭassa*.”: “It is to be dressed by/in the manner of covering the navel-circle (and the) knee-circle. One who out of disrespect dresses letting (the under-robe) hang down in front or behind; there is an offence of wrong-doing for him.”

Sp 889: “... *parimaṇḍalan-ti samantato maṇḍalaṃ*.”: “*parimaṇḍalaṃ* (means): all around the circle.”

Vin II 213/Cv VIII 4,3 & 5,2: “*Sace ārāme kālo ārocito hoti, timaṇḍalaṃ paṭicchādentena parimaṇḍalaṃ nivāsetvā, kāyabandhanaṃ bandhitvā, saguṇaṃ katvā saṅghāṭiyo pārupitvā, gaṇṭhikaṃ paṭimuñcivā, dhovivā pattaṃ gahetvā, sādhuṃ ataramānena gāmo pavisitabbo*.”: “If the time is announced in the monastery, having dressed evenly all around by/in the manner of covering the three circles, having bound the body-belt, having made into one/having layered (the outer robes), having wrapped the double robes, having fastened the tag, having taken the bowl after having washed it, the village is to be entered carefully and non-hurriedly.”

nivāsessāmī ti: I shall dress (the under robe/waist cloth), wear; 1 sg. fut. of *nivāseti* (*ni* + √*vas* + *e*) + **iti**: thus, so, like this; *iti* is a deictic particle referring to a statement that is just mentioned or that follows, or + **ti**: quotation mark.

-ī ti sikkhā karaṇīyā: thus the training is to be done, Ñm: this is a rule to be kept, H: is a training to be observed, Norman: [this is] a training to be done.

The *-ī ti sikkhā karaṇīyā* can be resolved as *-ī + ti* just indicating a thought of the one who trains: “this , thus the training is to be done,” or it can be resolved as *-i + iti* indicating that one is to train with this intention in mind: “... thus the training is to be done.”

The latter version is supported by the Sa and Mū Prātimokṣasūtras: “... *nivāsayiṣyāma iti śikṣā karaṇīyā*”; PrMoSa p.240, Ban 30. And also by the Chinese translation of the Sa version: Huber: “... *Telle est la règle que nous observons*.” (“Thus is the rule we observe.”); Finot 67ff. PrMoSa p.305: “*das sollen wir lernen*.” (“this we shall learn”) Rosen, 1959, p.221ff: “*so soll man lernen*” (“so one must train”).

The medieval *Pātimokkhagaṇṭhidīpanī* also seems to support this, Pg 71: “... *nivāsessāmī iti evaṃ ārāme pi antaraghare pi sabbattha ṭhāne sikkhā karaṇīyā*.”: “I shall dress, so, thus, in the wilderness or in an inhabited area, everywhere the training is to be done.”

As the rules in general are called *sekiya*: “[a rule] related to the training,” *sikkhā* also refers to the training in general; cf. *sikkhāsājīvasamāpanno* at Pār 1.

sikkhā: the training; nom. sg. f.; see Pār 1.

karaṇīyā: to be done; f.p.p. of *karoti* agreeing with *sikkhā*. The verb “is” needs to be supplied in English.

pārupissāmī ti: I shall wrap/veil/dress (the outer robes); 1 sg. fut. of *pārupati* (*pa* + *ā* + √*rup* + *a*). This refers to both the outer robe and the double robe; see the Vin II 213 quotation above.

Padabhāṇa: “*Parimaṇḍalaṃ pārupitabbaṃ ubho kaṇṇe samaṃ katvā*”: “Evenly all around [it] is to be wrapped having made both edges/corners (of the upper robes) level/even.”

[Sekh 3 & 4: Suppaṭicchannasikkhāpadaṃ]

Suppaṭicchanno⁶²⁷ antaraghare gamissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

⁶²⁷ Dm: *suppaṭicchanno*. (Pg: *supāṭi*-)

Supaṭicchanno⁶²⁸ antaraghare nisīdissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on being well covered]

“I shall go well covered inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall sit well covered inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

supaṭicchanno: Ñm: well covered, H: properly clad; adj. = bahubbihi cpd. = pref. **su-**: well + **paṭicchanno**: covered; p.p. of *paṭicchādeti* ((p)paṭi + √(c)chad + e); see Sd concl.

Supaṭicchanno is a predicative nominative adjective qualifying the unexpressed subject of the verb *gamiṣāmi*: the pronoun *ahaṃ*: “I”; see Syntax § 20a. A substantive/auxiliary verb is implied: “(*ahaṃ*) *susaṃvuto* (*hutvā/honto*) ...” This predicative nominative can sometimes be used predicatively where an adverb of manner is to be expected, as happens in the *sekhiyas*.

The wrong/opposite way is given in the origin story at Vin IV 186: “... *kāyaṃ vivaritvā* ...”: “having exposed/uncovered the body.”

V.l. *Suppaṭicchanno*. The initial *p-* in *paṭi* is liable to doubling due to the older, corresponding Skt form *prati*; see NP 16: *maggappaṭipannassa*. Mū: *supratichannā*; PrMoMū p.48.

antaraghare: inside an inhabited area, Ñm: in inhabited areas, H: amidst the houses; loc. sg. nt.; see NP 29, Pd 1. Note that the form *ghare* is singular not the plural *gharesu*.

The Sa PrMo, has *antargṛhaṃ*, the Skt equivalent of the singular accusative *antaragharaṃ*, with, *pravekṣyāma*, the Skt equivalent of *pavisissāmā*, but then has the *antaragrhe*, Skt equivalent of the singular locative *antaraghare*, with *niṣatsyāma*, the Skt equivalent of *nisīdissāma*, in this group of *sekhiyas*; see PrMoSa p.242f, CSP 184 f.

The Mā-L version has the opposite: rule 5: “*susaṃvorto antaragṛham-upasaṃkramiṣyāmī ti*,” rule 14: “*susaṃvorto antaragrhe niṣīdiṣyāmī ti*.”

gamiṣāmī ti: I shall go; = *gamiṣāmi*: 1 sg. fut. of *gacchati* + *ti*: end quote; see above Nid.

nisīdissāmī ti: I shall sit; 1 sg. fut. of *nisīdati*; see Aniy 1.

[Sekh 5 & 6: *susaṃvutasikkhāpadaṃ*]

Susaṃvuto antaraghare gamiṣāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

Susaṃvuto antaraghare nisīdissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on being well restrained]

“I shall go well-restrained inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall sit well-restrained inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

susaṃvuto: well restrained, H: well-controlled; adj. Bb. cpd.; see Sekh 3 above. = **su-**: well; pref. + **saṃvuto**: restrained; p.p. of *saṃvarati* (*saṃ* + √*var* + *a*). The wrong way is given in the origin-story at Vin IV 186: “*hatthaṃ vā padaṃ vā kilāpento*”: “making the hand or foot move playfully.”

The Mā-L version has the opposite in rule 5: “*susaṃvorto antaragṛham-upasaṃkramiṣyāmī ti* ...,” and rule 14: “*susaṃvorto antaragrhe niṣīdiṣyāmī ti* ...,” BV 297, PrMoMā-L p.32–33.

[Sekh 7 & 8: *Okkhittacakkhusikkhāpadaṃ*]

Okkhittacakkhu antaraghare gamiṣāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

⁶²⁸ Idem.

Okkhittacakkhu antaraghare nisīdissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on the eyes cast down]

“I shall go with the eyes cast down inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall sit with the eyes cast down inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

okkhittacakkhu: H: with the eyes cast down, Ñm: with downcast eyes, down-cast-eyed; adj. Inverted Bb cpd. qualifying an unexpressed *ahaṃ* and functioning a predicative nominative. = **okkhitta:** cast down; thrown down; p.p. of *okkhipati* (o/ava + √(k)khip + a). + **cakkhu:** eye. See origin-story to Pāc 6: “... āyasmā Anuruddho indriyāni okkhipitvā ...” Cf. Sn 63.

Sp 890: “Okkhittacakkhū ti heṭṭhā khittacakkhu hutvā.”: “...: having become one whose eyes are cast down below.” According to the Suttavibhaṅga (Vin IV 186) the bhikkhu is look a plough’s length ahead: “... yuggamattaṃ pekkhantena.”: “... in the manner of observing a plough-length.” The commentary (Sp 891) defines this as “Yugamattaṃ pekkhamāno ti yugayuttako hi danto ājāneyyo yugamattaṃ pekkhati, purato catuhatthappamāṇaṃ bhūmibhāgaṃ; iminā pi ettakaṃ pekkhantena gantabbaṃ.”: “Observing the plough-length: like a tame well-bred horse yoked up observes a plough-length of the four arm-span measure ahead on the ground.”

The wrong way is described in the origin story at Vin IV 186: “tahaṃ tahaṃ olokento”: “looking here and there.”

[Sekh 9 & 10: Ukkhittakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na ukkhittakāya⁶²⁹ antaraghare gamissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

Na ukkhittakāya⁶³⁰ antaraghare nisīdissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

*Parimaṇḍalavaggo paṭhamo.*⁶³¹

[The training precept on (robes) lifted up]

“I shall not go with [robes] lifted up inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall not sit with [robes] lifted up inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

The section [starting with the rule] on being even all round is first

na: not; neg. particle.

ukkhittakāya: with (robes) lifted up, Ñm: hitched up, thrown up, suspended; adj. Bb cpd. ins. sg. f. = *ukkhitta*, the p.p. of *ukkhipati* (ud + √(k)khip + a): lifts up, throws up, raises, suspends + adjectival suf. -ka. According to DP it qualifies an unexpressed *saṅghāṭī* or *sāṭikā*. Probably an instrumental of attendant circumstances, see Syntax § 65, which expresses conditions of body and mind that attend the agent engaged in an action. Cf. S II 271: “rakkhiten’eva kāyena ... gāmaṃ ... piṇḍāya pavisissāmā ti”: “with the body guarded ... we shall enter the village ... for alms ...” The exact meaning of this word is not certain; see BD III 123 n. 1. It might mean “lifting up robes,” like one lifts the robes when crossing a shallow stream or puddle. The commentary (Sp 891) takes it to be a feminine instrumental: “ukkhittakāyā ti: ukkhepena, itthambhūtalakkhaṇe karaṇavacanaṃ, ekato vā ubhato vā ukkhittacīvaro hutvā ti attho”: “ukkhittakāya: by/with lifting up, an instrumental word with female characteristics, having become one with a robe that has been lifted up on one side or on both sides.”

It could, rather than being an adjective, also maybe be an action-noun like *ujjagghikāya* in the next rule. In this

⁶²⁹ D, P: -kāyaṃ.

⁶³⁰ Idem.

⁶³¹ V: *pathamo*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W: *Paṭhamo vaggo*. Nothing in Mm Se.

case it would mean: “with lifting up (of the robe).”

Cf. Cv V 29,3/Vin II 136 where the Buddha allowed a robe-fastener after Ven. Ānanda’s light outer robes were lifted up by wind-whirl while going for alms in the village: “*tena kho pana samayena āyasmā Ānando laḥukā saṅghāṭiyo pārupitvā gāmaṃ piṇḍāya pāvisi, vātamaṇḍalikāya saṅghāṭiyo ukkhipiyimsu.*”

The wrong way is given in the origin-story (Vin IV 187): “*ekato vā ubhato vā ukkhipitvā ...*” “Having lifted up on one side or on both sides.”

parimaṇḍalavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on being even all around, evenly-around-section; nom. sg. m. = **parimaṇḍala**: evenly around; see Sekh 1 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10.

paṭhamo: is first, (which is) the first; ordinal.

[Sekh 11 & 12: Ujjagghikasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na ujjagghikāya⁶³² **antaraghare gamissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.**

Na ujjagghikāya⁶³³ **antaraghare nisīdissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.**

[The training precept on loud laughter]

“I shall not go with loud laughter inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall not sit with loud laughter inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

ujjagghikāya: loud laughter, laughing loudly, H: with loud laughter, Ñm: laughing loudly; ins. sg. f. of noun *ujjagghikā* = *ujjagghi* from *ujjagghati* (*ud* + √*jaggh* + *a*): laughs loudly, laughs at + suffix *-ikā*. = Ins. of attendant circumstances in fem. sg.; see Sekh 9.

The wrong way is given in the origin-story at Vin IV 187: “*mahāhasitaṃ hasantā ...*”: “laughing a loud laughter.” It is allowable to smile when there is the occasion of laughter: “*hasanīyasmiṃ vatthusmiṃ mihita-mattaṃ karoti*”; Vin IV 187.

[Sekh 13 & 14: Uccasaddasikkhāpadaṃ]

Appasaddo antaraghare gamissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

Appasaddo antaraghare nisīdissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on loud sounds]

“I shall go quiet[ly] inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall sit quiet[ly] inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

appasaddo: being quiet, Ñm: quietly, H: with little noise, Than: lowered voice, DP: making little or no noise, quiet; adj. Bb cpd. = **appa**: little; adj. + **sadda**: sound, noise, voice, word.

Appasaddo is adj. in the predicative nominative case; see Sekh 3.

Sp 891 explains that it is *appasaddo* when three theras are sitting in a house three armspans apart from each other and the third can not make up the meaning of the words when the first two theras are conversing with each other, although he can still hear the sound. If he can understand, then it is called a “great sound.”⁶³⁴

The Vibh non-offence clauses and the commentaries specify *saddo* as “voice” here. However, it seems proper

⁶³² C, D, G, Um, V, Vibh Ee, W: *ujjhaggi*-.

⁶³³ Idem.

⁶³⁴ “*Appasaddo antaraghare ti ettha kittāvata appasaddo hoti? Dvādasahatthe gehe ādimhi saṅghatthero, majjhe dutiyatthero, ante tatiyatthero ti evaṃ nisinnesu saṅghatthero dutiyena saddhiṃ manteti, dutiyatthero tassa saddaṇ-c’eva suṇāti, kathaṇ-ca vavattapeti. Tatiyatthero pana saddam-eva suṇāti, kathaṇ na vavattapeti. Ettāvata appasaddo hoti. Sace pana tatiyatthero kathaṇ vavattapeti, mahāsaddo nāma hoti.*”

that a bhikkhu in the village should try not to make any loud noise, not just speaking loudly, but also not making other noises such as clapping, burping, slurping, whistling, coughing etc.

Other contexts in the Canon indicate that it means noise in general; e.g., M II 4 & 122 where one bhikkhu scolds another bhikkhu for clearing his throat while the Buddha taught the Dhamma: “*Appasaddo āyasmā hotu, Mā āyasmā saddaṃ akāsi.*” Cf. D II 37: “*Appasaddā bhontu hontu.*”

At M III 13 and Vin II 306 forests and dwellings are called *appasadda* and *appanighosa* (little noise). “*Appasadde katvā*”: “having made quiet” at M II 37, indicates that *appasadda* can mean quietly, silently. Cf. M II 119: “*appasaddo upasankamitvā*”: “having approached being quiet/quietly.”

The wrong way is given in the origin-story and Vibh at Vin IV 187: “*uccāsaddaṃ mahāsaddaṃ karontā*”: “making a loud sound, a great sound.”

[Sekh 15 & 16: Kāyappacālakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na kāyappacālakaṃ antaraghare gamissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

Na kāyappacālakaṃ antaraghare nisīdissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on swaying the body]

“I shall not go swaying the body inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall not sit swaying the body inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

kāyappacālakaṃ: shaking, H: swaying the body, Than: swinging..., Nm: fidgeting...; adv. An accusative tapp. cpd. used as an adverb of manner in acc. sg. nt. = **kāya**: body + **pacālakaṃ**: swaying; = *pacāla* from *pacāleti* (*[p]pa* + *√cāl* + *e*) (see Th 200, Ja IV 16, S V 270) + *-akaṃ*. A ṇamul absolutive in *-akaṃ*; see *sannidhikāraṃ* at NP 23. For doubling of *p* see NP 16: *-maggapaṭipannassa*.

[Sekh 17 & 18: Bāhuppacālakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na bāhuppacālakaṃ antaraghare gamissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

Na bāhuppacālakaṃ antaraghare nisīdissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on swaying the arms]

“I shall not go swaying the arms inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall not sit swaying the arms inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

bāhu: arms. As this is compounded it can be a plural

[Sekh 19 & 20: Sīsappacālakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na sīsappacālakaṃ antaraghare gamissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

Na sīsappacālakaṃ antaraghare nisīdissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

*Ujjagghikavaggo*⁶³⁵ *dutiyo*.⁶³⁶

[The training precept on swaying the head]

“I shall not go swaying the head inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

⁶³⁵ Um: *ujjagghika*-. G, V: *na-ujjagghikavaggo*.

⁶³⁶ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W: *Dutiyo vaggo*. No section conclusion here in Mm Se.

“I shall not sit swaying the head inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

The section [starting with the rule] on loud laughter is second..

sīsa: head.

ujjagghikavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on loud laughter, loud-laughter-section; nom. sg. m. =

ujjagghika: see Sekh 11 + **vagga**: section.

dutiyo: second; ordinal.

[Khambhakatavaggo⁶³⁷]

[Sekh 21 & 22: Khambhakatasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na khambhakato⁶³⁸ antaraghare gamissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

Na khambhakato⁶³⁹ antaraghare nisīdissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on making into a prop]

“I shall not go having made [the arms] a prop inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall not sit having made [the arms] a prop inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

khambhakato: having made [the arms] a prop, making (the arms) into a prop, Ñm & H: with arms akimbo, lit.: having made a prop; adjective qualifying an unexpressed *ahaṃ*; see Sekh 3. Bb cpd. = **khamba**: prop, pillar, support; from *thamba* + **kata**: done, made; pp. of *karoti*, here, for convenience, rendered as an absolutive. According to Sp 491 it means a prop made having placed a hand on a hip. (*Khambhakato nāma kaṭṭiyam hattham thapetvā katakhambho*.) However, it might also include the leaning against a wall with an outstretched arm, or the supporting of the head by putting the hand under the chin and elbow on a surface (like the “The Thinker” statue of the sculptor Rodin). In short, it means any way of propping up the body or parts of the body by means of the arms.

The Skt root \sqrt{stambh} means “fixes firmly, supports, props, holds up by coming into contact with, rests on, leans on; see MW. The Skt noun *stambha* means: post, pillar, support, propping.

At Vin IV 189 the wrong way is described as: “Having made a prop on one side or on both sides...”: “... *ekato vā ubhato vā khambham katvā* ...”

Sa Prātimokṣasūtra: *na kambhākṛtā*; PrMoSa p.243, CSP 189.

[Sekh 23 & 24: Oguṇṭhitasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na uguṇṭhito antaraghare gamissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

Na uguṇṭhito antaraghare nisīdissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on being (with the head) covered]

“I shall not go with [the head] covered inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

“I shall not sit with [the head] covered inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

oguṇṭhito: Ñm: with (head) covered, H: muffled up; p.p. of *oguṇṭheti* (*ava* + $\sqrt{guṇṭh}$ + *e*): covers over, veils.

⁶³⁷ Only in Mi Se.

⁶³⁸ C, D, W: *nakkhambhakato*. G: *na khambhagato*. Corrected to *nakkhambhagato*.

⁶³⁹ Idem.

The wrong way given at Vin IV 189 is "... bhikkhū sasīsaṃ pārupitvā ...": "having wrapped themselves, including the head, (with the outer robes)."

[Sekh 25: Ukkuṭikasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na ukkuṭikāya antaraghare gamissāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on crouching]

"I shall not go in a crouching [posture] inside an inhabited area," thus the training is to be done.

ukkuṭikāya: in a crouching posture, H: crouching down on the heels, Than: tiptoeing or walking just on the heels, Ñm: walking on toes or heels; ins. sg. f. of *ukkuṭikā*. Ins. of attendant circumstances; see above Sekh 9. = pref. *ud*: up + √*kuṭ*/*kuñc*: bends; thus "bends up ." It is found in the stock-phrase: "... pāde vanditvā ukkuṭikaṃ nisīditvā añjaliṃ paggaḥetvā ...," which is found in the description of the formal request for the *upajjhāya* (Vin I 45), the *pabbajjā* (" 82), the *upasampadā* (" 57), the confessing of offences (" 125–26), etc.

In Sri Lanka and Burma the *ukkuṭikā* posture is understood to be, and practised as, squatting with one foot-sole flat on the ground, and just the toes of the other foot on the ground, the buttocks touching the heels, the knees against the chest, and the torso erect. In Thailand this way is generally not done (anymore?), instead bhikkhus do their confession, etc, while sitting with the soles of the toes flat on the ground, the knees on the ground too, the buttocks touching the heels, and, and the torso erect. In *Buddhism Explained* by Bhikkhu Khantipālo, a picture of Thai monks doing confession in the squatting way is found in the picture section after p.128. The now common style described above is shown on the picture facing p.80. and in the section after p.xiv.

One ascetic practice referred to in the Canon, e.g. at M I 78, is the *ukkuṭikappadhāna*: the *ukkuṭika*-exertion. Maybe the ascetics engaged in this practice also moved about in this posture and this was forbidden for bhikkhus.

It is possible that what is meant is walking in a crouching or stooping posture, because it would be very difficult to go about in a squatting posture while a bhikkhu might more likely walk in crouching posture. The Chinese translation of the Sarvāstivādin version of the origin story relates that laypeople complained that the bhikkhus entered a house as if their legs had been cut off; see Rosen, 1959, p.223.

There is no prohibition for sitting in the *ukkuṭikā* posture in an inhabited area in the Pāli Vinaya, but the corresponding Sarvāstivādin *śaikṣa* 27 is coupled with another rule, *śaikṣa* 28, prohibiting bhikkhus to sit in the *utkūṭukā* posture. The corresponding Mā-L *śaikṣa* 9 is not coupled to a rule applying to sitting in this posture.

Kkh 259/Sp explains it as tip-toeing or walking on the heels. "*Pañcavīse ukkuṭikā vuccati paṇhiyo ukkhipitvā aggapāde h'eva, aggapāde'vā ukkhipitvā paṇhī hi yeva bhūmiyaṃ phusantassa gamanaṃ, karaṇavacanaṃ paṇ'ettha vuttalakkaṇaṃ-eva*." "In the twenty-fifth (rule) *ukkuṭikā* is said to be the going of one touching the ground with just the front of the feet, having kept up the heels, or with just the heels, having kept up the front of the feet."

In Vism 104 *ukkuṭika* is used to describe the gait of a *rāgacarita*, "one of lustful behaviour," and Ñānamoli renders it as "springy." "*Ukkuṭikaṇ-ca c'assa padaṃ hoti*": "and his step is springy." (Pm 106 comments "*asamphuṭṭhamajjhaṃ*": "not touching the middle.")

In this context it seems to mean walking by exaggeratedly shifting the touching point to the back of the heels while the foot is coming down and then exaggeratedly shifting it to the front of the feet while lifting up. This makes one walk in a springy and wavy way and would be an improper deportment for a bhikkhu in the village.

[Sekh 26 Pallatthikasikkhāpadam]

Na pallatthikāya antaraghare nisīdissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.⁶⁴⁰

[The training precept on (knees being) clasped around]

“I shall not sit with the [knees] clasped-around inside an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

pallatthikāya: with the [knees] clasped around, in the clasped around (the knees posture), with (the arms) clasped around (the knees), Than: holding the knees, H & Ñm: lolling; ins. sg. f. of *pallatthikā*. Ins. of attendant circumstances. = pref. *pari*: around + *atta*: thrown; p.p. of Skt √as: throws, spreads. Or: *atta*: held, taken; p.p. of *ādadaṭi*. + *ikā*: abstr. suffix. For the manner of assimilation; see PG § 54,5.

Pallattha is the assimilated Pāli form of Skt *pary* + *asta* = Pāli *pari* + *atta*. *Pari*- > *paly*- > *pall*-; see PG § 54,5. The -st- in *asta* has been assimilated into -tth- instead of -tt-; see PG § 51,1.

Mū: *paryastikāya*; LC 11. Sa: *pallatthikākṛtā*; PrMoSa p.244.

The Skt form *paryasta* means: “cast,” “spread around,” and the verb-form *pariyasti*: “sitting on heels or hams”; see MW 607. In this posture the feet are flat on the ground, the buttocks, too, are on the ground, the knees are placed against or close to the chest, and the arms and hands are clasped around and hugging the knees. In a variant of this the legs are crossed in front of the ankles and only the outside of feet is on the ground. This is the *hatthapallatthikā*, clasped-around with the arms, mentioned in the Vibh (Vin IV 189) and not translated by Horner in BD III 126. It is a common posture in Asia and is also used sometimes in the West.

It can also be done with a strip of cloth tied around the back and knees, instead of the arms, see BMC 494, which is called the *dussapallatthikā*: “clasped-around with a cloth,” also not translated by Horner.

To do this with a *saṅghāṭī* is called the *saṅghāṭipallatthikā*: “clasped around with an outer robe,” and this has been forbidden at Cv V 28,2 as it wears out the *saṅghāṭī*. The *āyogapallatthikā*: “clasped around with a yoke/bandage” is allowed though in the Cv; cf. Sp 891 and 896.

V.l. **chabbīsati sārubbā**: “The twenty-six proper [trainings].” *chabbīsati*: twenty-six; num. = *cha*(!): six + *vīsati*: twenty; see above *chabbassāni* at NP 14. *sārubbā*: proper, suitable; adj.

[Sekh 27: Sakkaccapaṭiggahaṇasikkhāpadam]

Sakkaccaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggahessāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on accepting in a respectful manner]

“I shall accept alms-food appreciatively,” thus the training is to be done.

sakkaccaṃ: appreciatively, considerately, respectfully, kindly, courteously, Ñm: carefully, H: attentively, thoroughly; adv. of manner. Originally an absolutive of *sakkaroti* (*sa*[t] + √kar + o): honors, esteems, treats respectfully, treats kindly. *Kacca* is a junction of *kar* + *ya* in which the consonant-combination -ry- has been palatalised to -cc-; see Sd 10 *iccetam*.

Sakkaccaṃ is used in contexts of teaching Dhamma, e.g., A II 147: “*sakkaccaṃ dhammaṃ deseti*,” and in contexts of giving *dāna* together with *cittikatvā*: thoughtfully, considerably, e.g. at A IV 393. Cf. Th 1054 and Dh 392.

Sp 891: “... *satim upaṭṭhapetvā*”: “... having established mindfulness.”

The opposite/wrong way given in the Vibh (Vin IV 190) indicates the meaning: “*asakkaccaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggahāti chaḍḍetukāmo viya*”: “... unappreciatively accepts alms-food, as if wishing to throw it away ...” Cf the wrong way given in the Vibh to Sekh 31: “... *asakkaccaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjanti abhuñjitukāmā viya* ...”: “unconsiderately they ate alms-food as if not wishing to eat”

piṇḍapātaṃ: alms-food; acc. sg. m. see Pāc 29, NP 27.

⁶⁴⁰ Mi & Mm Mm Se have section-conclusions here. Mi Se: *Chabbīsati sārubbā niṭṭhitā*. Mm Se: *Chabbīsati sārubbā*.

paṭiggahessāmī ti: I shall accept; 1 sg. fut. of *paṭiggaṇhāti*; see NP 1.

[Sekh 28: Pattasaññīpaṭiggahaṇasikkhāpadaṃ]

Pattasaññī piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggahessāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on paying attention to the bowl (while) accepting]

“I shall accept alms-food paying attention to the bowl,” thus the training is to be done.

pattasaññī: paying attention to the bowl, perceiving the bowl, attending to the bowl, being aware of the bowl, Ñm: with attention on the bowl, H: thinking of the bowl; adj. Acc. tapp. cpd. used as Bb cpd in the nominative predicative case; see Sekh 3. = **patṭa**: bowl; see NP 21 + **saññī**: perceiving, paying attention to, being aware of; possessive adj; see IP p.121f. = *saññā* + poss. suf. -in. Cf. Sekh 38: *ujjhānasaññī*, and A IV 353: “... *anattasaññī asmimānasamugghātaṃ pāpuṇāti*.”: “... perceiving not-self he attains the destruction of the conceit ‘I am.’”

Sp 891: “*pattasaññī ti patte saññāṃ katvā*.”: “...: having put the attention/perception on the bowl.”

Wrong way: “... *tahaṃ tahaṃ olovento piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggaṇhanti ākirante pi atikkante pi na jānanti*”: “... they accepted alms-food looking here and there, they did not know when it scattered over (the bowl) and flowed over (the bowl)”; Vin IV 190.

Cf. Cv VIII 5,2/Vin II 216: “*Na ca bhikkhādāyikāya mukhaṃ ulloketabbaṃ*”: “(while alms is given) one should not look up at the face of the female donor of alms’

This rule intends to prevent the bhikkhu who receives alms from losing his sense-restraint and looking up to the face of the (female) donor, possibly creating the impression that he might be interested in her, or from looking elsewhere, possibly creating the impression that he is not interested in the act of giving or not is not pleased with the food.

[Sekh 29: Samasūpakapaṭiggahaṇasikkhāpadaṃ]

Samasūpakaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggahessāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on accepting curry in the proper proportion]

“I shall accept alms-food which has curry in the proper proportion,” thus the training is to be done.

samasūpakaṃ: which has curry in proportion, Ñm: with sauces in proportion, H: with equal curry; adj. Bb cpd qualifying *piṇḍapātaṃ*, or maybe a bb cpd used an adverb of manner. = **sama**: even, level; adj. + **sūpaka**: having (bean-) curry, soup; = *sūpa*: curry, sauce, soup. + poss. suf. -ka. According to the Vibh and the Sp it is curry made of pulses such as lentils, i.e., the Indian *dahl*. However, at S V 149 eight flavours of *sūpa* are given. The translation of M-a given at Sekh 36 mentions various types of *sūpa* which include fish- and meat-*sūpa*, so it seems that *sūpa* is not confined to bean-curry.

According to the Sp 892 *samasūpakaṃ* means one part curry in proportion to four parts rice (*Samasūpako nāma yattha bhattassa catuttha-bhāgappamāṇo sūpo hoti*). Horner, BD II 127 n. 3, takes “*sāmaṃ sūpaṃ pi odanaṃ pi viññāpetvā bhuñjanti*.” at Vin I 45 to refer to this sekhiya rule, but *sāmaṃ* means “(for) oneself” and therefore it rather refers to Sekh 37.

At Cv VIII 4.4–5 “*samasūpako ... samatittiko piṇḍapāto paṭiggahetabbo*.” *samasūpako* and *samatittiko* are clearly adjectives qualifying *piṇḍapāto*. Other contexts, however, suggest that *samasūpakaṃ* and *samatittikaṃ* could be adverbs of manner; i.e., M II 7: “*ahaṃ iminā pattaṇa samatittikaṃ pi bhuñjāmi*” and D II 119: “*puṇḍarikāni samodakaṃ ṭhitāni*.”

Wrong way: “*piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggaṇhantā sūpañ-ñeva bahuṃ paṭiggaṇhanti*”: “accepting alms-food they accepted a lot of curry”; Vin IV 190.

[Sekh 30: Samatitthikasikkhāpadaṃ]

Samatitthikaṃ⁶⁴¹ piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggaḥessāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

*Khambhakatavaggo*⁶⁴² *tatiyo*.⁶⁴³

[The training precept on (alms-food) level with the rim]

“I shall accept alms-food which is level with the rim,” thus the training is to be done.

The section [starting with the rule] on making into a prop is third.

samatitthikaṃ: which is level with the rim, Ñm: in proportion to (not overflowing from) the capacity (of the bowl), Than: level with the edge, H: at an even level, brimful; adj. qualifying *piṇḍapātaṃ*. Bb cpd. = **sama**: even, level + **titthika**: brim; = *titthi*: edge, rim + adjectival suffix *-ka*.

For the meaning see BMC 496 f. and BD 128 n. 3.

Wrong way: “*thūpikataṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggaṇhanti*”: “they accepted alms made into a heap.”; Vin IV 190.

V.l. *-titthi-* & *-titti*. Cf. in Ee D I 244: “*nadī udakassa samatittikā*,” Ee Vin I 230: “*nadī pūrā hoti samatitthika*,” Be Jāt. I 399: “*samatittikaṃ anavasesakaṃ telapattaṃ parihareyya*,” (cf. S V 170), M II 7: “*ahaṃ iminā pattaṇa samatittikaṃ pi bhuñjāmi*” See PED 302: *tittika* and *titthika*. Mū: *samatīrthikaṃ*; PrMoMū p.50; “*Na samatittikaṃ ...*”; LC 12. CSP 196 (= Sa *Mahāvvyutpatti*): “*Na samatīrthikaṃ ...*” There is no Mā-L version.

BHSGD II 561 takes the reading *-tittika*, which exists both in Pāli and Sanskrit, to be a corruption and suggests that the Sanskrit *tīrtha*, = Pāli *tittha*, is an extension from the earlier usage of “bathing-ghat” to the later usage of “edge of a river.”

Sp 892: *Thūpikataṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggaṇhāti, āpatti dukkaṭassā ti ettha thūpikato nāma pattassa antomukhavaṭṭilekhaṃ atikkamitvā kato; patte pakkhitto racito pūrito ti attho. Evaṃ kataṃ agahetvā antomukha-vaṭṭilekhā-samappamāṇo gahetabbo*.”: “He accepts alms made into a heap, an offence of wrong-doing for him: here ‘made into a heap’ is made having gone beyond the mark in the inner-mouth rim. ‘Put into, arranged, filled into the bowl’ is the meaning. Not having taken (what is) made thus, it is to be accepted in accordance with the standard level of the mark in the inner-mouth-rim (of the bowl).”

Kkh 260: “*Samatittikaṃ: samapuṇṇaṃ samabharitaṃ adhiṭṭhānupagapattassa antomukha-vaṭṭilekhaṃ anatikkamitvā racitaṃ*.”: “Evenly filled, evenly laden, arranged (in a way) not having gone beyond the inner-mouth-rim-mark of the determined bowl.”

According to Ven. Thāṇissaro, this refers to the 1 cm wide overlapping rim on the inside of (Thai) iron bowls. However, claybowls, and iron bowls in Sri Lanka and laquered bowls in Burma, do not have such a rim and therefore it might rather refer to the inner edge.

khambhakatavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on making into a prop, making-a-prop-section; nom. sg. m. = **khambhakata**: making a prop; see Sekh 21 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10. **tatiyo**: third; ordinal.

[Sakaccavaggo⁶⁴⁴]

[Sekh 31: Sakkaccabhuñjanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Sakkaccaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjissāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on eating in a respectful manner]

“I shall eat alms-food appreciatively,” thus the training is to be done.

⁶⁴¹ Vibh Ee: *-titthi-* (cf v.l.l. at Vin IV 364). Dm, UP, Mi & Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, G, Um, V, W, Vibh Ce, Pg, Ra: *-titti-*.

⁶⁴² G, V: *nakhambhakavaggo*..

⁶⁴³ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W: *Tatiyo vaggo*. Nothing in Mm Se.

⁶⁴⁴ Only in Mi Se.

See Sekh 27.

The wrong way of Sekh 31 is “... *asakkaccaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjanti abhuñjitukāmā viya ...*”: “unappreciatingly they ate alms-food, as if not wishing to eat ...”

bhuñjissāmī ti: I shall eat; 1 sg. fut. of *bhuñjati*; see Pāc 29.

[Sekh 32: Pattasaññibhuñjanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Pattasaññī⁶⁴⁵ piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on paying attention (while) eating]

“I shall eat alms-food paying attention to the bowl,” thus the training is to be done.

See Sekh 28.

[Sekh 33: Sapadānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Sapadānaṃ⁶⁴⁶ piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on (eating) systematically]

“I shall eat alms-food systematically,” thus the training is to be done.

sapadānaṃ: systematically, Than: methodically, Ñm: without making exceptions, H: on continuous alms-tour, *Vinaya Texts*: begging straight from house to house, uninterrupted, without stopping; adverb qualifying *bhuñjissāmī*. Abbayībhāva cpd; see Syntax § 52c.

Sp 893: “*Sapadānaṃ-ti tattha tattha odhiṃ akatvā anupaṭipāṭiyā*.”: “*Sapadānaṃ*: not having made an exception with respect to this and that, successively/in order (*anupaṭiyā* = adv.).”

Wrong way: *tahaṃ tahaṃ omadditvā* (Be: *omasitvā*) *piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjanti*; Vin IV 191.

(In the Cv parallel the reading “*sapadāno piṇḍapāto bhuñjitabbo*” in Ee Cv VIII 4,5 is a corruption. Be and Ce correctly read *sapadānaṃ*.)

Probably it means that one should eat without choosing food from here and there in the bowl.

‘*sapadānacāra*’: “continuous going (for alms-food)” is the not skipping of any house while begging for food, i.e., the bhikkhu should stand still in front of every house that is on his route. It is one of the *dhutaṅgas*, which are not obligatory practices; see M II 7 f. (*sapadānacārin*) and Vin III 15 (*sapadānacāriko*). Horner’s translation is incorrect; see PED 679.

[Sekh 34: Samasūpakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Samasūpakaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on the proper proportion]

“I shall eat alms-food which has curry in the proper proportion,” thus the training is to be done.

See Sekh 29.

[Sekh 35: Na-thūpakatasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na thūpakato⁶⁴⁷ omadditvā piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

⁶⁴⁵ V: -*saññī*. Not so in Sekh. 28.

⁶⁴⁶ V: *samadānaṃ*.

⁶⁴⁷ Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee, Mi Se v.l., Sannē: *thūpato*. Dm, UP, Mi Se (and the parallel rule at Ee Vin II 214) read *thūpakato* (although in the *uddāna* (Vin II 232) Be also reads *thūpato*.) G, V: *thūpikato*. Vibh Ee Burmese ms.

[The training precept on (alms-food) not made into a heap]

“I shall not eat alms-food, having pressed [it] down into a shall heap,” thus the training is to be done.

na: not; neg. particle.

There are two readings:

thūpakato: into a small heap; abl. sg. m. Bb. cpd. = **thūpaka:** small heap, mound (= *thūpa*: heap + diminutive suffix *-ka*) cf. origin-story to Sekh 30: “*thūpikataṃ*,” Vin IV 190; (Vibh Ee Burmese ms. v.l.l.: *dhūpikataṃ*, *thupitaṃ*; Be: *thūpikataṃ*.) + **to:** into. An ablative of side and viewpoint is employed here (see Syntax § 131), which, as in this case, can have sense parallel to the locative, i.e., “on,” “in,” or “at.” (It isn’t *thūpa* + *kata*: made; p.p. of *karoti*.)

An exception to the rule, given in the Vibh *anāpatti*-section, is: “*parittake sese ekato saṃkaḍḍhitvā omadditvā bhuñjati*”: “having pressed together and pressed down a small remainder on one side he eats.” This supports the *thūpakato* reading.

thūpato: Ñm, H, Norman, and *Vinaya Texts*: from the top, Than: from a heap; abl. sg. m. of *thūpa*: a heap. Meaning not clear; see BMC 498.

The Sanskrit Buddhist version (Mū 68, Mā-L 26, Dhg 31, Mā-L 55, and Mpt), has not been given as a parallel of the Pāli in the concordances at BMD p.146, and CSP appendix IV 19.

Mā-L: “*Na stūpakāraṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paribhuñjissāmi ti ...*”; BV 298, PrMoMā-L p.32.

Mū: “*Na stūpakṛtimavagrhya piṇḍapātaṃ*”; PrMoMū p.51.

Sa śikṣa C 3: “*Na stūpakāraṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paribhokṣyāma...*”; PrMoSa p.247

Sa śikṣa C 6: “*Na stūpyavaguṇṭhikṛtaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paribhokṣyāma...*”; PrMoSa p.247

The *Mahāvīyutpatti* version (given in CSP 58 and BMD p.146) is: “*Na stūpakṛtim-avamṛḍya* piṇḍapātaṃ paribhokṣyāmaḥ*.” (*BMD reads *-avamṛḍya*); translated by BMD p.103 as: “We will not eat alms food separating the unformed food into a stūpa ...,” and at CSP 197 as: “To eat without scooping a particular portion.”

Wrong way: “...*thūpakato omadditvā piṇḍapātaṃ bhuñjanti...*”: “they eat having pressed down into a heap”; Vin IV 191.

For the commentary to: “*thūpikataṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paṭiggaṇhāti*” (Vin IV 191) see Sekh 30.

Sp 893 (Be): “*thūpakato ti matthakato; vemajjhato ti attho*”: “*thūpakato*: from the top, from the centre is the meaning.”

omadditvā: Ñm: working down, *Vinaya Texts*: having pressed down, H: having chosen (see BD III 129 n. 2), Norman: “having pressed it down ...”; abs. of *omaddati* (*o/ava* + \sqrt{mad} + *a*): crushes, rubs down into, presses down. See origin- story to Sekh 33: “*tahaṃ tahaṃ omadditvā*” (Be: *omasitvā*): “pressed down in this and that place.” Maybe it has the sense of “picking.”

[Sekh 36: Oḍanappaṭicchāḍanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na sūpaṃ vā byañjanaṃ⁶⁴⁸ vā oḍanena paṭicchāḍessāmi⁶⁴⁹ bhiyyokamyataṃ⁶⁵⁰ upādāyā ti,⁶⁵¹ sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on covering with rice]

“I shall not cover curry or condiment with rice out of liking for more,” thus the training is to be done.

sūpaṃ: curry; acc. sg. m. See Sekh 29. **vā:** or; disj. particle.

byañjanaṃ: condiment or curry, Ñm: curry; acc. sg. nt. *Byañjana* here has not its usual sense of “attribute” or

v.l.l. at Vin IV 364: *dhūpakato, thupato, dhūpato*.

⁶⁴⁸ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, Um: *vyañjanaṃ*.

⁶⁴⁹ D, W, Ra, Wae UdaPm: *paṭicchāḍessāmi ti*.

⁶⁵⁰ Bh Pm 1 & 2: *bhīyyo-*. Ra: *bhīyo-*.

⁶⁵¹ D: *upādāya, sikkhā*

“detail,” but the sense of “condiment” or “spice.” MW 1029: *vyāñjana*: ... seasoning, sauce, condiment. Cf. M-a 150: “*Anekasūpaṃ anekabyañjanam ti ettha sūpo nāma hatthahāriyo vuccati. Byañjanan ti uttari-bhaṅgaṃ. Tena maccha-maṃsa-mugga-sūpādīhi anekasūpaṃ, nānappakāraka-maṃsādibyañjanan ti vuttaṃ hoti.*”: “Various *sūpa*, various *byañjana*: here *sūpa* is what can be taken by the hand is said. *Byañjana* is condiment. Therefore ‘fish-, meat-, mung-bean-*sūpa*, etc., are various *sūpa*. The various meats, etc., are *byañjana*.’ is said.”

odanena: with rice; ins. sg. m. Ins. of means; Syntax § 66.

paṭicchādessāmi: I shall cover, hide; 1 sg. fut. of *paṭicchādeti*; see Pāc 64.

bhiyyokamyataṃ upādāyā ti: out of liking for more; = **bhiyyokamyataṃ**: liking for more; acc. sg. f. Dative tappurisa cpd. = **bhiyyo**: more; see Pāc 73; indecl. comparative form of $\sqrt{bhū}$: is. + **-kamyataṃ upādāyā**: out of liking; see above NP 8 + **iti**: thus; deictic particle or **ti**: quotation mark.

[Sekh 37: Sūpodanaviññattisikkhāpadaṃ]

Na sūpaṃ vā⁶⁵² odanaṃ vā agilāno⁶⁵³ attano atthāya viññāpetvā bhuñjissāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on suggesting rice or curry]

“I shall not eat curry or rice, [when] not ill, having requested [it] for his own benefit, thus the training is to be done.

odanaṃ: rice; acc. sg. m.

agilāno attano atthāya viññāpetvā: not sick, having requested for his own benefit; see Pāc 39.

[Sekh 38: Ujjhānasaññisikkhāpadaṃ]

Na ujjhānasaññī paresaṃ pattam olokessāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on finding fault]

“I shall not look at another’s bowl finding fault,” thus the training is to be done.

ujjhānasaññī: perceiving fault, Ñm: look enviously, H: captious-mindedly; Bb. cpd. = **ujjhāna**: finding fault; action-noun fr. *ujjhāyati*: finds fault; see Pāc 13 + **saññī**: finding, perceiving; poss. adj.; see Sekh 28.

paresaṃ: of others; gen. pl. of the pronominal adjective *para*; see PG § 113,7.

pattam: the bowl; acc. sg. m.

paresaṃ pattam: H: other’s bowls, Ñm: another’s bowl, lit.: the bowl of others.

olokessāmi ti: I shall look, look down; 1 sg. pres. ind. of *oloketi/avaloketi* (*o/ava* + \sqrt{lok} + *e*) + **ti**: end quote; see above Nid.

[Sekh 39: Kabaḷasikkhāpadaṃ]

Nātimahantaṃ kabaḷaṃ⁶⁵⁴ karissāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on morsels]

“I shall not make an over-large morsel [of food],” thus the training is to be done.

nātimahantaṃ: not over-large; = junction of *na* + *atimahantaṃ* through contraction of the final *-a* of *na* and the initial *a-* of *ati-*; see PG § 69,1. **na**: not; neg. particle. + **atimahanta**: over-large; adj. = pref. **ati**: over, too, excessive + **mahanta**: large, great; acc. of *mahā*.

⁶⁵² G and V add: *byañjanam vā*.

⁶⁵³ V: *agilāno*.

⁶⁵⁴ Mi & Mm Se, V: *kavaḷaṃ*. C, D, W: *kabaḷaṃ*.

kabaḷaṃ: morsel, Ñm & H: mouthful, *Vinaya Texts*: ball; acc. sg. m. PED: mouthful of solid or liquid food. MW 264: *kavala*: a mouthful as of water, etc., mouthwash.

See BD III 133 n. 1. V.l.: **kavaḷaṃ** = the Skt form; see PG § 46,1.

karissāmī ti: I shall make; 1 sg. fut. of *karoti*.

[Sekh 40: Ālopasikkhāpadaṃ]

Parimaṇḍalaṃ ālopaṃ karissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on pieces (of food)]

*Sakkaccavaggo catuttho.*⁶⁵⁵

“I shall eat a round piece [of food],” thus the training is to be done.

The section [starting with the rule] on respectful manner is fourth.

parimaṇḍalaṃ: round; adj. see Sekh 1. Cf. the Cv parallel at Cv VIII 4.5: “*parimaṇḍalo ālopo katabbo*,” this indicates that *parimaṇḍala* is an adjective.

ālopaṃ: H: piece (of food), *Vinaya Texts* & Ñm: mouthful; acc. sg. m. fr. *ālumpati* (*ā* + *√lump* + *a*): pulls out, breaks off, separates.

Wrong way: “*dīghaṃ ālopaṃ*”: “a long piece of food”; Vin IV 194.

The difference between *ālopa* and *kabaḷa* seems to be that the former is a piece of food that is in the hand and has been pulled out from the other food (see Th 1055), not in the mouth, while the latter is a piece of food in the mouth, a “mouthful”; see Sekh 43. (However, in M II 138 and elsewhere *ālopa* is clearly a piece of food in the mouth. At It 18 they occur next to each other and seem to be synonyms.)

parimaṇḍalaṃ ālopaṃ: round piece (of food), Ñm: a round mouthful, H: pieces (of food) into a round

sakkaccavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on respectful manner, the respectful manner section; nom. sg. m. = **sakkacca**: carefully; see Sekh 31 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10. **catuttho**: fourth; ordinal.

[Anāhatavaggo⁶⁵⁶]

[Sekh 41: Anāhaṭasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na anāhaṭe⁶⁵⁷ kabaḷe⁶⁵⁸ mukhadvāraṃ vivarissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on what has not been brought to (the mouth)]

“I shall not open the mouth when the morsel [of food] has not been brought to [it],” thus the training is to be done.

anāhaṭe: not taken to (it), Ñm: not brought to, H: brought close taken to, Norman: brought to it; adj. Bahubbīhi cpd. = *an-*: neg. pref. + *āhaṭa*: p.p. of *āharati* (*ā* + *√har* + *a*); see Pāc 40.

There is no commentary on this in the Vibh. It could refer to opening the mouth well before the morsel of food is brought to it. However the meaning “not swallowed” for *anāhaṭe* would also make sense since a *kabaḷa* is a “mouthful”; i.e., the mouth should not be opened when there is food in the mouth. This is also proper in European etiquette; see note to *āhareyya* at Pāc 40.

⁶⁵⁵ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W: *Catuttho vaggo*. Nothing in Mm Se.

⁶⁵⁶ Only in Mi Se.

⁶⁵⁷ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Ra: *nānāhaṭe*. W: *anāhaṭe*.

⁶⁵⁸ Mi & Mm Se, V: *kavaḷe*. C, D, W: *kabale*.

Sa: “*nānāgate ālope ...*”; PrMoSa p.248. Mū ditto; PrMoMū p.30. Mā-L: *nānāgate kavaḍe*; BV 298, PrMoMā-L p.32.

kabaḷe: ball (of food); loc. sg. m. = Loc. absolute construction. See Sekh 39.

mukhadvāraṃ: mouth; acc. sg. m.; see Pāc 40.

vivarissāmī ti: I shall open; 1 sg. fut. of *vivarati* (*vi* + *√var* + *a*). See Vin II 214.

[Sekh 42: Bhuñjamānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na bhuñjamāno sabbaṃ hatthaṃ mukhe pakkhipissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on eating]

“I shall not put the whole hand onto the mouth while eating,” thus the training is to be done.

bhuñjamāno: eating; pr.p. of *bhuñjati*; see Pāc 29. Possibly a nominative absolute; see Syntax § 26.

sabbaṃ: all; adj. **hatthaṃ**: hand; acc. sg. m.

mukhe: onto the mouth, into the mouth; loc. sg. nt. The locative here does not necessarily mean “into”—it can also mean “onto”. This makes better sense since it is not possible to stick one’s hand into one’s mouth, however, one can put one’s hand (-palm) against one’s mouth, for example, a large amount of rice is put on the palm, then put onto the mouth, and then the mouth takes it from there. Only the fingers should reach the mouth not the palm. If one takes the interpretation “into” then it might refer to not sticking the fingers into the mouth when putting a morsel of food.

pakkhipissāmī ti: put onto, throw onto; 1 sg. fut. of *pakkhipati* (*pa* + *√(k)hip* + *a*).

[Sekh 43: Sakabaḷasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na sakabaḷena⁶⁵⁹ mukhena byāharissāmī⁶⁶⁰ ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on having a morsel (of food)]

“I shall not speak with a mouth which has a morsel [of food in it],” thus the training is to be done.

sakabaḷena: which has a ball (of food in it), which has a mouthful; adj. Bb. cpd. = **sa**: with; pref. (= cpd form of *saṃ*) + **kabaḷa**.

mukhena: with a mouth; ins. sg. m. Ins. of attendant circumstances; see Syntax § 65 and Sekh 10.

byāharissāmī ti: I shall speak, talk; 1 sg. fut. of *byāharati* (*vi* + *ā* + *√har* + *a*). (Cv VIII 4,5 has *vyāharitabbaṃ*.)

Mā-L: “*Na sakavaḍena mukhena vāca-bhāṣiṣyāmī ti śikṣā karaṇīyā.*”; PrMoMā-L p.32, BV 298.

[Sekh 44: Piṇḍukkhepakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na piṇḍukkhepakaṃ bhuñjissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on the tossing up of bits (of food)]

“I shall not eat tossing up bits [of food],” thus the training is to be done.

piṇḍukkhepakaṃ: tossing up bits (of food), *Ñm*: repeatedly lifting up the (same piece of) food, *H*: tossing up balls (of food), *Than*: eat from lifted balls of food; adv. of manner. Kammadhāraya cpd. used as an adverb of manner. = **piṇḍa**: bit of food, alms; see NP 27 + **ukkhepakaṃ**: holding up, tossing up; *ṇamul* absolutive in *-akaṃ*; see *sannidhikāraṃ* at NP 23. From *ukkipati* (*ud* + *√khip* + *a*): raises, holds up, throws up, suspends. The *anāpatti*-section in the *Vibhaṅga*, Vin IV 195, makes exception for hard/uncooked foods (*khajjaka*) and fruits (*phalāphala*), so it might not mean “tossing up”, but rather “holding up” as is explained in BMC.

⁶⁵⁹ Mi & Mm Se, V: *-kavaḷena*. C, D, W: *-kabalena*.

⁶⁶⁰ G, P: *vyāharissāmī*.

However, if it means “holding up” then it is hard to distinguish this rule from the next rule. In India, especially among brahmins who do not want the hand or the edge of a cup to touch the mouth in order to avoid impurity, food is sometimes made into a ball and thrown into the mouth and this rule might refer to this.

Sp 893: “*Piṇḍaṃ ukkhipitvā ukkhipitvā.*”: “Repeatedly tossing up a bit.”

Mā-L: “*Na kavaḍotkṣepakaṃ piṇḍapātaṃ paribhuñjiṣyāmīti śikṣā karaṇīyā.*”; BV 298, PrMoMā-L p.32.

[Sekh 45: Kabaḷāvacchedakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na kabaḷāvacchedakaṃ⁶⁶¹ bhuñjissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on biting off a morsel]

“I shall not eat biting off a morsel [of food],” thus the training is to be done.

kabaḷāvacchedakaṃ: biting off a mouthful, Ñm & H: breaking up (into bits, ...), Than: nibbling at mouthfuls of food; kammadhāraya cpd. used as adverb of manner. = **kabaḷa** + **avacchedaka**: cutting off (with the teeth), bite off; ṇamul absolutive in *-akaṃ* from *avacchindati* (*ava* + √(c)chid + *ṇa*). Horner in BD 135 n. 4 takes it to mean “breaking up mouthfuls” with the fingers, not as “nibbling at.” As a *kabaḷa* is a mouthful, i.e., food in the mouth, it must mean that one part of the food is in the mouth and bitten off from the rest that is outside the mouth.

Sp 893: “*kavalaṃ avacchinditvā avacchinditvā.*”

[Sekh 46: Avagaṇḍakāraṇasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na avagaṇḍakāraṇaṃ bhuñjissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on puffing up the cheeks]

“I shall not eat puffing up [the cheeks],” thus the training is to be done.

avagaṇḍakāraṇaṃ: stuffing out (the cheeks); kammadhāraya cpd. used as adverb of manner. = **avagaṇḍa**: making a swelling, i.e., puffing out (the cheeks); = pref. *ava-*: out + *gaṇḍa*: a swelling + **kāraṇa**: doing; ṇamul absolutive in *-akaṃ* fr. *karoti*.

Sp 893: “*Avagaṇḍakāraṇaṃ-ti makkaṭo viya gaṇḍe katvā katvā.*”: “...: repeatedly making a puffed up cheek like a monkey (which stuffs its food into it).”

Wrong way: “*Yo anādariyaṃ paṭicca ekato vā ubhato vā gaṇḍaṃ katvā bhuñjati, āpatti dukkaṭassa.*”: “Who out of disrespect, having made a puffing up on one side or both sides, there is an offence of wrongdoing for him,” Vin IV 196.

[Sekh 47: Hatthaniddhunakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na hatthaniddhunakaṃ⁶⁶² bhuñjissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on shaking off the hand]

“I shall not eat shaking [food] off the hand,” thus the training is to be done.

hatthaniddhunakaṃ: shaking (food) off the hand; kammadhāraya cpd. used as adv. of manner. = **hattha**: hand + **niddhunakaṃ**: shaking off; ṇamul abs in *-akaṃ* from *niddhunāti* (*ni(r)* + √*dhu* + *nā*): shakes off.

Mā-L: “*Na hastanirdhūtaṃ ...*”; PrMoMā-L p.32, BV 298. Mū: “*Na hastasaṃdhūnaṃ ...*”; PrMoMū p.31.

⁶⁶¹ Mi & Mm Se, V: *kavaḷ-*. C, D: *kabal-*.

⁶⁶² Mi & Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, G, V, W, Pg: *-niddhūnaṃ*.

[Sekh 48: Sitthāvakāraḥasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na sitthāvakāraḥaṃ⁶⁶³ bhuñjissāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on scattering rice grains]

“I shall not eat scattering rice-grains,” thus the training is to be done.

sitthāvakāraḥaṃ: scattering rice-grains; kammadhāraya cpd. used as adverb of manner. = **sittha**: CPED: rice-grain; PED & Nm: lump of boiled rice; cf. Sekh 56 + **avakāraḥaṃ**: doing away, scattering, strewing; ṇamul absolutive in -akaṃ. = pref. **ava-**: off, away + **kāraḥaṃ**: see Sekh 46.

Mā-L: *sitthāpakāraḥaṃ*; PrMoMā-L p.32. Sa: *śistavikiraṃ*; PrMoSa p.249, BHSGD, *Mahāvvyutpatti*: *sikthapṛthakkāraḥaṃ* BMD p.146.

Perhaps *avakāraḥaṃ* is a corruption of *avakiraḥaṃ*, from *avakirati* (*ava/o* + $\sqrt{\text{kir}}$ + *a*): rejects, throws out, strews. It could also be from *avakkāra*: throwing away, refuse; from *avaṃ* + *karoti*.

[Sekh 49: Jivhānicchāraḥasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na jivhānicchāraḥaṃ bhuñjissāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on sticking out the tongue]

“I shall not eat sticking out the tongue,” thus the training is to be done.

jivhānicchāraḥaṃ: sticking out the tongue; kammadhāraya cpd. used as adverb of manner. = **jivhā**: tongue + **nicchāraḥaṃ**: sticking out; ṇamul abs. from *niccharati* (*ni(r)* + $\sqrt{\text{car}}$ + *a*): emits, goes out.

[Sekh 50: Capucapukāraḥasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na capucapukāraḥaṃ bhuñjissāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

*Kabaḷavaggo*⁶⁶⁴ *pañcamo*.⁶⁶⁵

[The training precept on making chomping (sounds)]

“I shall not eat making chomping [sounds],” thus the training is to be done.

The section [starting with the rule] on morsels of food is fifth.

capucapukāraḥaṃ: making chomping sounds, H: smacking the lips, Nm: making a “capucapu” sound; kammadhāraya cpd. used as adverb of manner. = **capucapu**: chomping, smacking sound; an onomatopoeic⁶⁶⁶ construction. + **kāraḥaṃ**: making; ṇamul abs.; see Sekh 46.

Sp 893: “*capucapū ti evaṃ saddaṃ katvā*”

kabaḷavagga: the section (starting with the rule) on morsels of food, food-ball-section; nom. sg. m. = **kabaḷa**: ball of food; see Sekh 41 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10. **pañcamo**: fifth; ordinal.

⁶⁶³ V: *sitth-*.

⁶⁶⁴ Mi Se: *anāhaṭavaggo*. G: *na anāhaṭavaggo*. V: *na anāhaṭavaggo*.

⁶⁶⁵ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W: *Pañcamo vaggo*. Nothing in Mm Se.

⁶⁶⁶ (Onomatopoeic means a word that imitates the sound of the action it refers to, see PG § 186.4.)

[Surusuruvaggo⁶⁶⁷]

[Sekh 51: Surusurukāraśikkhāpadaṃ]

Na surusurukāraśaṃ bhuñjissāmīti śikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on making slurping (sounds)]

“I shall not eat making slurping [sounds],” thus the training is to be done.

surusurukāraśaṃ: making slurping sounds, H: making a hissing sound, Ñm: making a “surusuru” sound; kammadhāraya cpd. used as adverb of manner. = **surusuru**: slurping; an onomatopoeic word + **kāraśa**: making; ṇamul absolutive, see above Sekh 46.

[Sekh 52: Hatthanillehakaśikkhāpadaṃ]

Na hatthanillehakaṃ bhuñjissāmīti śikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on licking the hand]

“I shall not eat licking the hand,” thus the training is to be done.

hatthanillehakaṃ: licking the hand; kammadhāraya cpd. used as adverb of manner. = **hattha**: hand + **nillehakaṃ**: licking; ṇamul absolutive in *-akaṃ* from *nillehati*, the causative of *nillihati* (*ni(r)* + *√lih* + *a*). (Padabhājana on Sekh 53: *nillehitvā*).

[Sekh 53: Pattanillehakaśikkhāpadaṃ]

Na pattanillehakaṃ bhuñjissāmīti śikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on licking the bowl]

“I shall not eat licking the bowl,” thus the training is to be done.

pattanillehakaṃ: licking the bowl; adv. = **patta**: bowl + **nillehakaṃ**.

[Sekh 54: Oṭṭhanillehakaśikkhāpadaṃ]

Na oṭṭhanillehakaṃ⁶⁶⁸ bhuñjissāmīti śikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on licking the lips]

“I shall not eat licking the lip[s],” thus the training is to be done.

oṭṭhanillehakaṃ: licking the lips; adv. = **oṭṭha**: lip(s) + **nillehakaṃ**.

[Sekh 55: Sāmisasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na sāmisena hatthena pāṇiyathālakam⁶⁶⁹ paṭiggahessāmīti śikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on (a hand soiled) with food]

“I shall not accept a drinking-water cup with a hand which is [soiled] with food,” thus the training is to be done.

⁶⁶⁷ Only in Mi Se.

⁶⁶⁸ W: *uṭṭha-* (Probably based on a corruption based on the Khom script as the Sinhala characters *o* and *u* can’t be confused easily; see note on *ūna* at Sd conclusion.)

⁶⁶⁹ V: *pāṇiya-*.

sāmisena: which is (soiled with) food, which is food (-soiled), Ñm: with a hand soiled with food; adj. qualifying *hatthena*. = pref.: **sa-** (contracted pref. *saha*): with + **āmisā:** food.

hatthena: with a hand; ins. sg. m. Ins. of attendant circumstances; cf. Sekh 43.

pānīyathālakaṃ: drinking-water cup; acc. sg. nt. Dat. tapp. cpd. = **pānīya:** drinking water, drink + **thālaka:** cup, beaker, pot, vessel.

paṭiggahessāmī ti: I shall accept; 1 sg. fut. of *paṭiggaheti*; see NP 3.

[Sekh 56: Sasitthakasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na sasitthakaṃ⁶⁷⁰ pattadhovanaṃ antaraghare chaḍḍessāmī⁶⁷¹ ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.⁶⁷²

[The training precept on (bowl-washing water) with rice grains]

“I shall not throw away bowl-washing water which has rice-grains [in it] in an inhabited area,” thus the training is to be done.

sasitthakaṃ: which has rice-grains (in it); adj. Bb cpd. = **sa-**: having, with; pref. Cpd form of *saṃ*. + **sitthaka:** having rice-grains; = **sittha:** rice-grain; see Sekh 48 + adjectival suf. **-ka**.

pattadhovanaṃ: bowl-washing-water, H: rinsings of the bowl; acc. sg. nt. Gen. tapp. cpd. = **patta:** bowl + **dhovana:** washing (-water); action-noun from *dhovati*; see NP 4.

antaraghare: in an inhabited area; loc. sg. nt.; see Sekh 3.

chaḍḍessāmī ti: I shall throw away; 1 sg. fut. of *chaḍḍati* ($\sqrt{\text{chaḍḍ}} + e$).

(**samatimsa bhojanapaṭisaṃyuttā niṭṭhitā:** “The exactly thirty connected with food have been finished.” = *samatimsa*: exactly thirty; adj. = *sama*: even, right; adj. + *timsa*: thirty; num. *bhojanapaṭisaṃyuttā*: connected with food; adj. qualifying unexpressed *sekhiyā*. = *bhojana*: food + *paṭisaṃyutta*: connected; p.p. of *paṭisaṃyujjati*. *niṭṭhitā*: have been finished; p.p.; see Nid concl.)

[Sekh 57: Chattapāṇisikkhāpadaṃ]

Na chattapāṇissa agilānassa⁶⁷³ dhammaṃ desessāmī ti,⁶⁷⁴ sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on the sunshade in (his) hand]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one who has a sunshade in [his] hand, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

chattapāṇissa: to one who has a sunshade in (his) hand; adj. qualifying an unexpressed *purisassa* or the like. = **chattha:** sunshade, umbrella + **pāṇissa:** to one who is having in the hand; dat. sg. m. of poss. adj. *pāṇin*; see IP p.122.

agilānassa: who is not ill; adj. of *agilāna*; see Pāc 39.

dhammaṃ: Dhamma, a teaching; acc. sg. m. See Pāc 7.

desessāmī ti: I shall teach; 1 sg. fut. of *deseti* ($\sqrt{\text{dis}} + a$). *Desessati* is the correct future tense form of this seventh conjugation verb; see IP p.54.

[Sekh 58: Daṇḍapāṇisikkhāpadaṃ]

Na daṇḍapāṇissa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmī ti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

⁶⁷⁰ V: *sasitthakaṃ*. (Cf Sekh 48.) G: *na sitthakaṃ*.

⁶⁷¹ V: *chaddessāmī*.

⁶⁷² Mm Se: *Samatimsa bhojanapaṭisaṃyuttā*. Mi Se: *Samatimsa bhojanapaṭisaṃyuttā niṭṭhitā*.

⁶⁷³ V: *agilānassa*.

⁶⁷⁴ Mm Se, Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, G, V, W, Mi Se v.l., Ra: *desissāmī ti* throughout. (Pg: *desessāmī ti*.)

[The training precept on the stick in (his) hand]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one who has a stick in [his] hand, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

daṇḍapāṇissa: to one who has a stick in (his) hand; dat. sg. m. = **daṇḍa**: stick, staff, rod. The staff is a symbol of (royal) power and in the Pāli Canon it is often synonymous with punishment and violence.

[Sekh 59: Satthapāṇisikkhāpadaṃ]

Na satthapāṇissa agilānassa⁶⁷⁵ dhammaṃ desessāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on the knife in (his) hand]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one who has a knife in [his] hand [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

sattha: knife, dagger; nt.

[Sekh 60: Āvudhapāṇisikkhāpadaṃ]

Na āvudhapāṇissa⁶⁷⁶ agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

*Surusuruvaggo*⁶⁷⁷ *chaṭṭho*.⁶⁷⁸

[The training precept on the weapon in (his) hand]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one who has a weapon in [his] hand, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

The section [starting with the rule] on slurping is sixth.

āvudha: weapon. The v.l. *āyudha* is the Sanskrit form, as -y- in Pāli appears for the earlier Skt -v-, see PG § 46,1. Norman states that this v/y alternation in *āvudha* is an eastern feature in his note on Dh 40 in Norman, 2000. Mā-L: “*nāyudhapāṇisya ...*”; BV 299.

surusuruvaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on slurping, slurping-section; nom. sg. m. = **surusuru**: slurping; see Sekh 51 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10. **chaṭṭho**: sixth; ordinal.

[Pādukavaggo⁶⁷⁹]

[Sekh 61: Pādukasikkhāpada]

Na pādukārūḷhassa⁶⁸⁰ agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on shoes]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one who is wearing shoes, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

pādukārūḷhassa: to one who is wearing shoes; Adj. dat. sg. m. Bb. cpd. = **pāduka**: shoe; from *pāda*: foot + conn. suf. -ka. + **ārūḷha**: p.p. of *āruhati* (*ā* + √*ruh* + *a*): mounts, wears.

⁶⁷⁵ V: *agilānassa*.

⁶⁷⁶ Bh Pm 1 & 2, Um, Ra, Pg, Vibh Ce: *āyudha*.

⁶⁷⁷ G, V: *nasurusuruvaggo*.

⁶⁷⁸ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W: *Chaṭṭho vaggo*. Nothing in Mm Se.

⁶⁷⁹ Only in Mi Se.

⁶⁸⁰ Bh Pm 1 & 2, Dm, V: *-rūḷhassa*.

[Sekh 62: Upāhanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na upāhanārūḷhasa⁶⁸¹ agilānassa⁶⁸² dhammaṃ desessāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on sandals]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one who is wearing sandals, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

upāhanārūḷhasa: to (someone) who is wearing sandals; dat. sg. m. = **upāhana**: sandal; nt.

The difference between *pāduka* and *upāhana* is not entirely clear. According to BMC II ch 3 *pāduka* is footwear made of non-leather materials and *upāhana* is footwear made of leather. This suggestion is based on a deduction from the rules and allowances regarding footwear in the Mahāvagga, and the Sp Commentary on them, which forbid *pāduka* made of leather and only allow *pāduka* to be used in toilets. *Upāhana* seems to be any footwear made of leather.

[Sekh 63: Yānasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na yānatassa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on vehicles]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one who is in a vehicle, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

yānatassa: one who is in a vehicle, lit: to one who has gone in a vehicle; dat. sg. m. = **yāna**: vehicle + **gata**: being in, gone; p.p. of *gacchati*; here meaning “gone in a certain way,” i.e., being in.

[Sekh 64: Sayanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na sayanagatassa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on couches]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one who is on a couch, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

sayanagatassa: to one who is on a couch, ... who has gone on a couch; dat. sg. m. = **sayana**: couch, bed; from *sayati* ($\sqrt{si} + a$): lies down + **gata**.

[Sekh 65: Pallatthikasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na pallatthikāya nisinnassa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on (knees being) clasped around]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one sitting with [the knees] clasped-around, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

pallatthikāya: with (knees) clasped-around; adv. Ins. of *pallathika*; see Sekh 26.

nisinnassa: to one sitting; dat. sg. m. of *nisinna*, the p.p. of *nisajjati*; see Pāc 73.

[Sekh 66: Veṭṭhasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na veṭṭhasāsassa⁶⁸³ agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

⁶⁸¹ Bh Pm 1 & 2, Dm, V: -rūḷhasa.

⁶⁸² V: *agilānassa* throughout the section.

⁶⁸³ Mi & Mm Se, G, V: *veṭṭhita*-.

[The training precept on being wrapped]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one whose head is wrapped [with a turban], [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

veṭṭhitasāsassa: to (someone) whose head is wrapped (with a turban), H: to one with turban on his head, Ñm: to one wearing a head-wrapping; adj. in dat. sg. m. Bb cpd. = **veṭṭhita**: wrapped, enveloped; p.p. of *veṭṭheti* ($\sqrt{veṭh} + e$) + **sāsa**: head.

[Sekh 67: Oguṇṭhitasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na oguṇṭhitasāsassa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on being covered]

“I shall not teach Dhamma to one whose head is covered, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

oguṇṭhitasāsassa: to (someone) whose head is covered; adj. in dat. sg. m. Bb cpd. = **oguṇṭhita**: covered; see Sekh 23 + **sāsa**: head. The difference between this and the preceding rule is that in the preceding rule the head is wrapped in a strip of cotton, a turban, as men are wearing in the Amaravati stone plaques, while here a larger loose piece of cloth is intended such as the upper part of a saree, which traditional Indian women commonly put over their head. This sekhiya, and a few others (Sekh 61 & 69), are exemplified in the Verahaccāni Sutta (S IV 152f) where a Brāhmiṇī of the Verahaccāni clan invites Ven. Udāyi for a meal. When Ven. Udāyi has eaten the Brāhmiṇī asks him in a forceful way to give a Dhamma discourse, however, because she is sitting on a high seat, has covered her head, and is wearing sandals, he refuses. (*Udāyiṃ bhuttāviṃ onītapattapāṇiṃ pādūkā ārohitvā ucce āsane nisīditvā sīsaṃ oguṇṭhitvā āyasmantaṃ udāyiṃ etadavoca—“bhaṇa, samaṇa, dhammaṃ”ti.*)

[Sekh 68 Chamāsikkhāpadaṃ]

Na chamāyaṃ⁶⁸⁴ nisīditvā āsane nisinnassa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmīti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on (sitting) on the ground]

“Having sat down on the ground, I shall not teach Dhamma, to one who is sitting on a seat, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

chamāyaṃ: on the ground; loc. sg. f. of *chamā*. (V.l. *chamāya*; also a loc. sg. f.)

nisīditvā: having sat down; abs. of *nisīdati*; see Aniy 1.

āsane: on a seat; loc. sg. nt.

nisinnassa: to one sitting; dat. sg. m.; see Sekh 65.

[Sekh 69 Nīcāsanāsikkhāpadaṃ]

Na nīce⁶⁸⁵ āsane nisīditvā ucce āsane nisinnassa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmīti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on a low seat]

“Having sat down on a low seat, I shall not teach Dhamma to one who is sitting on a high seat [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

nīce: low; adj.

⁶⁸⁴ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, W, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee: *chamāya*.

⁶⁸⁵ V: *nīce*.

ucce: high; adj.

[Sekh 70: Ṭhitasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na ṭhito nisinnassa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.⁶⁸⁶

[The training precept on standing]

“I shall not teach Dhamma [while] standing, to one who is sitting, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

ṭhito: standing; p.p. of *tiṭṭhati* qualifying an unexpressed *ahaṃ*, the subject of *desessāmi*. A predicative nominative; see Sekh 3.

[Sekh 71: Pacchatogamanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na pacchato gacchanto purato⁶⁸⁷ gacchantassa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on going behind]

“I shall not teach Dhamma [while] walking behind, to one who is going in front, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

pacchato: behind, after; adv. ablative side form of indecl. *pacchā*, see Pār concl, with ablatival suffix *-to*; see Syntax 131c.

gacchanto: walking, going; pr.p. of *gacchati*, which normally means “goes,” but sometimes “walks”; see PED.

purato: before, in front; adv. abl. of indecl. *pura*.

gacchantassa: to one going; adj. Dat. sg. m. of the pr.p. *gacchanto*.

[Sekh 72: Uppathenagamanasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na uppathena⁶⁸⁸ gacchanto pathena gacchantassa agilānassa dhammaṃ desessāmi ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.⁶⁸⁹

[The training precept on going off the path]

“I shall not teach Dhamma [while] walking off the path to one walking on the path, [and] who is not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

uppathena: off the path, (going) on the off-path; ins. sg. m. of *uppatha*. Ins. of means; see Syntax § 66,d & e. *Uppatha*: side-path, off the path, wrong path. = junction of pref. **ud**: out, away + **patha**: path. Mā-L: “*utpathena gacchanto gacchantasya agilānasya ...*”

pathena: on the path, by the path; Ins. sg. m. Ins. of means.

(Mi Se: **soḷasa dhammadesanāpaṭisaṃyuttā niṭṭhitā**: “The sixteen connected with the teaching of Dhamma have been finished.” = *soḷasa*: sixteen; num. *dhammadesanāpaṭisaṃyuttā*: connected with the teaching of Dhamma; adj. qualifying unexpressed *sekkhiyā*. *dhammadesanā*: the teaching of Dhamma; gen. tapp. cpd. = *dhamma* + *desana*: exposition, teaching + *paṭisaṃyutta*: connected; p.p. of *paṭisaṃyujjati*. *niṭṭhitā*: have been finished; p.p., see Nid concl.)

⁶⁸⁶ C, D, W: *Sattamo vaggo*. G, V: *Napādukavaggo sattamo*.

⁶⁸⁷ V: *pūrato*.

⁶⁸⁸ V: *uppathena*.

⁶⁸⁹ Mm Se: *Soḷasa dhammadesanā-paṭisaṃyuttā*. Mi Se: *Soḷasa dhammadesanāpaṭisaṃyuttā niṭṭhitā*.

[Sekh 73: Ṭhito-uccārasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na ṭhito agilāno⁶⁹⁰ uccāraṃ vā passāvaṃ vā karissāmī ti, sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on excreting while standing]

“I shall not excrete or urinate [while] standing [and while] not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

ṭhito: standing; p.p. of *tiṭṭhati*; cf. Pd 2. *Ṭhito* has a sense that approaches a present participle. Here it seems to be used as a nominative absolute; see Syntax § 26.

uccāraṃ: excrement, faeces; acc. sg. m. **vā**: or; disj. particle.

passāvaṃ: urine; acc. sg. m.

karissāmī ti: I shall produce, make, do; 1 sg. fut. of *karoti*. The Pāli has a periphrastic way of expressing these calls of nature in which *karoti* activates the noun, “make excrement ... urine.” This can not be rendered literally into English, although Ñāṇamoli’s “make water” comes close to it.

[Sekh 74: Harite-uccārasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na harite agilāno uccāraṃ vā passāvaṃ vā kheḷaṃ vā karissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

[The training precept on excreting on crops]

“I shall not excrete or urinate or spit on crops, [while] not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

harite: on crops, on greenery; loc. sg. nt. See Pāc 19: *appaharite*.

Cf. Bhikkhunī-Pāc 9, Vin IV 267: Padabhājana: “*Haritaṃ nāma pubbaṇṇaṃ aparāṇṇaṃ yaṃ manussānaṃ upabhogaparibhogaṃ ropimaṃ*.”: “So called *harita* is cereals and pulses/beans grown for the enjoyment and use/food of human beings.”

From the origin-story to this bhikkhunī rule (and the one to Bhikkhu-pācittiya 19) it is clear that crops are meant: “*Bhikkhuniyo uccāraṃ-pi passāvaṃ-pi saṅkāraṃ-pi vighāsaṃ-pi khetto chaddenti. Atha kho so brāhmaṇo ujjhāyati khiyyati vipāceti*: ‘*Kathaṃ-hi nāma bhikkhuniyo amhākaṃ yavakhettaṃ dūsessanti*’ ti!”: “Bhikkhunīs disposed of excrement and urine and refuse and scraps in a field. Then the Brahmin looked down upon it, complained, got irritated: “But how can the bhikkhunīs spoil our barley-field!?”

kheḷaṃ: spittle, saliva; acc. sg. nt.

[Sekh 75: Uduke-uccārasikkhāpadaṃ]

Na uduke agilāno uccāraṃ vā passāvaṃ vā kheḷaṃ vā karissāmīti sikkhā karaṇīyā.

*Pādukavaggo sattamo.*⁶⁹¹

[The training precept on excreting in water]

“I shall not excrete or urinate or spit in water, [while] not ill,” thus the training is to be done.

The section [starting with the rule] on shoes is seventh.

uduke: in the water, into; loc. sg. nt. see Pāc 53.

pādukavaggo: the section (starting with the rule) on shoes, shoe-section; nom. sg. m. = **pāduka**: shoe; see Sekh 61 + **vagga**: section; see NP 10. **sattamo**: seventh; ordinal.

(Mm & Mm Se: **tayo pakiṇṇakā**: “The three miscellaneous [cases] have been finished.” = *tayo*: three; num.

⁶⁹⁰ V: *agilāno* throughout the section.

⁶⁹¹ Bh Pm 1 & 2: *Sattamo vaggo*. G, V: *Napacchatovaggo aṭṭhamo*. Mm Se: *Tayo pakiṇṇakā*. Mi Se: *Tayo pakiṇṇakā niṭṭhitā*.

pakiṇṇakā: miscellaneous; adjective qualifying unexpressed *dhammā*: cases.)

[Sekhiya conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhā kho āyasmanto sekhiyā⁶⁹² dhammā.

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Dutiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Tatiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci'ttha parisuddhā?

Parisuddh'etthāyasmanto, tasmā tuṇhī, evam-etam dhārayāmi.⁶⁹³

*Sekhiyā niṭṭhitā.*⁶⁹⁴

Venerables, , the cases related to the training have been recited.

Concerning that I ask the Venerables: [Are you] pure in this?

A second time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

A third time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

The Venerables are pure in this, therefore there is silence, thus I keep this [in mind].

The cases related to the training have finished.

uddiṭṭhā ... niṭṭhitā: see Sekh intro. and Nid. concl.

[Adhikaraṇasamathā⁶⁹⁵]

Ime kho panāyasmanto satta adhikaraṇasamathā⁶⁹⁶ dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti.

[The settlements of legal issues]

Venerables, these seven cases that are settlements of legal issues come up for recitation.

ime kho panāyasmanto ... dhammā uddesaṃ āgacchanti: see Sd intro.

sattādhikaraṇasamathā: seven settlements of legal issues; adjective qualifying *dhammā*. = Gen. tapp. cpd used as Bb. cpd. = **satta**: seven; num. + **adhikaraṇa**: legal issue, Ñm: litigation, H: legal question, Norman: legal process, Than: issue, formal dispute; adjective qualifying *dhammā*. = directional pref. *adhi-* + *karaṇa*: doing, making; √kar + action-noun suffix -aṇa. see Sd 8., Pāc 63. + **samatha**: Ñm: settlement, calming, H: deciding, Than: resolution; adjective from *sammati* (√sam + a): is appeased, calmed.

See BD III 153 f., and PED 558 for references to the enumeration of the seven *adhikaraṇasamathas* elsewhere in the Canon; see also TP liv-lv.

There is no Padabhāṣana commentary on the *adhikaraṇasamathas* in the Suttavibhaṅga, which could indicate

⁶⁹² Mi Se, V, P: *pañcasattati sekhiyā*.

⁶⁹³ Dm, UP, Ra, Um: *dhārayāmi ti*.

⁶⁹⁴ = Dm, Bh Pm 1 & 2, c, V, W, Mm Se, Um. Ñd Ce, P: *Sekhiyā dhammā niṭṭhitā*. Mi Se: *Pañcasattati sekhiyā dhammā niṭṭhitā*. (N.B. The *Katthapaññattivāra* chapter of the *Parivāra* (Be, Ce, and Ee.) has *Pañcasattati sekhiyā niṭṭhitā*.

⁶⁹⁵ = Dm. Mi Se: *Sattādhikaraṇasamathā dhammā*. D: *Adhikaraṇasamathā dhammā*. Nothing in other eds.

⁶⁹⁶ Mi & Mm Se, C, G, V, W;: *sattādhikaraṇasamathā*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, D, Dm, Um, UP, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee, Ra, Pg: *satta adhikaranasamathā*.

that they were not regarded as *sikkhāpadas* when this commentary was made, and maybe were a later addition; see p. @.

The four types of *adhikaraṇa* are given in MN 104/M II 247. See Dhirasekera 121–27 for a detailed account of the *adhikaraṇasamathas*.

Adhikaraṇa is the Vinaya parallel to a law-case in a lay court, *aṭṭa*; see Sp 906. Nolot, 1996, pp. 92–115, gives a detailed discussion of the term.

dhammā: , Ñm: cases, H: rules; nom. pl. m.

[Settlements of Legal Issues Continued]

Uppannuppannānaṃ adhikaraṇānaṃ samathāya vūpasamāya: sammukhāvinayo dātabbo, sativinayo dātabbo, amūlḥavinayo⁶⁹⁷ dātabbo, paṭiññāya kāretabbo,⁶⁹⁸ yebhuyyasikā,⁶⁹⁹ tassapāpiyyasikā,⁷⁰⁰ tiṇavatthārako ti.

For the calming, for the stilling of whichever legal issues have arisen: the removal through the presence [of the bhikkhu] is to be given, the removal [of the accusation] through remembrance is to be given, the removal [of the accusation] through not [being] insane is to be given, he is to be made to do [the offence-procedure] through admitting [the offence], the [decision of the] majority, [the decision making it] worse for him, [the decision] covering [the offences as if] with grass.

uppannuppannānaṃ: whichever ... that have arisen, Ñm: whenever they may arise, H: arising from time to time; adj. = **uppanna**: arisen; p.p. of *uppajjati* (*ud* + √*pad* + *ya*) repeated for distributive emphasis; see IP p.171. (The Skt consonant-combination *-dp-* has been palatalised to *-pp-* in *uppanna*; see PG § 55.)

adhikaraṇānaṃ: of legal issues; gen. pl. nt.

samathāya: for the calming, quieting, Ñm: settlement, H: deciding; dat. (of purpose) sg. m.

vūpasamāya: for the stilling, assuagement, Ñm: pacification, H: settlement; dat. sg. m. of *vūpasama*, an action noun from *vūpasammati* (*vi* + *upa* + √*sam* + *a*). Cf. Bhī Pāc 45: “*Eh’āye imaṃ adhikaraṇaṃ vūpasamehī ti ...*”: “Come, Lady, settle this legal issue.” There seems to be no discernable difference in meaning between *upasama* and *vūpasama*. The latter form seems to be used when it is easier to pronounce, usually after a vowel, than *upasamo*.

The wording and formulation of the seven cases is somewhat different in the Sa version of the Prātimokṣasūtra. The preceding clause is not found here and the rules are formulated thus: “*saṃm(u)kha(v)inayārhaṃsa saṃmukhavinaya(aṃ dāsyāmaḥ)*...” : “For [a case requiring] the removal through the presence [of the bhikkhu], we grant the the removal through the presence [of the bhikkhu],” etc.

sammukhāvinayo: the removal through the presence (of the bhikkhu), Ñm: Removal (of the litigation) by Confrontation, H: a verdict in the presence of, BHSGD II 581: procedure in the presence of (an assembly of all the monks in the chapter.); nom. sg. m. Ins. tapp. cpd.

Vin II 73: “Bhikkhus, a legal act should not be done not in the presence of the bhikkhus...”: “*Na bhikkhave asammukhībhūtānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ kammaṃ kātabbaṃ ...*”

= **sammukhā**: through the presence (of the bhikkhu), face to face with (the bhikkhu), in the presence (of the bhikkhu); ins. sg. m. in *-ā* of adjective *sammukha*. = pref. **saṃ**: together with + **mukha**: face + **vinaya**: removal, acquittal, disciplinary procedure, verdict; from *vineti* (*vi* + √*ni* + *e*): removes, dispels. An action-noun. = *vi* +

⁶⁹⁷ V: *amūlḥa*-.

⁶⁹⁸ = Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, W (Also in other old ms: Ridivihāra, Sirimalwatta, Sagama RMV, etc.), Ra, Sannē. Also in the Burmese script manuscript MEP Pali 52 in the collection of the Séminaire de Missions Étrangères de Paris. See EFEO Data 101.

D, Dm, Um, UP, Mi Se, G, V, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee: *paṭiññāya kāretabbaṃ*.

Mm Se, Pg: *paṭiññātakaraṇaṃ*.

⁶⁹⁹ G: *yebhuyyissikā*.

⁷⁰⁰ Dm, Mi & Mm Se, Um, V, Pg: *-pāpiya*-. Bh Pm 2, D: *-pāpiyya*-. C, W: *pāpeyyasikā* (Also in other old ms: Ridivihāra, Sirimalwatta, Sagama RMV, etc.), G: *pāpiyyissikā*.

√ni + a > vini-y-a > vinaya or vi + ne + a > vi + naya + a. See CDPL 575. No explanation in the Suttavibhaṅga nor the commentaries of exact meaning of *vinaya* here has been found. Ñm's translation "removal" seems to be the one which agrees most with the general meaning of the word *vinaya* and also with the purpose of the *adhikaraṇasamathas*.

In Sp 19 the action-noun *vinaya* in its general usage is explained as: "*Kāyika-vācasika-ajjhacāraṇanisedhanato c'esa kāyaṃ vācañ-ca vineti tasmā vividhanayattā visesanayattā kāyavācānañ-ca vinayato vinayo ti akkhāto*."

dātabbo: he is to be given; f.p.p. of *dadāti* (√dā + a) qualifying *sammukhāvinayo*.

sativinayo: the removal through remembrance, Ñm: removal by (establishing a bhikkhu's) memory (to be reliable), H: verdict of innocence, Than: verdict of mindfulness; nom. sg. m. Ins. tapp. cpd. Vin II 80: "... but because I, Venerable Sir, have attained to full development of remembrance, I request the removal through remembrance.": "... so'haṃ bhante satievapullappatto saṅghaṃ sativinayaṃ yācāmi ti."

= **sati**: memory; from *sarati* (√sar + a): remembers + **vinaya**.

amūḷhavinayo: the removal [of the accusation] through not (being) insane, Ñm: removal by (establishing that a bhikkhu was influenced by) mental derangement, H: verdict of past insanity, BHSGD II 63: disciplinary procedure for one not (any longer) insane; nom. sg. m. Vin II 81: "but because I am not insane I request the removal through not being insane." "... so'haṃ bhante amūḷho saṅghaṃ amūḷhavinayo yācāmi ti."

= **amūḷha**: not insane, not mad, sanity, sane, not a madman; see Pār 2 + **vinaya**: see above

paṭiññāya kāretabbo: he is to be made to do [the offence-procedure] through admitting [the offence], Ñm: (the litigation) can be dealt with by recognition (on the part of a bhikkhu who committed an offence and did not see it), H: it may be carried out on (his) acknowledgement.

Although the meaning of this reading and the *paṭiññātakaraṇaṃ* reading below is basically the same, this reading with the causative sense is more appropriate as it signifies the Saṅgha's point of view like in the other six *adhikaraṇasamathas*. The *paṭiññātakaraṇaṃ* reading denotes the offender's point of view and would thus be an exception.

In Vin II 83: "*Na bhikkhave appaṭiññāya bhikkhūnaṃ kammaṃ kātabbaṃ ...*": "Not without admitting, bhikkhus, a legal act is to be done ..." and "*dhammikaṃ paṭiññātakaraṇaṃ ...*" are found. Cf. Vin I 325: "*paṭiññāya karaṇīyaṃ kammaṃ appaṭiññāya karoti*": "He does a legal act which is to be done with admittance, without admittance (of the offence by the accused bhikkhu)." The Mā-L Prātimokṣasūtra has *pratijñā-kāraka*, which supports the Mm Se reading. Mā-L: *pratijñā-kārako samatho*; PrMoMā-L p.35, BV 300. The Sa PrMo has "*pratijñāvinayārhasya pratijñāṃ kāra(yi)āyāma(h)*," PrMo Sa 256.

= **paṭiññāya**: through admitting, with admitting; ins. sg. f. of *paṭiññā*, action-noun from *paṭijānāti*.

kāretabbo: he is to be made to do; f.p.p. of *kāreti* agreeing with an unexpressed *so*

Cf. Cv IV 13,1/Vin II 86: "*Sace mayaṃ imāhi āpattihi aññamaññaṃ kāreyyāma, siyā pi taṃ adhikaraṇaṃ ... bhedāya saṃvatteyya*": "If we make each other do (what is in accordance) with these offences, it might be that the legal issue ... would lead to schism." This reading is in the same case as *dātabbo* in the previous three *adhikaraṇasamathas* and refers to the person rather than to the act and therefore might be the most appropriate one.

(V.I. **kāretabbam**: it is to be caused to be done (by him), ... carried out, ... performed, is to be dealt with; f.p.p. of *kāreti* agreeing with an unexpressed *taṃ* referring to the legal act to make up for the offence that the bhikkhu is accused of. Maybe the reading *kāretabbam* has happened under influence of the reading *paṭiññātakaraṇaṃ*.)

(V.I. **paṭiññātakaraṇaṃ**: the making up with the admittance (of the offence by the accused bhikkhu), Than: acting in accordance with what is admitted, BHSGD II: (procedure) which effects confession (of the erring one); nom. sg. nt. Ins. tapp. cpd.

Paṭiññātakaraṇaṃ is also found in Ee A I 99, IV 144, M II 248, and Be Kkh. = **paṭiññāta**: admittance, has been admitted; p.p. of *paṭijānāti* (*paṭi* + √ñā + ñā), probably used as a noun. + **karaṇaṃ**: action, the act of doing, effecting; nt. action-noun from √kar.

yebhuyyasikā: [the decision of] the majority, H: the decision of the majority, Ñm: by (the pronouncement of) a majority, Than: acting in accordance with the majority; nom. sg. f. Kammadhāraya cpd.

= **yebhuyya(s)**: “which is more”; the Māgadhi form of *yad-bhiyyo*. = **ye**: which, what; according to PED this is the Māgadhi form of *yad*, the compound form of rel. pron. *ya*; cf. PG § 110. + **bhuyya(s)** = *bhiyyo*: more; indeclinable, comparative form of $\sqrt{bhū}$; see Pāc 73 = Skt: *bhūyas*; see PG § 103. + conn. feminine suf. *-ikā*. Cf. CDPL 601.

Mā-L: “*Yo bhūyasiko samatho*”; BV 300.

tassapāpiyyasikā: [the decision making it] worse for him, H: the decision for specific depravity, or “obstinately wrong,” Ñm: by (a judgement of) habitual bad character against someone, Than: acting in accordance with the accused’s further misconduct, Vanaratana Thera: an act for making it worse for him, or: an act for giving him a greater penalty; nom. sg. f. kammadhāraya cpd. This compound is a so-called “syntactical compound,” i.e., a compound where some components retain the syntactical form they would have had in a non-compounded statement; see CP 218, 223 and IP p.108. = **tassa**: for him; dat. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)* = dative of orientation; see Syntax § 104. + **pāpiyya(s)**: worse; comparative of an adjective. Cf. *yebhuyya(s)* above. The comparative *-yas* endings in *bhuyyas* and *pāpiyyas* are fossils from Vedic Sanskrit; see PG § 100,1 and § 103,1. A sutanta dealing with this *adhikaraṇa* is at A IV 347.

= **pāpa**: bad + comparative suf. **-iyya**. (V.l. *-pāpiya-*: *-iyya* and *-iya* are both comparative suffixes.) + feminine connective suf. **-ika**. The comparative forms of *pāpa* are *pāpiya* (*pāpa* + comp. suf. *-iya[s]*), and *pāpissika*: worse, *pāpa* + comp. suf. *-issika*. The Sanskrit form of Pāli *pāpiy(y)a* is *pāpiyas*. CDPL 498 suggests as etymology *tasya-pāpiyas-ikā*.

Vanaratana Thera notes that all other punishing legal actions (*kammas*), e.g. *tajjanīyakamma*, are descriptive of the act and not of the person and that this *kamma* should probably be taken in the same way.

MA (Be) to M II 249: “*tassa puggalassa pāpussannatā pāpiyasikā hoti...*” Cf. S I 162: “*Tass’eva tena pāpiyyo yo kuddhaṃ paṭikujjhati*” and D I 184: “*cetayamānassa me pāpiyo.*”

The Sanskrit form is: *tatsvabhāvaiṣīya* (BHSGD II 248, BMD p.148, PrMoMū p.54, PraMoSa p. 256) Mā-L: *tasya pāpeyasiko samatho*; PrMoMā-L p.35, BV 300. The Mā-L *pāpeyasika* form is reflected in the Pāli form *pāpeyyasika* found in some Sinhalese manuscripts. The vowel strokes for *e* and *i* are quite different in the Sinhala script and it is difficult to conceive that the *-eyasika* form is a scribal error.

tiṇavatthārako: (the decision) covering (the offences as if) with grass, BHSDG II: (procedure) which covers over (as if) with grass, Ñm: by the covering over with grass, H: covering up (as) with grass, Vanaratana Ānanda thera: “the one in the manner of spreading grass”; nom. sg. m. Ins. tapp. cpd. There are various etymologies of this word. The one supported by the commentarial tradition is a junction of *tiṇa* + *avatthāraka*, supposedly through elision of the final *-a* of *tiṇa* as otherwise lengthening would be expected, i.e., *tiṇāvatthāraka*. = *tiṇa*: grass + *avatthārako*: one which covers up; from *avattharati* (*ava* + $\sqrt{(t)thar}$ [= Skt \sqrt{stri}] + *a*) + connective or agent suf. *-aka*. Another interpretation is with the euphonic consonant *-v-* + *atthārako*: “one who spreads” = *atthāra* from *attharati* (*ā* + \sqrt{thar} + *a*): spreads + conn. suff. *-ka*; see DP. Cf. *kaṭhin’atthāraka*.

It could also be + **vatthāraka* from **vattharati* (*vi* + *ā* + \sqrt{thar}).

There is no explanation on this term given in the Suttavibhaṅga or anywhere else in the Canon but M-a (Be) to M II 249 states: “*Yathā hi gūthaṃ ... tiṇehi avattharivā ...*”: “Like excrement ... having been covered with straws of grass.” See the *anāpatti*-section in the vibhaṅga on Sekh 74: “(*uccāraṃ vā passāvaṃ vā*) *appaharite kato haritaṃ ottharati*”: “having urinate (etc) on a place without crops one spreads crops (over it)”; Vin IV 205.

Nolot, 1996, p.99 n. 27, notes that the oldest known (Vinaya) Pāli manuscript reads *pattharaka*, which makes more sense to her since there is no verb *vattharati* in the Pāli, but there is the verb *pattharati* (*pa* + \sqrt{thar} + *a*). The Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit form is *trṇaprastāraka* (PrMoMā-L p.35, BV 300, PrMoMū p.54, PrMoSa p.256). Nolot has overlooked the commentarial explanation *avattharivā*, and also has overlooked *tiṇa-v-atthārako*.

Venerable Vanaratana Ānanda argues that the intended meaning is “spreading grass” or “spreading out grass,” i.e., *tiṇa* + *-v-atthāraka* or *vatthāraka*. The purpose of this *adhikaraṇasamatha* is to confess a large amount of various offences in one stroke so as to avoid further arguments leading to division possibly occurring if the

offences were pursued individually. Just as one would spread out a bunch of grass (without picking the individual straws), so with this *adhikaraṇasamatha* the whole mass of offences are considered to have been settled and over and done with. On the other hand, covering with grass, as one might do with excrement, is an act of hiding that leaves the thing smelling and therefore an inappropriate metaphor. Therefore this *adhikaraṇa* could be translated as “[settling] in the manner of spreading grass.”

This interpretation might be supported by the other Buddhist traditions. BHSGD II 256 gives the Tibetan translation of the Mvy “fit like strewn grass.” BHSGD II, Prebish, etc, seem to be basing themselves on Childers and PED and the traditional Sa explanation might be different.

ti: end quote.

[Adhikaraṇa Conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhā kho āyasmanto satta adhikaraṇasamathā⁷⁰¹ dhammā.

Tatthāyasmante pucchāmi: Kacci’ttha parisuddhā?

Dutiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci’ttha parisuddhā?

Tatiyam-pi pucchāmi: Kacci’ttha parisuddhā?

Parisuddh’etthāyasmanto, tasmā tuṇhī, evam-etam dhārayāmi.⁷⁰²

Adhikaraṇasamathā niṭṭhitā.⁷⁰³

Recited, Venerables, have been the seven cases that are settlements of legal issues.

Concerning that I ask the Venerables: [Are you] pure in this?

A second time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

A third time again I ask: [Are you] pure in this?

The venerables are pure in this, therefore there is silence, thus I keep this [in mind].

The cases that are settlements of legal issues have finished.

uddiṭṭhā ... niṭṭhitā: see above Adhik. intro. and Nid. concl.

Olivelle, 1974, pp.46–7, notes that this conclusion, *anussāvana*, with the questions about purity seems out of place here since the *adhikaraṇas* are not a class of offence but procedures dealing with legal issues. Kkh 277 comments: “Regarding these seven settlements of legal issues: (Are you) pure in this? Is there not anything for you to be stilled by means of the settlements? I ask. By this, the state of purity with regards all [types of] offences has been asked.” : “Tatth’āyasmante ... parisuddhā ti: tesu sattasu adhikaraṇasamathesu kacci’ttha parisuddhā. N’atthi vo kiñ-ci samathehi vūpasametabban-ti pucchāmi. Etena sabbāpattihi parisuddhabhāvo pucchito hoti.”

The Pātimokkha sūtras also have this conclusion here; PrMoMā-L p.35, PrMoMū p.54, PrMoSa p.257.

The *adhikaraṇa* section is the last section in the Pātimokkha and it is not an offence-section therefore it could be regarded as an appendix included in the Pātimokkha. The *adhikaraṇasamathas* are not training precepts, see D-a I 13 in the [note](#) “The Pātimokkha and its Meaning,” and not a class of offences; rather they are ways of

⁷⁰¹ Mi & Mm Se, C, V, W: *sattādhikaraṇasamathā*.

⁷⁰² Dm, UP, Ra, Um: *dhārayāmi ti*.

⁷⁰³ Mm Se, V: *Sattādhikaraṇasamathā niṭṭhitā*. Um: *Satta adhikaraṇasamathā niṭṭhitā*. Mi Se: *Sattādhikaraṇasamathā dhammā niṭṭhitā*. Nd Ce: *Adhikaraṇasamathā dhammā niṭṭhitā*. Bh Pm 1 & 2, Vibh Ce, G, UP, Dm, C, UP, Ra: *Adhikaraṇasamathā niṭṭhitā*.

settling legal issues including offence-issues (*apattādhikaraṇa*); therefore the *anussāvana* seem out of place here. Dhirasekera, p.127, thinks that maybe the *anussāvana* questions here are to ascertain whether there has been any irregularity of procedure in the settlement of legal issues by the Saṅgha as whole and are thus included to safeguard the machinery set up for the maintenance of monastic discipline. He suggests that it could also be a mere mechanical extension of the *anussāvana*-method as applied to the earlier offence-sections.

[Pātimokkha Conclusion]

Uddiṭṭhaṃ kho āyasmanto nidānaṃ.

Uddiṭṭhā cattāro pārājikā dhammā.

Uddiṭṭhā terasa saṅghādisesā dhammā.

Uddiṭṭhā dve aniyatā dhammā.

Uddiṭṭhā tiṃsa nissaggiyā pācittiyā dhammā

Uddiṭṭhā dvenavuti pācittiyā dhammā.

Uddiṭṭhā cattāro pāṭidesanīyā⁷⁰⁴ dhammā.

Uddiṭṭhā sekhiyā⁷⁰⁵ dhammā.

Uddiṭṭhā satta adhikaraṇasamathā⁷⁰⁶ dhammā.

Venerables, the introduction has been recited.

Venerables, the four cases involving disqualification have been recited.

Venerables, the thirteen cases [involving] the community in the beginning and in the rest have been recited.

Venerables, the two indefinite cases have been recited.

Venerables, the thirty cases involving expiation with forfeiture have been recited.

Venerables, the ninety-two cases involving expiation have been recited.

Venerables, the four cases that are to be acknowledged have been recited.

Venerables, the cases related to the training have been recited.

Venerables, the seven cases that are settlements of legal issues have been recited.

Uddiṭṭhaṃ ... dhammā: see above offence section conclusions.

⁷⁰⁴ C, D, G, V, W, Vibh Ee: *pāṭidesaniyā*.

⁷⁰⁵ Mi Se, V: *pañcasattati sekhiyā*

⁷⁰⁶ Mi & Mm Se, C, G, V, W: *sattādhikaraṇasamathā*.

[Pātimokkha Conclusion Continued]

Ettakaṃ tassa⁷⁰⁷ bhagavato suttāgataṃ suttapariyāpannaṃ anvaḍḍhamāsaṃ⁷⁰⁸ uddesaṃ āgacchati.⁷⁰⁹ Tattha sabbeheva samaggehi sammodamānehi avivadamānehi sikkhitabban-ti.⁷¹⁰

(Vitthāruddeso pañcamo.)⁷¹¹

Bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ⁷¹² niṭṭhitaṃ.⁷¹³

This much [of the training-rules] of the Fortunate One has been handed down in the Sutta, has been included in the Sutta, [and] comes up for recitation half-monthly. Herein is to be trained by all who are united, who are on friendly terms, who are not disputing.

(The recitation in full extent is the fifth one.)

The Disciplinary Code of the Bhikkhu has been finished.

ettakaṃ: this much, (just) so much, so many; adj. qualifying an unexpressed dhammaṃ (cf. Pāc 73: *dhammo suttāgato*) , or an adverb qualifying *āgataṃ* in *suttāgataṃ*. A comparative pronoun, here expressing a total. = *e-* (like in the dem. pron. *eta[d]*) + *-taka*, which is analogical to *kittaka*: how much? (V.l. *ettakan-tassa*. = junction of *ettakaṃ* + *tassa* through dentalisation of the final *-ṃ* in *ettakaṃ*.)

Kkh 277: “*Ettakan-ti ettakaṃ sikkhāpadaṃ*.”: “Herein *ettakaṃ*: this much training precept.”

tassa: of that; gen. sg. of dem. pron. *ta(d)*.

bhagavato: of the Fortunate One, by the Fortunate One; gen. sg. m. of *bhagavant*. A genitive or an instrumental-like genitive; see *gahapatīnaṃ* at NP 8, *tassa* at Pāc 73, and *bhikkhuno* at Pd 2.

suttāgataṃ suttapariyāpannaṃ: H: handed down in clauses, contained in clauses, Ñm: is in the Suttavibhaṅga, included in the Suttavibhaṅga, *Vinaya Texts*: handed down in the suttas, embraced in the suttas; see Pāc 73; here nom. sg. nt agreeing with unexpressed *dhammaṃ/sikkhāpadaṃ*.

Kkh 277: “*Suttāgatan-ti: sutte pātimokkhe āgato*.”: “*Suttāgataṃ*: handed down in the Sutta, the Pātimokkha.”

The *āgataṃ* in *suttāgataṃ* and *pariyāpannaṃ* in *suttapariyāpannaṃ* here act as impersonal passive sentence-verbs in the nom. sg. nt. (agreeing with an unexpressed *dhammaṃ*); see IP p.42 and *dulladdhaṃ* in Pāc 73.

Past participles in bahubbīhi compounds can function as passive sentence-verbs; see Sd concl.: “*ciṇṇamānatto bhikkhu*,” NP 1: “*niṭṭhitacīvarasmiṃ bhikkhunā*,” NP 28: “*dasāhanāgataṃ kattikatemāsikapuṇṇamaṃ*,” Pāc 22: “*atthaṅgate suriye*,” Pāc 69: “*bhikkhunā akaṭānuddhammena*,” Pāc 73: “*nisinnapubbaṃ ... bhikkhunā*.” Pāc 83: *anikkhantarājake, aniggataratanake*.

The compounds as a whole act as passive subordinate clauses; see IP p.137–38 and 155. Cf. D II 144: “*katapuñño’si*” in IP p.234.). The traditional Pāli grammarians would explain the cpd as: “*yaṃ suttaṃ āgataṃ taṃ*”: “which case has been handed down..”

ettakaṃ tassa bhagavato suttāgataṃ: Ñm: this much is in the Suttavibhaṅga ... of the Blessed One, H: so much (of the sayings) of the Lord handed down ..., Norman: so much, come down in the sutta of the Bhagavant

anvaḍḍhamāsaṃ uddesaṃ āgacchati: comes up for recitation half-monthly; See Pāc 73.

⁷⁰⁷ Mi & Mm Se, G, V: *ettakan-tassa*.

⁷⁰⁸ Bh Pm 1 & 2, C, D, Dm, Um, UP, Vibh Ce, Vibh Ee, Ra, Pg: *anvaddha-*.

⁷⁰⁹ BhPm 1, P: *āgacchanti*.

⁷¹⁰ Bh Pm 1 & 2: *sikkhitabbaṃ iti*.

⁷¹¹ = Dm, Ñd Ce, and Mi Se. Also in *Sannē*; see Sugunaṣāra 111. Not in other eds. Also found in the Burmese script *Bhikkhupātimokkha* MS, BNF Pali 8, at the Bibliothèque Nationale de France; see EFEO DATA 101. The Burmese script *Bhikkhunīpātimokkha* MS BNF 844:3 has *vitthāruddeso catuttho*.

⁷¹² Mm Se, G, V: *pāṭi-*.

⁷¹³ Mi Se: *bhikkhupātimokkhapāli niṭṭhitā*.

Kkh 277: “*Anvaddhamāsaṃ uddesaṃ āgacchatī ti addhamāse addhamāse uposathavasena uddisitabbataṃ āgacchatī.*”: “Comes up for recitation half-monthly”: each half-month it is to be recited because of the Uposatha.

tattha: herein, in that; adv. = dem. pron. *ta(d)* + suf. of place/mode/time *-ttha*, cf. Nid concl.

sabbhe’eva: by just all, by one and all; = junction of *sabbehi* + *eva* through elision of the final *-i* of *sabbehi*; see PG 70,2b. **sabbehi**: by all; ins. pl. of *sabba*: all + **eva**: just; emph. particle. Cf. Nid: *sabbeva*.

samaggehi sammodamānehi avivadamānehi: who are is united, who are being on friendly terms, who are not disputing; see Sd 10. (*Avivadamānehi* in Mm Se is a misprint; see Sd 10.)

Kkh 277: *Samaggehi ti kāyasāmaggivasena samaggehi. Sammodamānehi ti cittasāmaggivasena ekajjhāsayatāya suṭṭhu modamānehi. Avivadamānehi ti aṭṭhārasasu vivādavattḥūsu aññataravasenāpi avivadamānehi. Sikkhitabban-ti taṃ taṃ sikkhāpadaṃ avitikkamantehehi adhisīlasikkhā sampādetabbā.*”: “*Samaggehi*: (by those who are) united because of physical unity. *Sammodamānehi*: because of unitedness of mind, through a single disposition (i.e., common goal), rejoicing well. Not disputing: not disputing because of a certain (point) in the eighteen points of dispute.”

Niddesa II 256: “*Samaggā ti kāyena aviyogā. Sammodamānā ti cittena suṭṭhu modamānā tussamānā. Avivadamānā ti vācāya vivādaṃ akurumānā.*”: “*Samagga*: not separated by body. *Sammodamāna*: rejoicing well and being (well) pleased by mind. *Vivādamāna*: not making a dispute by speech.”

sikkhitabbaṃ: is to be trained; f.p.p. of *sikkhati* (see Pāc 71) used as an impersonal passive sentence verb in nom. sg. nt. agreeing with an unexpressed *taṃ*; see IP p.42 & 107.

Kkh 277: “*Sikkhitabban-ti taṃ taṃ sikkhāpadaṃ avitikkamantehehi adhisīlasikkhā sampādetabbā.* (Ce Kkh adds: *ti.*).”: “It is to be trained: by those not transgressing any training precept, the higher virtues are to be accomplished.” **sikkhitabban-ti** in Mm Se and other eds. See note on recitation marks in the Intro. = *sikkhitabbaṃ* + *ti*: end quote.

vitthāruddeso pañcama: the recitation in full extent is the fifth one. **vitthāruddeso**: recitation in full extent, recitation in (full) breadth. Instrumental *tappurisa* compound. = **vitthāra**: extent, breadth, detail; from *vitthāreti* (*vi* + *√thar* + *a*); see NP 27 + **uddesa**. This marks the full-recitation, rather an incomplete one. See the “Recitation of the Pātimokkha” section in the Introduction and the Pār conclusion.

bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ: The Disciplinary Code of the Bhikkhu; nom. sg. nt. = Gen. tapp. cpd.

niṭṭhitam: has been finished; see Nid concl.

Appendix I

Uposathapubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni

Burmese version

Given before the Pātimokkha text called *Dvemātikāpālī* (“the text of the two Mātikās,” = Be) that is preceding the *Kaṅkhavitarāṇī* of the Burmese Sixth Council Edition version. It is also given preceding the Sri Lankan Pātimokkha text called *Ubhaya Mātikā* (“both Mātikās” = Um). This text was probably used in the Sri Lankan Nikāyas (monastic sects) originating in Burma.

Pubbakaraṇaṃ:

Sammajjanī padīpo ca, udakaṃ āsanena ca;

Uposathassa etāni, pubbakaraṇaṃ-ti vuccati.

Pubbakiccaṃ:

Chanda, pārisuddhi, utukkhānaṃ, bhikkhugaṇanā ca ovādo;

Uposathassa etāni, pubbakiccaṃ-ti vuccati.

Pattakalla-aṅgā:

Uposatho yāvatikā ca bhikkhū kammappattā;

Sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti;

Vajjanīyā ca puggalā tasmim na honti, pattakallaṃ-ti vuccati.

Pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni samāpetvā desitāpattikassa samaggassa bhikkhusaṅghassa anumatiyā pātimokkhaṃ uddisitum ārādhaṇaṃ karoma.

“The broom and the lamp, the water with the seat
these are called: “the preparation for the observance.”

The consent and purity, the telling of the season,
the counting of the bhikkhus and the instruction (of the bhikkhunis),
these are called: ‘the preliminary duty for the observance.’

The observance, whatever bhikkhus are entitled (to carry out the legal) act,
common offences are not found,
there are no persons to be excluded in there,
this is called: ‘reached suitability.’”

“Having made to undertake the preparations and preliminary duties we make the invitation to recite the Disciplinary Code with the approval of the united community whose offences have been confessed.

Version as used in Sri Lanka Siyam Nikāya and Amarapura Nikāya and Thai Mahānikāya

Both in Sri Lanka and in Thailand an almost identical version is used in some traditions. The original source of this version has not been identified yet. This version appears to be the source of both the modern variant versions as used by the Thai Dhammayuttika-Nikāya version and by Galduwa forest-sect of the Sri Lanka

Rāmañña Nikāya.

There are some small differences between the editions of this version and these have been noted.

Editions Consulted

BhPm: *Bhikkhupātimokkhaṃ*, Colombo, 1875. (*Kolomba demaṭagoda paḍiñci villorage joronis diyasda, Jayasūriyage dondāvit appuhāmida, vatiga āracchige pakolis prerade. 2419/1875.*)

D: Dickson's edition, given in Dickson 71–72. Siyam Nikāya. (See the “Pāli text-editions of the Pātimokkha” section in the introduction.)

M: Bhikkhu-pātimokkha-pāli. A so-called “mock-ola-leaf” (i.e., a printed paper edition that looks like an ola-leaf manuscript) with the Bhikkhu-Pātimokkha, published by the Sri Vajirañāṇa-dhammāyatana (also called Mahāragama Bhikkhu Training Centre) in Mahāragama, Sri Lanka. Year not given (196?).

Mi: Thai version as given preceding the *Bhikkhupātimokkha-pāli* of the Thai Tipiṭaka edition published by the Mahidon University (vol. 70, 1–3, CD ROM).

Pg: *Pātimokkha-gaṇṭhi-dīpanī*. Sri Lanka. 1889. (See Bibliography above.)

Pmd: Amarapura Nikāya edition as given in the Vinaya-manual called *Pātimokkhadīpikā* by Vigoda Guṇalaṅkāra sthavira, Colombo, 1959.”

Ra: version given in the *Ratanārtha-sudanī-namvu-bhikṣu-bhikṣuṇī-prātimokṣa-varṇanāva*. (See the “Pāli text-editions of the Pātimokkha” section in the introduction.)

bibliography above. This work is used in the Amarapura Nikāya.

G: Gannoruva Pātimokkha.

V: Vijasundara Rajamahāvihāra Pātimokkha.

The lines that are in quotation-marks are by the questioning bhikkhu, *pucchaka*, (= Puc). The lines that are not within quotation-marks are by the answering bhikkhu, *vissajjaka*, (= Vis). These indications are originally not found in the Pāli manuscripts but have been provided by the editor with the help of the Sinhalese version A (= quotation-marks) and D (= Puc and Vis).

Pubbakaraṇa-pubbakiccāni.⁷¹⁴

(Puc:) “*Namo tassa bhagavato arahato sammāsambuddhassa.*

*Suṇātu me bhante saṅgho*⁷¹⁵ *yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ ahaṃ āyasmantaṃ itthannāmaṃ*⁷¹⁶ *vinayaṃ puccheyyaṃ.*”

(Vis:) *Namo tassa bhagavato arahato sammāsambuddhassa*⁷¹⁷.

*Suṇātu me bhante saṅgho yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ ahaṃ āyasmatā*⁷¹⁸ *itthannāmena vinayaṃ puṭṭho vissajjeyyaṃ*⁷¹⁹.

(Puc:) *Sammajjanī padīpo ca*

udakaṃ āsanena ca

uposathassa etāni

*pubbakaraṇaṃ-ti vuccatī*⁷²⁰.

⁷¹⁴ BhPm, Pg: *pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni*. D: *pucchāvissajjanaṃ*. Mi: *pubbakaraṇapubbakiccaṃ*. Ra, Pmd: *Uposathakammassa pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni*. Nothing in G, M, V, and W. In V *namo tassa ...* is preceded by *namatthu ratanattayassa*.

⁷¹⁵ G, V, W: *saṅgh-* throughout the text.

⁷¹⁶ W: *itthannāmaṃ*. G: *itthannnāmaṃ*.

⁷¹⁷ This line is not found in BhPm, W, and Pg.

⁷¹⁸ W, G, Ra, Pg: omit *āyasmatā*. M: *āyasmatā therena*. G: *itthannnāmena*.

⁷¹⁹ Mi: *vissajjeyyaṃ*.

⁷²⁰ In D these Kkh verses are not in quotation-marks and thus appear to be recited by the *vissajjaka*.

(Puc:) “Okāsa, ⁷²¹sammajjanī.”

(Vis:) Sammajjanakaraṇaṇ-ca

(Puc:) “Paḍīpo ca.”

(Vis:) Paḍīpa-ujjalanaṇ-ca. Idāni suriyālokassa atthitāya paḍīpakiccaṇ n’atthi⁷²².

(Puc:) “Udakaṇ āsanena ca.”

(Vis:) Āsanena saha pānīya-paribhojanīya⁷²³-upaṭṭhapanāṇ-ca⁷²⁴.

(Puc:) “Uposathassa etāni pubbakaraṇan-ti vuccati.”

(Vis:) Etāni cattāri vattāni sammajjanakaraṇādāni saṅghasannipātato paṭhamam katabbattā uposathassa uposathakammassa pubbakaraṇan-ti vuccati. Pubbakaraṇāni ti akkhātāni.

(Puc:) Chandapārisuddhi utukkhānaṇ

bhikkhugaṇanā ca ovādo

uposathassa etāni

pubbakiccan-ti vuccati.

(Puc:) “Chandapārisuddhi.”

(Vis:) Chandārahānaṇ bhikkhūnaṇ chanda-pārisuddhi-āharaṇaṇ-ca idha natthi⁷²⁵.

(Puc:) “Utukkhānaṇ.”

(Vis:) Hemant’ādīnaṇ tiṇṇaṇ utūnaṇ ettakaṇ atikkantaṇ ettakaṇ avasiṭṭhan-ti evaṇ utu-ācikkhanaṇ⁷²⁶. Utūnidha⁷²⁷ pana sāsane hemanta-gimha-vassānānaṇ vasena tīni honti. Ayaṇ hemanta-utu. Asmiṇ utumhi⁷²⁸ aṭṭha uposathā. Iminā pakkhena eko uposatho sampatto, eko uposatho atikkanto, cha uposathā avasiṭṭhā.

(Puc:) “Bhikkhugaṇanā ca.”

(Vis:) Imasmiṇ uposathagge sannipatitānaṇ bhikkhūnaṇ gaṇanā ettakā bhikkhū honti⁷²⁹.

(Puc:) “Ovādo.”

(Vis:) Bhikkhunīnaṇ⁷³⁰ ovādo dātabbo. Idāni pana tāsam n’atthitāya so ca ovādo idha n’atthi⁷³¹.

(Puc:) “Uposathassa etāni pubbakiccan-ti vuccati.”

(Vis:) Etāni pañca kammāni chandāharaṇādāni pātimokkhuddesato⁷³² paṭhamam katabbattā uposathassa uposathakammassa pubbakiccan-ti vuccati pubbakiccāni ti akkhātāni⁷³³.

(Puc:) Uposatho yāvaticā ca bhikkhū

kammappattā sabhāgāpattiyo ca

na vijjanti vajjanīyā⁷³⁴ ca puggalā

tasmīṇ na honti pattakallan-ti vuccati.

⁷²¹ Mi, V: ukāsa. G: Nothing, i.e., no okāsa.

⁷²² The idāni ... natthi sentence is not found in W.

⁷²³ V: pāniya-paribhojaniya

⁷²⁴ D, G, V, W, Ra, M, BhPm, Pg: udakaṭṭhapanāṇ-ca. The upaṭṭhapanāṇ-ca reading seems to be more original as it is in accordance with the rule in the Mv: pānīyaṇ paribhojanīyaṇ upaṭṭhāpetabbaṇ (Mv II 20,6/Vin I 119).

⁷²⁵ Ra: ... āharaṇaṇ-ca. (omits idha natthi.), D, M: ... āharaṇaṇ-ca idha natthi. Mi: ... āharaṇaṇ taṇ-ca idha n’atthi.

⁷²⁶ W: -ācikkhanaṇ.

⁷²⁷ D, V, W, Ra, M: utūnidha. G: utunīdha. Pg: Hemantādināṇ tiṇṇaṇ utunaṇ (...) ettakaṇ utu-atikkantaṇ ettakaṇ utu-avasiṭṭhaṇ iti evaṇ ācikkhanaṇ. Utunīdha pana sāsane tayo honti.

⁷²⁸ Mi: asmiṇ-ca. D: ... ayaṇ hemanta-utumhi aṭṭha uposathā iminā ...

⁷²⁹ Ra has [ettakā bhikkhū honti] in brackets. Pg has only [ettakā] in brackets. M: “gaṇanā ... bhikkhū honti.”

Mi: Imasmiṇ pana uposathagge ettakā bhikkhū sannipatitā ti bhikkhūnaṇ gaṇanā. Pg states this version is found in the commentary (= Kkh 18) but that “... uposathagge sannipatitānaṇ bhikkhūnaṇ gaṇanā ettakā bhikkhū ...” is to be said at the time of recitation.

⁷³⁰ M: bhikkhūṇinaṇ.

⁷³¹ BhPM, Ra, Pg: [Idāni ... natthi.] in brackets.

⁷³² G, V: pāṭi-

⁷³³ V: Etāni pubbakammā-pubbakiccāni ti akkhātāni. Probably etāni pubbakammā is in Khom brackets.

⁷³⁴ G: vajjanīyā.

(Puc:) “Uposatho.”

(Vis:) *Tīsu uposathadivasesu cātuddasī-pañṇarasī⁷³⁵-sāmaggīsu, aji’uposatho⁷³⁶ pañṇaraso⁷³⁷.*

(Puc:) “Yāvatikā ca bhikkhū kammappattā.”

(Vis:) *Yattakā bhikkhū tassa uposathakammasa pattā yuttā anurūpā sabbantimena paricchena cattāro bhikkhū pakatattā saṅghena anukkhittā⁷³⁸, te ca kho⁷³⁹ hatthapāsāṃ avijjahitvā⁷⁴⁰ ekasīmāyaṃ t̥hitā.*

(Puc:) “Sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti.”

(Vis:) *Vikālabhojanādivatthu-sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti.*

(Puc:) “Vajjanīyā⁷⁴¹ ca puggalā tasmim̐ na honti.”

(Vis:) *Gahat̥ṭha-panḍakādayo ekavīsati vajjanīyapuggalā⁷⁴² hatthapāsato bahikaraṇavasena vajjetabbā tasmim̐⁷⁴³ na honti.*

(Puc:) “Pattakallan-ti vuccati.”⁷⁴⁴

(Vis:) *Saṅghassa uposathakammaṃ imehi catūhi⁷⁴⁵ lakkhaṇehi saṅgahitaṃ⁷⁴⁶ pattakallan-ti vuccati.*

(Vis:) *Pattakālavantan-ti akkhātaṃ.*

[Elder’s request:] *Pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni samādapetvā⁷⁴⁷ desitāpattikassa samaggassa⁷⁴⁸ bhikkhusaṅghassa⁷⁴⁹ anumatiyā pātimokkhaṃ⁷⁵⁰ uddisitum ārādhanaṃ⁷⁵¹ karomi⁷⁵².*

Translation

The preparations and preliminary duties.

[Q: questioning bhikkhu. A: answering bhikkhu.]

[Q:] Homage to the Fortunate One, the Worthy One, the Perfectly Awakened One.

Venerable Sir, please let the Community listen to me! If it is suitable to the community (then) I would ask the such-named venerable about the Discipline.

[A:] Homage to the Fortunate One, the Worthy One, the perfectly Awakened One.

Venerable Sir, please let the Community listen to me! If it is suitable to the community (then) I would answer having been asked about the Discipline by the such-named venerable.

[Q:] “The broom and the lamp, the water with the seat

⁷³⁵ Ra: *panna-*.

⁷³⁶ Mi: adds: *yo koci divaso*.

⁷³⁷ Mi: *ajja pan’uposatho*.

⁷³⁸ C, G, W: *anukkhittā*.

The *saṅghena anukkhittā* part is not from Kkh, but, as Ñāṇakitti notes in Pg 4, derived from an explanation in the *ṭīkā*, Kkh p̥ (Be p.136): “*pakattatā ti anukkhittā pārājikaṃ anajjhāpannā cā ti*.”

⁷³⁹ D: ... *te ca kho bhikkhū hatthapāsāṃ* ... Pg: *te ca kho ti te bhikkhu [sic] hatthapāsāṃ ti* ... This suggests that the original did not have *bhikkhū*.

⁷⁴⁰ BhPm 1 & 2, C, G, W: *avijjahitvā*.

⁷⁴¹ G: *vajjanīyā*.

⁷⁴² G: *vajjanīyā puggalā tasmim̐*. V: *vajjanīyā ca puggalā tasmim̐*.

⁷⁴³ In a footnote in BhPm 1 and Pg it is stated that to use *idha* at the time of recitation is proper. Pg seems to have had a text reading “*tasmim̐ uposathagge gahat̥ṭhapāṇḍakādayo ekavīsati vajjanīyapuggalā* ...”

⁷⁴⁴ Omitted in M.

⁷⁴⁵ Pg: *catubhi*.

⁷⁴⁶ D, G, W, BhPm, Pg: *saṅgahitaṃ*.

⁷⁴⁷ All versions except a Mi v.l. have *samāpetvā*, “having concluded.” Pg states that the reading *samādapetvā* is also taught (i.e., is a v.l.) In the *Mūlasikkhā* (the variant reading) *niṭṭhāpetvā* is also found according to Pg. The *Vinayālaṅkāra-ṭīkā* (= *Pālimuttaka-vinaya-vicchaya-saṅgaha-ṭīkā*) Myanmar p.400 reads *sammā niṭṭhāpetvā*. The reason why the reading *samādapetvā* has been chosen here is because it is the elder who instigates or causes junior monks to undertake the preliminaries; he does not conclude them himself. See Mv II 20,6: A junior bhikkhu who, although being requested by a senior bhikkhu to prepare the place, does not carry out the request commits an offence of wrong doing.

⁷⁴⁸ Mm Se: *imassa nisinnassā*.

⁷⁴⁹ Pg states that (the reading) *mahābhikkhusaṅghassa* is also found in the *Mūlasikkhā*.

⁷⁵⁰ G: *pāṭi-*.

⁷⁵¹ Mm Se: *ajjhesanaṃ*.

⁷⁵² Dm, UP: *karoma*.

these are called “the preparation for the observance.”

[Q:] Permit [me to answer]! The broom.

[A:] And the action of sweeping.

[Q:] And the lamp.

[A:] And the lighting of the lamp.

[When there is daylight:] There is no lamp-duty because of the state of there being sunlight now.

[Q:] And the water with the seat.

[A:] The providing of drinking-water and washing-water together with the seat.

[Q:] These are called “the preparation for the observance.”

[A:] These four protocols, the action of sweeping etc, due to the having to be done first before the gathering of the Community are called “the preparation for the [legal] act of Uposatha on the Uposatha.”

The “preparations” have been announced.

[Q:] The consent and purity, the telling of the season,
the counting of the bhikkhus and the instruction (of the bhikkhunīs),
these are called: “the preliminary duty for the observance’.

[Q:] The consent and purity.

[A:] The bringing of consent [and] purity of bhikkhus who are deserving of [giving] consent. ([Or]: [There] is no [bringing of consent and purity] here.)

[Q:] The telling of the season.

[A:] “Of the three seasons, the winter etc., this number [of Uposathas] have passed, this number [of Uposathas] are left,” thus there is the telling of the season.

In this dispensation there are three seasons, [namely] the winter, the summer, and the rains.

This is the (winter-season), and in this season there are (eight) Uposathas.

With this fortnight (one) Uposatha has arrived, (two) Uposathas have past, (five) Uposathas are left.

[Q:] The counting of the bhikkhus.

[A:] “In this Uposatha-hall so many bhikkhus have gathered for the purpose of [performing] the Uposatha.” is the counting of the bhikkhus.

In this Uposatha-hall so many bhikkhus have gathered.

[Q:] The instruction.

[A:] The instruction is to be given to the bhikkhunīs. But because of their non-existence now there is no instruction here.

[Q:] These are called “the preparation for the observance.”

[A:] These four protocols, the bringing of consent etc, due to the having to be done first before the gathering of the Community are called “the preliminary duty for the [legal] act of Uposatha on the Uposatha.”

The “preliminary duties” have been announced.

[Q:] The observance,
whatever bhikkhus are entitled (to carry out the legal) act,
common offences are not found,
there are no persons to be excluded in there,
this is called: “reached suitability’.

[Q:] The Uposatha.

[A:] With regards the fourteenth [-day Uposathas], the fifteenth [-day Uposathas], or the Unity [-Uposathas],

today is the fifteenth day Uposatha.

[Q:] Whatever bhikkhus are entitled (to carry out the legal) act.

[A:] However many bhikkhus who are entitled to that Uposatha-act, who are fit, are suited, with the minimum amount (of bhikkhus), four bhikkhus who are regular, not suspended by the community, and they not having left arms-length remain in the same boundary.

[Q:] And common offences are not found.

[A:] Common offences, founded on eating at the wrong time and so on, are not found.

[Q:] And in that [arms-length] there is no person fit to be excluded

[A:] Householders, eunuchs, etc, the twenty one persons fit to be excluded, who are is to be excluded by making [them go] outside from the arms-length, are not in that [arms-length.]

[Q:] It is said to “have reached suitability.”

[A:] The [legal] act of Uposatha endowed with these four characteristics is called “[one that] has reached suitability.”

[A:] “[It] has reached suitability” is said.

Elder: “Having made to undertake the preparations and preliminary duties, I make the invitation to recite the Disciplinary Code with the approval of the united community whose offences have been confessed.”

Sri Lanka Sri Kalyāṇa Yogāshrama Saṃsthāva version

The version of the Sri Kalyāṇa Yogāshrama Saṃsthāva, which is the Rāmañña Nikāya forest-monastery sect, was published in Bhikkhu Ñānadassana’s: *Das Hauptregelwerk der buddhistischen Bettelmönche*, p.24–32 (= Ñd) and (in Sinhalese script) in *Bhikkhupātimokkhapāli*, Sri Kalyāṇa Yogāshrama Saṃsthāva, 1981. (= SK)

***Uposatha-pubbakaraṇādi-vidhi*¹**

(Vinayapucchāsammuti:)

Namo tassa bhagavato arahato sammā sambuddhassa. (3x)

(Ñatti:)²

Suṇātu me, bhante, saṅgho. Yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ, ahaṃ itthannāmaṃ bhikkhuṃ (i.e., āyasmantaṃ...) vinayaṃ puccheyyaṃ.

(Vinayavissajjanasammuti:)

Namo tassa, Bhagavato, Arahato, sammā Sambuddhassa.

(Ñatti:)²

Suṇātu me bhante saṅgho. Yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ, ahaṃ itthan-nāmena bhikkhunā [i.e., āyasmataḥ ...] vinayaṃ puṭṭho vissajjeyyaṃ.

(Pubbakaraṇa-pucchā-vissajjanā:)²

(Pucchako:) Sammajjanī padīpo ca, udakaṃ āsanena ca, uposathassa etāni pubbakaraṇaṃ’ti vuccati.

Okāsa, sammajjanī: Sammajjanakaraṇaṃ kataṃ kiṃ?

(Vissajjako:) Sammajjanakaraṇaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ.

(Puc:) Padīpo ca: padīpujjalanaṃ kataṃ kiṃ?.

(Vis:) Padīpujjalanaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ. [or:] Idāni pana suriyālokassa atthitāya padīpakiccaṃ idha n’atthi.

(Puc:) Udakaṃ āsanena ca: Āsanena saha pāṇiyaparibhojanīya-udakatṭhapanam kataṃ kiṃ?

(Vis:) Āsanena saha pāṇiyaparibhojanīya-udakatṭhapanam niṭṭhitaṃ.

(Puc:) Uposathassa etāni pubbakaraṇaṃ’ti vuccati kiṃ?

(Vis:) Etāni cattāri vattāni sammajjanakaraṇādiṇi saṅghasannipātato paṭhamaṃ kattabbattā, uposathassa

uposathakammassa pubbakaraṇaṇ-ti vuccati. Pubbakaraṇāṇi ti akkhātāni.

(Pubbakicca-pucchā-vissajjanā):²

(Puc.): Chandapārisuddhi utukkhānaṃ, bhikkhugaṇaṇā ca ovādo, uposathassa etāni pubbakiccan-ti vuccati.

Chandapārisuddhi: Chandārahānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ chandapārisuddhi-āharaṇaṃ kataṃ kiṃ?

(Vis.): Chandapārisuddhi-āharaṇaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ. (or:) Idha n’atthi.

(Puc.): Utukkhānaṃ: Hemantādīnaṃ tiṇṇaṃ utūnaṃ ettakaṃ atikkantaṃ ettakaṃ avasiṭṭhaṇ’ti. Evaṃ utu-ācikkhanaṃ kataṃ kiṃ?

(Vis.): Utūnīdha pana sāsane hemanta-gimha-vassānānaṃ vasena tiṇi honti. Ayaṃ hemanta-/gimha-/vassāna-utu. Asmiṃ utumhi aṭṭha (dasa) uposathā. Iminā pakkhena eko uposatho sampatto, ... uposatho/ā atikkanto/ā, ... uposathā avasiṭṭho/ā.

(Puc.): Bhikkhugaṇaṇā ca: Imasmiṃ uposathagge sannipatitānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ gaṇaṇā, kittakā bhikkhū honti?

(Vis.): Asmiṃ uposathagge sannipatitānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ gaṇaṇā cattāro/pañca ... bhikkhū honti.

(Puc.): Ovādo: Bhikkhunīnaṃ ovādo dātabbo dinno kiṃ?

(Vis.): Idāni pana tāsāṃ n’atthitāya, so ca ovādo idha n’atthi.

(Puc.): Uposathassa etāni pubbakiccan’ti vuccati kiṃ?

(Vis.): Etāni pañcakammāni chandāharaṇādīni pātimokkhuḍdesato paṭhamāṃ kattabbattā, uposathassa uposathakammassa pubbakiccan-ti vuccati. Pubbakiccāni ti akkhātāni.

(Pattakalla-pucchā-vissajjanā):²

(Puc.): Uposatho yāvatikā ca bhikkhū kammappattā sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti, vajjanīyā ca puggalā tasmīṃ na honti pattakallan-ti vuccati.

Uposatho: Tīsu uposathadivasesu cātuddasī paṇṇarasī, sāmaggīsu, ajj’uposatho ko uposatho?

(Vis.): Ajj’uposatho cātuddaso/paṇṇaraso.

(Puc.): Yāvatikā ca bhikkhū kammappattā ti kiṃ?

(Vis.): Yattakā bhikkhū tassa uposathakammassa pattā, yuttā, anurūpā, sabbantimena paricchena cattāro bhikkhū pakatattā, saṅghena anukkhittā, te ca kho hatthapāsāṃ avijahitvā ekasīmāyaṃ ṭhitā.

(Puc.): Sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti kiṃ?

(Vis.): Vikālabhojanādi vatthu sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti.

(Puc.): Vajjanīyā ca puggalā tasmīṃ na honti kiṃ?

(Vis.): Gahaṭṭha-paṇḍakādayo, ekavīsati-vajjanīyā puggalā, hatthapāsato bahikaraṇavasena vajjetabbā. Te asmiṃ na honti.

(Puc.): Pattakallan-ti vuccati kiṃ?

(Vis.): Saṅghassa uposathakammaṃ imehi catūhi lakkhaṇehi saṅgahitaṃ pattakallan-ti vuccati: Pattakālavantaṃ³-ti akkhātāṃ.

(Ārādhana):²

(Vis.):² Pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni samāpetvā desitāpattikassa samaggassa bhikkhusaṅghassa anumatiyā pātimokkhaṃ uddisitum ārādhanaṃ karomi.

1. Ñd: *Saṅghuposatha-vinayakammaṃ*. (The Disciplinary action for the Uposatha of the Community.)

2. These titles are not in SK.

3. Ñd: *pattakallavanta-*

Translation

[Q: questioning bhikkhu. A: answering bhikkhu.]

The method of the preparations and so on for the Uposatha.

(The authorisation for asking about the Vinaya.)

[Q:] Homage to the Fortunate One, the Worthy One, the Perfectly Awakened One. (3x)

(Announcement)

Venerable Sir, please let the Community listen to me! If it is suitable to the community, (then) I would ask the such-named venerable about the Discipline.

(The authorisation to answer with regards the Vinaya.)

[A:] Homage to the Fortunate One, the Worthy One, the perfectly Awakened One. (3x)

(Announcement)

Venerable Sir, please let the Community listen to me! If it is suitable to the community (then) I would answer having been asked about the Discipline by the such-named venerable.

(The questioning and answering with regards the preparations.)

[Q:] "The broom and the lamp, the water with the seat

these are called "the preparation for the observance."

Permit [me to ask]! The broom. Has the action of sweeping been done?

[A:] The action of sweeping has been finished.

[Q:] And the lamp. Has the lighting of the lamp been done?

[A:] The lighting of the lamp has been finished. (Or:) There is no lamp-duty because of the state of there being sunlight now.

[Q:] The water with the seat. Has the setting up of the drinking- and washing-water been done?

[A:] The placing of the drinking- and washing-water together with the seat has been finished.

[Q:] Are these called "the preparation for the observance"?

[A:] These four protocols, the action of sweeping etc, due to the having to be done first before the gathering of the Community are called "the preparation for the [legal] act of Uposatha on the Uposatha."

The "preparations" have been announced.

(The questioning and answering with regards the preliminary duties.)

[Q:] The consent and purity, the telling of the season, the counting of the bhikkhus and the instruction (of the bhikkhunīs), these are called: "the preliminary duty for the observance'.

[Q:] The consent and purity. Has the bringing of consent [and] purity of bhikkhus who are deserving of [giving] consent been done?

[A:] The bringing of consent [and] purity of bhikkhus who are deserving of [giving] consent has been finished. (Or:) [There] is no [bringing of consent and purity] here.

[Q:] The telling of the season. "Of the three seasons, the winter etc., this number [of Uposathas] have passed, this number [of Uposathas] are left," has the telling of the season been done thus?

[A:] In this dispensation there are three seasons, [namely] the winter, the summer, and the rains.

This is the winter-/summer-/rainy-season, and in this season there are eight (ten) Uposathas.

With this fortnight (one) Uposatha has arrived, one/two/ ... Uposatha(s) is/have past, one/two/... Uposatha(s) is/are left.

[Q:] The counting of the bhikkhus. The counting of the bhikkhus who have gathered in this Uposatha-hall is the counting of the bhikkhus. How many bhikkhus are there?

[A:] In this Uposatha-hall four/five/ ... bhikkhus have gathered.

[Q:] The instruction. The instruction to be given to the bhikkhunīs: has it been given?

[A:] Because of their non-existence now, there is no instruction here.

[Q:] Are these called “the preparation for the observance”?

[A:] These four protocols, the bringing of consent etc, due to the having to be done first before the gathering of the Community are called “the preliminary duty for the [legal] act of Uposatha on the Uposatha.”

The “preliminary duties” have been announced.

(The questioning and answering about the reached suitability.)

[Q:] The observance, whatever bhikkhus are entitled (to carry out the legal) act, common offences are not found, there are no persons to be excluded in there, this is called: “reached suitability.”

[Q:] The Uposatha. With regards the fourteenth [-day Uposathas], the fifteenth [-day Uposathas], or the Unity [-Uposathas], the Uposatha today is which Uposatha?

[A:] Today is the fourteenth/fifteenth day Uposatha.

[Q:] What is “Whatever bhikkhus are entitled (to carry out the legal) act”?

[A:] However many bhikkhus who are entitled to that Uposatha-act, who are fit, are suited, with the minimum amount (of bhikkhus), four bhikkhus who are regular, not suspended by the community, and they, not having left arms-length, remain in the same boundary.

[Q:] Are common offences not found?

[A:] Common offences, founded on eating at the wrong time and so on, are not found.

[Q:] Are there in that [arms-length] no persons fit to be excluded

[A:] Householders, eunuchs, etc, the twenty one persons fit to be excluded, who are is to be excluded by making [them go] outside from the arms-length, they are not in that [arms-length.]

[Q:] What is said to “have reached suitability”?

[A:] The [legal] act of Uposatha endowed with these four characteristics is called “[one that] has reached suitability.”

“[It] has reached the time” is said.

(Invitation)

[A:] “Having made to undertake the preparations and preliminary duties I make the invitation to recite the Disciplinary Code with the approval of the united community whose offences have been confessed.”

Thai Dhammayuttika-nikāya Version

Given in Mm Se of the Mahamakut Academy (from the computerised version of Wat Pah Nanachat, Thailand.)

[The request for permission (given on p.53 of the 1969 Ñm edition. Not found in the 1966 edition.):]

Okāsa me bhante thero dethu vinayakathaṃ kathetum.

Pubbakiccaṃ. [= Not recited.]

Uposathakaraṇato pubbe nava-vidhaṃ pubbakiccaṃ kātabbaṃ hoti:

Taṇṭhāna-sammajjanañ-ca; tattha paḍip’ujjalanañ-ca; āsana-paññapanañ-ca; pānīya-paribhojanīya-ūpaṭṭhapanāñ-ca; chandārahānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ chandāharaṇaṃ-ca; tesañ-ñeva akatuposathānaṃ pārisuddhiyā pi āharaṇaṃ-ca; utukkhānañ-ca; bhikkhugaṇanā ca; bhikkhunīnam-ovādo cā ti.

Tattha purimāni cattāri bhikkhūnaṃ (Replace the bold Pāli phrase with the following Pāli phrase when the recitation is carried out during the day time: *Tattha purimesu catūsu kiccesu paḍipakiccaṃ idāni suriyālokassa atthitāya n’atthi, aparāni tiṇi bhikkhūnaṃ vattaṃ jānantehi āramikehi pi bhikkhūhi pi* (samanerehi pi bhikkhūhi pi or bhikkhūhi; when appropriate replace the bold Pāli phrase) *katāni pariniṭṭhitāni honti.*

Chandāharaṇa pārisuddhi-āharaṇāni pana imissaṃ sīmāyaṃ hatthapāsaṃ vijahitvā nisinnānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ

abhāvato n’atthi.

Utukkhaṇaṃ nāma ettakaṃ atikkantaṃ ettakaṃ avasiṭṭhaṇ-ti; evaṃ utu-ācikkhaṇaṃ.

Utūnīdha pana sāsane hemanta-gimha-vassānānaṃ vasena tīṇi honti.

Ayaṃ hemantotu [gimhotu or vassānotu], asmiñ-ca utumhi aṭṭha uposathā, iminā pakkhena: eko uposatho sampatto, dve uposathā atikkantā, satta uposathā avasiṭṭhā. [For more explanation; see Nm 1966 p.12 n. 7.]

Iti evaṃ sabbehi āyasmantehi utukkhaṇaṃ dhāretabbaṃ. [Bhikkhus junior than the bhikkhu who is reciting say: “Evaṃ bhante.” The bhikkhus senior to the reciter say: “Evaṃ āvuso.”]

[In Nm 1966 p.9 it is said that *bhante* should be omitted. There are probably different ways in different monasteries.]

Bhikkhugaṇanā nāma imasmiṃ uposathagge uposathatthāya sannipatitā bhikkhū ettakā ti, bhikkhūnaṃ gaṇanā.

Imasmiṃ pana uposathagge [number of bhikkhus in Pāli] bhikkhū sannipatitā honti.

Iti sabbehi āyasmantehi bhikkhugaṇanā pi dhāretabbā. [Evaṃ bhante/āvuso as above].

Bhikkhunīnamovādo pana idāni tāsāṃ n’atthitāya n’atthi.

Iti sakaraṇokāsānaṃ pubbakiccānaṃ katattā nikkaraṇokāsānaṃ pubbakiccānaṃ pakatiyā pariniṭṭhitattā evantaṃ nava-vidhaṃ pubbakiccaṃ pariniṭṭhitaṃ hoti.

Niṭṭhite ca pubbakicce:

Sace so divaso cātuddasī-pañṇarasī-sāmaggīnam-aññatāro yathājja uposatho pañṇaraso/cātuddaso/sāmaggo.

Yāvaticā ca bhikkhū kammaṇapattā saṅghuposathārahā cattāro vā tato vā atirekā pakatattā pārājikaṃ anāpannā saṅghena vā anukkhittā.

Te ca kho hatthapāsāṃ avijahitvā ekasīmāyaṃ ṭhitā.

Tesañ-ca vikālabhojanādivasena-vatthu-sabhāgāpattiyo ce na vijjanti.

Tesañ-ca hatthapāsato hatthapāsato bahikaraṇavasena vajjetabbo ko-ci vajjanīyapuggalo ce n’atthi.

Evan-taṃ uposathakammaṃ imehi catūhi lakkhaṇehi saṅgahitaṃ pattakallaṃ nāma hoti, kātuṃ yuttarūpaṃ.

Uposathakammassa pattakallattaṃ veditvā idāni kariyamāno uposatho saṅghena anumānetabbo.

[Other more senior bhikkhus say: *Sādhu, Bhante*. More junior bhikkhus: *Sādhu āvuso*.]

Eldest bhikkhu: Pubbakaraṇa-pubbakiccāni samāpetvā, imassa nisinnassa bhikkhusaṅghassa anumatiyā pāṭimokkhaṃ uddesitūṃ ajjesanaṃ karomi.

Translation

“May the Senior please give me permission to speak talk on Vinaya.

[The Preliminary Duty]

Before doing the Uposatha the ninefold duty should be done:

the sweeping of that place; the lighting of the lamp there; the spreading of the sitting mats; the preparing of the sitting mats; the bringing of the consent of the bhikkhus who are deserving [to give their] consent; and of those bhikkhus who do not participate in the Uposatha the bringing of the purity too; the telling of the season; the counting of the bhikkhus, and the instructing of the bhikkhunis.

Herein the first four [duties] have been done and completed by monastery-attendants who know the bhikkhus’ protocol and by bhikkhus.

[Or when there is daylight:] Herein with regards the first four duties there is no duty of [lighting] the lamp because of the state of there being sunlight now, the three other ones have been done and completed by monastery-attendants who know the bhikkhus’ protocol and by bhikkhus.

There is no bringing of consent [and] bringing of purity because of the absence in this boundary of seated bhikkhus who have left arm’s length.

The so-called “telling the season” is declaring the season thus: this number [of Uposathas] have passed, this number [of Uposathas] are left.

In this dispensation there are three seasons, [namely] winter, summer, and rains.

This is the winter season, and in this season there are eight Uposathas.

With this fortnight one Uposatha has arrived, two Uposathas have past, five Uposathas are left.

Thus the telling of the season is to be borne in mind by all the venerables.

[So it is, Venerable Sir! (To be said by all bhikkhus participating in the Uposatha. The word “sir”

should be omitted by bhikkhus more senior than the reciter.))]

The so-called “counting of the bhikkhus” is the counting of the bhikkhus [thus]: “In this Uposatha-hall so many bhikkhus have gathered for the purpose of [performing] the Uposatha.”

In this Uposatha-hall four bhikkhus have gathered.

[So it is, Venerable Sir!]

There is no instruction of the bhikkhunis now because of their non-existence.

Thus, because of the state of having been done of the preliminary duties, which had an opportunity of doing (them), and because of the naturalness of the preliminary duties which had no opportunity of doing (them), the nine-fold Preliminary Function has been completed.

When the preliminary duty has been finished:

If the day is a certain one of the fourteenth [day Uposathas], fifteenth [day Uposathas], or the Unity [-Uposathas], like today is the fifteenth day Uposatha.

Whatever bhikkhus are entitled (to carry out the legal) act, who are qualified for the Uposatha of the Community, four or more than that, regular, who have not committed an offence of pārājika, who have not been suspended by the Community,

and they, not having left arms-length, remain in one boundary,

and if among them common offences, founded on eating at the wrong time and so on, are not found,

and if among them within arms-length there is no person fit to be excluded, who is to be excluded from arms-length by making [him go] outside,

then that [legal] act of Uposatha endowed with these four characteristics is called “[one that] has reached suitability,” [and is] fit to perform.

Having known the state of reached suitability of the [legal] act of Uposatha, it is to be approved of by the Community [that] the Uposatha is being done now.”

(Well [done], Venerable Sir! If Junior: Well [done], Friend!)

Elder: “Having made to undertake the preparations and preliminary duties I make the invitation to recite the Disciplinary Code with the approval of the seated community.”

[Cf. the translation of this Dhammayuttika *Pubbakicca-pubbakaraṇa* given in Nm 1966 pp. 6–10 and 1969 pp. 53–58.]

The Origin of the Question and Answer Version of the *Pubbakicca-pubbakaraṇā*

There is no question and answer version of the *pubbakaraṇapubbakicca* found in the commentaries, and sub-commentaries composed in Polonaruwa. It is also not found in the medieval Sinhalese word by word translation of the Bhikkhupātimokkha called *Bhikkhupātimokkha-padārtha* or *Bhikṣuprātimokṣa-sannaya*.⁷⁵³ The question and answer version is, as far as I have been able to find out, first mentioned and recommended in the text called the *Bhikkhupātimokkha-gaṇṭhidīpāni*. This explanation of difficult and obscure (*gaṇṭhi*) words and passages in the Pātimokkha was written by the grammarian Ñāṇakitti thera who lived in Chiang Mai, Lān Nā Kingdom, in Northern Siam/Thailand in the 15th century and wrote several other Pāli texts⁷⁵⁴. In his discussion of the *pubbakaraṇapubbakicca* verses of the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* the thera states that the verses and the explanations of them have been taken out from the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* and its *ṭīkā* by theras so that the preparations, etc, can be made known by way of a series of questions and answers between the one who invites and the Pātimokkha reciter. He then gives an example that exactly corresponds with the start of the question and answer version as used in Thailand and Sri Lanka.

The version that Ven. Ñāṇakitti comments upon is, although very similar, not completely identical to the more modern versions; see the footnotes to the Sinhalese/Siamese question and answer version in the appendix. Further, he only comments upon some of the words and passages of a question and answer version and does not give the full question and answer version. If this version would have been a completely new creation by him, then he would have given the full version and it therefore seems that the question and answer version was already attached to the Lān Nā Pātimokkha manuscripts he had used. In fact, he states

⁷⁵³ See the section on manuscripts and editions used.

⁷⁵⁴ See Hinüber, 1996, § 379 and Hinüber 2000.

that it was made by theras, presumably these theras were Lān Nā theras⁷⁵⁵. The fact that Ven. Ñāṇakitti was primarily a grammarian and not a Vinaya-expert also suggests that it is unlikely that he was the composer of the question and answer version. Although many of the passages used in the question and answer version come from the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* (see below), he does comment upon some words and passages, e.g. *saṅghena anukkhittā*, which are only found in the question and answer version and not in the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* or elsewhere.

The origin of the question and answer session might thus be the Lān Nā Kingdom in what is now Northern Thailand. Later it could have been introduced to Sri Lanka when bhikkhus from Siam came to help re-establish the Upasampadā in the mid-eighteenth century. As Sinhalese script *Bhikkhupātimokkha-gaṇṭhi-dīpanī* manuscripts⁷⁵⁶, and at least one printed edition are found, in Sri Lanka⁷⁵⁷ it is likely that this work was also introduced at the same time by the bhikkhus from Siam.

In the modern Burmese tradition, and in the Burmese lineage Amarapura Nikāya in Sri Lanka, no Pāli question and answer version is used, although the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* verses are recited.

The first unambiguous indication that the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* verses should be recited before the Pātimokkha recitation is in the Polonaruwa period *ṭikā* called *Vinayavinicchaya-ṭikā* by Ven. Mahā Upatissa thera who lived in the 12th century in Sri Lanka. (See below) The 12th century *Pālimuttaka-vinaya-vinicchaya-saṅgha* of the Sri Lankan Ven. Sāriputta thera (see below) might indicate also this recitation of the verses and is in fact quoted as support for the version of the question and answer session by the Burmese Ven. Tipiṭikālaṅkāra thera in his 17th century sub-commentary on the last work (see below). In the *Vinayavinicchaya-ṭikā* by Ven. Upatissa, it appears to be stated that the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* verses should be recited, but there is no indication that they should be done by way of questions and answers.

Ven. Tipiṭikālaṅkāra thera recommends a brief question and answer version in which one bhikkhu, the Pātimokkha-reciter, recites the three verses from the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* and *Mūlasikkhā* and asks after each verse whether whether the factors mentioned in the verse have been accomplished, the other bhikkhu, the “Dhamma-inviter,” then only briefly replies “Yes, Venerable Sir.”

It is not known whether this brief version is still used, or has ever been used, in Burma. It appears that it is Ven. Tipiṭikālaṅkāra’s own fabrication. However, it might suggest that Ven. Tipiṭikālaṅkāra thera knew about the question and answer version practised in Lān Nā, which was part of Burma from the mid 16th century for about two hundred and twenty years, and Siyam and might have wanted to introduce a brief version of it in Southern Burma. At the end of his explanation of the verses, etc., the thera states that this long-concealed way of speech should be practised by wise men who know the Vinaya. From this, and also from his preceding extensive explanations, it appears that this reciting by way of question and answers was a new thing in Burma.⁷⁵⁸

Bhikkhupātimokkha-gaṇṭhi-dīpanī (p. 3.) (Ñāṇakitti Thera, Chiang Mai, Siam, 15th CE.)

(Editor: Ven. Kalage Guṇaratana [Disciple of Vidyodaya Parivenādhīpati Gaṇācāriya Śrī Sumaṅgala], Sri Lanka. 1889/2433.)

Samajjanī padīpo ca, udakaṃ āsanena ca;

Uposathassa etāni, pubbakaraṇan-ti vuccatī ti.

Ayaṃ gāthā vaggaṭṭhakathāto āharitvā Mātikāya kiṃ saṅghassa pubbakiccan-ti vuttattā paṭhamāṃ kattabbassa pubbakaraṇassa nāpanattham ādimhi porāṇaka-therahi ṭhapanato sammajjanī-ty-ādi-tassā gāthāya vitthāro, so ca vitthāro Kaṅkhāvitaraṇīyā ceva taṃ ṭikāya uddharitvā ārādhakassa ceva pātimokkhuddesakassa ca vacana-paṭivacana-

⁷⁵⁵ There is, also the possibility that the twenty-five Lān Nā bhikkhus who went to Ceylon in the begin of the 15th century for higher studies brought it back with them; see Hinüber, 2000, pp.134–5.

⁷⁵⁶ See § 21 of De Silva, 1938, and p.52 of *Lanka Puskola Pot Nāmāvaliya* II. K.D. Somadasa; Colombo 1964.

⁷⁵⁷ This appears to be the only work of Ñāṇakitti thera found in manuscript form outside of Thailand, Laos, or Cambodia. Hinüber states that no manuscript seems to be known outside of these three countries, but overlooked the existence of the *Pātimokkha-gaṇṭhi-dīpanī* manuscripts in Sri Lanka. It might be found in Burma too as a *Pātimokkha-gaṇṭhi* has been listed in the *Piṭakat samuīn*.

⁷⁵⁸ Ven. Tipiṭikālaṅkāra gives three versions of the verse, the first one is the one given in the *Mūlasikkhā*, the next two apparently are his own fabrications, although they are based on the *Mūlasikkhā* verse.

ñāpanattthaṃ therehi kato. Sammajjanī ti vacane ārādhakena bhikkhunā vutte, sammajjana-karaṇaṃ-cā-ti vacanaṃ uddesakena bhikkhunā vattabbaṃ. Ito paresu pi es'eva nayo. ...

Chanda -- pe -- vuccatī ti.

Ayaṃ gāthā aṭṭhakathāto āharitvā pubbakaraṇ'antaraṃ kattabassa kiccassa ñāpanattthaṃ ṭhapitā.

"The broom and the lamp, and the water with the seat

these are called: "the preparation for the observance."

Having taken this verse from the commentary on the chapter, because (it) has been said in the Summary (*Mātikā*, i.e., the *Pātimokkha*): 'What is the preliminary duty for the Community,' for the purpose of the making known of the preliminary duty to be done first at the start, due to the establishing of the explanation of that verse that starts with 'the broom' by the ancient elders. And having taken out that explanation from the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* and the *ṭikā* it has been done by the elders for the purpose of making known by (means of) the questioning of the one who invites and the answering of the one who recites the *Pātimokkha*.

When the statement 'The broom' has been said by the one who invites (then) 'And the action of sweeping' is to be said by the reciter-bhikkhu. From this onward, with regards the others (i.e., duties [given in the verses]), this is (to be said in) the same method. ...

'The consent ... etc ... are called'

Having taken this verse from the Commentary it has been placed for the purpose of the making known of the duty to be done within the preparation."

Vinaya-saṅgha (-aṭṭhakathā)/Pāḷimuttaka-vinaya-vinicchaya-saṅgha (-vaṇṇanā).

(SL, Ven. Sāriputta thera, 12th CE.) Myanmar 212–214. § 177.

"Sammajjanī padīpo ca, udakaṃ āsanena ca;

uposathassa etāni, pubbakaraṇaṃ-ti vuccatī ti.

Evaṃ vuttaṃ catubbidhaṃ pubbakaraṇaṃ katvā va uposatho kātabbo. ...

Chandapārisuddhi-utukkhānaṃ, bhikkhugaṇanā ca ovādo;

uposathassa etāni, pubbakiccaṃ-ti vuccatī ti. –

Evaṃ vuttaṃ pana catubbidham-pi pubbakiccaṃ pubbakaraṇato pacchā kātabbaṃ, tam-pi hi akatvā uposatho na kātabbo."

"The broom" (when this) has been said thus, the Observance is to be done (after) having done the fourfold preparation. ...

"The consent and purity ..." (when this) has been said thus, also the four-fold preliminary duty is to be done after the preparation, for not having done that the Observance is not to be done."

Vinayavinicchaya-ṭikā II, Myanmar p.210 (SL, Ven. Mahā Upatissa thera, 12th CE)

§ 2635. *Pubbakiccaṃ samāpetvā ti–*

"Sammajjanī padīpo ca, udakaṃ āsanena ca;

Pavāraṇāya etāni, 'pubbakaraṇaṃ'ti vuccati.

"Chandapārisuddhi-utukkhānaṃ, bhikkhugaṇanā ca ovādo;

Pavāraṇāya etāni, 'pubbakiccaṃ'ti vuccatī"ti.–

Vuttaṃ navavidhaṃ pubbakiccaṃ niṭṭhāpetvā.

Pattakalle samānite ti–

"Pavāraṇā yāvatikā ca bhikkhū kammappattā,

Sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti.

Vajjanīyā ca puggalā tasmim̐ na honti,

'Pattakallaṃ'ti vuccatī"ti.–

Vutte catubbidhe pattakalle samodhānite parisamāpīte.

“Having made the preliminary duty to be completed”:

“The broom ...”

(when this) has been said the ninefold preliminary duty has been caused to be finished.

The suitable time factors have been combined:

“The Invitation, whatever bhikkhus ...”

When (this) has been said the fourfold suitable time (-factors) have been combined (and) concluded.

Vinayālaṅkāra-ṭīkā

(*Pāḷimuttaka-vinaya-vicchaya-saṅgha-mahā-/nava-ṭīkā*) (Myanmar, Ven. Tipiṭikālaṅkāra thera, 17th CE.): Myanmar p.p. 398–404.

Idāni pātimokkhuddesakāle—

*Sammajjanī padīpo ca, udakaṃ āsanena ca;
Upasathassa etāni, pubbakaraṇanti vuccati.
Chandapārisuddhi-utukkhānaṃ, bhikkhugaṇaṇā ca ovādo;
Upasathassa etāni, pubbakiccan-ti vuccati.
Upasatho yāvaticā ca bhikkhū kammappattā;
Sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti.
Vajjanīyā ca puggalā tasmīṃ na honti.
Pattakallan-ti vuccatī ti.*

Imā gāthāyo dhammajjesakena pāṭhaṃ yeva bhaṇāpetvā pātimokkhuddesako atthaṃ katheti. Tato pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni sammā niṭṭhāpetvā “desitāpattikassa samaggassa (pg. 1.399) bhikkhusaṅghassa anumatiyā pātimokkhaṃ uddisitum ārādhaṇaṃ karomā”ti imaṃ vākyam pāṭhaṃ-eva ajjesakena bhaṇāpetvā atthaṃ avatvāva “sādhū”ti vatvā pātimokkhaṃ uddisati.

Pavāraṇāya pi eseva nayo. “Pavāraṇāya etāni”ti ca “pavāraṇaṃ kātun”ti ca imāni padāni yeva visiṭṭhāni.

Now at the time of the Pātimokkha -recitation—“The broom ...” (there are) these verses (of which), only the text having been recited by the Dhamma-inviter, the Pātimokkha reciter explains the sense.

Then, having rightly having caused to carry out/finish the preparations and preliminary duties: “We make the invitation to recite the Disciplinary Code with the approval of the united community whose offences have been confessed,” the inviter just having recited the text (of) this saying, not having said the sense, having said “All right!,” he recites the Pātimokkha. This is also the method also with regards the Invitation. The words “*Pavāraṇāya etāni*” (“These are for the Invitation”) and “*pavāraṇaṃ kātun*” (“to do the invitation”) are the differences.

Kiṃ imāni dhammajjesakassa vacanāni, udāhu pātimokkhuddesakassā ti? Kiñ-c’ettha— yadi dhammajjesakassa vacanāni, evaṃ sati gāthāttayaṃ vatvā tāsāṃ atthaṃ-pi so eva kathetvā etāni pubbakaraṇāni ca etāni pubbakiccāni ca saṅghena katāni, idaṃ-ca saṅghassa pattakallaṃ samānītaṃ, tasmā uddisatu, bhante, pātimokkhan-ti ten’eva vattabbaṃ siyā. Atha pātimokkhuddesakassa vacanāni, evaṃ-ca sati “Saṅgho, bhante, theram pātimokkhuddesaṃ ajjesati, uddisatu, bhante, thero pātimokkhan”ti dhammajjesakena yāvaticiyaṃ ajjhosāpetvā “Sammajjanī ... pe ... vuccatī”ti gāthaṃ vatvā iti “aṭṭhakathācariyehi vuttāni etāni pubbakaraṇāni katāni”ti pucchitvā dhammajjesakena “Āma, bhante”ti vutte “chandapārisuddhi ... pe ... vuccatī”ti gāthaṃ vatvā iti “Aṭṭhakathācariyehi vuttāni etāni pubbakiccāni katāni”ti pucchitvā “Āma, bhante” ti vutte “Upasatho ... pe ... vuccatī”ti gāthaṃ vatvā iti “Aṭṭhakathācariyehi vuttaṃ idaṃ pattakallaṃ samānītan”ti pucchitvā “Āma bhante”ti vutte “pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni sammā niṭṭhāpetvā pattakalle samānīte samaggassa bhikkhusaṅghassa anumatiyā pātimokkhaṃ uddisitum ārādhaṇaṃ mayaṃ karomā”ti pātimokkhuddesakena vattabbaṃ siyā, evaṃ sati ajjesaka-ajjesitabbānaṃ vacanaṃ asaṅkarato jānitabbaṃ bhaveyyā ti.

Are these words of the Dhamma-inviter or of the Pātimokkha-reciter? Here, if they are words of the Dhamma-inviter, when (this) is so, he, having said the three verses (and) also having spoken about their sense: “These preparations, and these preliminary duties, have been done by the Community, and this suitable time for the Community has been brought about, therefore let the Venerable Sir recite the

Pātimokkha” is only to be said by him.

Now, if (they are) words of the Pātimokkha-reciter, when (this) is so, the Dhamma-inviter having invited three times: “The Community, Venerable Sir, invites the thera to recite the Pātimokkha, let the thera recite the Pātimokkha.” (the Pātimokkha-reciter) having said the verse “The broom ... etc ...,” having asked thus: “These preparations said by the commentary-teachers, have they been done?” the Dhamma-inviter (replies): “Yes, Venerable Sir!” when (this) has been said, having said the verse “The purity and consent ... etc ...” having asked (he says) “These preliminary duties said by the commentary-teachers, have they been done?”: “Yes, Venerable Sir,” when (this) has been said: “The Observance ...” having asked thus: “This suitable time said by the Commentary teachers has it been brought about?,” when (this) has been said: “Having rightly made finished the preparations and preliminary duties, the factors of the suitable time have been brought together, we make the invitation to recite the Disciplinary Code with the approval of the united community.” is to be said by the Pātimokkha-reciter. When (this) is being so due to non-blending the statement of those that are to be invited and the inviter would be understandable.”

Ettha ca gāthāttayassa aṭṭhakathācariyehi vuttabhāvo aṭṭhakathāyam-eva āgato. Pacchimavākyam pana n’eva pāḷiyam, na aṭṭhakathāyam, na ṭikādisu dissati. Khuddasikkhā-pakaraṇe pi—

“Pubbakicce ca karaṇe;

Pattakalle samānite.

Suttaṃ uddisati saṅgho.

Pañcadhā so vibhāvito”ti ca.

“Pubbakicce ca karaṇe;

Pattakalle samānite.

Ñattiṃ vatvāna saṅghena.

Kattabbevaṃ pavāraṇā”ti ca.—

Vuttaṃ, na vuttaṃ tathā. Mūlasikkhā-pakaraṇe yeva tathā vuttaṃ, tasmā ācariyānaṃ attano mati bhaveyya.

Here, these three verses due to the state of having been stated by the commentarial teachers have come in the commentary. But, the last saying is not seen in the Text, the Commentary, (and) the Sub-commentaries and so on. Even though it has been stated in the *Khuddakasikkhā*-work:

“When the preparation and the preliminary duties,
the suitable time has been brought about,
the Community recites the Sutta.
In five ways it has been made clear.”

and:

When the preparation and the preliminary duties,
the suitable time has been brought about,
Having stated the Announcement,
The Invitation is to be done by the Community,”

(the third verse) has not been stated in that way (as given above). Only in the *Mūlasikkhā*-work (the third verse) has been stated thus, therefore it would be just the own idea of the Ācariyas.

Tattha “pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni sammā niṭṭhāpetvā”ti iminā purimagāthā-dvayassa attham-eva kathetvā tatiya-gāthāya attho na kathito. “Desitāpattikassā”ti iminā ca āpattiyaṃ desita-bhāvo yeva kathito, na sabbam pattakallam. Āpattiyaṃ desitabhāve ca sabhāgāpattiyaṃ desitabhāvo yeva pattakallasmiṃ antogadho, na itaro. Vuttañ-hi kaṅkhāvitaraṇiyam: Etāsu hi sabhāgāpattisu avijjamānāsu, visabhāgāpattisu vijjamānāsu pi pattakallam hoti yevā ti.

“Pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni sammā niṭṭhāpetvā desitāpattikassa samaggassa bhikkhusaṅghassa anumatiyaṃ pātimokkham uddisituṃ ārādhanaṃ karomā” ti ettake yeva vutte avasesāni tīṇi pattakallaṅgāni. Seyyathidaṃ—uposatho, yāvātikā ca bhikkhū kammappattā, vajjanīyaṃ ca puggalā tasmiṃ na hontī ti. Tesu asantesu pi uposatho (pg. 1.401) kātabbo ti āpajjati, na pana kātabbo. Tena vuttaṃ: “Na, bhikkhave, anuposathe uposatho kātabbo, yo kareyya,

āpatti dukkaṭassā” ti ca, “Anujānāmi, bhikkhave, catunnaṃ pātimokkhaṃ uddisitun-it” ca, “Na, bhikkhave, sagahaṭṭhāya parisāya pātimokkhaṃ uddisitaṭṭhaṃ”-ti ādi ca, tasmā uposathadivasesu saṅghe sannipatite sace pubb’eva sammato dhammajjesako atthi, iccetaṃ kusalaṃ. No ce, ekaṃ byattaṃ paṭibalaṃ bhikkhuṃ saṅghena sammannāpetvā tena dhammajjesakena pātimokkhuddesakaṃ upasaṅkamitvā ekaṃsaṃ uttarāsaṅgaṃ karitvā ukkuṭikaṃ nisīditvā añjaliṃ paggaḥetvā evaṃ-assa vacanīyo – “Saṅgho, bhante, therāṃ pātimokkhuddesaṃ ajjesati, uddisatu thero pātimokkhaṃ. Dutiyam-pi, bhante, saṅgho ... pe ... tatiyam-pi, bhante, saṅgho ... pe ... uddisatu thero pātimokkhaṃ”-ti tikkhattuṃ yācāpetvā tato pātimokkhuddesakena

“Sammajjanī padīpo ca, udakaṃ āsanena ca;

Uposathassa etāni, pubbakaraṇanti vuccatī” ti. –

“Aṭṭhakathācariyehi vuttāni cattāri pubbakaraṇāni, kiṃ tāni katāni”-ti pucchite dhammajjesakena: “Āma, bhante” ti vutte puna pātimokkhuddesakena–

“Chandapārisuddhi-utukkhānaṃ, bhikkhugaṇanā ca ovādo;

Uposathassa etāni, pubbakiccan-ti vuccatī”—ti. –

“Aṭṭhakathācariyehi vuttāni pañca pubbakiccāni, kiṃ tāni katāni” ti pucchite dhammajjesakena “Āma, bhante” ti vutte puna pātimokkhuddesakena–

“Uposatho, yāvaticā ca bhikkhū kammappattā;

Sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti.

Vajjanīyā ca puggalā tasmīṃ na honti.

Pattakallan-ti vuccatī” ti. –

“Aṭṭhakathācariyehi vuttāni cattāri pattakallaṅgāni, kiṃ tāni samānītāni” ti pucchite dhammajjesakena “Āma, bhante” ti vutte puna pātimokkhuddesako “Pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni sammā niṭṭhāpetvā pattakallaṅge samānīte saṅghassa anumatiyā pātimokkhaṃ uddississāmā” ti vatvā “Sādhū sādhū” ti bhikkhusaṅghena sampatiṇṇhite “Suṇātu me, bhante, saṅgho” ti-ādinā pātimokkhuddesako pātimokkhaṃ uddisati ti ayam-amhākaṃ khanti.

Therein “Having rightly caused to carry out the preparations and preliminary duties” by this (statement) , just having stated the sense of the former two verses (above), the sense of the third verse (above) has not been stated. “Whose offences have been confessed” and by this the confession of the offences is just stated, not completely the suitable time. Only the confession of offences and the confession of common offences are included in the suitable time, not the other. For it is stated in the Kaṅkhavitarāṇi: “For when these common offences are not being found, and (those) without common offences are found it is only the suitable time.’

“Having rightly caused to carry out the preparations and preliminary duties we make the invitation to recite the Disciplinary Code with the approval of the united community whose offences have been confessed.”

When only this much is stated, there remain three factors of suitable time, that is to say: “The Observance, whatever bhikkhus are entitled (to carry out the legal) act, there are no persons to be excluded in there.” Even when these are not existent, “the Observance is to be done” is met (*āpajjati*), but it is not to be done. Therefore it is stated: “Bhikkhus, on a non-Observance day no Observance is to be done, whoever should do (it), (there is) an offence of wrong-doing for him” and “I allow, for four bhikkhus to recite the Pātimokkha” and “Bhikkhus, the Pātimokkha is not to be recited in an assembly with householders” etc, therefore on Observance days, when the Community has assembled, if there is a formerly agreed upon Dhamma-inviter it is good.

If not, one skilled capable bhikkhu, having been authorised by the Saṅgha, by that Dhamma-inviter, having approached the Pātimokkha-reciter, having put the robe on one shoulder, having sat down in the squatting (*ukkuṭika*) posture, having put up reverentially the hands folded, it should be stated thus to him: “The Community, Venerable Sir, invites the thera to recite the Pātimokkha, let the thera recite the Pātimokkha. A second time the Community, ... etc ... A third time ... etc ... Let the thera recite the Pātimokkha,” having requested three times, then by the Pātimokkha-reciter (it is said):

“The broom and the lamp, the water with the seat,

these are called: ‘the preparation for the observance.’”

“The four preparations stated by the commentary-teachers, have they been done?,” when

(this) has been asked, the dhamma-inviter (says): “Yes, Venerable Sir.” when (this) has been stated, again by the Pātimokkha-reciter (it is said):

“The consent and purity, the telling of the season,
the counting of the bhikkhus and the instruction (of the bhikkhunis),
these are called: ‘the preliminary duty for the observance.’”

“The five preliminary duties stated by the commentary-teachers, have they been done?,” when (this) has been asked, the dhamma-inviter (says): “Yes, Venerable Sir,” when (this) has been stated, again by the Pātimokkha-reciter (it is said):

“The observance,
whatever bhikkhus are entitled (to carry out the legal) act.,
common offences are not found,
there are no persons to be excluded in there,
this is called: ‘reached suitable time.’”

“The four factors of the suitable time stated by the commentary-teachers, have they been done?” when (this) has been asked, the dhamma-inviter (says): “Yes, Venerable Sir.” when (this) has been stated the Pātimokkha-reciter again (says): “Having rightly made finished the preparations and preliminary duties, the factors of the suitable time have been brought together, we recite the Disciplinary Code with the approval of the community.” (and) having stated (so), when it has being agreed by the Community (thus): “All right! All right!,” the Pātimokkha-reciter recites the Pātimokkha starting with “Listen to me ...” This is our preference.

Ettha ca “Dhammajjhesakena ... pe ... evam-assa vacanīyo” ti vuttaṃ, so dhammajjhesakena vacanīyabhāvo kathaṃ veditabbo ti?

“Na, bhikkhave, saṅghamajjhe anajjhīṭṭhena pātimokkhaṃ uddisatthaṃ, yo uddiseyya, āpatti dukkaṭassā” ti vacanato ti. “Saṅghena sammannāpetvā” ti vuttaṃ, taṃ kathan-ti? “Ajjesanā c’ettha saṅghena sammata-dhamm’ajjesakāyattā vā saṅghattherāyattā vā” ti aṭṭha-kathāyaṃ vuttattā.

“Saṅgho, bhante, therāṃ pātimokkhuddesaṃ ajjesati, uddisatu, bhante, thero pātimokkhan” ti. Ayaṃ ajjesanākāro kuto labbhatīti? Pālito. Pāliyañhi (mahāva. 155) “te therāṃ ajjesanti, uddisatu, bhante, thero pātimokkhan” ti āgato.

Sace pana dhammajjhesako vuḍḍhataro, pātimokkhuddesako navako, “saṅgho, āvuso, āyasmantaṃ pātimokkhuddesaṃ ajjesati, uddisatu āyasmā pātimokkhan” ti vattatthaṃ. Taṃ kuto labbhati? Pālito yeva. Pāliyañhi (pg. 1.0403) (mahāva. 155/ Vin I 115) “Eten’eva upāyena yāva saṅgha-navakaṃ ajjesanti uddisatu āyasmā pātimokkhan” ti āgato. Tato “pātimokkhuddesakena sammajjanī ... pe ... pucchite dhammajjhesakena ‘Āma, bhante’ ti vutte” ti idaṃ kuto labbhatī ti? Pālito aṭṭhakathāto ca. Nidāna-pāliyaṃ-pi hi “Kiṃ saṅghassa pubbakiccan” ti āgataṃ, aṭṭhakathāyaṃ-pi (kaṅkhā. aṭṭha. nidānavañṇanā) “Kiṃ saṅghassa pubbakiccan-ti saṅgho uposathaṃ kareyyā” ti ... pe ... evaṃ dvīhi nāmehi navavidhaṃ pubbakiccaṃ dassitaṃ, kiṃ taṃ katan-ti pucchati” ti āgatan-ti.

And herein “By the Dhamma-inviter ... etc ... it is to be said thus to him” [see above] is stated, that state of having to be said how is to be understood? Due to the statement, “Bhikkhus, in the middle of the Community the Pātimokkha is not to be recited by one who has not been invited, whoever should recite, there is an offence of wrong-doing for him.” Due to the statement in the Commentary, “Herein the invitation is by a Dhamma-inviter authorised by the Community or by the Community-elder.”

“The Community, Venerable Sir, invites the elder for the Pātimokkha-recitation, Venerable Sir, let the elder recite the Pātimokkha. This action of inviting from where is it obtained? From the Text. For in the Text has come “They invited the elder: Venerable Sir, let the elder recite the Pātimokkha.” But if the Dhamma-inviter is more senior, (and) the Pātimokkha-reciter a junior, “The Community, Venerable, invites the elder for the Pātimokkha-recitation, let the Venerable recite the Pātimokkha” is to be said. From where is that obtained? Just from the Text. For in the Text has come: “In just this way they invited until the (most) junior in the community: ‘Let the Venerable recite the Pātimokkha.’”

Then “by the Pātimokkha-reciter ‘the broom ... etc ... ‘Yes, Venerable sir,’ when (this) is said” [see above], from where is this obtained? From the Text and the Commentary. For also in the Nidāna-text has

come, “What is the preliminary duty for the Community?,” and also in the Commentary has come, “What is the preliminary duty for the Community? The Community should do the Observance’ ... etc ... thus by these two names the ninefold preliminary duty has been shown. ‘How has that been done?’ he asks.”

Nanu cetaṃ antonidāne yeva āgataṃ? Atha kasmā pātimokkhuddesakena pubbabhāge vattabban-ti? Saccam, tathā pi tad-anulomato jānitabbato vattabbaṃ. Aṭṭhakathāyañ-hi imā gāthāyo sammajjanādīnaṃ pubbakaraṇādibhāva-ñāpaka-bhāven’eva vuttā, na pātimokkhārambhakāle bhaṇitabba-bhāvena.

Atha ca pana idāni bhaṇanti, evaṃ sante kim-atthaṃ bhaṇanti ti cintāyaṃ. Antonidāne “kiṃ saṅghassa pubbakiccan”ti vutta-pucchānulomena pubbakaraṇādīnaṃ niṭṭha-bhāva-pucchan’atthaṃ bhaṇanti ti jānitabbaṃ. Vuttañ-hi “Evaṃ vuttaṃ catubbidhaṃ pubbakaraṇaṃ katvāva uposatho katabbo”ti (vi. saṅga. aṭṭha. 177), tasmā pāli-aṭṭhakathānulomato iminā anukkamena kate sati dhammajjesako paññāyati, tassa ajjhesanākāro paññāyati, pātimokkhuddesako paññāyati, tassa pubbakaraṇādīnaṃ niṭṭhabhāvapucchanam paññāyati, dhammajjesakassa vissajjanam paññāyati, tāni niṭṭhāpetvā pātimokkhuddesakassa pātimokkham uddisitum paṭiññā paññāyati, evaṃ imesaṃ gāthā-vākyānaṃ vacane payojanaṃ paññāyati ti katvā paṇḍitehi vinayaññūhi cirapaṭicchanno ayaṃ kathāmaggo paṭipajjitabbo ti. Pavāraṇāya pi es’eva nayo.

But has this not come only in the Introduction? Why then is it to be said by the Pātimokkha reciter in the earlier part? True. Likewise, also due to the having to be understood in conformity with it, is to be said. For in the Commentary these verses starting with the broom have been stated just due to the state of making known the preparation and so on, not due to the state of having to be recited at the time of the start of the Pātimokkha.

With regards the thought: “But then they recite it now, this being so, for what reason do they recite (it)?” It is to be understood: in the (Pātimokkha-) Introduction (it is said) ‘What is the preliminary duty for the Community?’ due to the conformity with what has been said they recite for the purpose of the asking about the state of being concluded of the preparations and so on. For it is said (in the *Vinayaśaṅgha*): “(when this) has been said thus the Observance is to be done, having done the four-fold preparation,” therefore when done due to the conformity with the Text and Commentary in this sequence, an existent Dhamma-inviter is evident, an action of inviting of that is evident, the Pātimokkha-reciter is evident, the asking of the state of being concluded of the preparations and so on by him is evident, the answer of the Dhamma-inviter is evident, having caused them to be carried out the permission to recite the Pātimokkha by the Pātimokkha-reciter is evident, thus with regard the word of these verse-sayings an application is evident” having done by wise men who know the discipline this long concealed way of speech is to be undertaken. With regards the Invitation, this is the same method.”

Parallels in the text of the Uposathakammasa-pubbakaraṇa-pubbakiccāni

The blue parts indicate parallels from the commentaries, etc., to parts of the *pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni* text.

(Puc:) *“Namo tassa bhagavato arahato sammāsambuddhassa.*

Suṇātu me bhante saṅgho yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ ahaṃ āyasmantaṃ [itthannāmaṃ] vinayaṃ puccheyyaṃ.”

(Vis:) *Namo tassa bhagavato arahato sammāsambuddhassa.*

Suṇātu me bhante saṅgho yadi saṅghassa pattakallaṃ ahaṃ āyasmataṃ [itthannāmena] vinayaṃ puṭṭho visajjeyyaṃ.

(Puc:) *Sammajjanī padīpo ca
udakaṃ āsanena ca
uposathassa etāni
pubbakaraṇaṃ-ti vuccati. (Kkh 17.)*

(Puc:) *“Okāsa sammajjanī.”*

(Vis:) *Sammajjanakaraṇaṃ-ca*

(Puc:) *“Padīpo ca.”*

(Vis:) *Padīpa-ujjalanaṃ-ca. [Idāni suriyālokassa atthitāya padīpakiccaṃ n’atthi.]*

(Puc:) *“Udakaṃ āsanena ca.”*

(Vis:) *Āsanena saha pānīya-paribhojanīya-upaṭṭhapanāṇ-ca.*

... *tasmā therena ānattena agilānena bhikkhunā uposathāgāraṃ sammajjitabbaṃ, pānīyaṃ paribhojanīyaṃ upaṭṭhāpetabbaṃ, āsanaṃ paññāpetabbaṃ, paḍīpo katabbo, akaronto dukkaṭaṃ āpajjati, therenā pi patirūpaṃ ṇatvā ānāpetabbaṃ.* (Kkh 17 quoting Mv II 20,6/Vin I 119. The duty parts, underlined, are in the Mv.)

(Puc:) *“Uposathassa etāni pubbakaraṇaṇ-ti vuccati.”*

(Vis:) *Etāni cattāri vattāni sammajjanakaraṇādāni saṅghasannipātato paṭhamam katabbattā uposathassa uposathakammasa pubbakaraṇaṇ-ti vuccati. Pubbakaraṇāni ti akkhātāni.*

(Puc:) *Chandapārisuddhi utukkhānaṃ
bhikkhugaṇaṇā ca ovādo
uposathassa etāni
pubbakiccan-ti vuccati. (Kkh 17 & 21.)*

(Puc:) *“Chandapārisuddhi.”*

(Vis:) *Chandārahānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ chanda-pārisuddhi- āharaṇaṇ-ca [idha natthi].*

(Puc:) *“Utukkhānaṃ.”*

(Vis:) *Hemant’ādīnaṃ tiṇṇaṃ utūnaṃ ettakaṃ atikkantaṃ ettakaṃ avasiṭṭhaṇ-ti evaṃ utu-ācikkhanaṃ. Utūnidha pana sāsane hemanta-gimha-vassānānaṃ vasena tiṇi honti ayaṃ [hemanta-utu] asmiṃ utumhi [aṭṭha] uposathā iminā pakkhena eko uposatho sampatto [eko uposatho atikkanto, cha uposathā avasiṭṭhā].*

Utukkhānaṇ-ti “hemantādīnaṃ utūnaṃ ettakaṃ atikkantaṃ, ettakaṃ avasiṭṭhaṇ”ti evaṃ utūnaṃ ācikkhanaṃ. (Kkh 18)

(Puc:) *“Bhikkhugaṇaṇā ca.”*

(Vis:) (Thai version:) *Imasmiṃ uposathagge ettakā bhikkhū sannipatitā ti bhikkhūnaṃ gaṇaṇā. Imasmiṃ pana uposathagge ettakā bhikkhū sannipatitā honti.*

(Sri Lanka version:) *Imasmiṃ uposathagge sannipatitānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ gaṇaṇā ettakā bhikkhū honti.*

Bhikkhugaṇaṇā ti “ettakā bhikkhū uposathagge sannipatitā” ti bhikkhūnaṃ gaṇaṇā. (Kkh 18)

“... uposathagge sannipatitānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ gaṇaṇā ettakā bhikkhū ...” (Pg).

(Puc:) *“Ovādo.”*

(Vis:) *Bhikkhunīnaṃ ovādo dātabbo. Idāni pana tāsam n’atthitāya so ca ovādo idha n’atthi.*

Ovādo ti bhikkhunovādo. (Kkh 18.)

(Puc:) *“Uposathassa etāni pubbakiccan-ti vuccati.”*

(Vis:) *Etāni pañca kammāni chandāharaṇādāni pātimokkhuddesato paṭhamam katabbattā uposathassa uposathakammasa pubbakiccan-ti vuccati pubbakiccāni ti akkhātāni.*

(Puc:) *Uposatho yāvatikā ca bhikkhū
kammappattā sabhāgāpattiyo ca
na vijjanti vajjanīyā ca puggalā
tasmīṃ na honti pattakallaṇ-ti vuccati. (Kkh 6.)*

(Puc:) *“Uposatho.”*

(Vis:) *Tīsu uposathadivasesu cātuddasī-pañjarasī-sāmaggīsu, ajj’uposatho pañjaraso.*

Karontena pana sace cātuddasiko hoti, “ajj’uposatho cātuddaso”ti vattabbaṃ. Sace pannarasiko hoti, ‘ajj’uposatho pannaraso’ ti vattabbaṃ. Sace sāmaggi-uposatho hoti, “ajj’uposatho sāmaggi” ti vattabbaṃ. (Kkh 6.)

Tattha uposatho ti tīsu uposatha-divasesu aññatara-uposatha-divaso. (Kkh 6.)

(Puc:) *“Yāvatikā ca bhikkhū kammappattā.”*

(Vis:) *Yattakā bhikkhū tassa uposathakammasa pattā yuttā anurūpā sabbantimena paricchena cattāro bhikkhū pakatattā saṅghena anukkhittā te ca kho hatthapāsaṃ avijjahitvā ekasīmāyaṃ ṭhitā.*

Yāvatikā ca bhikkhū kammappattā ti yattakā bhikkhū tassa uposathakammasa pattā yuttā anurūpā, sabbantimena paricchena cattāro pakatattā, te ca kho hatthapāsaṃ avijjahitvā ekasīmāyaṃ ṭhitā. (Kkh 6.)

The (saṅghena) *anukkhittā* part, as Nānakitti thera notes in Pg 4, has been derived from the explanation of *pakatattā* in the *Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī-purāṇa-ṭīkā*: “*pakattatā ti anukkhittā pārājikaṃ anajjhāpannā cā ti*”; Kkh-pt Myanmar p.136.

(Puc:) *“Sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti.”*

(Vis:) *Vikālabhojanādi-vatthu-sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti.*

Sabhāgāpattiyo ca na vijjanti ti ettha yaṃ sabbo saṅgho vikālabhojanādinā sabhāgavatthunā lahukāpattiṃ

āpajjati, evarūpā vatthusabhāgā “sabhāgā”ti vuccati. (Kkh 13.)

(Puc:) “Vajjanīyā ca puggalā tasmim na honti.”

(Vis:) Gahaṭṭha-paṇḍakādayo ekavīsati vajjanīyapuggalā hatthapāsato bahikaraṇavasena vajjetabbā tasmim na honti.

Ime vīsati cā ti ekavīsati puggalā vajjanīyā nāma, te hatthapāsato bahikaraṇavasena vajjetabbā. (Kkh 14.)

(Puc:) “Pattakallan-ti vuccati.”

(Vis:) Saṅghassa uposathakammaṃ imehi catūhi lakkhaṇehi saṅgahitaṃ pattakallan-ti vuccati.

Evaṃ pattakallaṃ imehi catūhi aṅgehi saṅgahitaṃ-ti veditabbaṃ. (Kkh 6.)

(Vis:) Pattakālavantan-ti akkhātaṃ.

[Elder’s request:] Pubbakaraṇapubbakiccāni samāpetvā desitāpattikassa samaggassa bhikkhusaṅghassa anumatiyā pātimokkhaṃ uddisituṃ ārādhanaṃ karomi. (Mūlasikkhā [JPTS I 129]).

Appendix II

The Sikkhāpada-uddāna

The following summary verses, *uddāna*, of the training-rules, *sikkhāpada*, are found after the 1875 & 1895 Sinhala printed editions of the *Bhikkhupātimokkha* (BhPm 1 and 2) and also in the Gannoruwa manuscript (G). G gives a title to the verses: *sikkhāpadassa uddānaṃ*, “summary-verse of the training-rules,” but no title is given to the collection of verses in BhPm 1 & 2.

The *uddāna* is also found after two Siamese Khom script *Bhikkhupātimokkha* manuscripts in France, BnF Pali 10⁷⁵⁹ and MEP Pali 46⁷⁶⁰. In MEP Pali 10 it is preceded by the title *sikkhāpadassa uddānaṃ*, like in G. According to the *Lankāwe Puskola Pot Nāmavaliya* II there is a *Sikkhāpada-uddānaya* manuscript in the Kulagammana Rajamahāvihāra in Kandy district, but I have not been able to trace it there.

Many of the verses are also found in the Suttavibhaṅga and most are found in the Parivāra. Some verses are different than the ones found in the Suttavibhaṅga and Pārivāra. It might be more appropriate to talk about different collections because the versions of the Gannoruwa Pātimokkha manuscript and the printed Sinhalese Bhikkhupātimokkha are quite different. There are many differences and variant readings between the verses found in BhPm, G, Parivāra, and the Suttavibhaṅga, and also among the different Parivāra and Suttavibhaṅga editions. These readings are given in a separate document dealing only with these verses.

It is unclear whether the Pātimokkha *uddāna* is an ancient part of the text and got omitted in most manuscript lineages because it was not recited, or whether it is a medieval Southeast Asian addition. The Mahāsaṅghika *Prātimokṣasūtra* has an *uddāna* after each rule-section and this shows that the addition of *uddānas* to this text is an ancient practice.

An *uddāna* is a kind of table of contents or reference table found in many Pāli texts. The PED definition of the word is: “*Uddāna* (nt.) [fr. *ud* + *dā*, *dayati* to bind: see under *dāma*] a group of Suttas, used throughout the Vinaya Piṭaka, with ref. to each Khandhaka, in the Saṃyutta, the Aṅguttara and other books (cp. Mil 407) for each group of about ten Suttas (cp. Dhs-a 27). The *uddāna* gives, in a sort of doggerel verse, at the end of each group, the titles of the Suttas in the group. It may then be roughly rendered ‘summary’. If all the *uddānas* were collected together, they would form a table of contents to the whole work...”

The Sikkhāpada-uddāna in the 1875 Sinhalese edition of the Bhikkhupātimokkha

1. Methunādinnaḍānañ-ca, manussa-viggahottari ,
pārājikāni cattāri, chejja-vatthū asaṃsayā ti.
2. Visatṭhi -kāyasamsaggo , duṭṭhullaṃ attakāmatam ,
saṅcarittam kuṭṭiñ-ceva , vihāro ca amūlakam.
3. Kiñci-desañ -ca bhedo ca, tath’eva anuvattakam ,
dubbaca-kuladūsanam , saṅghadisesā terasā ti.
4. Alam kammaniyañ-ceva , tath’eva ca na heva kho,
aniyatā supaññattā , buddhaseṭṭhena tādina ti.
5. Atireka-ekarattañ-ca, akāla-porāṇa-dhovanam ,
paṭiggahañ-ca tañ-ceva, viññatti ca tad-uttari ,
dve appavārīto ceva, tikkhattum codanāya cā ti.
6. Missakam suddhakañ-ceva , tulañ-ca anuvassakam,

⁷⁵⁹ *Catalogue Des Manuscrits Pālis des Collections Françaises*; Jacqueline Filliozat, Jinadasa Liyanaratne, William Pruitt, EFEO DATA.

⁷⁶⁰ *Séminaire des Missions Étrangères de Paris, Catalogue Descriptif des Manuscrits du Fonds Pāli*; Jacqueline Filliozat, Paris, 1988. In EFEO DATA.

- purāṇasanthatañ-ceva, lomāni hāranena ca,
dhovanaṃ rūpiyañ-ceva, dve ca nānappakārakan -ti.
7. Atirekañ-ca pattañ-ca, ūnena bandhanena ca ,
bhesajjaṃ sātakañ-ceva, kupitena acchindanaṃ .
8. Dve tantavāyā ceva, accekacīvarena ca,
chārattaṃ vippavāsena, attano parināmanā ti.
9. Mūsā-omasa-pesuññaṃ, padaso dve nipajjanā,
desanārocanā ceva, duṭṭhullaṃ paṭhavī ti khaṇe.
10. Rukkhuṇacchedaṇṇavādaṃ, pesuññañjhaṇṇena ca,
ajjhokāse vihāre ca, anūpakhajja nikaḍḍhanā,
vehāsakuṭi lepanā, sappāṇaka-visiñcanan-ti.
11. Asammato ca ovādo, atthaṃgataṃ upassayaṃ,
āmisahetu dentassa, cīvaram sibbanena ca.
12. Saṃvidhāya gamanena, nāvāya abhirūhaṇe,
paripācittaṃ bhattañ-ca, raho vā pi nisīdanan-ti.
13. Āvasatha-gaṇaṇ-ceva, paramparaṃ bhojanañ-ca,
dve patta-pavāritā ceva, vikāle khādanena ca,
sanniddhi-paṇitañ-ceva, adinnaṃ dvārakena cā ti.
14. Acelakadānena ca, bhikkhu-uyyojanena ca,
sabhojanaṃ kulañ-ceva, dve ca raho nisīdanā.
15. Santaṃ bhikkhuñ-ca bhesajjaṃ, uyyuttaṃ dassanena ca,
atireka-tirattañ-ceva, uyyodhika-gamanena cā ti.*
16. Suramaṃ aṭṭhanguli-patode, uḍaḍaḍa ca anāḍare,
bhikkhuṃ bhiṃsāpanaṇ-ceva , jotiñ-ca nahāna-dubbaṇṇaṃ,
karaṇaṃ vikappañ-ceva , cīvaram apanidhena cā ti.
17. Sañcicca-pāṇaṃ jīvitaṃ, paribhoga-sapāṇakaṃ ,
yathādhamañ-ca nihataṃ , jānaṃ duṭṭhulla-chāḍakaṃ,
18. Ūnavīsati-vassañ-ca, theyyaṃ mātugāmena saddhiñ-ca .
saṃvidhāya saṃbhuñjanā, nāsitaṃ upalāpanan-ti.
19. Vuccamāno sahadhammena, vinayañ-ca vivaṇṇayī,
mohento pahāraṃ dento, talasattikaṃ amūlakaṃ .
20. Kukkuccānupassutiñ-ca, dhammikānaṃ vinicchayaṃ,
samagga-saṅgha-dānena, puggalassa parināmane ti.
21. Antopurañ-ca uggaṇhe, anāpucchā pavesane,
sūciḍharañ-ca mañcañ-ca, tūlonaddhaṃ nisīdanaṃ,
kaṇḍu-vassikā-sāṭikaṃ, pamāṇaṃ cīvaram dhārayī ti .
22. Musā-bhūtañ-ca ovādo, bhojanāceḷakena ca,
surā-sappāṇakā dhammā , rājavaggena te navā ti .
23. Aññātikāya pavittihāya, vosāsaṇṇaṃ na nivārayi,
sekkha-sammata-dānena, āraññabhojanena cā ti.
24. Parimaṇḍalaṃ paṭicchannaṃ, susaṃvut'okkhittacakkhunā ,
ukkhittojjagghikā saddo , tayo ceva pacālatā . (Vin V 32)
25. Khambha-ogunṭhitā ceva, kuṭi-pallatthikāya ca,
sakkaccaṃ pattasaññī ca, samasūpa -samatittikaṃ . (Vin V 32)
26. Sakkaccaṃ pattasaññī ca, sapadānaṃ samasūpakaṃ,
thūpato ca paṭicchannaṃ, viññattujjhāna-saññinā . (Vin V 32)

27. Na mahantaṃ maṇḍalaṃ dvāraṃ , sabbaṃ hatthaṃ na vyāhare ,
ukkhēpo chedanā gaṇḍo , dhunaṃ sitthāvakāraṃ. (Vin V 32)
28. Jīvānicchāraṃ ceva , capu-suru-surena ca ,
hattho patto ca oṭṭho ca, sāmisaṃ sitthakena ca. (Vin V 32)
29. Chattapāṇissa saddhammaṃ, na desenti tathāgatā,
evam-eva daṇḍapāṇissa, sattha-āyudha -pāṇinaṃ. (Vin V 33)
30. Pādukopāhaṇā ceva, yāna-sayana -gatassa ca,
pallatthikā-nisinassa, veṭṭhit'ogunṭhitassa ca. (Vin V 33)
31. Chamā-nīc'āsane ṭhāne , pacchato uppathena ca,
ṭhitakena na kātabbaṃ, harite udakamhi cā ti. (Vin V 33)
32. Parimaṇḍalaṃ ujjagghi , khambha-piṇḍā tath'eva ca ,
kabalā surusuruṇ-ceva , pādukena ca sattamā ti. (Vin V 33)

Sikkhāpada-uddāna in the Gannoruwa Pātimokkha Manuscript

Sikkhāpadassa udānaṃ

1. Methunādinnaḍānañ-ca, manussa-viggahottariṃ ,
pārājikāni cattāri, chejja-vatthu asaṃsayā.
2. Sukkasamaggaduṭṭhullā, kāmaṃ sañcaritaṃ kuṭi,
vihārāmūlakañ-cābhāgiyā bhedānuvattakā.
Dubbacuddasa-saṃghādisesā terasa dhāmatā.
3. Alaṃkammaniyañ-ceva, nālaṃkammaniyam-pi ca,
aniyatā duve vuttā, buddhenādiccabandhunā.
4. Das'ekaratti māso ca , dhovanañ-ca paṭiggaho,
viññatt'uttari'bhihaṭṭhuṃ , ubhinnaṃ dūtakena ca.
5. Kosiyā suddha-dve-bhāgā, chabbassāni nisīdanaṃ,
duve lomāni uggaṇho, ubho nānappakāraḍā .
6. Dve pattā pañca bhesajjā, vassikā-dāna-paṇcamam;
sāmaṃ vāyāpan'accekaṃ, sāsaṅkaṃ saṃghikena ca.
7. Musā-bhūtā ca ovādo, bhojanañcela-paṇcamam,
surā-sappāṇakā dhammā, rājavaggena te navā ti.
8. Musā omasa-pesuṇṇaṃ, padaso sayanā duve,
aññatra viññunā bhūtā, thullāpatti khaṇena ca.
9. Bhūtāṃ aññāya ujjhāpen-dve, saṅghike ca khajjanaṃ,
nikkaḍḍhanañ-ca āhacca-dvāra-sappāṇakena ca.
10. Asammataṭṭhaṅgatopaseyyaṃ, āmisadānasibbanam,
addhānaṃ nāvaṃ bhuñjeyya, eko ekāya te dasa.
11. Piṇḍo gaṇam-parampuvaṃ, duve vuttā pavāraṇā,
vikāle sannidhikāraṃ, paṇītaṃ dantapoṇena ca.
12. Acelakaṃ uyyojañ-ca, sabhojane duve raho
nimantito paccayañ-ca, uyyutaṃ vase uyyodhikaṃ.
13. Surā aṅguli hāso ca, anādariyabhimsanā,
joti-ṇahānañ-ca-dubbaṇṇam, sāmaṃ apanidhena ca.
14. Sañcicca-pāṇakā kammā, duṭṭhullā ūṇavīsati(m?),

- gamane neva dve diṭṭhi saṃvāsenāsanāya ca.
- 15: Sahadhammikaṃ vilekkhā, moho pahāram-uggiraṃ,
amūlakañ-ca sañcicca-upassūtiñ-ca khīyanaṃ,
pakkame cīvaraṃ datvā, pariṇāmeyya puggale.
- 16: Rājino ratanaṃ santaṃ, suci paññañ-ca tūlikaṃ,
nisīdanañ-ca kaṇḍū ca, vassikā sugato na ca.
- 17: Paññattā buddhaseṭṭhena, uddakā sāgarūpamā,
gambhīrābuddhavisayā vinaye, nava nānattakā ti.
- 18: Sahatthā ñātikā bhuñjo, nappavāreyya ce bhikkhu,
sekkhasammuti araññaṃ, gārayhan-ti pavuccati.
- 19: Maṇḍalaṃ supaṭicchanno, saṃvutokhitacakkhunā,
ukkhitakāya ujjhaggi, saddo kāyappacālakaṃ,
bāhuppacālakañ-ceva, neva sīsappacālakaṃ.
- 20: Khambhanaṃ guṇṭhito ceva, na gaccheyya ukkuṭikaṃ.
pallatthikāya nisinnassa, sakkaccaṃ pattasaññino,
samasūpañ-ca tittikaṃ, sakkaccaṃ pattasaññino.
- 21: Sapadānaṃ samasūpo, na thūpato ca chādakā,
viññattujjhānasaññinā, nātimahā ca maṇḍalaṃ.
- 22: Kavalañ-ca anāhaṭaṃ, sabbahatthaṃ na byāhare,
ukkhevacchedakaṃ gaṇḍo, dhūnasitthāvakārakaṃ.
- 23: Jivhānicchārakaṃ capu, surusuru ca kārakaṃ,
tayo nillehakā vuttā, sāmisenā sasiṭṭhakaṃ.
- 24: Chattapāṇissa saddhammaṃ (sic), na desenti tathāgatā,
tatheva daṇḍapāṇissa, sattha-āvudhapāṇinaṃ.
- 25: Pādukāpāhanārūḷhaṃ yānaṃ seyyagatassa ca,
pallatthikāya nisinnassa, veṭṭhito guṇṭhitena ca.
- 26: Chamātīmāsate ṭhāne, pacchato upathena ca,
ṭhito uccārapassāvaṃ, harite udakamhi cā ti.
- 7: Paññattā atidevena, gotamena yasassinā,
sāvake sikkhatthāya pañcasattati sekhiyā ti.

Appendix III

Confession in the *Mūlasikkhā*, etc.

Khuddasikkhā (Be, CSCD ed.)

42. Desanāniddeso

Desanāti—

382. *Cāgo yo bhikkhubhāvassa, sā pārājikadesanā;*

yathāvuttena vuṭṭhānaṃ, garukāpattidesanā.

383. *Ukkuṭikaṃ nisiditvā, paggaṇhitvāna añjaliṃ;*

thullaccayādiṃ deseyya, evamekassa santike.

384. “*Ahaṃ, bhante, ekaṃ thullaccayāpattiṃ āpajjiṃ, taṃ tumhamūle paṭidesemi*”ti vatvā tena “*passasi, āvuso, taṃ āpattiṃ*”ti vutte “*āma, bhante, passāmi*”ti vatvā puna tena “*āyatiṃ, āvuso, saṃvareyyāsi*”ti vutte “*sādhū suṭṭhu, bhante, saṃvarissāmi*”ti vattabbaṃ. “*Ahaṃ, bhante, dve thullaccayāpattiyo āpajjiṃ, ahaṃ bhante sambahulā thullaccayāpattiyo āpajjiṃ, tā tumhamūle paṭidesemi*”ti vattabbaṃ.

Nissaggiyesu pana “idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ dasāhātikkantaṃ nissaggiyaṃ, imāhaṃ āyasmato nissajjāmi”ti. “Imāni me, bhante, cīvarāni ...pe... etaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ ...pe... etāni me, bhante, cīvarāni dasāhātikkantāni nissaggiyāni, etānāhaṃ āyasmato nissajjāmi”ti.

385. *Nissajjitoṇa deseyya, āpattiṃ tena bhikkhunā; paṭiggahetvā āpattiṃ, deyyaṃ nissatṭhacīvaraṃ. “Imaṃ, imāni, etaṃ, etāni cīvarāni āyasmato dammi”ti.*

386. (ka) *idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ rattivippavutthaṃ aññatra bhikkhusammutiyā nissaggiyaṃ.*

(kha) *idaṃ me, bhante, akālacīvaraṃ māsātikkantaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ga) *idaṃ me, bhante, purāṇacīvaraṃ aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā dhovāpitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(gha) *idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā hatthato paṭiggahitaṃ aññatra pārivattakā nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ṇa) *idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ aññātakāṃ gahapatikaṃ aññatra samayā viññāpitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ca) *idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ aññātakāṃ gahapatikaṃ tatuttari viññāpitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(cha) *idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ pubbe appavārīto aññātakāṃ gahapatikaṃ upasaṅkamitvā vikappaṃ āpannaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ja) *idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ pubbe appavārīto aññātake gahapatike upasaṅkamitvā vikappaṃ āpannaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(jha) *idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ atirekatikkhattuṃ codanāya atirekachakkhattuṃ ṭhānena abhinipphāditāṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ṇa) *idaṃ me, bhante, kosiyaṃsakāṃ santhataṃ kārāpitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ṭa) *idaṃ me, bhante, suddhakālākāṇaṃ eḷakalomāṇaṃ santhataṃ kārāpitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ṭha) *idaṃ me, bhante, santhataṃ anādiyitvā tulaṃ odātāṇaṃ tulaṃ gocariyāṇaṃ kārāpitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ḍa) *idaṃ me, bhante, santhataṃ ūnakachabbassāni kārāpitaṃ aññatra bhikkhusammutiyā nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ḍha) *idaṃ me, bhante, nisīdanasanthataṃ anādiyitvā purāṇasanthatassa sāmantaṃ sugatavidatthiṃ kārāpitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.*

(ṇa) *imāni me, bhante, eḷakalomāni tiyojanaparamaṃ atikkāmitāni nissaggiyāni.*

(ta) *imāni me, bhante, eḷakalomāni aññātikāya bhikkhuniyā dhovāpitāni nissaggiyāni.*

(tha) *ahaṃ, bhante, rūpiyaṃ paṭiggahesiṃ, idaṃ me, bhante, nissaggiyaṃ, imāhaṃ saṅghassa nissajjāmi.*

(da) *ahaṃ, bhante, nānappakārakaṃ rūpiyasamvohāraṃ samāpajjiṃ, idaṃ me, bhante, nissaggiyaṃ, imāhaṃ saṅghassa nissajjāmi.*

387. *Nissajjitoṇa āpattiṃ, deseyyātha gihiṃ vade;*

“jānāhimaṃ”ti iminā, so vadeyyāharāmi kiṃ.

388. *Avatvāmanti telādiṃ, vade bhikkhūna kappiyaṃ;*

yaṃ āharati so tena, parivattetoṇa kappiyaṃ.

389. *Labbaṃ ṭhapetoṇa dvepete, sesehi paribhuñjituṃ;*

tato aññena laddhopi, bhāgo tesāṃ na kappati.

390. *Rukkhacchāyāpyantamaso, tannibbattā na kappati;*

nissatṭhaṃ paṭiladdhampi, ādito santhatattayaṃ.

391. No ce labhetha evaṃ so, imaṃ chaḍḍehi saṃsiyo;
evaṃpi bhikkhu chaḍḍeyya, no ce labhetha sammato.
392. Etāni dutiyo patto, saṅghe sesāni labbhare;
saṅghekasmiṃ gaṇe vattum, labbhaṃ bhāsantarenapi.
393. (ka) ahaṃ, bhante, nānappakāraṃ kayavikkayaṃ samāpajjīṃ, idaṃ me, bhante, nissaggiyaṃ.
(kha) ayaṃ me, bhante, patto dasāhātikkanto nissaggiyo.
(ga) ayaṃ me, bhante, patto ūnapaṇcabandhanena pattena cetāpito nissaggiyo, imāhaṃ saṅghassa nissajjāmīti.
394. Nissajjitoṇa deseyya, āpattiṃ pattagāhakaṃ;
sammannitoṇa saṅghassa, pattantaṃ tassa dāpaye.
395. (ka) idaṃ me, bhante, bhesajjaṃ sattāhātikkantaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.
(kha) idaṃ me, bhante, vassikasāṭhikācīvaraṃ atirekamāse sese gimhāne pariyiṭṭhaṃ, atirekaḍḍhamāse sese gimhāne katvā paridahitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.
(ga) idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ bhikkhussa sāmaṃ datvā acchinnaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.
(gha) idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ sāmaṃ suttaṃ viññāpetvā tantavāyehi vāyāpitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.
(ṇa) idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ pubbe appavārīto aññātakassa gahapatikassa tantavāye upasaṅkamitvā vikappaṃ āpannaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.
(ca) idaṃ me, bhante, accekacīvaraṃ cīvarakālasamayaṃ atikkāmitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ.
(cha) idaṃ me, bhante, cīvaraṃ atirekachārattaṃ vippavutthaṃ aññātra bhikkhusammutiya nissaggiyaṃ.
(ja) idaṃ me, bhante, jānaṃ saṅghikaṃ lābhaṃ pariṇataṃ attano pariṇāmitaṃ nissaggiyaṃ, imāhaṃ āyasmato nissajjāmīti.
396. Sesāṃ sabbaṃ yathāyogaṃ, ādimhi viya yojaye.
397. (ka) ahaṃ, bhante, ekaṃ pācittiyaṃ āpajjīṃ. Dve sambahulā pācittiyaṃ āpajjīṃ.
(kha) gārayhaṃ, bhante, dhammaṃ āpajjīṃ asappāyaṃ pāṭidesanīyaṃ, taṃ pāṭidesemīti. Tena “passasi, āvuso, taṃ dhammaṃ”ti vattabbaṃ.
(ga) ahaṃ, bhante, ekaṃ dukkaṭāpattiṃ āpajjīṃ. Dve sambahulā dukkaṭāpattiyo āpajjīṃ.
(gha) ahaṃ, bhante, ekaṃ dubbhāsītāpattiṃ āpajjīṃ. Dve sambahulā dubbhāsītāpattiyo āpajjīṃ. Tā tumhamūle pāṭidesemīti.
(ṇa) “ahaṃ, bhante, dve nānāvattukā thullaccayāpattiyo āpajjīṃ. Sambahulā nānāvattukā thullaccayāpattiyo āpajjīṃ, tā tumhamūle pāṭidesemī”ti vatvā tena “passasi, āvuso, tā āpattiyo”ti vutte “āma, bhante, passāmī”ti vatvā puna tena “āyatīṃ, āvuso, saṃvareyyāsī”ti vutte “sādhū suṭṭhu, bhante, saṃvarissāmī”ti vattabbaṃ.
398. Adesaṇāgāminīyaṃ, anāpattiṇca desitaṃ;
nānā saṃvāsanissīmaṭṭhitānaṃ catupaṇṇahi;
manasā pakatattānaṃ, nānekāti na desayeti.

This text gives the way of confessing each individual offence by itself, however the *Mūlasikkhā* gives a way of doing them all together without specifying:

Mūlasikkhā § 120. (Be, CSCD ed.)

Āpattidesakena “ahaṃ, bhante, sambahulā nānāvattukā āpattiyo āpajjīṃ, tā tumhamūle pāṭidesemī”ti vatvā paṭiggaṇhantena “passasi, āvuso, tā āpattiyo”ti vutte “āma, bhante, passāmī”ti vatvā puna paṭiggaṇhantena “āyatīṃ, āvuso, saṃvareyyāsī”ti vutte “sādhū, suṭṭhu, bhante saṃvarissāmī”ti titikkhattum vatvā desetabbaṃ.

By the one who confesses, having said: “I, Venerable Sir, have fallen into many offences of different classes, I confess them to you,” [then] by the one who accepts [the offence] “Do you see, friend, those offenses?” is said. [Then] when again by the one who accepts “Do you restrain yourself in the future” has been said, [the other having said]: “Good, very good, Venerable Sir, I shall restrain” it is to be confessed.

Bhikkhupātimokkhagaṇṭhidīpanī (p. 3.) (Be, CSCD ed.)

(Composed by Ñāṇakitti Thera, Chiang Mai, Siam, 15th CE.) (From the Sinhalese Edition by Ven. Kalage Guṇaratana, Sri Lanka. 1889/2433.)

Desitāpattiko: "Āpattidesakena: ahaṃ bhante sambahulā nānāvattthukā ... paṭidesemīti vatvā, passasi... vatvā desetabbā" ti mūlasikkhā pāṭho.

Khuddasikkhāyan-tu: Sādhū suṭṭhu bhante saṃvarissāmī ti vattaban-ti vuttaṃ na tikkhattun-ti. Ārocentena: tuyhaṃ santike ekaṃ āpattiṃ āvikaromī vatvā, mamaṃ ekaṃ āpattiṃ āpannabhāvaṃ jānāhi ti vā vadatu. Ekaṃ garukaṃ āpattiṃ āvikaromī ti ādinā nayena vadatu. Sabbhehi ca ākārehi ārocitā va hoti ti. Buddhanāgattherena vuttaṃ. Sabbā tā āpattiyo āroceṃ ti vacanaṃ pana Samuccayakkhandhakaṭṭhakathāyaṃ vuttādhippāyaṃ pubbattherehi racitaṃ yadi cetaṃ vatvā ārocitā svārocitā honti.

“‘One who has confessed the offence’⁷⁶¹ (means) ‘by the one who declares the offence [is to be said]: “I, Bhante, have committed many various offences, I confess them to you” ... is to be confessed, having said this.’ [this] is the passage in the *Mūlasikkhā*.” (See above.)

However, in the *Khuddasikkhā*: “‘Very good, Bhante, I will restrain’ is to be said’ is not said three times. By the one who declares [the offence], having said, ‘in your presence I reveal one offence,’ or one should say, ‘know me as one is in the state of one who has fallen into one offence,’ [or] ‘I reveal one heavy offence,’ in the manner at the start [in the *Khuddasikkhā*]. And [the offence] is just declared in all manners. This has been said by Buddhanāga thera (the author of the *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī-ṭīkā*). But the sentence ‘I declare all those offences’ has been composed by the ancient theras in accordance with the intention of what has been said in the Commentary to the *Samuccayakkhandhaka* (of the Vinaya-piṭaka). And when this has been said, the declared [offences] are declared well.”

⁷⁶¹ *Āpattidesaka*, a word found in the invitation to recite the Pātimokkha by the thera.